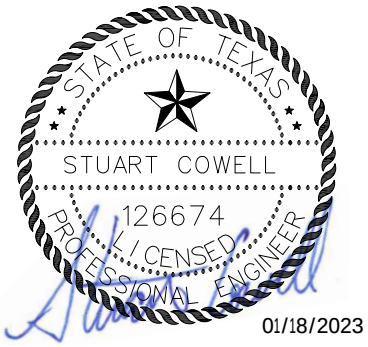
CITY OF KYLE

Contract Documents and Technical Specifications For the:

SCHLEMMER AND PORTER STREET, PHASE 2 WASTEWATER IMPROVEMENTS



JANUARY 18, 2023

LJA ENGINEERING

2700 La Frontera, Suite 150, Round Rock, Texas 78681
t 512.767.7300 LJA.com

CITY OF KYLE
CONTRACT DOCUMENTS – TABLE OF CONTENTS

SCHLEMMER AND PORTER STREET, PHASE 2 WASTEWATER IMPROVEMENTS

Geotechnical Report

End

00020 Invitation to Bid

City of Kyle, Texas
Invitation for Bid for the
Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements

Sealed bids addressed to the City of Kyle will be received for the Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements Project, in accordance with the Specifications, and Contract Documents prepared by LJA Engineering, Inc. (Engineer), will be received at the City of Kyle Public Works Department, 520 E. RR 150, Kyle, TX, until **2:00 p.m., February 24, 2023**, and then publicly opened and read aloud. Any Proposal received after this time will be returned unopened. Proposals shall be plainly marked with the name and address of the Bidder and the following words:

PROPOSAL FOR
SCHLEMMER AND PORTER STREET, PHASE 2 WASTEWATER IMPROVEMENTS

Bids are invited for several items and quantities of work as follows:

1. Construction of approximately 850 linear feet of 12-inch sanitary sewer lines and 640 linear feet of 8-inch sanitary sewer lines,
2. 7 – 48-inch sanitary manholes
3. 1 – 60-inch sanitary manholes,
4. Abandonment of existing wastewater lines/manholes.
5. Surface repairs

Bids must be submitted on the Bid Form provided and must be accompanied by a bid security in a penal sum approximately equal to and not less than five percent (5%) of the total amount of the bid. The security shall be in the form of a certified check or cashier's check, or bid bond furnished by a reliable surety company having authority under the laws of Texas to write surety bond in the amount required, with such security made payable without recourse to the City of Kyle.

Bid/Contract Documents, including Drawings and Technical Specifications will be on file online by January 25, 2023, at:

www.civcast.com

Copies of the Bid/Contract Documents will also be available at:

Builders Exchange, 4047 Naco Perrin, San Antonio, Texas 78217

No fax submissions will be accepted. No late submissions will be accepted. All submissions received after the deadline will be returned unopened.

State statutes including wage and hour provisions and contract regulations must be adhered to as they relate to this project. Contractors will be required to comply with all applicable Equal Employment Opportunity laws and regulations.

City of Kyle reserves the right to reject any or all bids or to waive any informalities in the bidding. Bids may be held by City of Kyle for a period not to exceed 30 days from the date of the bid opening for the purpose of reviewing the bids and investigating the bidder's qualifications prior to the contract award. The final Notice of Award of Contract shall be given to the successful bidder by the City of Kyle within

sixty (60) days following the opening of bids and no bidder may withdraw his bid within sixty (60) days after opening thereof.

Bidders should carefully examine the plans, specifications and other documents, visit the site of work, and fully inform themselves as to all conditions and matters which can in any way affect the work or the cost thereof. Should a bidder find discrepancies in, or omissions from, the plans, specifications or other documents, or should be in doubt as to their meaning, bidder should notify the Engineer and obtain clarification prior to submitting any bid, but no later than **5:00 p.m. on February 14, 2023**.

Time of substantial completion shall be **120** calendar days.

A **non-mandatory pre-bid conference** will be held on **February 7, 2023 at 10:00 a.m.** at the City of Kyle Public Works Department Training Room, 520 E. RR 150, Kyle, TX. Attendance at the meeting is not required; however, meeting minutes will not be issued.

Leon Barba, P.E.
City Engineer

00200 Instructions to Bidders

ARTICLE 1 – DEFINED TERMS

1.01 Item 1 of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges June 1, 2004 is hereby incorporated by reference.

ARTICLE 2 – COPIES OF BIDDING DOCUMENTS

~~2.01 Complete sets of the Bidding Documents in electronic format on Compact Disc may be obtained from LJA Engineering, Inc., 2700 La Frontera Blvd, Suite 150, Round Rock, Texas 78681 at no cost.~~

2.02 Complete sets of Bidding Documents shall be used in preparing Bids; neither Owner nor Engineer assumes any responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Bidding Documents.

2.03 Owner and Engineer, in making copies of Bidding Documents available on the above terms, do so only for the purpose of obtaining Bids for the Work and do not confer a license or grant for any other use.

ARTICLE 3 – QUALIFICATIONS OF BIDDERS

3.01 To demonstrate Bidder's qualifications to perform the Work, within five days of Owner's request, Bidder shall submit written evidence of the following.

A. The names and positions of the individuals authorized to bind bidder's company, including attesting or countersigning officers.

B. An organization chart showing the principals and management personnel who will be involved with the proposed Work.

C. The resumes of the superintendent and supervisors for the various disciplines and crafts required for the project.

D. A proposed project schedule estimating the completion of the major tasks of the project.

E. Current insurance certificate(s) with limits consistent with requirements of these Contract Documents.

F. Copies of 3 years of audited financial statements including cash flows, balance sheets and income statements.

G. Nome of bonding company and bonding capacity.

H. Such other information as is required to evaluate Bid or bidder.

ARTICLE 4 – EXAMINATION OF BIDDING DOCUMENTS, OTHER RELATED DATA, AND SITE

4.01 *Subsurface and Physical Conditions*

A. The Supplementary Conditions identify:

1. Those reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or contiguous to the Site that Engineer has used in preparing the Bidding Documents.

2. Those drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface and subsurface structures at or contiguous to the Site (except Underground Facilities) that Engineer has used in preparing the Bidding Documents.

B. Copies of reports and drawings referenced in Paragraph 4.01.A will be made available by Owner to any Bidder on

request. Those reports and drawings are not part of the Contract Documents, but the "technical data" contained therein upon which Bidder is entitled to rely as provided in Paragraph 4.02 of the General Conditions has been identified and established in Paragraph 4.02 of the Supplementary Conditions. Bidder is responsible for any interpretation or conclusion Bidder draws from any "technical data" or any other data, interpretations, opinions or information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings.

4.02 *Underground Facilities*

A. Information and data shown or indicated in the Bidding Documents with respect to existing Underground Facilities at or contiguous to the Site is based upon information and data furnished to Owner and Engineer by owners of such Underground Facilities, including Owner, or others.

4.03 *Hazardous Environmental Condition*

A. The Supplementary Conditions identify those reports and drawings relating to a Hazardous Environmental Condition identified at the Site, if any, that Engineer has used in preparing the Bidding Documents.

B. Copies of reports and drawings referenced in Paragraph 4.03.A will be made available by Owner to any Bidder on request. Those reports and drawings are not part of the Contract Documents, but the "technical data" contained therein upon which Bidder is entitled to rely as provided in Paragraph 4.06 of the General Conditions has been identified and established in Paragraph 4.06 of the Supplementary Conditions. Bidder is responsible for any interpretation or conclusion Bidder draws from any "technical data" or any other data, interpretations, opinions, or information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings.

4.04 Provisions concerning responsibilities for the adequacy of data furnished to prospective Bidders with respect to subsurface conditions, other physical conditions and Underground Facilities, and possible changes in the Bidding Documents due to differing or unanticipated conditions appear in Paragraphs 4.02, 4.03, and 4.04 of the General Conditions. Provisions concerning responsibilities for the adequacy of data furnished to prospective Bidders with respect to a Hazardous Environmental Condition at the Site, if any, and possible changes in the Contract Documents due to any Hazardous Environmental Condition uncovered or revealed at the Site which was not shown or indicated in the Drawings or Specifications or identified in the Contract Documents to be within the scope of the Work appear in Paragraph 4.06 of the General Conditions.

4.05 On request, Owner will provide Bidder access to the Site to conduct such examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, and studies as Bidder deems necessary for submission of a Bid. Advance notice of at least 7 calendar days shall be given, and coordination with the Owner and any affected property owner will be required. Bidder shall fill all holes and clean up and restore the Site to its former condition upon completion of such explorations, investigations, tests, and studies. Bidder shall comply with all applicable Laws and Regulations relative to excavation and utility locates.

4.06 Reference is made to Article 7 of the Supplementary Conditions for the identification of the general nature of other work that is to be performed at the Site by Owner or others (such as utilities and other prime contractors) that relates to the Work contemplated by these Bidding Documents. On request, Owner will provide to each Bidder for examination access to or copies of Contract Documents (other than portions thereof related to price) for such other work.

4.07 It is the responsibility of each Bidder before submitting a Bid to:

A. examine and carefully study the Bidding Documents, the other related data identified in the Bidding Documents, and any Addenda;

B. visit the Site and become familiar with and satisfy Bidder as to the general, local, and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work (coordination with Owner for site visits prior to bidding is

required);

C. become familiar with and satisfy Bidder as to all federal, state, and local Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work;

D. carefully study all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or contiguous to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at or contiguous to the Site (except Underground Facilities) which have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions as provided in Paragraph 4.02 of the General Conditions;

E. obtain and carefully study (or accept consequences of not doing so) all additional or supplementary examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data concerning conditions (surface, subsurface, and Underground Facilities) at or contiguous to the Site which may affect cost, progress, or performance of the Work or which relate to any aspect of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Bidder, including applying any specific means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction expressly required by the Bidding Documents, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto;

F. agree at the time of submitting its Bid that no further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the determination of its Bid for performance of the Work at the price(s) bid and within the times and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents;

G. become aware of the general nature of the work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Bidding Documents;

H. correlate the information known to Bidder, information and observations obtained from visits to the Site, reports and drawings identified in the Bidding Documents, and all additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data with the Bidding Documents;

I. promptly give Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Bidder discovers in the Bidding Documents and confirm that the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Bidder; and

J. determine that the Bidding Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for the performance of the Work.

4.08 The submission of a Bid will constitute an incontrovertible representation by Bidder that Bidder has complied with every requirement of this Article 4, that without exception the Bid is premised upon performing and furnishing the Work required by the Bidding Documents and applying any specific means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction that may be shown or indicated or expressly required by the Bidding Documents, that Bidder has given Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, and discrepancies that Bidder has discovered in the Bidding Documents and the written resolutions thereof by Engineer are acceptable to Bidder, and that the Bidding Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for performing and furnishing the Work.

ARTICLE 5 – PRE-BID CONFERENCE

5.01 A non-mandatory pre-Bid conference will be held at **10:00 a.m.** local time on **February 7, 2023** at **Public Works Training Room, 520 E. RR 150, Kyle, Texas 78640**. Representatives of Owner and Engineer will be present to discuss the Project. Bidders are encouraged to attend and participate in the conference. Engineer will transmit to all prospective Bidders of record such Addenda as Engineer considers necessary in response to questions arising at the conference. Oral statements may not be relied upon and will not be binding or legally effective.

ARTICLE 6 – SITE AND OTHER AREAS

6.01 The Site is identified in the Bidding Documents. Easements for permanent structures or permanent changes in existing facilities are to be obtained and paid for by Owner unless otherwise provided in the Bidding Documents. All additional lands and access thereto required for temporary construction facilities, construction equipment, or storage of materials and equipment to be incorporated in the Work are to be obtained and paid for by Contractor.

ARTICLE 7 – INTERPRETATIONS AND ADDENDA

7.01 All questions about the meaning or intent of the Bidding Documents are to be submitted to Engineer in writing. Interpretations or clarifications considered necessary by Engineer in response to such questions will be issued by Addenda mailed or delivered to all parties recorded by Engineer as having received the Bidding Documents. Questions received less than ten days prior to the date for opening of Bids may not be answered. Only questions answered by Addenda will be binding. Oral and other interpretations or clarifications will be without legal effect.

7.02 Addenda may be issued to clarify, correct, or change the Bidding Documents as deemed advisable by Owner or Engineer.

ARTICLE 8 – BID SECURITY

8.01 A Bid must be accompanied by Bid security made payable to Owner in an amount of five percent (5%) of Bidder's maximum Bid price and in the form of a certified check or bank money order or a Bid bond (on the form attached) issued by a surety meeting the requirements of Paragraphs 5.01 and 5.02 of the General Conditions.

8.02 The Bid security of the Successful Bidder will be retained until such Bidder has executed the Contract Documents, furnished the required contract security and met the other conditions of the Notice of Award, whereupon the Bid security will be returned. If the Successful Bidder fails to execute and deliver the Contract Documents and furnish the required contract security within 15 days after the Notice of Award, Owner may annul the Notice of Award and the Bid security of that Bidder will be forfeited. The Bid security of other Bidders whom Owner believes to have a reasonable chance of receiving the award may be retained by Owner until the earlier of seven days after the Effective Date of the Agreement or 61 days after the Bid opening, whereupon Bid security furnished by such Bidders will be returned.

8.03 Bid security of other Bidders whom Owner believes do not have a reasonable chance of receiving the award will be returned within seven days after the Bid opening.

ARTICLE 9 – CONTRACT TIMES

9.01 The number of days within which, or the dates by which, the Work is to be substantially completed and ready for final payment are set forth in the Agreement.

ARTICLE 10 – LIQUIDATED DAMAGES

10.01 Provisions for liquidated damages, if any, are set forth in the Agreement.

ARTICLE 11 – SUBSTITUTE AND "OR-EQUAL" ITEMS

11.01 The Contract, if awarded, will be on the basis of materials and equipment specified or described in the Bidding Documents without consideration of possible substitute or "or-equal" items. Whenever it is specified or described in the Bidding Documents that a substitute or "or-equal" item of material or equipment may be furnished or used by Contractor if acceptable to Engineer, application for such acceptance will not be considered by Engineer until after the Effective Date of the Agreement.

ARTICLE 12 – SUBCONTRACTORS, SUPPLIERS AND OTHERS

12.01 If the Supplementary Conditions require the identity of certain Subcontractors, Suppliers, individuals, or entities to be submitted to Owner in advance of a specified date prior to the Effective Date of the Agreement, the apparent Successful Bidder, and any other Bidder so requested, shall within five days after Bid opening, submit to Owner a list of all such Subcontractors, Suppliers, individuals, or entities proposed for those portions of the Work for which such identification is required. Such list shall be accompanied by an experience statement with pertinent information regarding similar projects and other evidence of qualification for each such Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity if requested by Owner. If Owner or Engineer, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to any proposed Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity, Owner may, before the Notice of Award is given, request apparent Successful Bidder to submit a substitute ,without an increase in the Bid.

12.02 If apparent Successful Bidder declines to make any such substitution, Owner may award the Contract to the next lowest Bidder that proposes to use acceptable Subcontractors, Suppliers, individuals, or entities. Declining to make requested substitutions will not constitute grounds for forfeiture of the Bid security of any Bidder. Any Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity so listed and against which Owner or Engineer makes no written objection prior to the giving of the Notice of Award will be deemed acceptable to Owner and Engineer subject to revocation of such acceptance after the Effective Date of the Agreement as provided in Paragraph 6.06 of the General Conditions.

Contractor shall not be required to employ any Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity against whom Contractor has reasonable objection.

ARTICLE 13 – PREPARATION OF BID

13.01 The Bid Form is included with the Bidding Documents. Additional copies may be obtained from Engineer.

13.02 All blanks on the Bid Form shall be completed by printing in ink or by typewriter and the Bid signed in ink. Erasures or alterations shall be initialed in ink by the person signing the Bid Form. A Bid price shall be indicated for each Bid item listed therein, or the words “No Bid,” “No Change,” or “Not Applicable” entered.

13.03 A Bid by a corporation shall be executed in the corporate name by the president or a vice-president or other corporate officer accompanied by evidence of authority to sign. The corporate seal shall be affixed and attested by the secretary or an assistant secretary. The corporate address and state of incorporation shall be shown below the signature.

13.04 A Bid by a partnership shall be executed in the partnership name and signed by a partner (whose title must appear under the signature), accompanied by evidence of authority to sign. The official address of the partnership shall be shown below the signature.

13.05 A Bid by a limited liability company shall be executed in the name of the firm by a member and accompanied by evidence of authority to sign. The state of formation of the firm and the official address of the firm shall be shown below the signature.

13.06 A Bid by an individual shall show the Bidder’s name, official address, and email address.

13.07 A Bid by a joint venture shall be executed by each joint venturer in the manner indicated on the Bid Form. The official address of the joint venture shall be shown below the signature.

13.08 All names shall be typed or printed in ink below the signatures.

13.09 The Bid shall contain an acknowledgment of receipt of all Addenda, the numbers of which shall be filled in on the Bid Form.

13.10 The address and telephone number for communications regarding the Bid shall be shown.

13.11 The Bid shall contain evidence of Bidder's authority and qualification to do business in the state where the Project is located or covenant to obtain such qualification prior to award of the Contract. Bidder's state contractor license number, if any, shall also be shown on the Bid Form.

ARTICLE 14 – BASIS OF BID; COMPARISON OF BIDS

14.01 *Unit Price*

A. Bidders shall submit a Bid on a unit price basis for each item of Work listed in the Bid schedule.

B. The total of all estimated prices will be the sum of the products of the estimated quantity of each item and the corresponding unit price. The final quantities and Contract Price will be determined in accordance with Paragraph 11.03 of the General Conditions.

C. Discrepancies between the multiplication of units of Work and unit prices will be resolved in favor of the unit prices. Discrepancies between the indicated sum of any column of figures and the correct sum thereof will be resolved in favor of the correct sum. Discrepancies between words and figures will be resolved in favor of the words.

14.02 The Bid price shall include such amounts as the Bidder deems proper for overhead and profit on account of cash allowances, if any, named in the Contract Documents as provided in Paragraph 11.02 of the General Conditions.

ARTICLE 15 – SUBMITTAL OF BID

15.01 The Bid proposal is to be completed on the forms provided and submitted with the Bid security and the following data:

A. acknowledgement of receipt of Addenda issued;

B. Bid security;

C. complete responses to information required in Bid;

D. the entire Bid with all blanks filled in completely.

15.02 A Bid shall be submitted no later than the date and time prescribed and at the place indicated in the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid and shall be enclosed in an opaque sealed envelope plainly marked with the Project title (and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Project for which the Bid is submitted), the name and address of Bidder, and shall be accompanied by the Bid security and other required documents.

ARTICLE 16 – MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF BID

16.01 A Bid may be modified or withdrawn by an appropriate document duly executed in the manner that a Bid must be executed and delivered to the place where Bids are to be submitted prior to the date and time for the opening of Bids.

16.02 If within 24 hours after Bids are opened, any Bidder files a duly signed written notice with Owner and promptly thereafter demonstrates to the reasonable satisfaction of Owner that there was a material and substantial mistake in the preparation of its Bid, that Bidder may withdraw its Bid, and the Bid security will be retained. Thereafter, if the Work is rebid, that Bidder will be disqualified from further bidding on the Work.

ARTICLE 17 – OPENING OF BIDS

17.01 Bids will be opened at the time and place indicated in the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid and, unless obviously non-responsive, read aloud publicly. An abstract of the amounts of the base Bids and major alternates, if any, will be made available to Bidders after the opening of Bids.

ARTICLE 18 – BIDS TO REMAIN SUBJECT TO ACCEPTANCE

18.01 All Bids will remain subject to acceptance for the period of time stated in the Bid Form, but Owner may, in its sole discretion, release any Bid and return the Bid security prior to the end of this period.

ARTICLE 19 – EVALUATION OF BIDS AND AWARD OF CONTRACT

19.01 Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids, including without limitation, nonconforming, nonresponsive, unbalanced, or conditional Bids. Owner further reserves the right to reject the Bid of any Bidder whom it finds, after reasonable inquiry and evaluation, to not be responsible.

19.02 More than one Bid for the same Work from an individual or entity under the same or different names will not be considered. Reasonable grounds for believing that any Bidder has an interest in more than one Bid for the Work may be cause for disqualification of that Bidder and the rejection of all Bids in which that Bidder has an interest.

19.03 In evaluating Bids, Owner will consider whether or not the Bids comply with the prescribed requirements, and such alternates, unit prices and other data, as may be requested in the Bid Form or prior to the Notice of Award.

19.04 In evaluating Bidders, Owner will consider the qualifications of Bidders and may consider the qualifications and experience of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other individuals or entities proposed for those portions of the Work for which the identity of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other individuals or entities must be submitted as provided in the Supplementary Conditions.

19.05 Owner may conduct such investigations as Owner deems necessary to establish the responsibility, qualifications, and financial ability of Bidders, proposed Subcontractors, Suppliers, individuals, or entities to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

19.06 If the Contract is to be awarded, Owner will award the Contract to the Bidder whose Bid is in the best interests of the Project.

ARTICLE 20 – CONTRACT SECURITY AND INSURANCE

20.01 Article 5 of the General Conditions, as may be modified by the Supplementary Conditions, sets forth Owner's requirements as to performance and payment bonds and insurance. When the Successful Bidder delivers the executed Agreement to Owner, it shall be accompanied by such bonds.

ARTICLE 21 – SIGNING OF AGREEMENT

21.01 When Owner gives a Notice of Award to the Successful Bidder, it shall be accompanied by the required number of unsigned counterparts of the Agreement with the other Contract Documents which are identified in the Agreement as attached thereto. Within 7 days thereafter, Successful Bidder shall sign and deliver the required number of counterparts of the Agreement and attached documents to Owner. Within 7 days thereafter, Owner shall deliver one fully signed counterpart to Successful Bidder with a complete set of the Drawings with appropriate identification.

00410 Bid Form

BID FORM

Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements

TABLE OF ARTICLES

ARTICLE 1 – BID RECIPIENT

1.01 This Bid is submitted to:

City of Kyle City Hall at 100 West Center Street, Kyle, Texas 78640

1.02 The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees, if this Bid is accepted, to enter into an Agreement with Owner in the form included in the Bidding Documents to perform all Work as specified or indicated in the Bidding Documents for the prices and within the times indicated in this Bid and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.

ARTICLE 2 – BIDDER'S ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

2.01 Bidder accepts all of the terms and conditions of the Instructions to Bidders, including without limitation those dealing with the disposition of Bid security. This Bid will remain subject to acceptance for 60 days after the Bid opening, or for such longer period of time that Bidder may agree to in writing upon request of Owner.

ARTICLE 3 – BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

3.01 In submitting this Bid, Bidder represents that:

A. Bidder has examined and carefully studied the Bidding Documents, the other related data identified in the Bidding Documents, and the following Addenda, receipt of which is hereby acknowledged.

Addendum No.	Addendum Date

B. Bidder has visited the Site and become familiar with and is satisfied as to the general, local and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

C. Bidder is familiar with and is satisfied as to all federal, state and local Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress and performance of the Work.

D. Bidder has carefully studied all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or contiguous to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at or contiguous to the Site (except Underground Facilities) which have been identified in SC-4.02.

E. Bidder has obtained and carefully studied (or accepts the consequences for not doing so) all additional or supplementary examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies and data concerning conditions (surface, subsurface and Underground Facilities) at or contiguous to the Site which may affect cost, progress, or performance of the Work or which relate to any aspect of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Bidder, including applying the specific means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction expressly required by the Bidding Documents to be employed by Bidder, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto.

F. Bidder does not consider that any further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the determination of this Bid for performance of the Work at the price(s) bid and within the times and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.

G. Bidder is aware of the general nature of work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Bidding Documents.

H. Bidder has correlated the information known to Bidder, information and observations obtained from visits to the Site, reports and drawings identified in the Bidding Documents, and all additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data with the Bidding Documents.

I. Bidder has given Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Bidder has discovered in the Bidding Documents, and the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Bidder.

J. The Bidding Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for the performance of the Work for which this Bid is submitted.

K. Bidder will submit written evidence of its authority to do business in the state where the Project is located not later than the date of its execution of the Agreement.

ARTICLE 4 – FURTHER REPRESENTATIONS

4.01 Bidder further represents that:

A. this Bid is genuine and not made in the interest of or on behalf of any undisclosed individual or entity and is not submitted in conformity with any agreement or rules of any group, association, organization or corporation;

B. Bidder has not directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other Bidder to submit a false or sham Bid;

C. Bidder has not solicited or induced any individual or entity to refrain from bidding; and

D. Bidder has not sought by collusion to obtain for itself any advantage over any other Bidder or over Owner.

ARTICLE 5 – BASIS OF BID

5.01 Bid includes all items necessary to construct the ~~roadway, drainage, illumination, and water line and~~ waste water line improvements per the plans. The Sum of the Base Bid will be used in awarding Contract. The Sums for Add Alternate 1, Add Alternate 2, and Add Alternate 3 will not be considered in determination of low bid selection. Award of contract does not constitute approval of bid alternates; bid alternates will be separately approved and awarded to contractor. Owner has the right to award any one or none of the alternate bids submitted in addition to the base bid. Bidder will complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents for the following price(s):

CITY OF KYLE
SCHLEMMER AND PORTER STREET, PHASE 2 WASTEWATER IMPROVEMENTS
Schedule of Bid Items

Item No.	Spec No.	Quantity	Unit	Description (with unit price in words)	Unit Price	Total Price
BID SCHEDULE: BASE BID						
1.01	TxDOT 247	114	SY	GRAVEL REPAIR (6" TX247 TYPE A GRADE 2) at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per square yard	$	$
1.02	340S-B	1,083	SY	SAWCUT/REMOVE/REPLACE EXIST ASPHALT PAVING & BASE (2" TX340 TYPE D) at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per square yard	$	$
1.03	TxDOT 360	31	SY	SAWCUT/REMOVE/REPLACE EXIST CONCRETE PAVEMENT (6" TX360 CL P) at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per square yard	$	$
1.04	COA 506S	6	EA	STD PRECAST MANH W/ PRECAST BS, 48" DIA at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per each	$	$
1.05	506S D 60	1	EA	STD PRECAST DROP MANH INCL DROP ASSEMBLY ON PRECAST BS, 60" DIA at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per each	$	$
1.06	506S M1 48	1	EA	STD PRECAST MANH W/ CIP BS, 48" DIA at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per each	$	$
1.07	506S EDM 60	6.9	VF	EXTRA DEPTH OF MANHOLE (OVER 8' DEPTH), 60-IN DIA at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per vertical foot	$	$
1.08	506S EDM 48	23.6	VF	EXTRA DEPTH OF MANHOLE (OVER 8' DEPTH), 48-IN DIA at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per vertical foot	$	$
1.09	506S AB	4	EA	ABANDON EXISTING MANHOLES at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per each	$	$
1.10	506S-PWW	7	EA	SEWER PLUG (ALL SIZES) at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per each	$	$
1.11	506S ID	1	EA	INSTALLATION OF DROP CONNECTION FOR EX WWMH 105 at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per each	$	$
1.12	509S	1,644	LF	TRENCH EXCAVATION SAFETY PROTECTION SYSTEMS (ALL DEPTHS) at ____ Dollars and ____ Cents per linear foot	$	$

CITY OF KYLE
SCHLEMMER AND PORTER STREET, PHASE 2 WASTEWATER IMPROVEMENTS
Schedule of Bid Items

Item No.	Spec No.	Quantity	Unit	Description (with unit price in words)		Unit Price	Total Price
BID SCHEDULE: BASE BID							
1.13	510-AWW:8 Dia	648	LF	PIPE, 8 IN DIA PVC SDR26 D3034 (ALL DEPTHS), INCLUDING EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.14	510-AWW: 12 Dia	737	LF	PIPE, 12 IN DIA PVC SDR26 D3034 (ALL DEPTHS), INCLUDING EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.15	510-AWWRJ: 12 Dia	117	LF	RESTRAINED PIPE, 12 IN DIA PVC SDR26 D3034 (THROUGH CASING)			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.16	510-BWW 6 Dia	13	EA	SHORT SIDE SEWER SERVICE RECONNECTIONS			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per each			
1.17	510-DSWW	1	EA	SHORT SIDE DUAL SEWER SERVICE RECONNECTIONS			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per each			
1.18	510-BWW 6 Dia	12	EA	LONG SIDE SEWER SERVICE RECONNECTIONS			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per each			
1.19	510-VIDEO	1,502	LF	SEWER MAIN POST-CONSTRUCTION TV INSPECTION			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.20	510-ABWW	1,777	LF	ABANDON WWL (8")			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.21	510S CN	1	EA	CONNECT TO EXISTING WASTEWATER MANHOLE			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per each			
1.22	510-ELWW	266	LF	EXTRA LENGTH OF SEWER SERVICE (6 in)			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.23	510-BWW 6 Dia	1	EA	LONG SIDE DUAL SEWER SERVICE RECONNECTIONS			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per each			
1.24	604S-D	1,375	SY	TOPSOIL, BROADCAST SEEDING, AND VEGETATIVE WATERING			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per square yard			

CITY OF KYLE

SCHLEMMER AND PORTER STREET, PHASE 2 WASTEWATER IMPROVEMENTS

Schedule of Bid Items

Item No.	Spec No.	Quantity	Unit	Description (with unit price in words)		Unit Price	Total Price
BID SCHEDULE: BASE BID							
1.25	642S	696	LF	SILT FENCE (INSTALL, MAINTAIN AND REMOVE)			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.26	700S-TM	1	LS	MOBILIZATION, BONDS & INSURANCE			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per lump sum			
1.27	702S-D	16	LF	REMOVE AND REPLACE FENCE (WOOD)			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per linear foot			
1.28	803S-MO	4	MO	BARRICADES, SIGNS, AND TRAFFIC HANDLING			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per monthly			
1.29	02726	1	LS	ABANDON LIFT STATION			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per lump sum			
1.30	02960	16	CD	BYPASS PUMPING			
				at	Dollars		
				and	Cents	$	$
				per calendar day			
				Total Base Bid Schedule All Bid Items (Words and Figures):			
					Dollars		
					Cents		$

Notes:

1. It is understood the quantities of work to be done at unit prices are approximate and are intended for bidding purposes only. Amounts are to be shown in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy the amount shown in words shall govern.
2. Prices shall be provided for the base bid. Bidders that fail to provide prices for each item or enter "no bid" for an item shall be considered non-
3. Reference is hereby made to the Measurement and Payment Section of the Technical Specifications for further descriptions of all Bid Schedule
4. Contractor shall properly dispose of all excavated material off-site at no additional expense to the Owner
5. The BIDDER must acknowledge and sign all Addendums. The acceptance of all Addendums is the Contractor's acceptance of the site conditions as is. Change Orders will only be considered for Unforeseen Conditions deemed acceptable by the Owner.
6. Bidder must furnish and install products named in the Contract Documents and Specifications, and must disclose any proposed equivalent substitutions in its Bid - which will be subject to acceptance by the Engineer.
7. 2 Year Warranty Period for materials and workmanship is required by Contractor.
8. Owner reserves the right to reject total of Bid Schedules for the Contract.
9. ***All earthwork shall follow the recommendations of the Geotechnical Reports Arias Geoprofessionals August 2014 and Terracon October 2022***

Bidder acknowledges that estimated quantities are not guaranteed, and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids, and final payment for all Unit Price Bid items will be based on actual quantities, determined as provided in the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 6 – TIME OF COMPLETION

6.01 Bidder agrees that the Work will be substantially complete in accordance with Paragraph 14.04 and will be finally complete and ready for final payment in accordance with Paragraph 14.07.B of the General Conditions on or before the dates or within the number of calendar days indicated in the Agreement.

ARTICLE 7 – ATTACHMENTS TO THIS BID

7.01 The following documents are attached to and made a condition of this Bid:

A. Bid security;

B. complete responses to information required in Bid;

C. the entire Bid with all blanks filled in completely.

ARTICLE 8 – DEFINED TERMS

8.01 Not Used.

ARTICLE 9 – BID SUBMITTAL

9.01 This Bid submitted by:

Bidder (typed or printed): _____

By: _____
(Authorized Signature)

Title: _____

Date: _____

Business Address: _____

Telephone Number: _____

Fax Number: _____

E-Mail Address: _____

00430 Bid Bond

BID BOND

THE STATE OF TEXAS §
§ KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS:
COUNTY OF HAYS §

That _____ of the City of _____ County of _____ State of _____ as Principal, and _____ authorized under the laws of the State of Texas to act as surety on bonds for principals, are held and firmly bound unto the **CITY OF KYLE, TEXAS ("Owner"),** in the penal sum of five percent (5%) of the total amount of the Bid of the Principal submitted to the Owner, for the Work described below; for the payment whereof, well and truly to be made, and the said Principal and Surety do hereby bind themselves and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, as follows:

In no case shall the liability of the Surety hereunder exceed the sum of Dollars ($ _____ Dollars ($_____)

THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH that, whereas, the Principal has submitted the above-referenced Bid to the Owner, for construction of the Work under the "Specifications for Construction of **"Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements**" for which Bids are to be opened at the office of Owner on the **24th day of February, 2023.**

NOW, THEREFORE, if the Principal is awarded the Contract, and within the time and manner required under -the "Instructions to Bidders," after the prescribed forms are presented to her/him for signature, enters into a written Agreement substantially in the form contained in the Specifications, in accordance with the Bid, and files the two (2) bonds with the Owner, one to guarantee faithful performance and the other to guarantee payment for labor and materials, then this obligation shall be null and void; otherwise, it shall be and remain in full force and effect.

In the event that suit is brought upon this Bond by the Owner and judgment is recovered, said Surety shall pay all costs incurred by the Owner in such suit, including a reasonable attorney's fee to be fixed by the Court.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal and Surety have signed this instrument on this the _____ day of the month of _____20___.

_____	_____
Principal	Surety
By: _____	By: _____
Title: _____	Title:_____
Address: _____	Address: _____
_____	_____

Resident Agent of Surety:

_____
Signature

_____
Printed Name

_____
Street Address

_____
City, State, Zip

00451 Qualification Statement

QUALIFICATIONS STATEMENT

THE INFORMATION SUPPLIED IN THIS DOCUMENT IS CONFIDENTIAL TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAWS AND REGULATIONS

1. SUBMITTED BY:

Official Name of Firm: _____

Address: _____

_____

_____

2. SUBMITTED TO: _____

3. SUBMITTED FOR: _____

Owner: _____

Project Name: _____

_____

_____

_____

TYPE OF WORK: _____

_____

_____

4. CONTRACTOR'S CONTACT INFORMATION

Contact Person: _____

Title: _____

Phone: _____

Email: _____

5. AFFILIATED COMPANIES:

Name: _____

Address: _____

_____

_____

6. TYPE OF ORGANIZATION:

☐ **SOLE PROPRIETORSHIP**

Name of Owner: _____

Doing Business As: _____

Date of Organization: _____

☐ **PARTNERSHIP**

Date of Organization: _____

Type of Partnership: _____

☐ **CORPORATION**

State of Organization: _____

Date of Organization: _____

☐ **LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY**

State of Organization: _____

Date of Organization: _____

☐ **JOINT VENTURE**

Sate of Organization: _____

Date of Organization: _____

Form of Organization: _____

7. CERTIFICATIONS CERTIFIED BY:

Disadvantage Business Enterprise: _____

Minority Business Enterprise: _____

Woman Owned Enterprise: _____

Small Business Enterprise: _____

Other (_____): _____

8. BONDING INFORMATION

Bonding Company: _____

Address: _____

_____

Bonding Agent: _____

Address: _____

_____

_____

Contact Name: _____

Phone: _____

9. CONSTRUCTION EXPERIENCE:

Current Experience:

List on **Schedule A** all uncompleted projects currently under contract (If Joint Venture list each participant's projects separately).

Previous Experience:

List on **Schedule B** all projects completed within the last 5 Years (If Joint Venture list each participant's projects separately).

I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THE INFORMATION SUBMITTED HEREWITH, INCLUDING ANY ATTACHMENTS, IS TRUE TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE AND BELIEF.

NAME OF ORGANIZATION: _____

BY: _____

TITLE: _____

DATED: _____

REQUIRED ATTACHMENTS

1. Schedule A (Current Experience).
2. Schedule B (Previous Experience).

CURRENT EXPERIENCE

SCHEDULE A

Project Name	Owner's Contact Person	Design Engineer	Contract Date	Type of Work	Status	Cost of Work
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				

PREVIOUS EXPERIENCE (Include ALL Projects Completed within last 5 years)

SCHEDULE B

Project Name	Owner's Contact Person	Design Engineer	Contract Date	Type of Work	Status	Cost of Work
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				

PREVIOUS EXPERIENCE (Include ALL Projects Completed within last 5 years)

SCHEDULE B

Project Name	Owner's Contact Person	Design Engineer	Contract Date	Type of Work	Status	Cost of Work
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				

00520 Agreement

AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR FOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

THIS AGREEMENT is by and between City of Kyle, Texas ("Owner") and

("Contractor").

Owner and Contractor, in consideration of the mutual covenants hereinafter set forth, agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1 – WORK

1.01 Contractor shall complete all Work as specified or indicated in the Contract Documents. The Work is generally described as follows:

Construction of approximately 850 linear feet of 12-inch sanitary sewer lines and 640 linear feet of 8-inch sanitary sewer lines, 7 – 48-inch sanitary manholes, 1 – 60-inch sanitary manholes, abandonment of existing wastewater lines/manholes, surface repairs and all Extra Work in connection therewith, under the terms as stated in the "Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contracts. At its own proper cost and expense to furnish all the materials, supplies, machinery, equipment, tools, superintendents, labor, insurance and other accessories and services necessary to complete the said construction, in accordance with the conditions and prices stated in the "Bid Form" attached hereto, and in accordance with the plans, which includes all maps, plats, blue prints and other drawings and printed explanatory matter thereof, and the specifications thereof ("Plans and Specifications"), as prepared by:

LJA Engineering, Inc.
5316 Highway 260 West
Suite 150
Austin, Texas 78735

Herein titled the Engineer, each of which has been identified by the endorsement of the Contractor and the Engineer, thereon, together with the Contractor's written proposal, the Supplementary Conditions, the Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contracts, the Performance and Payment Bonds hereto attached, and the technical specifications, all of which are made a part hereof and collectively evidence and constitute the entire contract.

1.02 The Project for which the Work under the Contract Documents may be the whole or only a part is generally described as follows:

Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements

ARTICLE 2 – NOT USED

ARTICLE 3 – ENGINEER

3.01 The Project has been designed by LJA Engineering, Inc. (Engineer).

ARTICLE 4 – CONTRACT TIMES

4.01 *Time of the Essence*

A. All time limits for Milestones, if any, Substantial Completion, and completion and readiness for final payment as stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. The Contractor hereby agrees to commence the Work upon receipt of written Notice to Proceed from the Owner, and to complete the work with the time deadlines described in Paragraph 4.02 of this section.

4.02 *Days to Achieve Substantial Completion and Final Payment*

A. The Work will be substantially completed and placed in service in accordance with Paragraph 14.04 of the General Conditions within 120 calendar days after the date when the Contract Times commence to run.

B. The Work will be finally completed and ready for final payment in accordance with Paragraph 14.07 of the General Conditions within 150 calendar days after the date when the Contract Times commence to run.

4.03 *Liquidated Damages*

A. Contractor and Owner recognize that time is of the essence of this Agreement and that Owner will suffer financial loss if the Work is not completed within the times specified in Paragraph 4.02 above, plus any extensions thereof allowed in accordance with Article 12 of the General Conditions. The parties also recognize the delays, expense, and difficulties involved in proving in a legal or arbitration proceeding the actual loss suffered by Owner if the Work is not completed on time. Accordingly, instead of requiring any such proof, Owner and Contractor agree that as liquidated damages for delay (but not as a penalty), Contractor shall pay Owner $500.00 for each day that expires after the time specified in Paragraph 4.02 for Substantial Completion until the Work is substantially complete. After Substantial Completion, if Contractor shall neglect, refuse, or fail to complete the remaining Work within the Contract Time or any proper extension thereof granted by Owner, Contractor shall pay Owner $500.00 for each day that expires after the time specified in Paragraph 4.02 for completion and readiness for final payment until the Work is completed and ready for final payment.

ARTICLE 5 – CONTRACT PRICE

5.01 Owner shall pay Contractor for completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents an amount in current funds equal to the sum of the amounts determined pursuant to Paragraphs 5.01.A, 5.01.B, and 5.01.C below:

A. For all Work, at the prices stated in Contractor's Bid, attached hereto as an exhibit.

ARTICLE 6 – PAYMENT PROCEDURES

6.01 *Submittal and Processing of Payments*

A. Contractor shall submit Applications for Payment in accordance with Article 14 of the General Conditions. Applications for Payment will be processed by Engineer/Owner as provided in the General Conditions.

6.02 *Progress Payments; Retainage*

A. Owner shall make monthly progress payments on account of the Contract Price on the basis of Contractor's Applications for Payment submitted on or about 5 business days before the end of each month during performance of the Work as provided in Paragraphs 6.02.A.1 below. All such payments will be measured by the schedule of values established as provided in Paragraph 2.07.A of the General Conditions (and in the case of Unit Price Work based on the number of units completed) or, in the event there is no schedule of values, as provided

in the General Requirements:

1. Prior to Substantial Completion, progress payments will be made in an amount equal to the percentage indicated below but, in each case, less the aggregate of payments previously made and less such amounts as Engineer may determine or Owner may withhold, including but not limited to liquidated damages, in accordance with Paragraph 14.02 of the General Conditions:

    a. 95 percent of Work completed (with the balance being retainage).

6.03 *Final Payment*

A. Upon final completion and acceptance of the Work in accordance with Paragraph 14.07 of the General Conditions, Owner shall pay the remainder of the Contract Price as recommended by Engineer as provided in said Paragraph 14.07.

ARTICLE 7 – NOT USED

ARTICLE 8 – CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIONS

8.01 In order to induce Owner to enter into this Agreement Contractor makes the following representations:

A. Contractor has examined and carefully studied the Contract Documents and the other related data identified in the Bidding Documents.

B. Contractor has visited the Site and become familiar with and is satisfied as to the general, local, and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

C. Contractor is familiar with and is satisfied as to all federal, state, and local Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

D. Contractor has carefully studied all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or contiguous to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at or contiguous to the Site (except Underground Facilities) which have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions as provided in Paragraph 4.02 of the General Conditions.

E. Contractor has obtained and carefully studied (or assumes responsibility for doing so) all examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data concerning conditions (surface, subsurface, and Underground Facilities) at or contiguous to the Site which may affect cost, progress, or performance of the Work or which relate to any aspect of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Contractor, including any specific means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction expressly required by the Bidding Documents, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto.

F. Contractor does not consider that any further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the performance of the Work at the Contract Price, within the Contract Times, and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.

G. Contractor is aware of the general nature of work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Contract Documents.

H. Contractor has correlated the information known to Contractor, information and observations obtained from visits to the Site, reports and drawings identified in the Contract Documents, and all additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data with the Contract Documents.

I. Contractor has given Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Contractor has discovered in the Contract Documents, and the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Contractor.

J. The Contract Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for performance and furnishing of the Work.

ARTICLE 9 – CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

9.01 *Contents*

A. The Contract Documents consist of the following:

1. This Agreement
2. Performance bond
3. Payment bond
4. Bid bond
5. General Conditions
6. Supplementary Conditions
7. Specifications as listed in the table of contents of the Project Manual.
8. Drawings consisting of 21 sheets with each sheet bearing the following general title: Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements.
9. Addenda
10. Exhibits to this Agreement (enumerated as follows):
    a. Contractor's Bid
    b. Documentation submitted by Contractor prior to Notice of Award
11. The following which may be delivered or issued on or after the Effective Date of the Agreement and are not attached hereto:
    a. Notice to Proceed
    b. Work Change Directives
    c. Change Order(s)

B. The documents listed in Paragraph 9.01.A are attached to this Agreement (except as expressly noted otherwise above).

C. There are no Contract Documents other than those listed above in this Article 9.

D. The Contract Documents may only be amended, modified, or supplemented as provided in Paragraph 3.04 of the

General Conditions.

ARTICLE 10 – MISCELLANEOUS

10.01 *Terms*

A. Terms used in this Agreement will have the meanings stated in the General Conditions and the Supplementary Conditions.

10.02 *Assignment of Contract*

A. No assignment by a party hereto of any rights under or interests in the Contract will be binding on another party hereto without the written consent of the party sought to be bound; and, specifically but without limitation, moneys that may become due and moneys that are due may not be assigned without such consent (except to the extent that the effect of this restriction may be limited by law), and unless specifically stated to the contrary in any written consent to an assignment, no assignment will release or discharge the assignor from any duty or responsibility under the Contract Documents.

10.03 *Successors and Assigns*

A. Owner and Contractor each binds itself, its partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to the other party hereto, its partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives in respect to all covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents.

10.04 *Severability*

A. Any provision or part of the Contract Documents held to be void or unenforceable under any Law or Regulation shall be deemed stricken, and all remaining provisions shall continue to be valid and binding upon Owner and Contractor, who agree that the Contract Documents shall be reformed to replace such stricken provision or part thereof with a valid and enforceable provision that comes as close as possible to expressing the intention of the stricken provision.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, Owner and Contractor have signed this Agreement in duplicate. One counterpart each has been delivered to Owner and Contractor. All portions of the Contract Documents have been signed or identified by Owner and Contractor or on their behalf.

This Agreement will be effective on _____ (which is the Effective Date of the Agreement).

OWNER:	CONTRACTOR
City of Kyle, Texas	
By: R. Travis Mitchell	By:
Title: Mayor	Title:
Attest:	Attest:
Title:	Title:
Address for giving notices:	Address for giving notices:
	License No.: (Where applicable)
	Agent for service of process:
	(If Contractor is a corporation or a partnership, attach evidence of authority to sign.)

NA Notice of Award

NOTICE OF AWARD

To: _____

_____

_____

Project Description: The Schlemmer & Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements project includes sanitary sewer, manholes and surface repairs along Schlemmer & North Front St.

The OWNER has considered the BID submitted by you for the described WORK in response to its Advertisement for Bids dated _____, and Information for BIDDERS.

You are hereby notified that your BID has been accepted for items in the amount of **$** _____ **.**

You are required by the Instructions to BIDDERS to execute the Agreement and furnish the required CONTRACTOR'S Performance Bond, Payment Bond and Agreement within ten (10) calendar days from the date of this notice to you.

If you fail to execute said Agreement and to furnish said BONDS within ten (10) calendar days from the date of this Notice, said OWNER will be entitled to consider all your rights arising out of the OWNER'S acceptance of your BID BOND. The OWNER will be entitled to such other rights as may be granted by law.

You are required to return, as acknowledged, a copy of the NOTICE OF AWARD to the OWNER.

Dated this _____ day of _____ 20___.

City of Kyle _____
Owner

By: _____

Title: _____

ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICE

Receipt of the above NOTICE OF AWARD is hereby acknowledged

by _____

this the _____ day of _____, 20_____

By _____

Title _____

NP Notice to Proceed

NOTICE TO PROCEED

To: _____ Date: _____

_____ Project: Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2

_____ Wastewater Improvements Project

TO CONTRACTOR:

Owner hereby notifies Contractor that the Contract Times under the above Contract will commence to run on [_____, 20____]. [see Paragraph 4.01 of the General Conditions]

On that date, Contractor shall start performing its obligations under the Contract Documents. No Work shall be done at the Site prior to such date. In accordance with the Agreement, [the date of Substantial Completion is _____, 20____, and the date of readiness for final payment is _____ _____, 20____] or [the number of days to achieve Substantial Completion is _____, and the number of days to achieve readiness for final payment is _____].

City of Kyle
Owner

By: _____

Title: City Engineer

ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICE

Receipt of the above NOTICE TO PROCEED is hereby acknowledged

by _____

this the _____ day of _____, 20_____

By: _____

Title: _____

00610 Performance Bond

PERFORMANCE BOND

THE STATE OF TEXAS **§** **BOND NO.** _____

COUNTY OF _____ **§**

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS, THAT :
_____ of the City of_____,County of _____,
and State of _____, as PRINCIPAL, and _____, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of _____ and authorized under the laws of the State of Texas to act as SURETY on bonds for PRINCIPALS, are held and firmly bound unto the _____ _____ (OWNER), in the penal sum of

_____Dollars ($_____)
(Insert written amount = 100% of the cost of the improvements inspected)

for the payment whereof, the said PRINCIPAL and SURETY bind themselves and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents:

WHEREAS, the PRINCIPAL has entered into a certain written Contract with the OWNER, dated the _____ day of _____, 20_____ to which Contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH, that if the said PRINCIPAL shall faithfully perform the work in accordance with the plans, specifications and under said Contract and shall in all respects duly and faithfully observe ad perform all and singular the covenants, conditions and agreements in and by said Contract agreed and covenanted by the PRINCIPAL to be observed and performed, and according to the true intent and meaning of said Contract and the Plans and Specifications thereto annexed, and shall fully indemnify and save the OWNER harmless from any loss, cost or damage by reason of PRINCIPAL's failure to complete the work then this obligation shall be void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect;

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Texas Gov. 2253 as amended and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Article to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein.

In the event that the OWNER declares the PRINCIPAL in default under the Contract, the Surety will, within fifteen days of the OWNER'S declaration of such default, at OWNER'S election either: 1) take over and assume completion of said Contract and shall faithfully construct and complete said Contract in a good and workmanlike manner in accordance with the original schedule for completion, the approved Plans and Specifications, or 2) allow OWNER to draw on any part or all of the total amount of this bond by submitting a written request for a draw from the OWNER'S Public Works Director or designee to SURETY'S Attorney-in fact. Conditioned upon the Surety's faithful performance of its obligation, the liability of the Surety for the Principal's default shall not exceed the penalty of this bond.

The Surety agrees to pay the OWNER upon demand all loss and expense, including attorneys' fees, incurred by the OWNER by reason of or on account of any breach of this obligation by the Surety. Provided further, that in any legal action be filed upon this bond, venue shall lie in the county where the work is to be

constructed.

This Bond is a continuing obligation and shall remain in full force and effect until cancelled as provided for herein. This Bond may be cancelled upon Surety's receipt of written notice of cancellation by the OWNER stating that the Contract has been completed and accepted by OWNER.

SURETY, for value received, stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract, or to the work performed thereunder, or the Plans, specifications or drawings accompanying the same, shall in any way affect its obligation on this bond, and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract, or to the work to be performed thereunder.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said PRINCIPAL and SURETY have signed and sealed this instrument this _____ day of _____, 20_____.

_____	_____
Principal	Surety
By: _____	By: _____
Name: _____	Name: _____
Title: _____	Title: _____
Address: _____	Address: _____
_____	_____
_____	_____

The name and address of the Resident Agent of Surety is:

_____

_____

_____

(Seal)

00615 Payment Bond

PAYMENT BOND

Bond No. _____
Premium $_____

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that _____(Contractor), City of _____, County of _____, and State of _____, hereinafter referred to as the Principal, and _____ a corporation organized and existing under the laws of _____ and authorized under the laws of the State of Texas to act as Surety on bonds for Principal, are held and firmly bound unto City _____ _____, Texas as Obligee, in the penal sum of

_____($_____) DOLLARS,
(Insert written amount = 100% of the cost of the improvements inspected)

lawful money of the United States of America, for the payment of which well and truly to be made, the said Principals and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the PRINCIPAL has entered into a certain written Contract with the OWNER for the following project:_____, dated the _____ day of _____ _____, 20_____ to which Contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH, that if the said Principals shall pay all claimants supplying labor and material to him or a subcontractor in the prosecution of the project, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

In the event that either Principal fails to promptly pay when due persons who have supplied labor, materials, or supplies used in the prosecution of the project, the Surety will, upon receipt of notice from the Obligee or a claim in the form required by law, satisfy all undisputed balances due, and make arrangements satisfactory to the interested parties to resolve all amounts disputed in good faith, but in no event shall the liability for the Surety for the Principal's failure to promptly pay for labor, materials, or supplies exceed the penalty of this bond.

The Surety agrees to pay the Obligee upon demand all loss and expense, including attorneys' fees, incurred by the Obligee by reason of or on account of any breach of this obligation by the Surety. Provided further, that in any legal action be filed upon this bond, venue shall lie in the county where the project is to be constructed.

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Texas Government Code Chapter 2253 as amended and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Chapter to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein. This bond is made and entered for the protection of all claimants supplying labor and material in the prosecution of the project, and all such claimants shall have a direct right of action under the bond as provided in Section 2253.021, Texas Government Code, as amended. If any legal action is filed upon this bond, venue shall be in the county where the said project is to be constructed.

SURETY, for value received, stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract, or to the work performed thereunder, or the Plans, specifications or drawings accompanying the same, shall in any way affect its obligation on this bond, and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract, or to the work to be performed thereunder.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said PRINCIPAL and SURETY have signed and sealed this instrument this _____day of _____, 20_____.

_____	_____
Principal	Surety
By _____	By_____
Name _____	Name _____
Title _____	Title _____
Address_____	Address_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

The name and address of the Resident Agent of Surety is:

_____

_____

_____

(Seal)

WB Warranty Bond

WARRANTY BOND

Warranty Bond for

Schlemmer and Porter Street. Phase 2 Wastewater Improvements Project

Date: _____

OBLIGEE:
City of Kyle
100 W. Center Street
Kyle, TX 78640
(512) 262-1010

PRINCIPAL:
Name: _____
Address: _____
_____
Phone: _(_____)_____

SURETY:
Name: _____
Address: _____
_____
Phone: _(_____)_____

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS,

That we _____ as Principal, and _____, a Corporation of the State of _____, authorized to write Surety Bonds in the State of Texas, as Surety, are jointly and severally held and firmly bound unto the City of Kyle, Texas as Obligee, in the Penal Sum of

_____($__)

(Insert written amount = 10% of the cost of the improvements inspected)

which payment well and truly to be made we do bind ourselves, our and each of our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the said Principal has constructed, or caused to be constructed the following public infrastructure ("Improvements") in accordance with the approved construction plans:

850 linear feet of 12-inch sanitary sewer lines and 640 linear feet of 8-inch sanitary sewer lines, 48-inch sanitary manholes, 60-inch sanitary manholes, abandonment of existing wastewater lines/manholes and surface repairs.

(Legal Description and items to be warranted [i.e. Streets, Drainage, Water, Wastewater, etc.])

WHEREAS, the City of Kyle requires the Principal to furnish a Warranty Bond in the amount of 100% of the cost of the Improvements guarantying all workmanship and materials used to construct the Improvements are free from any defect for a (1) one years period beginning at the date of acceptance. The Warranty Bond guarantees that the Principal will repair, or cause to be repaired, to the original condition at acceptance for (1) one year from the date of acceptance by the City of Kyle ("Warranty Period"), all defects in workmanship and material including any deterioration resulting from any defects in workmanship and materials of the Improvements, which may become apparent during the Warranty Period.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION ARE SUCH that, if the Contractor shall promptly and faithfully perform as herein above provided, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise, it shall remain in full force and effect.

WHENEVER the Contractor shall be and declared by the Owner to be in default under aforesaid agreement to maintain and keep in repair, the Sureties shall promptly remedy the default or be responsible to the Owners for having performed Contractor's obligation thereunder.

Signed, sealed and dated this _____ day of _____, 20_____.

PRINCIPAL:

Date: _____ By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

SURETY:

Date: _____ By: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

00700 Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contract

Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of the Contract

GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT

Section 00700

General Conditions Table of Contents

ARTICLE 1 – DEFINITIONS

Whenever used in these General Conditions or in the other Contract Documents the following terms have the meanings indicated which are applicable to both the singular and plural thereof:

1.1 Addendum - Written instruments issued by the Contract Awarding Authority which clarify, correct or change the bidding requirements or the Contract Documents prior to the Due Date. "Addenda" is the plural form of Addendum.

1.2 Agreement - Prescribed form, Section 00500.

1.3 Alternative Dispute Resolution - The process by which a disputed Claim may be settled if the OWNER and the CONTRACTOR cannot reach an agreement between themselves, as an alternative to litigation.

1.4 Bid - A complete, properly signed response to an Invitation for Bid that, if accepted, would bind the Bidder to perform the resultant Contract.

1.5 Bidder - A person, firm, or entity that submits a Bid in response to a Solicitation. Any Bidder may be represented by an agent after submitting evidence demonstrating the agent's authority. The agent cannot certify as to his own agency status.

1.6 Bid Documents - The advertisement or Invitation for Bids, instructions to Bidders, the Bid form, the Contract Documents and Addenda.

1.7 Calendar Day - Any day of the week; no days being excepted. Work on Saturdays, Sundays, and/or Legal Holidays shall be coordinated with OWNER.

1.8 Change Directive - A written directive to CONTRACTOR, signed by OWNER, ordering a change in the Work and stating a proposed basis for adjustment, if any, in the Contract Amount or Contract Time, or both. A Change Directive may be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order. A Change Directive does not change the Contract Amount or Contract Time, but is evidence that the parties expect that the change directed or documented by a Change Directive will be incorporated in a subsequently issued Change Order.

1.9 Change Orders - Written agreements entered into between CONTRACTOR and OWNER authorizing an addition, deletion, or revision to the Contract, issued on or after the Execution Date of the Agreement.

1.10 Claim - A written demand seeking, as a matter of right, adjustment or interpretation of Contract terms, payment of money, extension of time or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract.

1.11 Contract - The binding legal agreement between the OWNER and the CONTRACTOR. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between OWNER and CONTRACTOR for performance of the Work, as evidenced by the Contract Documents.

1.12 Contract Amount - The moneys payable by OWNER to CONTRACTOR for completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.13 Contract Awarding Authority - A City department authorized to enter into Contracts on behalf of the City.

1.14 Contract Documents - Project Manual, Drawings, Addenda and Change Orders.

1.15 Contract Time - The number of days allowed for completion of the Work as defined by the Contract. When any period is referred to in days, it will be computed to exclude the first and include the last day of such period. A day of twenty-four hours measured from midnight to the next midnight will constitute a day.

1.16 CONTRACTOR - The individual, firm, corporation, or other business entity with whom OWNER has entered into the Contract for performance of the Work.

1.17 Critical Path - The longest series of tasks that runs consecutively from the beginning to the end of the project, as determined by duration and workflow sequence. This longest path sets the managerial standard for how quickly a project can be completed, given appropriate resources.

1.18 Drawings - Those portions of the Contract Documents which are graphic representations of the scope, extent and character of the Work to be furnished and performed by CONTRACTOR and which have been approved by OWNER. Drawings may include plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams. Shop Drawings are not Drawings as so defined.

1.19 Due Date - The date and time specified for receipt of Bids.

1.20 Engineer/Architect (E/A) - The OWNER's design professional identified as such in the Contract. The titles of "Architect/Engineer," "Architect" and "Engineer" used in the Contract Documents shall read the same as Engineer/Architect (E/A). Nothing contained in the Contract Documents shall create any contractual or agency relationship between E/A and CONTRACTOR.

1.21 Equal - The terms "equal" or "approved equal" shall have the same meaning.

1.22 Execution Date - Date of last signature of the parties to the Agreement.

1.23 Field Order - A written order issued by Owner's Representative which orders minor changes in the Work and which does not involve a change in the Contract Amount or the Contract Time.

1.24 Final Completion - The point in time when OWNER determines that all Work has been completed and final payment to CONTRACTOR will be made in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.25 Force Account - a basis of payment for the direct performance of Work with payment based on the actual cost of the labor, equipment and materials furnished and consideration for overhead and profit as set forth in Section 11.5.

1.26 Inspector - The authorized representative of any regulatory agency that has jurisdiction over any portion of the Work.

1.27 Invitation for Bid (IFB) - a Solicitation requesting pricing for a specified Good or Service which has been advertised for Bid in a newspaper and/or the Internet.

1.28 Legal Holidays

1.28.1 The following are recognized by the OWNER:

Holiday	Date Observed
New Year's Day	January 1
Martin Luther King, Jr.'s Birthday	Third Monday in January
President's Day	Third Monday in February
Memorial Day	Last Monday in May
Juneteenth	June 19
Independence Day	July 4
Labor Day	First Monday in September
Indigenous Peoples' Day	Second Monday in October
Veteran's Day	November 11
Thanksgiving Day	Fourth Thursday in November
Friday after Thanksgiving	Friday after Thanksgiving

Christmas Eve	December 24
Christmas Day	December 25

1.28.2 If a Legal Holiday falls on Saturday, it will be observed on the preceding Friday. If a Legal Holiday falls on Sunday, it will be observed on the following Monday.

1.29 Milestones - A significant event specified in the Contract Documents relating to an intermediate completion date or time prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work.

1.30 Notice to Proceed - A Written Notice given by OWNER to CONTRACTOR fixing the date on which the Contract Times will commence to run and on which CONTRACTOR shall start to perform CONTRACTOR's obligations under the Contract Documents.

1.31 OWNER - City of Kyle, Texas, a municipal corporation, home rule city and political subdivision organized and existing under the laws of the State of Texas, acting through the City Manager or his/her designee, officers, agents or employees to administer design and construction of the Project.

1.32 Owner's Representative - The designated representative of the OWNER. The Owner's Representative will be identified at the pre-construction conference.

1.33 Partial Occupancy or Use - Use by OWNER of a substantially completed part of the Work for the purpose for which it is intended (or a related purpose) prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work, provided OWNER and CONTRACTOR have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage if any, security, maintenance, utilities, corrective work, insurance and warranties.

1.34 Project - The subject of the Work and its intended result.

1.35 Project Manual - That portion of the Contract Documents which may include the following: introductory information; bidding requirements, Contract forms and General and Supplemental General Conditions; General Requirements; Specifications; Drawings; MBE/WBE or DBE Procurement Program Package; Project Safety Manual; and Addenda.

1.36 Resident Project Representative - The authorized representative of E/A who may be assigned to the site or any part thereof.

1.37 Shop Drawings - All drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules and other data or information which are specifically prepared or assembled by or for CONTRACTOR and submitted by CONTRACTOR as required by the Contract Documents.

1.38 Specifications - Those portions of the Contract Documents consisting of written technical descriptions as applied to the Work, which set forth to CONTRACTOR, in detail, the requirements which must be met by all materials, equipment, construction systems, standards, workmanship, equipment and services in order to render a completed and useful project.

1.39 Solicitation - Solicitation means, as applicable, an Invitation for Bid or a Request for Proposal.

1.40 Substantial Completion - The stage in the progress of the Work when the Work, or designated portion thereof, is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so OWNER can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use, as evidenced by a Certificate of Substantial Completion approved by OWNER.

1.41 Subcontractor - An individual, firm, corporation, or other business entity having a direct contract with CONTRACTOR for the performance of a portion of the Work under the Contract.

1.42 Sub-Subcontractor - A person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the work.

1.43 Superintendent - The representative of CONTRACTOR authorized in writing to receive and fulfill instructions from the Owner's Representative, and who shall supervise and direct construction of the Work.

1.44 Supplemental General Conditions - The part of the Contract Documents which amends or supplements the General Conditions. All General Conditions which are not so amended or supplemented remain in full force and effect.

1.45 Supplier - An individual or entity having a direct contract with CONTRACTOR or with any Subcontractor to furnish materials or equipment to be incorporated in the Work by CONTRACTOR or any Subcontractor.

1.46 Time Extension Request - An approved request for time extension on a form acceptable to OWNER.

1.47 Work - The entire completed construction, or the various separately identifiable parts thereof, required to be furnished under the Contract Documents.

1.48 Working Day - Any day of the week, not including Saturdays, Sundays, or Legal Holidays in which conditions under the CONTRACTOR's control will permit work for a continuous period of not less than seven (7) hours between 7:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m. If other contract documents reduce the continuous period available for work to less than seven (7) hours, those reduced hours shall be considered a Working Day. Upon agreement with Owner's Representative, work on Saturdays, Sundays, and/or Legal Holidays may be allowed and will be considered a Working Day.

1.49 Working Hours

1.49.1 Working Day Contract: All Work shall be done between 7:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m. unless otherwise authorized by Owner's Representative. However, emergency work may be done without prior permission as indicated in paragraph 6.11.5. If night Work is authorized and conditions under CONTRACTOR's control will permit Work for a continuous period of not less than seven (7) hours between 12:00 a.m. and 11:59 p.m. it will be considered a Working Day. Night Work may be revoked at any time by OWNER if CONTRACTOR fails to maintain adequate equipment and supervision for the prosecution and control of the night Work.

1.49.2 Calendar Day Contract: All Work shall be done between 7:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m. unless authorized by Owner’s Representative. However, emergency work may be done without prior permission as indicated in paragraph 6.11.5. Night Work may be revoked at any time by OWNER if CONTRACTOR fails to maintain adequate equipment and supervision for the prosecution and control of the night Work.

1.50 Written Notice - Written communication between OWNER and CONTRACTOR. Written Notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to Owner's Representative or CONTRACTOR's duly authorized representative, or if delivered at or sent by registered or certified mail to the attention of Owner's Representative or CONTRACTOR's duly authorized representative at the last business address known to the party giving notice.

ARTICLE 2 - PRELIMINARY MATTERS

2.1 Delivery of Agreement, Bonds, Insurance, etc.: Within five (5) Working Days after written notification of award of Contract, CONTRACTOR shall deliver to OWNER signed Agreement, Bond(s), Insurance Certificate(s) and other documentation required for execution of Contract.

2.2 Copies of Documents: OWNER shall furnish to CONTRACTOR (1) copy of the executed Project Manual, one (1) set of Drawings and one (1) copy of the Contract Documents in .pdf format. Additional copies will be furnished, upon request, at the cost specified in the Supplemental General Conditions."

2.3 Commencement of Contract Times; Notice to Proceed: The Contract Time(s) will begin to run on the day indicated in the Notice to Proceed. Notice to Proceed will be given at any time within sixty (60) calendar days after the Execution Date of the Agreement, unless extended by written agreement of the parties.

2.4 Before Starting Construction:

2.4.1 No Work shall be done at the site prior to the preconstruction conference without OWNER's approval. Before undertaking each part of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall carefully study the Contract Documents to check and verify pertinent figures shown thereon compare accurately to all applicable field measurements. CONTRACTOR shall promptly report in writing to Owner's Representative any conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy which CONTRACTOR may discover and shall obtain a written interpretation or clarification from Owner's Representative before proceeding with any Work affected thereby. CONTRACTOR shall be liable to OWNER for failure to report any conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy in the Contract Documents of which CONTRACTOR knew or reasonably should have known.

2.4.2 It is mutually agreed between CONTRACTOR and OWNER that successful completion of the Work within the Contract completion date is of primary importance. Therefore, the CONTRACTOR hereby agrees to submit to the Owner's Representative for review and approval, or acceptance, as appropriate, all information requested within this section, including a Baseline Schedule, no later than five working days prior to the preconstruction conference. The Owner's Representative will schedule the preconstruction conference upon the timely submittal of the required documents, unless time is extended by written mutual agreement. CONTRACTOR will submit the following:

.1 A proposed Baseline Schedule developed using Microsoft Project software, unless otherwise approved by Owner's Representative ("Baseline Schedule") to confirm that all Work will be completed within the Contract time. The Baseline Schedule must (i) indicate the times (number of days or dates) for starting and completing the various stages of the Work, including any Milestones specified in the Contract Documents, (ii) identify the Critical Path for completing the Work, (iii) identify when all Subcontractors will be utilized, and
(iv) take into consideration any limitations on Working Hours, including baseline Rain Days on Calendar Day Contracts, and (v) be prepared accordance with Section 01310, Schedules and Reports, if applicable; otherwise in accordance with Section 01300, Submittals. This Baseline Schedule, a copy of which shall be made available at the job site(s), must contain sufficient detail to indicate that the CONTRACTOR has properly identified required Work elements and tasks, has provided for a sufficient and proper workforce and integration of Subcontractors, has provided sufficient

resources and has considered the proper sequencing of the Work required to result in a successful Project that can be completed within the Contract time;

.2 An organizational chart showing the principals and management personnel who will be involved with the Work, including each one's responsibilities for the Work;

.3 To the extent not set forth in the Section 00400 Statement of Contractor's Experience, a complete listing of the CONTRACTOR's employees proposed for the Work. List each one by name and job title, and show length of employment with CONTRACTOR;

.4 To the extent not set forth in the Section 00410 Statement of Bidder's Safety Experience, a discussion and confirmation of the CONTRACTOR's commitment to safety by providing a copy of its employee's safety handbook and the safety records for the past three years of CONTRACTOR's proposed project manager and Superintendent;

.5 A preliminary schedule of Shop Drawing and sample submittals;

.6 A preliminary schedule of values for all of the Work, subdivided into component parts in sufficient detail to serve as the basis for progress payments during construction. Such prices will be deemed to include an appropriate amount of overhead and profit applicable to each item of Work;

.7 To the extent not set forth in the Section 00400 Statement of Contractor's Experience, a letter designating CONTRACTOR's Superintendent and project manager, and a confirmation of past project experience for the CONTRACTOR's Superintendent and project manager specifically intended for the Work;

.8 A letter from CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor(s) listing salaried specialists. A salaried specialist is anyone except an hourly worker whose wage rate is governed by Section 00830 of this agreement;

.9 A letter designating the project's Safety Representative along with a copy of their Department of Labor-issued OSHA card proving completion of the OSHA 30-hour Construction Safety and Health training class in the OSHA Outreach Training Program;

.10 If applicable, an excavation safety system plan;

.11 If applicable, a plan illustrating proposed locations of temporary facilities;

.12 A completed Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (Prior to Construction);

.13 A letter designating the Texas Registered Professional Land Surveyor for layout of the Work, if the Work requires the services of a surveyor; and

.14 Copies of the Department of Labor-issued OSHA cards proving completion of the OSHA 10-hour Construction Safety and Health training class in the OSHA Outreach Training Program for each worker (defined as a person covered by a prevailing wage determination) that will initially be on site. Note that workers must possess other OSHA-required training as the work dictates in accordance with the OSHA Act; and specifically, the contractor must meet the required provisions in 509S Excavation Safety Systems required prior to commencing excavation;

.15 A certificate of worker's compensation insurance coverage for all persons providing services on the Project (refer to 5.2.1.3 in Section 00700 for definition of persons providing services on the Project);

.16 A Construction Equipment Emissions Reduction Plan.

2.4.3 Neither the acceptance nor the approval of any of the submittals required in paragraph 2.4.2, above, will constitute the adoption, affirmation, or direction of the CONTRACTOR'S means and methods.

2.5 Preconstruction Conference: Prior to commencement of Work at the site, CONTRACTOR must attend a preconstruction conference with Owner's Representative and others, as set forth in Division 1. Additionally, prior to commencement of work, the CONTRACTOR shall host a preconstruction conference for the Subcontractors identified on the originally approved compliance plan, Owner's Representative and others, as set forth in Division 1. The CONTRACTOR shall notify all Subcontractors five (5) working days prior to the preconstruction conference. If the CONTRACTOR has included Subcontractors in the initial preconstruction conference, the additional Subcontractor preconstruction conference will not be required.

2.6 Initially Acceptable Schedules: Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR shall obtain approval of Owner's Representative on the Baseline Schedule submitted in accordance with paragraph 2.4.2.1 and Division 1 before the first progress payment will be made to CONTRACTOR. The Baseline Schedule must provide for an orderly progression of the designated portion of the Work to completion within any specified Milestones and Contract Times. Acceptance of the schedule by Owner's Representative will neither impose on Owner's Representative responsibility or liability for the sequencing, scheduling or progress of the Work nor interfere with or relieve CONTRACTOR from CONTRACTOR's full responsibility for such Work. CONTRACTOR's schedule of Shop Drawings and sample submissions must provide an acceptable basis for reviewing and processing the required submittals. CONTRACTOR's schedule of values must conform to the requirements set forth in Division 1.

ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACT DOCUMENTS: INTENT, AMENDING, REUSE

3.1 Intent:

3.1.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all information necessary for the proper execution and timely completion of the Work by CONTRACTOR. The CONTRACTOR will execute the Work described in and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents as necessary to produce the results indicated by the Contract Documents. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all. In cases of disagreement, the following order of precedence shall generally govern (top item receiving priority of interpretation):

Signed Agreement
Addendum to the Contract Documents, including approved changes
Supplemental General Conditions
General Conditions
Other Bidding Requirements and Contract Forms
Special Provisions to the Standard Technical Specifications
Special Specifications
Standard Technical Specifications

Drawings (figured dimensions shall govern over scaled dimensions)
Project Safety Manual (if applicable),

with the understanding that a common sense approach will be utilized as necessary so that the Contract Documents produce the intended response.

3.1.2 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

3.2 Reporting and Resolving Discrepancies: If, during the performance of the Work, CONTRACTOR discovers any conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy within the Contract Documents or between the Contract Documents and any provisions of any such law or regulation applicable to the performance of the Work or of any such standard, specification, manual or code or instructions of any Supplier, CONTRACTOR shall report it to Owner's Representative in writing at once, and CONTRACTOR shall not proceed with the Work affected thereby until an amendment or supplement to the Contract Documents has been issued by one of the methods indicated in paragraph 3.3.1 or 3.3.2. CONTRACTOR shall be liable to OWNER for failure to report any such conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy of which CONTRACTOR knew or reasonably should have known.

3.3 Modifying and Supplementing Contract Documents:

3.3.1 The Contract Documents may be modified to provide for additions, deletions, and revisions in the Work or to modify the terms and conditions by change order or contract amendment.

3.3.2 In addition, the requirements of the Contract Documents may be supplemented, and minor variations and deviations in the Work may be authorized, in one or more of the following ways:

.1 Field Order.

.2 Review of a Shop Drawing or sample.

.3 Written interpretation or clarification.

3.4 Reuse of Documents Prohibited: CONTRACTOR and any Subcontractor or Supplier or other person or organization performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with OWNER: (i) shall not have or acquire any title to or ownership rights in any of the Drawings, Specifications or other documents (or copies of any thereof) prepared by or bearing the seal of E/A or E/A's consultant, and (ii) shall not reuse any of such Drawings, Specifications, other documents or copies on extensions of the Project or any other project without written consent of OWNER and E/A.

3.5 In the event of the breach by the OWNER or CONTRACTOR of any of its obligations under the Contract, so as to support a claim by the other party, the provisions of this Contract will be equitably construed to allow the resolution of such a claim and all of the other provisions of this Contract shall continue in full force and effect as to the rights, responsibilities, and remedies of the OWNER and CONTRACTOR.

ARTICLE 4 - AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; REFERENCE POINTS

4.1 Availability of Lands: The OWNER will provide access to all land and interests in land required for the Work and will notify CONTRACTOR of any restrictions in such access. CONTRACTOR may make a claim if OWNER fails to provide timely access to the Work.

CONTRACTOR must obtain any additional temporary construction facilities, stockpiling or storage sites not otherwise provided.

4.2 Subsurface and Physical Conditions:

4.2.1 CONTRACTOR specifically represents that it has carefully examined the plans, the geotechnical report, if any, and the site of the proposed Work and is thoroughly familiar with all of the conditions surrounding construction of the Project, having had the opportunity to conduct any and all additional inquiry, tests and investigation that he/she deems necessary and proper. CONTRACTOR acknowledges the receipt of the geotechnical report, if any, and agrees that the report, while it is an accurate record of the geotechnical conditions at the boring locations, is not a guarantee of specific site conditions which may vary between boring locations.

4.2.2 CONTRACTOR must notify OWNER in writing as soon as reasonably possible, but no later than three (3) calendar days, if unforeseen conditions are encountered at the site which are (i) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (ii) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature, that differ materially from those normally encountered in the type of work being performed under this Contract. CONTRACTOR may not disturb the conditions until OWNER conducts an investigation. Owner's Representative and E/A will promptly investigate such conditions with E/A. If it is determined that such conditions differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the CONTRACTOR's cost of or time required for performance of any part of the Work, Owner’s Representative will recommend an equitable adjustment in the Contract Amount or Contract Time, or both. If it is determined that such conditions are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents, Owner’s Representative will notify CONTRACTOR in writing of such findings and the Contract will not be adjusted. CONTRACTOR may dispute such a determination in accordance with Article 16.

4.2.3 Notwithstanding any other provision of this Contract, CONTRACTOR is solely responsible for the location and protection of any and all public utility lines and utility customer service lines in the Work area. "Public utility lines" means the utility distribution and supply system, and "utility customer service lines" means the utility lines connecting customers to the utility distribution and collection system. Generally, existing utility customer service line connections are not shown on the Drawings. CONTRACTOR shall notify "One Call" and exercise due care to locate, mark, uncover and otherwise protect all such lines in the construction zone and any of CONTRACTOR's work or storage areas. CONTRACTOR's responsibility for the location and protection of utilities is primary and nondelegable. CONTRACTOR shall indemnify or reimburse such expenses or costs (including fines that may be levied against OWNER) that may result from unauthorized or accidental damage to all public lines and utility customer service lines in the work area. OWNER reserves the right to repair any damage CONTRACTOR causes to such utilities at CONTRACTOR's expense. If a public line and/or customer service line is damaged by CONTRACTOR, CONTRACTOR shall give verbal notice within one (1) hour and written notice within twenty- four (24) hours to the Owner’s Representative.

4.2.4 CONTRACTOR shall take reasonable precaution to avoid disturbing primitive records and antiquities of archaeological, paleontological or historical significance. No objects of this nature shall be disturbed without written permission of OWNER and Texas Historical Commission. When such objects are uncovered unexpectedly, CONTRACTOR shall stop all Work in close proximity and notify Owner's Representative and Texas Historical Commission of their presence and shall not disturb them until written permission and permit to do so is granted. All primitive rights and antiquities uncovered on OWNER's property shall remain property of State of Texas, Texas Historical Commission conforming to Texas Natural Resources Code. If it is determined by OWNER, in consultation with Texas Historical Commission, that exploration or excavation of primitive records or antiquities on Project site is necessary to avoid loss, CONTRACTOR shall cooperate in salvage work attendant to preservation. If the Work stoppage or salvage work causes an increase in CONTRACTOR's cost of, or time required for, performance of the Work, the Contract Amount and/or Contract Time will be equitably adjusted.

4.3 Reference Points: Unless otherwise specified, all control lines and bench marks suitable for use in layout will be furnished by OWNER. Lay out of the Work shall be performed in accordance with Division 1. Controls, bench marks and property boundary markers shall be carefully preserved by CONTRACTOR by use of flags, staffs or other visible devices and in case of destruction or removal by CONTRACTOR or its employees, such controls and bench marks shall be replaced by a Registered Professional Land Surveyor at CONTRACTOR's expense. City of Kyle survey monuments damaged by CONTRACTOR will be reestablished by OWNER at CONTRACTOR's expense.

4.4 Hazardous Materials:

4.4.1 To the extent provided by applicable law, OWNER shall be responsible for any hazardous material uncovered or revealed at the site which was not shown, indicated or identified in the Contract Documents to be within the scope of the Work and which may present a substantial danger to persons or property exposed thereto in connection with the Work at the site. CONTRACTOR shall immediately notify Owner's Representative of any suspected hazardous materials encountered before or during performance of the Work and shall take all necessary precautions to avoid further disturbance of the materials.

4.4.2 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for any hazardous materials brought to the site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, Suppliers or anyone else for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible.

4.4.3 No asbestos-containing materials shall be incorporated into the Work or brought on Project site without prior approval of OWNER. The CONTRACTOR shall not knowingly use, specify, request or approve for use any asbestos containing materials or lead-based paint without the OWNER'S written approval. When a specific product is specified, the CONTRACTOR shall endeavor to verify that the product does not include asbestos containing material.

4.4.4 Refer to Division 1 for hazardous material definitions and procedures.

.1 Unless otherwise expressly provided in the Contract Documents to be part of the Work, CONTRACTOR is not responsible for any unexpected Hazardous Materials encountered at the site. Upon encountering any Hazardous Conditions, CONTRACTOR must stop Work immediately in the affected area and duly notify OWNER and, if required by applicable law or regulations, all government or quasi-government entities with jurisdiction over the Project or site.

.2 Upon receiving notice of the presence of suspected Hazardous Materials, OWNER shall take the necessary measures required to ensure that the Hazardous Materials are remediated or rendered harmless. Such necessary measures shall include OWNER retaining qualified independent experts to (i) ascertain whether Hazardous Materials have actually been encountered, and, if they have been encountered, (ii) prescribe the remedial measures that OWNER must take either to remove the Hazardous Materials or render the Hazardous Materials harmless.

.3 CONTRACTOR shall be obligated to resume Work at the affected area of the Project only after OWNER's Representative provides written certification that (i) the Hazardous Materials have been removed or rendered harmless and (ii) all necessary approvals have been obtained from all government and quasi-government entities having jurisdiction over the Project or site. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for continuing the Work in the unaffected portion of the Project and site.

.4 CONTRACTOR will be entitled, in accordance with these General Conditions, to an adjustment in its Contract Amount and/or Contract Time(s) to the extent CONTRACTOR's cost and/or time of performance have been adversely impacted by the presence of Hazardous Materials.

.5 Notwithstanding the preceding provisions of this Section 4.1, OWNER is not responsible for Hazardous Materials introduced to the Site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or anyone for whose acts they may be liable. CONTRACTOR shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless OWNER and OWNER's officers, directors, employees and agents from and against all claims, losses, damages, liabilities and expenses, including attorneys' fees and expenses, arising out of or resulting from those hazardous materials introduced to the site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or anyone for whose acts they may be liable.

4.4.5 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for use, storage and remediation of any hazardous materials brought to the Site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Suppliers or anyone else for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible.

ARTICLE 5 - BONDS AND INSURANCE

5.1 **Surety and Insurance Companies:** All bonds and insurance required by the Contract Documents shall be obtained from solvent surety or insurance companies that are duly licensed by the State of Texas and authorized to issue bonds or insurance policies for the limits and coverages required by the Contract Documents. The bonds shall be in a form acceptable to OWNER and shall be issued by a surety which complies with the requirements of Texas Insurance Code, Title 12, Chapter 3503. The surety must obtain reinsurance for any portion of the risk that exceeds 10% of the surety's capital and surplus. For bonds exceeding $100,000, the surety must also hold a certificate of authority from the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury or have obtained reinsurance for any liability in excess of $1,000,000 from a reinsurer that is authorized as a reinsurer in Texas or holds a certificate of authority from the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury. In the event that the proposed surety for a contract award in excess of $100,000 does not hold a certificate of authority from the

U.S. Secretary of the Treasury and/or its proposed reinsurer does not hold a certificate of authority from the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury, the OWNER may require additional financial solvency information from the Bidder/Contractor and the proposed surety company and/or reinsurer as part of the 00400 Statement of Bidders Experience and determination of bidder responsibility in the award of the Contract.

5.2 Workers' Compensation Insurance Coverage:

5.2.1 Definitions:

.1 Certificate of coverage ("certificate") - A copy of a certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the commission, or a coverage agreement (DWC-81, DCW-82, DCW-83, or DCW84), showing statutory workers' compensation insurance coverage for the person's or entity's employees providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project.

.2 Duration of the Project - includes the time from the beginning of the Work on the Project until the CONTRACTOR's/ person's Work on the Project has been completed and accepted by OWNER.

.3 Persons providing services on the Project ("subcontractor" in Texas Labor Code, Section 406.096) - includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the CONTRACTOR has undertaken to perform on the Project, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with the CONTRACTOR and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, Subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity which furnishes persons to provide services on the Project. "Services" include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. "Services" does not include activities unrelated to the Project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

5.2.2 CONTRACTOR shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all employees of the CONTRACTOR providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project.

5.2.3 CONTRACTOR must provide a certificate of coverage (and other eviden of insurance requested by Owner or any other additional insured), with copies to each additional insured identified in the Supplementary Conditions, to OWNER prior to being awarded the Contract.

5.2.4 If the coverage period shown on the CONTRACTOR's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project, the CONTRACTOR must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with OWNER showing that coverage has been extended.

5.2.5 CONTRACTOR shall obtain from each person providing services on the Project, and provide to OWNER:

.1 A certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning Work on the Project, so OWNER will have on file certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the Project; and

.2 No later than seven (7) days after receipt by CONTRACTOR, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project.

5.2.6 CONTRACTOR shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the Project and for one (1) year thereafter.

5.2.7 CONTRACTOR shall notify OWNER in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after CONTRACTOR knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project.

5.2.8 CONTRACTOR shall post on each Project site a notice, in the text, form and manner prescribed by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing services on the Project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

5.2.9 CONTRACTOR shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on a Project, to:

.1 Provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all of its employees providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project;

.2 Provide to CONTRACTOR, prior to that person beginning Work on the Project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project;

.3 Provide CONTRACTOR, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;

.4 Obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to CONTRACTOR: a) a certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning Work on the Project; and b) a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;

.5 Retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the Project and for one (1) year thereafter;

.6 Notify OWNER in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project; and

.7 Contain a provision or endorsement that the coverage afforded will not be canceled, materially changed or renewal refused until at least 30 days prior written notice has been given to Owner and Contractor and to each other additional insured identified in the Supplementary Conditions to whom a certificate of insurance has been issued.

.8 Contractually require each person with whom it contracts, to perform as required by paragraphs 5.2.9.1 - 5.2.9.7, with the certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

5.2.10 With respect to insurance required, CONTRACTOR shall include as additional insured (subject to any customary exclusion regarding professional liability) Owner and Engineer, and any other individuals or entities identified in the Supplementary Conditions, all of whom shall be listed as additional insureds, and include coverage for the respective officers, directors, partners, employees, agents, consultants and subcontractors of each and any of all such additional insureds, and the insurance afforded to these additional insureds shall provide primary coverage for all claims covered thereby.

5.2.11 By signing this Contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, CONTRACTOR is representing to OWNER that all employees of the CONTRACTOR who will provide services on the Project will be covered by workers' compensation coverage for the duration of the Project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the Texas Worker's Compensation Commission's Division of Self- Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject CONTRACTOR to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

5.2.12 CONTRACTOR's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of Contract by CONTRACTOR which entitles OWNER to declare the Contract void if CONTRACTOR does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from OWNER.

5.3 Owner's Liability Insurance: In addition to the insurance required to be provided by Contractor under Paragraph 5.2, Owner, at Owner's option, may purchase and maintain at Owner's expense Owner's own liability insurance as will protect Owner against claims which may arise from operations under the Contract Documents.

5.4 Other Bond and Insurance Requirements: For additional insurance requirements, refer to the Supplemental General Conditions.

5.5 Bonds:

5.5.1 General.

.1 Bonds, when required, shall be executed on forms furnished by or acceptable to OWNER. All bonds signed by an agent must be accompanied by a certified copy of such agent's authority to act.

.2 If the surety on any bond furnished by CONTRACTOR is declared bankrupt or becomes insolvent or its right to do business is terminated in the State of Texas or it ceases to meet the requirements of the preceding paragraph, CONTRACTOR shall within ten (10) days thereafter substitute another bond and surety, both of which must be acceptable to OWNER.

.3 When Performance Bonds and/or Payment Bonds are required, each shall be issued in an amount of one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Amount as security for the faithful performance and/or payment of all CONTRACTOR's obligations under the Contract Documents. Performance Bonds and Payment Bonds shall be issued by a solvent surety company authorized to do business in the State of Texas, and shall meet any other requirements established by law or by OWNER pursuant to applicable law. Any surety duly authorized to do business in Texas may write Performance and Payment Bonds on a project without reinsurance to the limit of ten percent (10%) of its capital and surplus. Such a surety must reinsure any obligations over ten percent (10%).

5.5.2 Performance Bond.

.1 If the Contract Amount exceeds $100,000, CONTRACTOR shall furnish OWNER with a Performance Bond in the form set out in Section 00610.

.2 If the Contract Amount exceeds $25,000 but is less than or equal to $100,000, CONTRACTOR shall furnish OWNER with a Performance Bond in the form set out in Section 00610, unless the original Contract Time is 60 Calendar Days/40 Working Days or less, in which case CONTRACTOR can agree to the following terms and conditions for payment in lieu of providing a Performance Bond: no moneys will be paid to CONTRACTOR until completion and acceptance of the Work by OWNER; CONTRACTOR shall be entitled to receive 95% of the Contract

Amount following Final Completion, and the remaining 5% of the Contract Amount following the one (1) year warranty period.

.3 If the Contract Amount is less than or equal to $25,000, CONTRACTOR will not be required to furnish a Performance Bond; provided that no moneys will be paid to CONTRACTOR until completion and acceptance of the Work by OWNER under the following terms and conditions: CONTRACTOR shall be entitled to receive 95% of the Contract Amount following Final Completion, and the remaining 5% of the Contract Amount following the one (1) year warranty period.

.4 If a Performance Bond is required to be furnished, it shall extend for the one (1) year warranty period.

5.5.3 Payment Bond.

.1 If the Contract Amount exceeds $50,000, CONTRACTOR shall furnish OWNER with a Payment Bond in the form set out in Section 00620.

.2 If the Contract Amount is less than or equal to $50,000, CONTRACTOR will not be required to furnish a Payment Bond; provided that no moneys will be paid to CONTRACTOR until completion and acceptance of the Work by OWNER under the terms and conditions specified in paragraph 5.4.2.3.

5.5.4 **Maintenance Bond:** If the Contract Documents contemplate a period of maintenance beyond the one (1) year contractual warranty period, OWNER agrees that any bond to be required for such maintenance work will be in the amount of the maintenance work during any extended maintenance period.

ARTICLE 6 - CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

6.1 Supervision and Superintendence:

6.1.1 CONTRACTOR shall supervise, inspect and direct the Work competently and efficiently, devoting such attention thereto and applying such skills and expertise as may be necessary to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. CONTRACTOR shall be solely responsible for the means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction. CONTRACTOR shall be responsible to see that the completed Work complies accurately with the Contract Documents.

6.1.2 CONTRACTOR shall have a competent, qualified Superintendent on the Work at all times that work is in progress. To be qualified, at a minimum, the Superintendent must be effective at (a) communicating both verbally and in writing with the OWNER's representative; (b) receiving and fulfilling instructions from the Owner's Representative; (c) supervising and directing the construction of the Work; (d) reading and interpreting the plans and specifications; (e) writing, preparing and submitting necessary paperwork; and (f) understanding work sequencing and scheduling. The Superintendent will be CONTRACTOR's representative on the Work and shall have the authority to act on the behalf of CONTRACTOR. All communications given to the Superintendent shall be as binding as if given to CONTRACTOR. Either CONTRACTOR or the Superintendent shall provide a cellular telephone number and an emergency and home telephone number at which one or the other may be reached if necessary when work is not in progress. The Superintendent must be an employee of the CONTRACTOR, unless such requirement is waived in writing by the Owner's Representative. If the CONTRACTOR proposes a management structure with a Project Manager supervising, directing, and managing construction of the work in addition to or in substitution of a Superintendent, the requirements of these Construction Documents with respect to the Superintendent shall likewise apply to any such Project Manager.

.1 CONTRACTOR shall present the resume of the proposed Superintendent to the Owner's Representative showing evidence of experience and successful superintendence and direction of work of a similar scale and complexity. If, in the opinion of the Owner's Representative, the proposed Superintendent does not indicate sufficient experience in line with the Work, he/she will not be allowed to be the designated Superintendent for the Work.

.2 The Superintendent shall not be replaced without Written Notice to Owner's Representative. If CONTRACTOR deems it necessary to replace the Superintendent, CONTRACTOR shall provide the necessary information for approval, as stated above, on the proposed new Superintendent.

.3 A qualified substitute Superintendent may be designated in the event that the designated Superintendent is temporarily away from the Work, but not to exceed a time limit acceptable to the Owner's Representative. CONTRACTOR shall replace the Superintendent upon OWNER's request in the event the Superintendent is unable to perform to OWNER's satisfaction.

6.2 Labor, Materials and Equipment:

6.2.1 CONTRACTOR shall maintain a work force adequate to accomplish the Work within the Contract Time. CONTRACTOR agrees to employ only orderly and competent workers, skillful in performance of the type of Work required under this Contract. CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and their employees may not use or possess any alcoholic or other intoxicating beverages, illegal drugs or controlled substances while on the job or on OWNER's property, nor may such workers be intoxicated, or under the influence of alcohol or drugs, on the job. Subject to the applicable provisions of Texas law, CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and their employees may not use or possess any firearms or other weapons while on the job or on OWNER'S property. If OWNER or Owner's Representative notifies CONTRACTOR that any worker or representative of Contractor is incompetent, disorderly, abusive, or disobedient, has knowingly or repeatedly violated safety regulations, has possessed any firearms in contravention of the applicable provisions of Texas law, or has possessed or was under the influence of alcohol or drugs on the job, CONTRACTOR shall immediately remove such worker or representative, including an officer or owner of CONTRACTOR, from performing Contract Work, and may not employ such worker or representative again on Contract Work without OWNER's prior written consent. CONTRACTOR shall at all times maintain good discipline and order on or off the site in all matters pertaining to the Project.

6.2.2 Unless otherwise specified in Division 1, CONTRACTOR shall provide and pay for all materials, equipment, labor, transportation, construction equipment and machinery, tools, appliances, fuel, power, light, heat, telephone, water, sanitary facilities, temporary facilities and all other facilities and incidentals necessary for the furnishing, performance, testing, start-up and completion of the Work.

6.2.3 All materials and equipment shall be of good quality and new (including new products made of recycled materials, pursuant to Section 361.426 of the Texas Health & Safety Code), except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents. If required by Owner's Representative, CONTRACTOR shall furnish satisfactory evidence (reports of required tests, manufacturer's certificates of compliance with material requirements, mill reports, etc.) as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment. All materials and equipment shall be applied, installed, connected, erected, used, cleaned and conditioned in accordance with instructions of the applicable Supplier, except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents.

6.2.4 Substitutes and "Approved Equal" Items:

.1 Whenever an item of material or equipment is specified or described in the Contract Documents by using the name of a proprietary item or the name of a particular Supplier, the specification or description is intended to establish the type, function and quality required. Unless the specification or description contains words reading that no like, equivalent or "approved equal" item or no substitution is permitted, other items of material or equipment of other Suppliers may be submitted by CONTRACTOR, at CONTRACTOR'S sole risk, including disruptions to the Critical Path of the Progress Schedule, to E/A through Owner's Representative under the following circumstances:

1.1 "Approved Equal": If in E/A's sole discretion an item of material or equipment proposed by CONTRACTOR is functionally equal to that named and sufficiently similar so that no change in related Work will be required, it may be considered by E/A as an "approved equal" item, in which case review of the proposed item may, in E/A's sole discretion, be accomplished without compliance with some or all of the requirements for evaluation of proposed substitute items. CONTRACTOR shall provide E/A with the documentation required for E/A to make its determination.

1.2 Substitute Items: If in E/A's sole discretion an item of material or equipment proposed by CONTRACTOR does not qualify as an "approved equal" item under subparagraph 6.2.4.1.1, it will be considered a proposed substitute item. CONTRACTOR shall submit sufficient information as provided in Division 1 to allow E/A to determine that the item of material or equipment proposed is essentially equivalent to that named and a substitute therefor.

.2 Substitute Construction Methods and Procedures: If a specific means, method, technique, sequence or procedure of construction is shown or indicated in and expressly required by the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR may, at CONTRACTOR'S sole risk, including disruptions to the Critical Path of the Progress Schedule, with prior approval of E/A furnish or utilize a substitute means, method, technique, sequence, or procedure of construction. CONTRACTOR shall submit sufficient information to Owner's Representative to allow E/A, in E/A's sole discretion, to determine that the substitute proposed is equivalent to that expressly called for by the Contract Documents. The procedure for review by E/A will be same as that provided for substitute items in Division 1.

.3 E/A's Evaluation: E/A will be allowed a reasonable time within which to evaluate each proposal or submittal made pursuant to subparagraphs 6.2.4.1.1 and 6.2.4.1.2. E/A will be the sole judge of acceptability. No "approved equal" or substitute shall be ordered, installed, or utilized until E/A's review is complete, which will be evidenced by either a Change Order or completion of the Shop Drawing review procedure. OWNER may require CONTRACTOR to furnish at CONTRACTOR's expense a special performance guarantee or other surety bond with respect to any "approved equal" or substitute or for any other delay or disruption to the Critical Path of the Project Schedule attributable to any such substitution. OWNER shall not be responsible for any delay due to review time for any "approved equal" or substitute.

.4 CONTRACTOR's Expense: All data and documentation to be provided by CONTRACTOR in support of any proposed "approved equal" or substitute item will be at CONTRACTOR's expense.

.5 The approval of the E/A will not relieve the CONTRACTOR from primary responsibility and liability for the suitability and performance of any proposed substitute item, method or procedure and will not relieve CONTRACTOR from its primary responsibility and liability for curing defective Work and performing

warranty work, which the CONTRACTOR shall cure and perform, regardless of any claim the CONTRACTOR may choose to advance against the E/A or manufacturer.

6.2.5 CONTRACTOR agrees to assign to OWNER any rights it may have to bring antitrust suits against its Suppliers for overcharges on materials incorporated in the Project growing out of illegal price fixing agreements. CONTRACTOR further agrees to cooperate with OWNER should OWNER wish to prosecute suits against Suppliers for illegal price fixing.

6.3 Progress Schedule: Unless otherwise provided in Division 1, CONTRACTOR shall adhere to the Baseline Schedule established in accordance with paragraph 2.6 as it may be adjusted from time to time as provided below:

6.3.1 CONTRACTOR shall submit to Owner's Representative for review and approval any proposed adjustments in the Progress Schedule that will not change the Contract Times or Milestones on a monthly basis. Any such proposed adjustments must be substantiated with documentation of any changes to the underlying logic of the Progress Schedule. CONTRACTOR's Progress Schedule must show how the CONTRACTOR will consistently advance the progress of the Work in accordance with the Critical Path of the Work and the Contract Time or Milestones. Such adjustments will conform generally to the Progress Schedule then in effect and additionally will comply with any provisions of Division 1 applicable thereto.

6.3.2 Proposed adjustments in the Progress Schedule that will change the Contract Times or Milestones shall be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Article 12. Any such proposed adjustments must be substantiated with documentation of any changes to the underlying logic of the Progress Schedule. Such adjustments may only be made by a Change Order or Time Extension Request in accordance with Article 12.

6.4 Concerning Subcontractors, Suppliers and Others:

6.4.1 Assignment: CONTRACTOR agrees to retain direct control of and give direct attention to the fulfillment of this Contract. CONTRACTOR agrees not to, by Power of Attorney, or otherwise, assign said Contract without the prior written consent of OWNER. In addition, without OWNER'S written consent, the CONTRACTOR will not subcontract the performance of the entire Work or the supervision and direction of the Work.

6.4.2 Award of Subcontracts for Portions of the Work: CONTRACTOR shall not employ any Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization, whether initially or as a substitute, against whom OWNER may have reasonable objection. OWNER will communicate such objections by Written Notice. If OWNER requires a change without good cause of any Subcontractor, person or organization previously accepted by OWNER, the Contract Amount shall be increased or decreased by the difference in the cost occasioned by any such change, and appropriate Change Order shall be issued. CONTRACTOR shall not substitute any Subcontractor, person or organization that has been accepted by OWNER, unless the substitute has been accepted in writing by OWNER. No acceptance by OWNER of any Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization shall constitute a waiver of any right of OWNER to reject defective Work.

6.4.3 CONTRACTOR shall enter into written agreements with all Subcontractors and Suppliers which specifically binds the Subcontractors or Suppliers to the applicable terms and conditions of the Contract Documents for the benefit of OWNER and E/A. The OWNER reserves the right to specify that certain requirements shall be adhered to by all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors as indicated in other portions of the Contract Documents and these requirements shall be made a part of the agreement between CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor or Supplier. Subject to and in accordance with the above requirements, the CONTRACTOR must provide and will be deemed for all purposes to have provided in its contracts with major Subcontractors or Suppliers

on the Project (those contracts of more than $10,000) the following specific provision: alternative dispute resolution (paragraphs 16.2 and 16.3), which shall be mandatory in the event of a subcontractor or supplier claim and a prerequisite for the submission of any derivative claim. The CONTRACTOR's standard subcontract form is subject to the OWNER's review and approval. The OWNER may request and the CONTRACTOR will provide within five (5) working days a copy of any subcontract requested by the OWNER.

6.4.4 CONTRACTOR shall be fully responsible to OWNER for all acts and omissions of the Subcontractors, Suppliers and other persons and organizations performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with CONTRACTOR just as CONTRACTOR is responsible for CONTRACTOR's own acts and omissions. Nothing in the Contract Documents shall create for the benefit of any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization any contractual relationship between OWNER and any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization, nor shall it create any obligation on the part of OWNER or E/A to pay or to see to the payment of any moneys due any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization except as may otherwise be required by laws and regulations.

6.4.5 CONTRACTOR shall be solely responsible for efficiently scheduling and coordinating the Work of Subcontractors, Suppliers and other persons and organizations performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with CONTRACTOR in order to avoid any delays or inefficiencies in the prosecution of the Work. CONTRACTOR shall require all Subcontractors, Suppliers and such other persons and organizations performing or furnishing any of the Work to communicate with Owner's Representative through CONTRACTOR.

6.4.6 The divisions and sections of the Specifications and the identifications of any Drawings shall not control CONTRACTOR in dividing or delineating the Work to be performed by any specific trade.

6.4.7 CONTRACTOR shall pay each Subcontractor and Supplier their appropriate share of payments made to CONTRACTOR not later than ten (10) Calendar Days of CONTRACTOR's receipt of payment from OWNER. Upon request from Owner, the CONTRACTOR has two (2) Working Days to provide documentation verifying Payment to Subcontractor(s). The CONTRACTOR is required to notify the Subcontractor(s) in writing of rejection of Application for Payment within two (2) Working Days following notification by Owner. Failure of CONTRACTOR to make payments to Subcontractors or for labor, materials or equipment in accordance to this contract, may be cause to reject future Bids by the CONTRACTOR in accordance with Section 00100 9.2.4 and may be cause to reject payment in accordance with 00700 14.4.1.3.

6.4.8 CONTRACTOR may withhold retainage on Subcontractor(s) in accordance with state and federal regulations.

6.4.9 To the extent allowed by Texas law, the OWNER shall be deemed to be a third party beneficiary to each subcontract and may, if OWNER elects, following a termination of the CONTRACTOR, require that the Subcontractor(s) perform all or a portion of unperformed duties and obligations under its subcontract(s) for the benefit of the OWNER, rather than the CONTRACTOR; however, if the OWNER requires any such performance by a Subcontractor for the OWNER's direct benefit, then the OWNER shall be bound and obligated to pay such Subcontractor the reasonable value for all Work performed by such Subcontractor to the date of the termination of the CONTRACTOR, less previous payments, and for all Work performed thereafter. In the event that the OWNER elects to invoke its right under this section, OWNER will provide notice of such election to the CONTRACTOR and the affected Subcontractor(s).

6.5 Patent Fees and Royalties:

6.5.1 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible at all times for compliance with applicable patents or copyrights encompassing, in whole or in part, any design, device, material, or process utilized, directly or indirectly, in the performance of the Work or the formulation or presentation of its Bid.

6.5.2 CONTRACTOR shall pay all royalties and license fees and shall provide, prior to commencement of Work hereunder and at all times during the performance of same, for lawful use of any design, device, material or process covered by letters, patent or copyright by suitable legal agreement with the patentee, copyright holder, or their duly authorized representative whether or not a particular design, device, material, or process is specified by OWNER.

6.5.3 CONTRACTOR shall defend all suits or claims for infringement of any patent or copyright and shall save OWNER harmless from any loss or liability, direct or indirect, arising with respect to CONTRACTOR's process in the formulation of its Bid or the performance of the Work or otherwise arising in connection therewith. OWNER reserves the right to provide its own defense to any suit or claim of infringement of any patent or copyright in which event CONTRACTOR shall indemnify and save harmless OWNER from all costs and expenses of such defense as well as satisfaction of all judgments entered against OWNER.

6.5.4 OWNER shall have the right to stop the Work and/or terminate this Agreement at any time in the event CONTRACTOR fails to disclose to OWNER that CONTRACTOR's work methodology includes the use of any infringing design, device, material or process.

6.6 Permits, Fees: Unless otherwise provided in the Supplemental General Conditions, CONTRACTOR shall obtain and pay for all construction permits, licenses and fees required for prosecution of the Work.

6.7 Laws and Regulations:

6.7.1 CONTRACTOR shall give all notices and comply with all laws and regulations applicable to furnishing and performing the Work, including arranging for and obtaining any required inspections, tests, approvals or certifications from any public body having jurisdiction over the Work or any part thereof. Except where otherwise expressly required by applicable laws and regulations, neither OWNER nor E/A shall be responsible for monitoring CONTRACTOR's compliance with any laws and regulations.

6.7.2 Maintaining clean water, air and earth or improving thereon shall be regarded as of prime importance. CONTRACTOR shall plan and execute its operations in compliance with all applicable Federal, State and local laws and regulations concerning control and abatement of water pollution and prevention and control of air pollution.

6.7.3 If CONTRACTOR performs any Work knowing or having reason to know that it is contrary to laws or regulations, CONTRACTOR shall bear all claims, costs, losses and damages arising therefrom; however, it shall not be CONTRACTOR's primary responsibility to make certain that the Specifications and Drawings are in accordance with laws and regulations, but this does not relieve CONTRACTOR of CONTRACTOR's obligations under Article 3.

6.8 Taxes:

6.8.1 CONTRACTOR shall pay only those sales, consumer, use and other similar taxes required to be paid by CONTRACTOR in accordance with the laws and regulations of the State of Texas in the performance of this public works contract.

6.8.2 OWNER is an exempt organization as defined by Chapter 11 of the Property Tax Code of Texas and is thereby exempt from payment of Sales Tax under Chapter 151, Limited Use Sales, Excise and Use Tax, Texas Tax Code, and Article 1066 (C), Local Sales and

Use Tax Act, Revised Civil Statutes of Texas.

6.9 Use of Premises:

6.9.1 CONTRACTOR shall confine construction equipment, the storage of materials and equipment and the operations of workers to the site and land and areas identified in and permitted by the Contract Documents and other land and areas permitted by laws and regulations, right-of-way, permits and easements, and shall not unreasonably encumber the premises with construction equipment or other materials or equipment. CONTRACTOR shall assume full responsibility for any damage to any such land or area, or to the owner or occupant thereof or of any adjacent land or areas, resulting from the performance of the Work. Should any claim be made by any such owner or occupant because of or in connection with the performance of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall promptly settle with such other party by negotiation or otherwise resolve the claim by arbitration or other dispute resolution proceeding or at law. CONTRACTOR shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless OWNER, E/A, E/A'S Consultants and anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses and damages (including court costs and reasonable attorney's fees) arising out of or resulting from any claim or action, legal or equitable, brought by any such owner or occupant against OWNER, E/A or any other party indemnified hereunder to the extent caused by or based upon performance of the work or failure to perform the Work.

6.9.2 During the progress of the Work and on a daily basis, CONTRACTOR shall keep the premises free from accumulations of waste materials, rubbish and other debris resulting from the Work. At the completion of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall remove all waste materials, rubbish and debris from and about the premises as well as all tools, appliances, construction equipment and machinery and surplus materials. CONTRACTOR shall leave the site clean and ready for occupancy by OWNER at Substantial Completion of the Work. CONTRACTOR shall, at a minimum, restore to original condition all property not designated for alteration by the Contract Documents. If the CONTRACTOR fails to clean up at the completion of the Work, OWNER may do so and the cost thereof will be charged against the CONTRACTOR.

6.9.3 CONTRACTOR shall not load nor permit any part of any structure to be loaded in any manner that will endanger the structure, nor shall CONTRACTOR subject any part of the Work or adjacent property to stresses or pressures that will endanger it.

6.10 Record Documents: CONTRACTOR shall maintain in a safe place at the site, or other location acceptable to OWNER, one (1) record copy of all Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders, Change Directives, Field Orders and written interpretations and clarifications (issued pursuant to paragraph 9.5) in good order and annotated to show all changes made during construction. These record documents together with all final samples and all final Shop Drawings will be available to OWNER and E/A for reference during performance of the Work. Upon Substantial Completion of the Work, these record documents, samples and Shop Drawings shall be promptly delivered to Owner's Representative.

6.11 Safety and Protection:

6.11.1 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. Upon request, and prior to installation of measures, CONTRACTOR shall submit a site security plan for approval by OWNER. By reviewing the plan or making recommendations or comments, OWNER will not assume liability nor will CONTRACTOR be relieved of liability for damage, injury or loss. CONTRACTOR shall take all necessary precautions for the safety of and shall provide the necessary protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to:

.1 all persons on the Work site or who may be affected by the Work;

.2 all the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether

in storage on or off the site; and

.3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, including, but not limited to, trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, utilities and underground facilities not designated for removal, relocation or replacement in the course of construction.

6.11.2 CONTRACTOR shall comply with all applicable laws and regulations of any public body having jurisdiction for safety of persons or property or to protect them from damage, injury or loss; and shall erect and maintain all necessary safeguards for such safety and protection. CONTRACTOR shall notify owners of adjacent property and of underground facilities, and utility owners when prosecution of the Work may affect them, and shall cooperate with them in the protection, removal, relocation and replacement of their property. All damage, injury or loss to any property referred to in paragraph 6.11.1.2 and 6.11.1.3 caused, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, Supplier or any person or organization directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform or furnish any of the Work or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, shall be remedied by CONTRACTOR (except damage or loss attributable to the fault of Drawings or Specifications or to the acts or omissions of OWNER, or E/A, or E/A's consultant or anyone employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, and not attributable, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to the faults or negligence of CONTRACTOR or any Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization directly or indirectly employed by any of them). CONTRACTOR's duties and responsibilities for safety and protection of the Work shall continue until such time as all the Work is completed and Owner's Representative has issued a notice to OWNER and CONTRACTOR in accordance with Article 14 that the Work is acceptable (except as otherwise expressly provided in connection with Substantial Completion). Without limitation, CONTRACTOR shall comply with the following specific provisions:

It shall be the duty and responsibility of CONTRACTOR and all of its subcontractors to be familiar with and comply with 29 USC Section 651, et seq., the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, as amended ("OSHA") and to enforce and comply with all provisions of this Act.

The CONTRACTOR and all of its subcontractors shall comply with all applicable requirements of Subpart P of Part 1926 of 29 C.F.R, OSHA Safety and Health Standards, Texas Health and Safety Code Section 756.023, as amended, and shall submit a unit price for the particular excavation safety systems to be utilized by the Contractor for all excavations which exceed a depth of five feet (5').

Before commencing any excavation which will exceed a depth of five feet (5'), the CONTRACTOR shall provide the Owner with detailed plans and specifications regarding the safety systems to be utilized. Said plans and specifications shall include a certification from a Texas licensed professional engineer indicating full compliance with the OSHA provisions cited above.

6.11.3 Safety Representative: CONTRACTOR shall designate in writing a qualified and experienced safety representative (the "Safety Representative") at the site whose duties and responsibilities shall include safety training; identifying and mitigating hazardous conditions and unsafe work practices; and developing, maintaining and supervising the implementation of safe work practices and safety programs as deemed necessary and appropriate for the Project. The term "Safety Representative" includes any designated Safety Supervisor, Superintendent or Safety Manager. The Safety Representative shall exercise due diligence in the execution of all Project related safety duties. Upon request of OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall provide certifications or other acceptable documentation of the Safety Representative's qualifications. The following requirements will be effective as of September 1, 2010:

.1 The Safety Representative shall present certification of completion of the OSHA 30-hour Construction Industry Training Outreach Program described at: http://www.osha.gov/dte/outreach/construction_generalindustry/construction.html

.2 The Safety Representative shall verify that all construction workers (defined as persons covered by a prevailing wage determination) on the job site, whether employed by the CONTRACTOR or subcontractors, have completed the OSHA 10-hour Construction Industry Training Outreach Program described at: http://www.osha.gov/dte/outreach/construction_generalindustry/construction.html. The Safety Representative must receive a certificate of training completion before allowing a worker on site and shall have all such certificates available for inspection by the OWNER.

.3 The Safety Representative shall ensure that workers, including designated competent persons, have completed all applicable OSHA specific or other training needed to perform their job assignments. Training topics applicable to the scope of the current Project may include, but are not limited to, scaffolds, fall protection, cranes, excavations, electrical safety, tools, concrete and masonry construction, steel erection, operation of motor vehicles and mechanized equipment.

.4 The Safety Representative shall post notice on the site of the Work stating that all workers shall have completed OSHA Construction Industry Training. The Owner may require, and the Safety Representative should consider providing a means of readily identifying workers who have completed the required training to monitor compliance with these requirements.

.5 The Safety Representative shall ensure that all required OSHA and Workers Compensation notices to workers are posted in English and Spanish at one or more conspicuous locations on the work site.

6.11.4 Hazard Communication Programs: CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for coordinating any exchange of material safety data sheets or other hazard communication information required to be made available to or exchanged between or among employers at the site in accordance with laws and regulations.

6.11.5 Emergencies:

.1 In emergencies affecting the safety or protection of persons or the Work at the site or adjacent thereto, CONTRACTOR, without special instruction or authorization from OWNER or E/A, is obligated to act reasonably to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss and to mitigate damage or loss to the Work. CONTRACTOR shall give Owner's Representative telephone notification as soon as reasonably practical and a prompt written notice if CONTRACTOR believes that any significant changes in the Work or variations from the Contract Documents have been caused thereby. If Owner's Representative determines that a change in the Contract Documents is required because of the action taken by CONTRACTOR in response to such an emergency, a Change Directive or Change Order will be issued to document the consequences of such action; otherwise OWNER will not be responsible for CONTRACTOR's emergency action.

.2 Authorized agents of CONTRACTOR shall respond immediately to call-out at any time of any day or night when circumstances warrant the presence on Project site of CONTRACTOR or his agent to protect the Work or adjacent property from damage, restriction or limitation or to take such action or measures pertaining to the Work as may be necessary to provide for the safety of the public. Should CONTRACTOR and/or their agent fail to respond and take action to alleviate such an emergency situation, OWNER may direct other forces to take action as necessary to remedy the emergency condition, and OWNER will deduct any cost of such remedial action from the funds due CONTRACTOR under this Contract.

.3 In the event there is an accident involving injury to any individual or damage to any property on or near the Work, CONTRACTOR shall provide to Owner's Representative verbal notification within one (1) hour and written notification within twenty-four (24) hours of the event and shall be responsible for recording the location of the event and the circumstances surrounding the event through photographs, interviewing witnesses, obtaining medical reports, police accident reports and other documentation that describes the event. Copies of such documentation shall be provided to Owner's Representative, for OWNER's and E/A's records, within forty-eight (48) hours of the event.

Contractor shall cooperate with OWNER on any OWNER investigation of any such incident.

6.11.6 If the Contractor fails to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents so that a safety violation has occurred, the Owner may order the Contractor to stop the Work or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated. However, the right of the Owner to stop the Work under this paragraph shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to supervise the Contractor's Work or to control the Contractor's means and methods or to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity. All time lost due to Project shut down will be the Contractor's sole responsibility, will be charged against the Contract Time, and the Contractor will be responsible for any and all expenses incurred.

6.11.7 Confined Space Program

.1 Contractor acknowledges and agrees that the Owner is temporarily transferring management and control of the site of the Work to the Contractor for the purpose of constructing the Project. The Contractor's responsibilities to manage the Work includes the responsibility to manage the property for purposes of compliance with 29 CFR 1926 subpart AA. To the best of Owner's knowledge and belief, Owner has provided the following information in the plans and specifications and other Contract Documents: (i) the location of each known permit space, (ii) the hazards or potential hazards in each space or the reason it is a permit space; and (iii) any precautions that the Owner or any previous contractor has implemented for the protection of employees in the permit space. This transfer will result in the Contractor being both the host employer and the controlling contractor for this portion of the Work.

6.12 Continuing the Work: CONTRACTOR shall carry on the Work and adhere to the Progress Schedule during all disputes or disagreements with OWNER. No Work shall be delayed or postponed pending resolution of any disputes or disagreements, except as OWNER and CONTRACTOR may otherwise agree in writing.

6.13 CONTRACTOR's General Warranty and Guarantee:

6.13.1 CONTRACTOR warrants and guarantees to OWNER that all Work will conform to the plans and specifications, be performed in a good and workmanlike manner in accordance with the Contract Documents and will not be defective. This warranty will survive the termination or expiration of the Contract. CONTRACTOR's warranty and guarantee hereunder excludes defects or damage caused by:

.1 abuse, modification or improper maintenance or operation by persons other than CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or Suppliers; or

.2 normal wear and tear under normal usage.

6.13.2 CONTRACTOR's obligation to perform and complete the Work in a good and workmanlike manner in accordance with the Contract Documents shall be absolute. None of the following will constitute an acceptance of Work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents or a release of CONTRACTOR's obligation to perform the

Work in accordance with the Contract Documents:

.1 observations by Owner's Representative and/or E/A;

.2 recommendation of any progress or final payment by Owner's Representative;

.3 the issuance of a certificate of Substantial Completion or any payment by OWNER to CONTRACTOR under the Contract Documents;

.4 use or occupancy of the Work or any part thereof by OWNER;

.5 any acceptance by OWNER or any failure to do so;

.6 any review of a Shop Drawing or sample submittal;

.7 any inspection, test or approval by others; or

.8 any correction of defective Work by OWNER.

6.14 INDEMNIFICATION:

6.14.1 CONTRACTOR shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless OWNER, E/A, E/A'S Consultants and Sub consultants and their respective officers, directors, partners, employees, agents and other Consultants and any of them (the "INDEMNIFIED PARTIES") from and against all claims, costs, losses and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or resulting from the performance of the Work, provided that any such claim, cost, loss or damage:

.1 Is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the work itself), including the loss of use resulting therefrom, and

.2 Is caused in whole or in part by any negligent act or omission of CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, any person or organization directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform or furnish any of the work or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, regardless of whether or not caused in part by any negligence or omission of the INDEMNIFIED PARTIES hereunder or whether liability is imposed upon such INDEMNIFIED PARTY by laws and regulations regardless of the negligence of any such person or entity.

In the event that indemnification of the INDEMNIFIED PARTIES is prohibited by law, CONTRACTOR shall nonetheless be solely responsible for any liability arising out of or resulting from the performance of the Work, subject to the limitations set forth above, and shall indemnify and hold harmless the remaining INDEMNIFIED PARTIES, who may be legally indemnified, from such liability of the CONTRACTOR and the associated costs described above.

6.14.2 The indemnification obligation under paragraph 6.14.1 shall not be limited in any way by any limitation on the amount or type of damages, or compensation or benefits payable by or for CONTRACTOR or any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts or other employee benefit acts.

6.14.3 The obligations of CONTRACTOR under paragraph 6.14.1 shall not extend to the liability of OWNER, E/A, E/A's consultants, and their officers, directors, partners, employees or agents caused primarily by negligent preparation of maps, drawings, surveys, designs or specifications upon which is placed the applicable state-authorized design professional seal of OWNER's, E/A's or E/A's consultant's officers, directors, partners, employees or agents.

6.14.4 In the event CONTRACTOR fails to follow OWNER's directives concerning use of the

site, scheduling or course of construction, or engages in other conduct which proximately causes damage to property based on inverse condemnation or otherwise, then and in that event, CONTRACTOR shall indemnify OWNER against all costs resulting from such claims.

6.14.5 In the event CONTRACTOR unreasonably delays progress of the work being done by others on the site so as to cause loss for which OWNER becomes liable, then CONTRACTOR shall indemnify OWNER from and reimburse OWNER for such loss.

6.15 **Survival of Obligations**: All representations, indemnifications, warranties and guarantees made in, required by or given in accordance with the Contract Documents, as well as all continuing obligations indicated in the Contract Documents, will survive final payment, completion and acceptance of the Work and termination or completion of the Agreement.

6.16 **Losses from Natural Causes:** Unless otherwise specified, all loss or damage to CONTRACTOR arising out of the nature of the Work to be done or from action of the elements, floods or from unforeseeable circumstances in prosecution of the Work or from unusual obstructions or difficulties which may be encountered in prosecution of the Work, shall be sustained and borne by CONTRACTOR at its own cost and expense.

6.17 **Notice of Claim:** Should CONTRACTOR suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any error, omission or act of OWNER or of any of OWNER's employees or agents or others for whose acts OWNER is liable, a Claim must be made to the other party within thirty (30) calendar days of the event giving rise to such injury or damage. The provisions of this paragraph 6.17 shall not be construed as a substitute for or a waiver of the provisions of any applicable statute of limitations or statute of repose.

6.18 **Liquidated Damages:** CONTRACTOR or its Surety shall be liable for liquidated damages for the failure of the CONTRACTOR to timely complete the Work or any portion thereof within the Contract Time.

ARTICLE 7 - OTHER WORK

7.1 OWNER may perform other work related to the Project at the site by OWNER's own forces, or let other contracts therefor, or have other work performed by utility owners. CONTRACTOR and OWNER agree to and shall use best efforts to cooperate and coordinate the Work with others performing work and other work related to the Project in order to avoid conflicts and delays in the Work. If CONTRACTOR believes that delay or additional cost is involved because of such action by OWNER, CONTRACTOR may make a Claim as provided in Article 11 or 12.

7.2 CONTRACTOR shall afford other contractors who are in a contract with OWNER and each utility owner (and OWNER, if OWNER is performing the additional work with OWNER's employees) proper and safe access to the site and a reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of materials and equipment and the execution of such other work and shall properly connect and coordinate the Work with theirs. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR shall do all cutting, fitting and patching of the Work that may be required to make its several parts come together properly and integrate with such other work. CONTRACTOR shall not endanger any work of others by cutting, excavating or otherwise altering their work and will only cut or alter their work with the written consent of Owner's Representative and the other contractors whose work will be affected. CONTRACTOR shall promptly remedy damage wrongfully caused by CONTRACTOR to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the OWNER or separate contractors.

7.3 If the proper execution or results of any part of CONTRACTOR's Work depends upon work performed by others under this Article 7, CONTRACTOR shall inspect such other work and promptly report to Owner's Representative in writing any delays, defects or deficiencies in such other work that render it unavailable or unsuitable for the proper execution and results of CONTRACTOR's Work. CONTRACTOR's failure to report will constitute an acceptance of such

other work as fit and proper for integration with CONTRACTOR's Work except for latent or non-apparent defects and deficiencies in such other work.

7.4 OWNER shall provide for coordination of the activities of the OWNER's own forces and of each separate contractor with the Work of CONTRACTOR, who shall cooperate with them. CONTRACTOR shall participate with other separate contractors and Owner's Representative in reviewing their construction Progress Schedules when directed to do so. On the basis of such review, CONTRACTOR shall make any revisions to the construction Progress Schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The agreed upon construction Progress Schedules shall then constitute the Progress Schedules to be used by CONTRACTOR, separate contractors and OWNER until subsequently revised.

7.5 Costs caused by delays or by improperly timed activities or defective construction shall be borne by the party responsible therefor.

ARTICLE 8 - OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

8.1 Prior to the start of construction, OWNER will designate in writing a person or entity to act as Owner's Representative during construction. Except as otherwise provided in these General Conditions, OWNER shall issue all communications to CONTRACTOR through Owner's Representative.

8.2 OWNER will not supervise, direct, control or have authority over or be responsible for CONTRACTOR's means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures of construction or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto. OWNER is not responsible for any failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with laws and regulations applicable to furnishing or performing the Work. OWNER is not responsible for CONTRACTOR's failure to perform or furnish the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Failure or omission of OWNER to discover, or object to or condemn any defective Work or material shall not release CONTRACTOR from the obligation to properly and fully perform the Contract.

8.3 OWNER is not responsible for the acts or omissions of CONTRACTOR, or of any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or of any other person or organization performing or furnishing any of the Work. CONTRACTOR acknowledges and agrees that OWNER'S direction to perform Work in accordance with the approved Progress Schedule is not a demand for acceleration or a dictation of CONTRACTOR'S means or methods.

8.4 Information or services under the OWNER's control shall be furnished by the OWNER with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in orderly progress of the Work. The OWNER shall have a reasonable amount of time to investigate site conditions, review submittals, analyze requests for changes, and to make other decisions in the orderly administration of the Contract. CONTRACTOR must notify the OWNER in writing, if the time for the investigation, review, analysis of any submittals, required for changes or otherwise required for OWNER'S decision, impacts in any way the Critical Path of the approved Progress Schedule.

8.5 The foregoing are in addition to other duties and responsibilities of the OWNER enumerated herein and especially those in respect to Article 4 (Availability of Lands; Subsurface and Physical Conditions; Reference Points), Article 7 (Other Work) and Article 14 (Payments to CONTRACTOR and Completion).

8.6 **Notice of Claim:** Should OWNER suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any error, omission or act of CONTRACTOR or of any of CONTRACTOR's employees or agents or others for whose acts CONTRACTOR is liable, a Claim will be made to the other party within thirty (30) calendar days of receipt of actual or constructive notice of the event giving rise to such injury or damage. The provisions of this paragraph 8.6 shall not be construed as a substitute for or a waiver of the provisions of any applicable statute of limitations or statute of repose.

ARTICLE 9 - ENGINEER/ARCHITECT'S STATUS DURING CONSTRUCTION

9.1 E/A's Authority and Responsibilities:

9.1.1 The duties and responsibilities and the limitations of authority of E/A during construction, as set forth in the Contract Documents, may be assigned or assumed by the OWNER, but shall not be extended without written consent of OWNER and/or E/A. The assignment of any authority, duties or responsibilities to E/A under the Contract Documents, or under any agreement between OWNER and E/A, or any undertaking, exercise or performance thereof by E/A, is intended to be for the sole and exclusive benefit of OWNER and not for the benefit of CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, Supplier, or any other person or organization, or for any surety or employee or agent of any of them.

9.1.2 E/A will not supervise, direct, control or have authority over or be responsible for CONTRACTOR's means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto. E/A is not responsible for any failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with laws and regulations applicable to the furnishing or performing the Work. E/A is not responsible for CONTRACTOR's failure to perform or furnish the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Failure or omission of E/A to discover, or object to or condemn any defective Work or material shall not release CONTRACTOR from the obligation to properly and fully perform the Contract.

9.1.3 E/A is not responsible for the acts or omissions of CONTRACTOR, or of any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or of any other person or organization performing or furnishing any of the Work.

9.1.4 If OWNER and E/A agree, E/A will review the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation and all maintenance and operating instructions, schedules, guarantees, bonds and certificates of inspection, tests and approvals and other documentation required to be delivered by Article 14, but only to determine generally that their content complies with the requirements of, and in the case of certificates of inspections, tests and approvals that the results certified indicate compliance with, the Contract Documents.

9.1.5 The limitations upon authority and responsibility set forth in this paragraph 9.1 shall also apply to E/A's Consultants, Resident Project Representative and assistants.

9.2 E/A as Owner's Representative: E/A may be designated as the Owner's Representative under paragraph 8.1.

9.3 Visits to Site: If OWNER and E/A agree, E/A will make visits to the site at intervals appropriate to the various stages of construction as E/A deems necessary in order to observe as an experienced and qualified design professional the progress that has been made and the quality of the various aspects of CONTRACTOR's executed Work. Based on information obtained during such visits and observations, E/A will endeavor for the benefit of OWNER to determine, in general, if the Work is proceeding in accordance with the Contract Documents. E/A will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. E/A's efforts will be directed toward providing for OWNER a greater degree of confidence that the completed Work will conform generally to the Contract Documents. On the basis of such visits and on-site observations, E/A will keep OWNER informed of the progress of the Work and will endeavor to guard OWNER against defective Work. E/A's visits and on-site observations are subject to all the limitations on E/A's authority and responsibility set forth in paragraph 9.1.

9.4 Resident Project Representative: If OWNER and E/A agree, E/A will furnish a Resident Project Representative to assist E/A in providing more continuous observation of the Work. The responsibilities and authority and limitations of any such Resident Project Representative and assistants will be as provided in paragraph 9.1 and in the Supplemental General

Conditions. OWNER may designate another representative or agent to represent OWNER at the site who is not E/A, E/A's consultant, agent or employee.

9.5 Clarifications and Interpretations: E/A may determine that written clarifications or interpretations of the requirements of the Contract Documents (in the form of drawings or otherwise) are necessary. Such written clarifications or interpretations will be consistent with the intent of and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents, will be issued with reasonable promptness by Owner's Representative and will be binding on OWNER and CONTRACTOR. If OWNER or CONTRACTOR believes that a written clarification or interpretation justifies an adjustment in the Contract Amount or the Contract Times, OWNER or CONTRACTOR may make a Claim therefor as provided in Article 11 or 12.

9.6 Rejecting Defective Work: E/A will recommend that OWNER disapprove or reject Work which E/A believes to be defective, or believes will not produce a completed Project that conforms to the Contract Documents or will prejudice the integrity of the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents.

9.7 Shop Drawings: Refer to Division 1 for E/A's authority concerning Shop Drawings.

ARTICLE 10 - CHANGES IN THE WORK

10.1 Changes:

10.1.1 Without invalidating the Contract and without notice to any surety, OWNER may, at any time or from time to time, order additions, deletions or revisions in the Work. Such changes in the Work will be authorized by Change Order, Change Directive or Field Order. In the event that the OWNER and the CONRACTOR are unable to negotiate the terms of a Change Order for the performance of additional Work, the OWNER may, at its election, perform such additional Work with its own forces or with another contractor and such work will be considered "Other Work" in accordance with Article 7.

10.1.2 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents, and CONTRACTOR shall proceed promptly, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Change Directive or Field Order. CONTRACTOR’s proposals for changes in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Time shall be submitted within ten (10) Calendar Days of request by Owner’s Representative, including impacts to the approved Progress Schedule, unless Owner’s Representative grants an extension. OWNER will review each proposal and respond to CONTRACTOR within ten (10) Calendar Days. After review by OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall provide any supporting data requested by Owner’s Representative within seven (7) Calendar Days, unless Owner’s Representative grants an extension. OWNER will determine within seven (7) Calendar Days whether to pursue the change in Work.

10.1.3 CONTRACTOR shall not be entitled to an increase in the Contract Amount or an extension of the Contract Times with respect to any Work performed that is not required by the Contract Documents as amended, modified and supplemented as provided in paragraphs 3.3.1 and 3.3.2, except in the case of an emergency as provided in paragraph 6.11.5 or in the case of uncovering Work as provided in paragraph 13.4.

10.1.4 Except in the case of an emergency as provided in paragraph 6.11.5, a Change Order or Change Directive is required before CONTRACTOR commences any activities associated with a change in the Work which, in CONTRACTOR 's opinion, will result in a change in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Times.

10.1.5 If notice of any change affecting the general scope of the Work or the provisions of the Contract Documents (including, but not limited to, Contract Amount or Contract Times) is required by the provisions of any Bond to be given to a surety, the giving

of any such notice will be CONTRACTOR's responsibility, and the amount of each applicable Bond will be adjusted accordingly.

10.2 Change Orders:

10.2.1 OWNER and CONTRACTOR shall execute appropriate written Change Orders covering:

.1 a change in the Work;

.2 the amount of the adjustment in the Contract Amount, if any; and

.3 the extent of the adjustment in the Contract Time, if any.

10.2.2 An executed Change Order shall represent the complete, equitable, and final amount of adjustment in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Time owed to CONTRACTOR or OWNER as a result of the occurrence or event causing the change in the Work encompassed by the Change Order.

10.3 Change Directives:

10.3.1 Without invalidating the Contract, OWNER may, by written Change Directive, using the Force Account method, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions, the Contract Amount and Contract Time being adjusted as necessary. "Force Account" means a basis of payment for the direct performance of Work with payment based on the actual cost of the labor, equipment and materials furnished and consideration for overhead and profit as set forth in Section 11.5, below. A Change Directive shall be used in the absence of complete and prompt agreement on the terms of a Change Order. Where practicable, any items of Work that may be agreed upon, prior to the performance of Work under this Section, will be included in a separate Change Order. For example, the cost of the installation of additional asphalt may be agreed upon based on the unit prices in the Bid.

10.3.2 If the Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Amount, the adjustment shall be based on the method provided in paragraph 11.5.

10.3.3 A Change Directive shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded later by preparation and execution of an appropriate Change Order.

10.3.4 Upon receipt of a Change Directive, CONTRACTOR shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved, provided, prior to the commencement of any Work under this section, the CONTRACTOR must submit its proposed Work plan, anticipated schedule, and a list of its work force and equipment proposed to be used in the Work for OWNER'S approval. Upon such approval, CONTRACTOR must promptly commence and make continuous progress in the Work. The OWNER reserves the right to withhold payment for low production or lack of progress.

10.4 Field Order:

10.4.1 Owner's Representative may authorize minor variations in the Work from the requirements of the Contract Documents which do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Amount or the Contract Times and are compatible with the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents. These shall be accomplished by written Field Order and shall be binding on OWNER and on CONTRACTOR who shall perform the Work involved promptly.

10.4.2 If CONTRACTOR believes that a Field Order would require an adjustment in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Times, CONTRACTOR shall make a prompt written request to Owner's Representative for a Change Order. Any request by CONTRACTOR for an adjustment in Contract Amount and/or Contract Times must be made in writing prior to beginning the work covered by the Field Order.

10.5 No Damages for Delay: CONTRACTOR shall receive no compensation for delays or hindrances to the Work, except when direct and unavoidable extra cost to CONTRACTOR is caused by failure of OWNER to provide information or material, if any, which is to be furnished by OWNER or access to the Work and only to the extent that such acts continue after the CONTRACTOR furnishes OWNER with written notice of such failure. When such extra compensation is claimed a written statement thereof shall be presented by CONTRACTOR to OWNER and if by OWNER found correct shall be approved. If delay is caused by specific orders given by OWNER to stop work or by performance of extra Work or by failure of OWNER to provide material or necessary instructions for carrying on the Work, then such delay will entitle CONTRACTOR to an equivalent extension of time, CONTRACTOR's application for which shall, however, be subject to approval of OWNER. No such extension of time shall release CONTRACTOR or surety on its performance bond from all CONTRACTOR's obligations hereunder which shall remain in full force until discharge of the Contract. In no event shall the CONTRACTOR be entitled to any compensation or recovery of any special damages in connection with any delays, including without limitation: consequential damages, lost opportunity costs, impact damages, or other similar damages. The OWNER'S exercise of any of its rights or remedies under the Contract Documents (including without limitation ordering changes in the Work, or directing suspension, rescheduling, or correction of the Work), regardless of the extent or frequency of the OWNER'S exercise of such rights or remedies, shall not be construed as active interference in the CONTRACTOR'S performance of the Work. Except as otherwise provided herein, an extension of Contract Time, to the extent permitted under Article 12, shall be the sole remedy of the CONTRACTOR for any acknowledged delays.

ARTICLE 11 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT AMOUNT

11.1 The Contract Amount is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by OWNER to CONTRACTOR for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

11.2 The original Contract Amount may not be increased by more than twenty-five percent (25%) and it may not be decreased more than twenty-five percent (25%) without the consent of the CONTRACTOR to such decrease, except in the event of a termination for convenience under paragraph 15.2 or the failure of the City Council to appropriate sufficient funding for the Project, in which events it is agreed that the consent of the CONTRACTOR will not be required.

11.3 The Contract Amount shall only be changed by a Change Order. Any claim for an adjustment in the Contract Amount shall be made by Written Notice delivered by the party making the Claim to the other party promptly (but in no event later than thirty (30) calendar days) after the start of the occurrence or event giving rise to the Claim and stating the general nature of the Claim. Notice of the amount of the Claim with supporting data shall be delivered within thirty (30) calendar days after Written Notice of Claim is delivered by claimant, and shall represent that the adjustment claimed covers all known amounts to which claimant is entitled as a result of said occurrence or event. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR cannot otherwise agree, all Claims for adjustment in the Contract Amount shall be determined as set out in Article 16.

11.4 Determination of Value of Work:

11.4.1 The value of any Work covered by a Change Order for an adjustment in the Contract Amount will be determined by one or more of the following methods:

.1 by application of unit prices contained in the Contract Documents to the quantities of the items involved.

.2 by a mutually agreed unit price, or lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data, including documentation by subcontractors performing the work, to permit evaluation.

.3 by cost of Work plus CONTRACTOR's fee for all overhead costs and profit

(determined as provided in paragraph 11.5).

.4 No cost will be included in the change order for time spent preparing the change order, nor will costs be included for an estimate of time to negotiate the change order costs for machinery, tools, or equipment as described in subparagraph 11.5.3

11.4.2 Before using the method described in paragraph 11.4.1.3, OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree to negotiate a Change Order using the methods identified in paragraphs 11.4.1.1 and 11.4.1.2, as appropriate, to determine the adjustment in the Contract Amount.

11.5 Cost of Work: If neither of the methods defined in paragraphs 11.4.1.1 nor 11.4.1.2 can be agreed upon before a change in the Work is commenced which will result in an adjustment in the Contract Amount, then the change in the Work will be performed by Change Directive, using the Force Account method, and payment will be made as follows:

11.5.1 For all personnel, CONTRACTOR will receive actual field cost wage rates for each hour that said personnel are actually engaged in such Work, as substantiated by its certified payroll, to which will be added an amount equal to fifteen percent (15%) of the sum thereof as compensation for CONTRACTOR's total overhead, profit, and small tools. No separate charge will be made by CONTRACTOR or its Subcontractor(s) for organization or overhead expenses. In no case will the rate of wage be less than the minimum shown in the Contract for a particular category. CONTRACTOR will also receive an amount equal to 55% of the wages paid personnel, excluding the 15% compensation provided above, for CONTRACTOR's and any effected Subcontractor's cost of premiums on public liability insurance, workers' compensation insurance, social security and unemployment insurance. The cost for superintendence, project management, and other salaried employees are considered as included in the fifteen percent (15%) total overhead, profit, and small tools mark-up unless considered necessary and ordered by Owner.

11.5.2 CONTRACTOR will receive the actual cost, including freight charges, of the materials used and installed on such Work, to which costs will be added a sum equal to fifteen percent (15%) thereof as compensation for CONTRACTOR's and any affected Subcontractor's total overhead and profit. In case material invoices indicate a discount may be taken, the actual cost will be the invoice price minus the discount.

11.5.3 For machinery, trucks, power tools, or other similar equipment (the "equipment") agreed to be necessary by OWNER and CONTRACTOR, OWNER will allow CONTRACTOR the Regional and Model Year adjusted Monthly Ownership Cost divided by 176 plus the Hourly Estimated Operating Costs as given in the latest edition of the "Rental Rate Blue Book" as published by EquipmentWatch (1-800-669-3282) for each hour that said equipment is in use on such work. The established equipment rates will be paid for each hour that the equipment is utilized in the Work. In the event that the equipment is used intermittently during the Work, full payment for an eight-hour day will be made if the equipment is not idle more than four (4) hours of the day. If the equipment is idle more than four (4) hours in a day, then payment will be made only for the actual hours worked. No additional compensation will be allowed on the equipment for CONTRACTOR's or any affected Subcontractor's overhead and profit. OWNER may accept an actual rental invoice in lieu of the method of calculation set forth in paragraph 11.5.3 for equipment rented exclusively for Force Account Work or for equipment not included in the Rental Rate Blue Book.

11.5.4 For Subcontractors, CONTRACTOR will receive the approved actual invoice cost plus 5% as compensation for CONTRACTOR's total overhead and profit.

11.5.5 CONTRACTOR will receive an additional 1% of the total of 11.5.1, 11.5.2, 11.5.3, and 11.5.4 as compensation for increased bond costs.

11.5.6 The compensation, as herein provided for, shall be received by CONTRACTOR and any affected Subcontractor as payment in full for work done by Change Directive and will include use of small tools, and total overhead expense and profit. CONTRACTOR and Owner's Representative shall compare records of work done by Change Directive at the end of each day. Copies of these records will be made upon forms provided for this purpose by OWNER and signed by both Owner's Representative and CONTRACTOR, with one copy being retained by OWNER and one by CONTRACTOR. Refusal by CONTRACTOR to sign these records within two (2) working days of presentation does not invalidate the accuracy of the record.

11.6 Unit Price Work:

11.6.1 Where the Contract Documents provide that all or part of the Work is to be unit price Work, initially the Contract Amount will be deemed to include for all unit price work an amount equal to the sum of the established unit price for each separately identified item of unit price work times the estimated quantity of each item as indicated in the Bid. The estimated quantities of items of unit price work are not guaranteed and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids and determining an initial Contract Amount. Determinations of the actual quantities and classifications of unit price work performed by CONTRACTOR will be made by Owner's Representative. Owner's Representative will review with CONTRACTOR the preliminary determinations on such matters before rendering a written decision thereon (by recommendation of an Application for Payment or otherwise).

11.6.2 When "plan quantity" is indicated for a Bid item, CONTRACTOR shall be paid amount specified in the Contract Documents without any measurements.

11.6.3 Each unit price will be deemed to include an amount considered by CONTRACTOR to be adequate to cover CONTRACTOR's overhead and profit for each separately identified item.

11.6.4 A Major Item is any individual Bid item in the Bid that has a total cost equal to or greater than five percent (5%) of the original Contract Amount or $100,000, whichever is greater, computed on the basis of Bid quantities and Contract unit prices.

11.6.5 OWNER or CONTRACTOR may make a Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Amount in accordance with Article 11 if:

.1 the actual quantity of any Major Item should become as much as twenty percent (20%) more than or twenty percent (20%) less than that in the Bid; or

.2 CONTRACTOR presents documentation contesting accuracy of "plan quantity" and Owner's Representative verifies quantity and determines original value is in error by five percent (5%) or more;

Provided, however, in the event a Major Item is reduced by twenty percent (20%) or more of the amount in the Bid, no additional Article 11 profit or overhead will be added, if, due to other additions in the Work, the net value of the Contract Amount is not reduced.

ARTICLE 12 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT TIMES

12.1 Working Day and Calendar Day Contracts:

12.1.1 The Contract Times (or Milestones) may only be changed by Change Order or Time Extension Request duly executed by both CONTRACTOR and Owner's Representative. Any claim for an adjustment of the Contract Times (or Milestones) shall be made by Written Notice delivered by the party making the Claim to the other party promptly (but in no event later than thirty (30) calendar days after the start

of the occurrence or event giving rise to the delay) and stating the general nature of the delay. Notice of the extent of the delay with supporting data shall be delivered within thirty (30) calendar days after Written Notice of Claim is delivered by claimant, and shall represent that the adjustment claimed is the entire adjustment to which claimant is entitled as a result of said occurrence or event. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR cannot otherwise agree, all Claims for adjustment in the Contract Times (or Milestones) shall be determined as set out in Article 16. No Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Times (or Milestones) will be valid if not submitted in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph.

12.1.2 When CONTRACTOR is at fault and OWNER stops the Work, so that corrections in the Work can be made by CONTRACTOR, no extension in time will be allowed.

12.1.3 When CONTRACTOR is prevented from completing any part of the Work within the Contract Times (or Milestones) due to delay beyond the control of both OWNER and CONTRACTOR, an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones) in an amount equal to the time lost due to such delay shall be CONTRACTOR's sole and exclusive remedy for such delay. If performance by the CONTRACTOR or OWNER is interrupted by any occurrence not occasioned by its own conduct, whether such occurrence be an act of god or the result of war, riot, civil commotion, sovereign conduct, or the conduct of a third party, then such performance will be excused for a period of time necessary to remedy its effects, provided, however, in such an event, a conference will be held within three (3) business days to establish a proposed new Progress Schedule for the Project.

12.1.4 OWNER will consider time extension requests and may grant CONTRACTOR an extension of time because of:

.1 Changes ordered in the work which justify additional time.

.2 Failure of materials or products being at the Project site due to delays in transportation or failures of Suppliers, which are not the result of CONTRACTOR’s, Subcontractor’s or Supplier’s negligence. The request for an extension of time shall be supported by a citation of acts demonstrating that the delays are beyond CONTRACTOR's control, including, but not limited to, CONTRACTOR's efforts to overcome such delays documented as follows:

a) Copy of purchase order for delayed item(s) indicating date ordered by CONTRACTOR/ Subcontractor and date purchase order received by Supplier.

b) If item(s) require Shop Drawings or other submittal information in accordance with the Contract Documents, provide record of date submittal(s) forwarded to Owner's Representative, date submittal(s) returned to CONTRACTOR, and date submittal(s) forwarded to Supplier.

c) Copy of document(s) from Supplier, on Supplier's letterhead, indicating date(s) item(s) would be ready for shipment and/or actual shipment date(s).

d) Copies of all correspondence between CONTRACTOR / Subcontractor and Supplier indicating CONTRACTOR / Subcontractor's efforts to expedite item(s).

e) If item(s) are being purchased by a Subcontractor, provide correspondence, meeting notes, etc., that reflect CONTRACTOR's efforts with the Subcontractor to expedite delivery of the item(s).

.3 When acts of OWNER, E/A, utility owners or other contractors employed by OWNER delay progress of work through no fault of CONTRACTOR. The CONTRACTOR will only be entitled to an extension of time for delays that affect

the Critical Path of the Work and that are not caused by the CONTRACTOR.

.4 When CONTRACTOR is delayed by strikes, lockouts, fires, losses from natural causes, or other unavoidable cause or causes beyond CONTRACTOR's control.

12.2 Calendar Day Contracts:

12.2.1 Under a Calendar Day Contract, CONTRACTOR may be granted an extension of time because of unusual inclement weather, including but not limited to unusual rainfall events, which are beyond the normal rainfall recorded and expected for Kyle, Texas. However, the CONTRACTOR will not be granted an extension of time for "normal rainfall", as described below.

12.2.2 "Unusual Inclement Weather" is defined as a rain event or other weather related event which occurs at the site and is of sufficient magnitude to prevent CONTRACTOR from performing units of Work critical to maintaining the Progress Schedule.

12.2.3 Baseline Rain Day Determination. "Normal rainfall" compiled by the State climatologist, based on U.S. Weather Bureau Records for Kyle, Texas, is considered a part of the Calendar Day Contract, and is not a justification for an extension of time. Listed below are the number of days in each month for which no compensatory days for rainfall events ("Rain Days") in such months may be claimed:

January..... 8 days

February..... 8 days

March..... 7 days

April..... 7 days

May..... 9 days

June..... 6 days

July..... 5 days

August..... 5 days

September..... 7 days

October..... 7 days

November..... 7 days

December..... 7 days

Rain Days in addition to the baseline Rain Day determination described above will be measured with the Owner's Representative's approval at the nearest operational public weather data collection facility to the site, including but not limited to the OWNER's early warning flood gauge system.

12.2.4 CONTRACTOR may receive credit in any month for Unusual Inclement Weather, and specifically for any Rain Days in that month which exceed the number of Rain Days allocated to that month, if a Claim is made in accordance with paragraph 12.1.1 and the weather event meets the definition for "Unusual Inclement Weather", and as applicable, "Rain Day" and such claimed day is a day on which Work critical to maintaining the Progress Schedule is scheduled to be performed and is otherwise capable of being performed.

ARTICLE 13 - TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK

13.1 Notice of Defects: Prompt notice of all defective Work of which OWNER or E/A has actual knowledge will be given to CONTRACTOR. All defective Work may be rejected, corrected or accepted as provided in Article 13. CONTRACTOR must give OWNER and E/A prompt notice of any defective Work of which CONTRACTOR has actual knowledge.

13.2 Access to Work: OWNER, E/A, E/A's Consultants, other representatives and personnel of OWNER, independent testing laboratories and governmental agencies having jurisdiction will have access to the Work at reasonable times for observing, inspecting and testing. CONTRACTOR shall provide them proper and safe conditions for such access, and advise them of CONTRACTOR's site safety procedures and programs so that they may comply therewith as applicable.

13.3 Tests and Inspections:

13.3.1 CONTRACTOR shall give timely notice of readiness of the Work for all required inspections, tests or approvals, and shall cooperate with inspection and testing personnel to facilitate required inspections or tests.

13.3.2 OWNER shall employ and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory to perform all inspections, tests or approvals required by the Contract Documents except:

.1 for inspections, tests or approvals covered by paragraphs 13.3.3 and 13.3.4 below;

.2 that costs incurred for tests or inspections conducted pursuant to paragraph 13.4.3 shall be paid as provided in paragraph 13.4.3;

.3 for reinspecting or retesting defective Work, including any associated costs incurred by the testing laboratory for cancelled tests or standby time; and

.4 as otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

13.3.3 If laws or regulations of any public body having jurisdiction require any Work (or part thereof) specifically to be inspected, tested or approved by an employee or other representative of such public body, CONTRACTOR shall assume full responsibility for arranging and obtaining such inspections, tests or approvals, pay all costs in connection therewith and furnish Owner's Representative the required certificates of inspection or approval.

13.3.4 CONTRACTOR shall also be responsible for arranging and obtaining and shall pay all costs in connection with any inspections, tests or approvals required for OWNER's and E/A's review of submittals covering materials, equipment, and mix designs to be incorporated in the Work.

13.3.5 All testing laboratories shall meet the requirements of ASTM E-329.

13.4 Uncovering Work:

13.4.1 If any Work (or the work of others) that is to be inspected, tested or approved is covered by CONTRACTOR without written concurrence of Owner's Representative, or if any Work is covered contrary to the written request of Owner's Representative, it must, if requested by Owner's Representative, be uncovered and recovered at CONTRACTOR's expense.

13.4.2 Uncovering Work as provided in paragraph 13.4.1 shall be at CONTRACTOR's expense unless CONTRACTOR has given Owner's Representative timely notice of CONTRACTOR's intention to cover the same and Owner's Representative has not

acted within five (5) working days to such notice.

13.4.3 If Owner's Representative considers it necessary or advisable that covered Work be observed, inspected or tested, CONTRACTOR shall uncover, expose or otherwise make available for observation, inspection or testing that portion of the Work in question, furnishing all necessary labor, material and equipment. If it is found that such Work is defective, CONTRACTOR shall pay all claims, costs, losses and damages caused by, arising out of or resulting from such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection and testing and of satisfactory replacement or reconstruction (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others); and OWNER shall be entitled to an appropriate decrease in the Contract Amount, and may make a Claim therefor as provided in Article 11. If, however, such Work is not found to be defective, CONTRACTOR shall be allowed an increase in the Contract Amount or an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones), or both, directly attributable to such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection, testing, replacement and reconstruction; and CONTRACTOR may make a Claim therefor as provided in Articles 11 and 12.

13.5 OWNER May Stop the Work:

13.5.1 If the Work is defective, or CONTRACTOR fails to supply sufficient skilled workers, suitable materials, and/or equipment; or fails to furnish or perform the Work in such a way that the Work in progress or the completed Work will conform to the Contract Documents, OWNER may order CONTRACTOR to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, this right of OWNER to stop the Work shall not give rise to any duty on the part of OWNER to exercise this right for the benefit of CONTRACTOR or any surety or other party.

13.5.2 If CONTRACTOR fails to correct defective Work or submit a satisfactory plan to take corrective action, with procedure and time schedule, OWNER may order CONTRACTOR to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until cause for such order has been eliminated, or take any other action permitted by this Contract. A notice to stop the Work, based on defects, shall not stop calendar or working days charged to the Project.

13.6 Correction or Removal of Defective Work: If required by OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall promptly, as directed, either correct all defective Work, whether or not fabricated, installed or completed, or, if the Work has been rejected by Owner's Representative, remove it from the site and replace it with Work that is not defective. CONTRACTOR shall correct or remove and replace defective Work, or submit a plan of action detailing how the deficiency will be corrected, within the time frame identified in the notice of defective Work. CONTRACTOR shall pay all claims, costs, losses and damages caused by or resulting from such correction or removal (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others).

13.7 Warranty period:

13.7.1 If within one year after the date of Substantial Completion or such longer period of time as may be prescribed by laws or regulations or by the terms of any applicable special guarantee required by the Contract Documents or by any specific provision of the Contract Documents (e.g. paragraph 14.11.2), any Work, including work performed after the Substantial Completion date, is found to be defective, CONTRACTOR shall promptly, without cost to OWNER and in accordance with OWNER's written instructions:

(i) correct such defective Work, or, if it has been rejected by OWNER, remove it from the site and replace it with Work that is not defective, and

(ii) satisfactorily correct or remove and replace any damage to other Work or the work of others resulting therefrom.

If CONTRACTOR does not promptly comply with the terms of such instructions, or in an emergency where delay would cause serious risk of loss or damage, OWNER may have the defective Work corrected or the rejected Work removed and replaced, and all claims, costs, losses and damages caused by or resulting from such removal and replacement (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others) will be paid by CONTRACTOR. The warranty period will be deemed to be renewed and recommenced in connection with the completed items of Work requiring correction.

13.7.2 In special circumstances where a particular item of equipment is placed in continuous service before Substantial Completion of all the Work, the warranty period for that item may start to run from an earlier date if so provided in the Contract Documents.

13.7.3 If correction of defective Work will affect the function or use of the facility CONTRACTOR shall not proceed with correction of defective Work without prior coordination and approval of OWNER.

13.7.4 The obligations of the CONTRACTOR to perform warranty work will survive the acceptance of the Work and any termination of the Contract.

13.8 Acceptance of Defective Work: If, instead of requiring correction or removal and replacement of defective Work, OWNER decides to accept it, OWNER may do so. CONTRACTOR shall pay all claims, costs, losses and damages attributable to OWNER's evaluation of and determination to accept such defective Work. If any such acceptance occurs prior to recommendation of final payment, a Change Order will be issued incorporating the necessary revisions in the Contract Documents and compensating OWNER for the diminished value of the defective Work. If the acceptance occurs after such recommendation, an appropriate amount will be paid by CONTRACTOR to OWNER after a calculation by OWNER of the diminution in value of the defective Work.

13.9 OWNER May Correct Defective Work: If CONTRACTOR fails within a reasonable time after Written Notice of OWNER to correct defective Work, or to remove and replace rejected Work, or if CONTRACTOR fails to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, or if CONTRACTOR fails to comply with any other provision of the Contract Documents, OWNER may, after seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to CONTRACTOR, correct and remedy any such deficiency. If, in the opinion of the Owner's Representative, significant progress has not been made during this seven (7) calendar day period to correct the deficiency, the OWNER may exercise any actions necessary to remedy the deficiency. In exercising the rights and remedies under this paragraph, OWNER shall proceed expeditiously. In connection with such corrective and remedial action, OWNER may exclude CONTRACTOR from all or part of the site, take possession of all or part of the Work, and suspend CONTRACTOR's services related thereto, and incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the site or for which OWNER has paid CONTRACTOR but which are stored elsewhere. CONTRACTOR shall allow OWNER, its agents and employees, OWNER's other contractors, E/A and E/A's consultants access to the site to enable OWNER to exercise the rights and remedies under this paragraph. All claims, costs, losses and damages incurred or sustained by OWNER in exercising such rights and remedies will be charged against CONTRACTOR and a Change Order will be issued incorporating the necessary revisions in the Contract Documents with respect to the Work. Such claims, costs, losses and damages will include but not be limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others destroyed or damaged by correction, removal or replacement of CONTRACTOR's defective Work. CONTRACTOR shall not be allowed an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones), or claims of damage because of any delay in the performance of the Work attributable to the exercise by OWNER of OWNER's rights and remedies hereunder.

ARTICLE 14 - PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR AND COMPLETION

14.1 Application for Progress Payment:

14.1.1 Within 45 days from when the work was performed by the Contractor and Subcontractors, but not more often than once a month, CONTRACTOR shall submit to Owner's Representative for review an Application for Payment, in a form acceptable to OWNER, filled out and signed by CONTRACTOR covering the Work completed as of the date of the Application and accompanied by such supporting documentation as is required by the Contract Documents.

14.1.2 Such applications shall not include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work which have been properly authorized by Change Directives but not yet included in Change Orders.

14.1.3 Such applications shall not include requests for payment of amounts the CONTRACTOR does not intend to pay to a Subcontractor or Supplier because of a dispute or other reason.

14.1.4 If payment is requested on the basis of materials or equipment not incorporated in the Work but delivered and suitably stored at the site or at another location agreed to in writing, the Application for Payment shall be accompanied by such bills of sale, data and other procedures satisfactory to OWNER substantiating OWNER's title to such materials or equipment or otherwise protecting OWNER's interest. Payment on account of such materials or equipment will not include any amount for CONTRACTOR's overhead or profit or relieve CONTRACTOR of its obligation to protect and install such materials or equipment in accordance with the requirements of the Contract and to restore damaged or defective Work. If materials or equipment are stored at another location, at the direction of the OWNER they shall be stored in a bonded and insured facility, accessible to E/A and OWNER, and shall be clearly marked as property of OWNER. Title to materials delivered to the site of the Work or a staging area will pass to OWNER upon payment by OWNER without the necessity for further documentation. Risk of loss will not pass to OWNER until acceptance.

14.1.5 OWNER will pay CONTRACTOR total amount of approved Application for Payment, less five percent (5%) of amount thereof, which five percent (5%) will be retained until final payment, less all previous payments and less all other sums that may be retained by OWNER under the terms of this Agreement. If the Work is near completion and delay occurs due to no fault or neglect of CONTRACTOR, OWNER may pay a portion of the retained amount to CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR, at OWNER's option, may be relieved of the obligation to complete the Work and, thereupon, CONTRACTOR shall receive payment of the balance due under the Contract subject to the conditions stated under paragraph 15.2. A Subcontractor may submit a written request to the CONTRACTOR and Project Manager requesting release of retainage for work by the Subcontractor that has been completed and approved. The Project Manager will evaluate the request and if it is approved, the Project Manager will request the CONTRACTOR to include the request for release of an appropriate amount of retainage in the next Pay Application.

14.1.6 Applications for Payment shall include the following documentation:

.1 updated Progress Schedule;

.2 monthly subcontractor report;

.3 any other documentation required under the Supplemental General Conditions.

14.2 CONTRACTOR's Warranty of Title: CONTRACTOR warrants and guarantees that title to all Work, materials and equipment covered by any Application for Payment, whether incorporated in the Project or not, will pass to OWNER free and clear of all Liens no later than the time of payment to CONTRACTOR.

14.3 Review of Applications for Progress Payment:

14.3.1 Owner's Representative will, within seven (7) calendar days after receipt of each Application for Payment, either indicate a recommendation for payment and forward the Application for processing by OWNER, or return the Application to CONTRACTOR indicating Owner's Representative's reasons for refusing to recommend payment. In the latter case, CONTRACTOR shall make the necessary corrections and resubmit the Application.

14.3.2 Owner's Representative's recommendation of any payment requested in an Application for Payment will constitute a representation by Owner's Representative, based upon Owner's Representative's on-site observations of the executed Work and on Owner's Representative's review of the Application for Payment and the accompanying data and schedules, that to the best of Owner's Representative's knowledge, information and belief:

.1 the Work has progressed to the point indicated; and

.2 the quality of the Work is generally in accordance with the Contract Documents (subject to an evaluation of the Work as a functioning whole prior to or upon Substantial Completion, to the results of any subsequent tests called for in the Contract Documents, to a final determination of quantities and classifications for unit price Work, and to any other qualifications stated in the recommendation).

14.3.3 By recommending any such payment, Owner's Representative will not thereby be deemed to have represented that:

.1 exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections have been made to check the quality or the quantity of the Work;

.2 examination has been made to ascertain how or for what purpose CONTRACTOR has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Amount;

.3 CONTRACTOR's construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures have been reviewed; or

.4 that there may not be other matters or issues between the parties that might entitle CONTRACTOR to be paid additionally by OWNER or entitle OWNER to withhold payment to CONTRACTOR.

14.4 Decisions to Withhold Payment:

14.4.1 OWNER may withhold or nullify the whole or part of any payment to such extent as may be necessary on account of:

.1 defective Work not remedied;

.2 third party Claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such Claims;

.3 failure of CONTRACTOR to make payments properly to Subcontractors for labor, materials or equipment;

.4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Amount;

.5 damage to OWNER or another contractor;

.6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay;

.7 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit a schedule of values in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.8 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit a submittal schedule in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.9 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit and update a construction Progress Schedule in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.10 failure of CONTRACTOR to maintain a record of changes on drawings and documents;

.11 failure of CONTRACTOR to maintain weekly payroll reports and, as applicable, provide copies of reports in a timely manner upon request of OWNER;

.12 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit monthly subcontractor reports;

.13 CONTRACTOR's neglect or unsatisfactory prosecution of the Work, including failure to clean up;

.14 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit accurate pay application.

.15 failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with any provision of the Contract Documents.

14.4.2 When the above reasons for withholding payment are removed, CONTRACTOR shall resubmit a statement for the value of Work performed. Payment will be made within thirty (30) calendar days of receipt of approved Application for Payment.

14.4.3 Subcontractors may request Partial Payment when the OWNER withholds payment of an invoice to the CONTRACTOR for any reason listed in Section 14.4.1. If payment is withheld by the OWNER, the CONTRACTOR shall notify all affected Subcontractors within two (2) working days of notice that payment is being withheld. Upon notification, Subcontractors may submit a formal written request for Partial Payment to the CONTRACTOR and OWNER. If directed by the OWNER, the CONTRACTOR shall within three (3) working days resubmit to the OWNER an invoice for the same period that includes only the work performed by the requesting Subcontractors during this period. The OWNER will review this resubmitted invoice in accordance with Section 14.3.1. Upon receipt of payment for the resubmitted invoice, CONTRACTOR shall pay the subcontractor within ten
(10) Calendar Days in accordance with Section 6.4.7.

14.5 Delayed Payments: Should OWNER fail to make payment to CONTRACTOR of sum named in any Application for Payment within thirty (30) calendar days after the day on which OWNER received the mutually acceptable Application for Payment, then OWNER will pay to CONTRACTOR, in addition to sum shown as due by such Application for Payment, interest thereon at the rate specified in Government Code, Section 2251.025(b) from date due until fully paid, which shall fully liquidate any injury to CONTRACTOR growing out of such delay in payment.

14.6 Arrears: No money shall be paid by OWNER upon any claim, debt, demand or account whatsoever, to any person, firm or corporation who is in arrears to City for taxes; and City shall be entitled to counterclaim and automatically offset against any such debt, claim, demand or account in the amount of taxes so in arrears and no assignment or transfer of such debt, claim, demand or account after said taxes are due, shall affect the right of OWNER to so offset said taxes, and associated penalties and interest if applicable, against the same.

14.7 Substantial Completion:

14.7.1 When the CONTRACTOR considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the OWNER agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the CONTRACTOR shall notify Owner's Representative and request a determination as to whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If Owner's Representative does not consider the Work substantially complete, Owner's Representative will notify CONTRACTOR giving reasons therefor. After performing any required Work, CONTRACTOR shall then submit another request for Owner's Representative to determine Substantial Completion. If Owner's Representative considers the Work substantially complete, Owner's Representative will prepare and deliver a certificate of Substantial Completion which shall establish the date of Substantial Completion, shall include a punch list of items to be completed or corrected before final payment, shall establish the time within which CONTRACTOR shall finish the punch list, and shall establish responsibilities of the OWNER and CONTRACTOR for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work, warranty and insurance. Failure to include an item on the punch list does not alter the responsibility of CONTRACTOR to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. If a Certificate of Occupancy is required by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work, said certificate shall be issued before the Work or any portion thereof is considered substantially complete. The certificate of Substantial Completion shall be signed by OWNER and CONTRACTOR to evidence acceptance of the responsibilities assigned to them in such certificate.

14.7.2 OWNER shall have the right to exclude CONTRACTOR from the Work after the date of Substantial Completion, but OWNER will allow CONTRACTOR reasonable access to complete or correct items on the punch list and complete warranty work.

14.8 Partial Utilization: Use by OWNER, at OWNER's option, of any substantially completed part of the Work which: (i) has specifically been identified in the Contract Documents, or (ii) OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree constitutes a separately functioning and usable part of the Work that can be used by OWNER for its intended purpose without significant interference with CONTRACTOR's performance of the remainder of the Work, may be accomplished prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work in accordance with the following:

14.8.1 OWNER at any time may request CONTRACTOR to permit OWNER to use any such part of the Work which OWNER believes to be ready for its intended use and substantially complete. If CONTRACTOR agrees that such part of the Work is substantially complete, CONTRACTOR shall certify to Owner's Representative that such part of the Work is substantially complete and request Owner's Representative to issue a certificate of substantial Completion for that part of the Work. CONTRACTOR at any time may notify Owner's Representative that CONTRACTOR considers any such part of the Work ready for its intended use and substantially complete and request Owner's Representative to issue a certificate of Substantial Completion for that part of the Work. The provisions of paragraphs 14.7.1 and 14.7.2 will apply with respect to certification of Substantial Completion

of that part of the Work and the division of responsibility in respect thereof and access thereto.

14.8.2 Such partial utilization is authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work.

14.9 Final Inspection: Upon Written Notice from CONTRACTOR that the entire Work or an agreed portion thereof is complete, Owner's Representative will make a final inspection with CONTRACTOR and provide Written Notice of all particulars in which this inspection reveals that the Work is incomplete or defective. CONTRACTOR shall immediately take such measures as are necessary to complete such Work or remedy such deficiencies.

14.10 Final Application for Payment: CONTRACTOR may make application for final payment following the procedure for progress payments after CONTRACTOR has completed all such corrections to the satisfaction of Owner's Representative and delivered the following documents:

14.10.1 Affidavit by CONTRACTOR certifying the payment of all debts and claims;

14.10.2 Three (3) complete operating and maintenance manuals, each containing maintenance and operating instructions, schedules, guarantees, and other documentation required by the Contract Documents;

14.10.3 Record documents (as provided in paragraph 6.10);

14.10.4 Consent of surety, if any, to final payment. If surety is not provided, complete and legally effective releases or waivers (satisfactory to OWNER) of all claims arising out of or filed in connection with the Work;

14.10.5 Certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Supplemental General Conditions will remain in force after final payment and through the warranty period;

14.10.6 Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (After Construction);

14.10.7 Documentation of notice to claimants, to the extent applicable and subject to subparagraph 14.11.4;

14.10.8 Project As-Built Drawings;

14.10.9 Proof of performance Bond extension through warranty period, if a performance Bond was required; and

14.10.10 Any other documentation called for in the Contract Documents.

14.11 Final Payment and Acceptance:

14.11.1 If, on the basis of observation of the Work during construction, final inspection, and review of the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation as required by the Contract Documents, Owner's Representative is satisfied that the Work has been completed and CONTRACTOR's other obligations under the Contract Documents have been fulfilled and there are no outstanding claims, Owner's Representative will recommend the final Application for Payment and thereby notify the OWNER, who will pay to CONTRACTOR the balance due CONTRACTOR under the terms of the Contract. If the sole remaining unfinished item to complete the Work is the reestablishment of vegetation, CONTRACTOR may execute a revegetation letter with fiscal posted (letter of credit) to ensure completion of this item. This Work must be accomplished within one hundred twenty (120) Calendar Days of the date of Final Completion of the Work. When the permanent erosion control has been established, OWNER will initiate an inspection for final acceptance of the erosion controls. If the revegetation is not completed within the one hundred twenty (120) Calendar Days, OWNER, at its option, may complete the Work using the posted fiscal.

14.11.2 If the Contract measures Contract Time to Final Completion, rather than Substantial Completion, Owner's Representative will issue a letter of final acceptance to CONTRACTOR which establishes the Final Completion date and initiates the one-year warranty period. If the sole remaining unfinished item to complete the Work is the reestablishment of vegetation and CONTRACTOR has executed a revegetation letter with fiscal posted (letter of credit) to ensure completion of this item, the Owner's Representative will issue a letter of conditional acceptance to CONTRACTOR which established the Final Completion date and initiates the one-year warranty period.

14.11.3 Final payment is considered to have taken place when CONTRACTOR or any of its representatives negotiates OWNER's final payment check, whether labeled final or not, for cash or deposits check in any financial institution for its monetary return.

14.11.4 The OWNER will withhold funds sufficient to cover the amount of any unresolved contract claims from final payment for six months under the following limited conditions:

.1 CONTRACTOR must provide written notice to the claimant (via certified mail or hand delivery) that (i) OWNER will hold funds in the amount of the disputed claim for six (6) months from the date of the receipt of the notice and (ii) CONTRACTOR and the claimant have certain alternative dispute resolution rights; and

.2 CONTRACTOR must provide OWNER with a copy of the receipted notice.

Provided the claimant has received notice under this section, OWNER will release the withheld funds, if the CONTRACTOR provides a bond in substantial compliance with the provisions of Section 52.231 of the Texas Property Code; when the OWNER receives a settlement or release of the claim with accompanying instructions regarding payment; upon resolution of the claim in litigation, if suit is filed within such six (6) month period and the OWNER receives written notice of such filing; or when such six (6) month period has passed, if no such bond, settlement, release, or notice of filing of suit have been received. The above provisions notwithstanding, if efforts to timely resolve a disputed claim are not being made to OWNER'S reasonable satisfaction, OWNER may, in its complete discretion, file an interpleader action and deposit the withheld funds in the registry of a court of competent jurisdiction. In addition, CONTRACTOR must include a provision in each of its subcontracts that the prevailing party in any litigation arising thereunder will be entitled to recover its costs of court and reasonable attorney's fees.

14.12 Waiver of Claims: The making and acceptance of final payment will constitute:

14.12.1 a waiver of claims by OWNER against CONTRACTOR, except claims arising from unsettled claims, from defective Work appearing after final inspection, from failure to comply with the Contract Documents or the terms of any warranty specified therein, or from CONTRACTOR's continuing obligations under the Contract Documents; and

14.12.2 a waiver of all claims by CONTRACTOR against OWNER other than those previously made in writing and still unsettled.

ARTICLE 15 - SUSPENSION OF WORK AND TERMINATION

15.1 OWNER May Suspend Work Without Cause: At any time and without cause, OWNER may suspend the Work or any portion thereof for a period of not more than ninety (90) calendar days by Written Notice to CONTRACTOR which will fix the date on which the Work will be resumed. CONTRACTOR shall resume the Work on the date so fixed. CONTRACTOR shall be allowed an adjustment in the Contract Amount or an extension of the Contract Times, or both, directly attributable to any such suspension if CONTRACTOR makes an approved Claim therefor as provided in Articles 11 and 12.

15.2 OWNER May Terminate Without Cause: Upon seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to CONTRACTOR, OWNER may, without cause and without prejudice to any right or remedy of OWNER, elect to terminate the Agreement. In such case, CONTRACTOR shall be paid (without duplication of any items):

15.2.1 for completed and acceptable Work executed in accordance with the Contract Documents prior to the effective date of termination;

15.2.2 for reasonable demobilization costs; and

15.2.3 for anticipated profits on completed and accepted Work not previously paid and not included in separate pay items calculated to date of termination but not for anticipated profit on the entire Contract not previously paid, unabsorbed overhead, or lost opportunity.

15.3 OWNER May Terminate With Cause:

15.3.1 Upon the occurrence of any one or more of the following events:

.1 if CONTRACTOR persistently fails to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.2 if CONTRACTOR disregards laws or regulations of any public body having jurisdiction;

.3 if CONTRACTOR disregards the authority of Owner's Representative;

.4 if CONTRACTOR makes fraudulent statements;

.5 if CONTRACTOR fails to maintain a work force adequate to accomplish the Work within the Contract Time;

.6 if CONTRACTOR fails to make adequate progress and endangers successful completion of the Contract; or

.7 if CONTRACTOR otherwise violates in any substantial way any provisions of the Contract Documents;

OWNER may, after giving CONTRACTOR (and the surety, if any) seven (7) calendar days Written Notice terminate the services of CONTRACTOR. OWNER, at its option, may proceed with negotiation with surety for completion of the Work. Alternatively, OWNER may under these circumstances exclude CONTRACTOR from the site and take possession of the Work (without liability to CONTRACTOR for trespass or conversion), incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the site or for which OWNER has paid CONTRACTOR but which are stored elsewhere, and finish the Work as OWNER may deem expedient. In such case CONTRACTOR shall not be entitled to receive any further payment until the Work is finished. If the unpaid balance of the Contract Amount exceeds all claims, costs,

losses and damages sustained by OWNER arising out of or resulting from completing the Work, such excess will be paid to CONTRACTOR. If such claims, costs, losses and damage exceed such unpaid balance, CONTRACTOR or surety shall pay the difference to OWNER. In the event that a termination for cause is found to be wrongful, the termination shall be converted to a termination without cause as set forth in Section 15.2 and CONTRACTOR'S remedy for wrongful termination is limited to the recovery of the payments permitted for termination without cause as set forth in Section 15.2.

15.3.2 Where CONTRACTOR's services have been so terminated by OWNER, the termination will not affect any rights or remedies of OWNER against CONTRACTOR and surety then existing or which may thereafter accrue. Any retention or payment of moneys due CONTRACTOR by OWNER will not release CONTRACTOR from liability. In the event OWNER terminates Contract with cause, OWNER may reject any and all Bids submitted by CONTRACTOR for up to three (3) years after the date of such termination.

15.4 CONTRACTOR May Stop Work or Terminate: If through no act or fault of CONTRACTOR, the Work is suspended for a period of more than ninety (90) calendar days by OWNER or under an order of court or other public authority, or (except during disputes) Owner's Representative fails to forward for processing any mutually acceptable Application for Payment within thirty (30) calendar days after it is submitted, or (except during disputes) OWNER fails for sixty (60) calendar days after it is submitted to pay CONTRACTOR any sum finally determined by OWNER to be due, then CONTRACTOR may, upon seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to OWNER, and provided OWNER does not remedy such suspension or failure within that time, terminate the Agreement and recover from OWNER payment on the same terms as provided in paragraph 15.2. In lieu of terminating the Agreement and without prejudice to any other right or remedy, if (except during disputes) Owner's Representative has failed to forward for processing any mutually acceptable Application for Payment within thirty (30) calendar days after it is submitted, or (except during disputes) OWNER has failed for sixty (60) calendar days after it is submitted to pay CONTRACTOR any sum finally determined by OWNER to be due, CONTRACTOR may upon seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to OWNER stop the Work until payment of all such amounts due CONTRACTOR, including interest thereon. The provisions of this paragraph 15.4 are not intended to preclude CONTRACTOR from making a Claim under Articles 11 and 12 for an increase in Contract Amount or Contract Times or otherwise for expenses or damage directly attributable to CONTRACTOR's stopping Work as permitted by this paragraph.

15.5 Discretionary Notice to Cure: In its complete discretion, OWNER may, but is not required to, provide a Notice to Cure to CONTRACTOR and its surety to cure an event of default described above and/or an anticipatory breach of contract and, if required by OWNER, to attend a meeting with OWNER, regarding the Notice to Cure, the event of default, and/or the anticipatory breach of contract. The Notice to Cure will set forth the time limit in which the cure is to be completed or commenced and diligently prosecuted. Upon receipt of any Notice to Cure, CONTRACTOR shall prepare a report describing its program and measures to affect the cure of the event of default and/or anticipatory breach of contract within the time required by the Notice to Cure. The CONTRACTOR'S report must be delivered to OWNER at least three (3) days prior to any requested meeting with the OWNER and surety.

15.6 Bankruptcy: If CONTRACTOR declares bankruptcy or is adjudged bankrupt or makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors or if a receiver is appointed for the benefit of creditors or if a receiver is appointed by reason of CONTRACTOR'S insolvency, CONTRACTOR may be unable to perform this Contract in accordance with the Contract

requirements. In such an event, OWNER may demand CONTRACTOR or its successor in interest provide OWNER with adequate assurance of CONTRACTOR'S future performance in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract. If CONTRACTOR fails to provide adequate assurance of future performance to OWNER'S reasonable satisfaction within ten (10) days of such a request, OWNER may terminate the CONTRACTOR'S services for cause or without cause, as set forth above. If CONTRACTOR fails to provide timely adequate assurance of its performance and actual performance, OWNER may prosecute the Work with its own forces or with other contractors on a time and material or other appropriate basis and the cost of which will be charged against the Contract balance.

15.7 Duty to Mitigate: In the event of any termination or suspension under this Contract, the CONTRACTOR agrees to and shall take all reasonable actions to mitigate its damages and any and all claims which may be asserted against the OWNER.

15.8 Responsibility during Demobilization: While demobilizing, the CONTRACTOR will take all necessary and reasonable actions to preserve and protect the Work, the site and other property of the OWNER or others at the site.

ARTICLE 16 - DISPUTE RESOLUTION

16.1 Filing of Claims:

16.1.1 Claims arising from the circumstances identified in paragraphs 3.2, 4.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.4, 6.4.2, 6.11.5.2, 6.17, 7.5, 8.6, 9.5, 10.4.2, 13.4.3, 13.8, 13.9, 15.1, 15.2, 15.3, or 15.4, or other occurrences or events, shall be made by Written Notice delivered by the party making the Claim to the other party within thirty (30) calendar days after the start of the occurrence or event giving rise to the Claim and stating the general nature of the Claim. Notice of the amount of the Claim with supporting data shall be delivered in writing within thirty (30) calendar days after Written Notice of Claim is delivered by claimant and shall represent that the adjustment claimed covers all known amounts and/or extensions of time to which claimant is entitled.

16.1.2 Within thirty (30) calendar days of receipt of notice of the amount of the Claim with supporting data, Owner's Representative and CONTRACTOR shall meet to discuss the Claim, after which an offer of settlement or notification of no settlement offer will be made to claimant. If claimant is not satisfied with the proposal presented, claimant shall have thirty (30) calendar days in which to: (i) submit additional supporting data requested by the other party; (ii) modify the initial Claim; or (iii) request Alternative Dispute Resolution.

16.2 Alternative Dispute Resolution:

16.2.1 If a dispute exists concerning a Claim, the parties agree to use the following procedure prior to pursuing any other available remedies. OWNER reserves the right to include the E/A as a party.

16.2.2 Negotiating with Previously Uninvolved Personnel: Either party may make a written request for a meeting to be held between representatives of each party within fourteen (14) Calendar Days of the request or such later period that the parties may agree to. Each party shall endeavor to include, at a minimum, one (1) previously uninvolved senior level decision maker (an owner, officer, or employee of each organization) empowered to negotiate on behalf of their organization. If a previously uninvolved senior level decision maker is unavailable due to the size of the CONTRACTOR'S organization or any other reason, the

CONTRACTOR shall nonetheless provide an appropriate senior level decision maker for the meeting. The purpose of this and any subsequent meetings will be good faith negotiations of the matters constituting the dispute. Negotiations shall be concluded within thirty (30) Calendar Days of the first meeting, unless mutually agreed otherwise. This step may be waived by a written agreement signed by both parties, in which event the parties may proceed directly to mediation as described below.

16.2.3 Mediation:

.1 If the procedure described in 16.2.2 proves unsuccessful or is waived pursuant to its terms, the parties shall initiate the mediation process. OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree to select within thirty (30) calendar days a mediator trained in mediation skills, to assist with resolution of the dispute. OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree to act in good faith in the selection of the mediator and to give consideration to qualified individuals nominated to act as mediator. Nothing in this agreement prevents the parties from relying on the skills of a person who also is trained in the subject matter of the dispute and/or a contract interpretation expert. Should the parties fail to agree on a mediator within thirty (30) calendar days of initiation of the mediation process, the parties agree to ask the Travis County Dispute Resolution Center to select a qualified individual, which selection shall be binding on the parties.

.2 Mediation is a forum in which an impartial person, the mediator, facilitates communication between parties to promote reconciliation, settlement, or understanding among them. The parties hereby agree that mediation, at a minimum, shall provide for (i) conducting an on-site investigation, if appropriate, by the mediator for fact gathering purposes, (ii) a meeting of all parties for the exchange of points of view and (iii) separate meetings between the mediator and each party to the dispute for the formulation of resolution alternatives. The parties agree to participate in mediation in good faith for up to thirty (30) calendar days from the date of the first mediation session, unless mutually agreed otherwise. Should the parties fail to reach a resolution of the dispute through mediation, then each party is released to pursue other remedies available to them.

16.3 Resolution of Disputes between Contractor and Subcontractor or Supplier: If a dispute exists concerning a claim between a CONTRACTOR and a Subcontractor or Supplier, the CONTRACTOR agrees to participate with such Subcontractor and/or Supplier in a process substantially paralleling the steps set out in paragraphs 16.1 and 16.2 above, including the delivery of written notices, submission of supporting data, negotiation with previously uninvolved personnel, and, if such alternative dispute resolution process is unsuccessful, mediation between the parties to the claim. If the CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor or Supplier agreement provides an alternative dispute resolution process, which provides substantially equivalent rights to those set forth herein, it may be followed, unless the CONTRACTOR and affected Subcontractor or Supplier agree to follow the process outlined above. The OWNER is not a party to the alternative dispute resolution process between the CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor or Supplier and will not pay any costs incurred in the process. Each party will be responsible for its own expenses incurred in the process, which will include an equal share of the mediation expenses, unless otherwise determined by the mediator. NOTICE: THE PROCESS SET FORTH HEREIN IS NOT A SUBSTITUTE FOR THE STATUTORY PAYMENT BOND CLAIM PROCESS.

16.4 Claim Calculation:

16.4.1 Delay Claims: The intent of paying for delay damages is to reimburse the CONTRACTOR for actual expense arising out of a compensable delay. No profit or force account markups, other than labor burden, will be allowed for delay claims by the CONTRACTOR seeking reimbursement for expenses arising out of an alleged event of delay. No consequential damages will be allowed to the CONTRACTOR in connection with any claimed delays. If the CONTRACTOR requests compensation for delay damages and the delay is determined to be compensable, then standby equipment costs and project overhead compensation will be based on the duration of the compensable delay and the following:

.1 Standby equipment costs will not be allowed during periods when the equipment would have otherwise been idle. Standby equipment time will not exceed more than eight (8) hours per twenty-four (24) hour day, forty (40) hours per week, and one hundred seventy-six (176) hours per month. Standby equipment costs will be paid at 50 percent (50%) of the applicable Rental Rate Blue Book rates and calculated by dividing the monthly rate by one hundred seventy-six (176), multiplying the result by the number of standby hours and multiplying that number by the regional adjustment factor and the rate adjustment factor contained in the Blue Book. Operating costs will not be allowed.

.2 Project overhead will be determined from actual costs that the CONTRACTOR will be required to document. Project overhead is defined as the administrative and supervisory expenses incurred at the work site and will not include home office overhead.

16.4.2 General: Except as limited with respect to delay claims, as set forth above, the criteria set forth in Section 11.4.1 may be used as a basis to calculate an adjustment in the Contract Amount in the resolution of a claim, provided that there will be no compensation for home office overhead.

ARTICLE 17 – MISCELLANEOUS

17.1 Venue: In the event of any suit at law or in equity involving the Contract, venue shall be exclusively in Hays County, Texas and the laws of the State of Texas shall apply to the interpretation and enforcement of the Contract.

17.2 Extent of Agreement: This Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the OWNER and CONTRACTOR with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral.

17.3 Cumulative Remedies: The rights and remedies available to the parties are not to be construed in any way as a limitation of any rights and remedies available to any or all of them which are otherwise imposed or available by laws or regulations, by special warranty or guarantees or by other provisions of the Contract Documents, and the provisions of this paragraph will be as effective as if repeated specifically in the Contract Documents in connection with each particular duty, obligation, right and remedy to which they apply. Specifically, the OWNER is not required to only assess liquidated damages, and OWNER may elect to pursue its actual damages resulting from the failure of the CONTRACTOR to complete the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

17.4 Severability: If any word, phrase, clause, sentence or provision of the Contract, or the application of same to any person or set of circumstances is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, invalid or unenforceable, that finding shall only effect such word, phrase, clause, sentence or provision, and such finding shall not affect the remaining portions of this Contract; this being the intent of the parties in entering into the Contract; and all provisions of the Contract are declared to be severable for this purpose.

17.5 Independent Contractor: The Contract shall not be construed as creating an employer/employee relationship, a partnership, or a joint venture. CONTRACTOR is an independent contractor and CONTRACTOR's services shall be those of an independent contractor. CONTRACTOR agrees and understands that the Contract does not grant any rights or privileges established for employees of OWNER.

17.6 Prohibition of Gratuities: OWNER may, by Written Notice to CONTRACTOR, terminate the Contract without liability if is determined by OWNER that gratuities were offered or given by CONTRACTOR or any agent or representative of CONTRACTOR to any officer or employee of OWNER with a view toward securing the Contract or securing favorable treatment with respect to the awarding or amending or the making of any determinations with respect to the performing of such Contract. In the event the Contract is terminated by OWNER pursuant to this provision, OWNER shall be entitled, in addition to any other rights and remedies, to recover or withhold the amount of the cost incurred by CONTRACTOR in providing such gratuities.

17.7 Prohibition Against Personal Interest in Contracts: No officer, employee, independent consultant, or elected official of OWNER who is involved in the development, evaluation, or decision-making process of the performance of any solicitation shall have a financial interest, direct or indirect, in the Contract resulting from that solicitation. Any violation of this provision, with the knowledge, expressed or implied, of CONTRACTOR shall render the Contract voidable by OWNER.

17.8 OWNER'S Right to Audit:

17.8.1 Records means all records generated by or on behalf of CONTRACTOR and each Subcontractor and Supplier of CONTRACTOR, whether paper, electronic, or other media, which are in any way related to performance of or compliance with this Contract, including, without limitation:

.1 accounting records;

.2 written policies and procedures;

.3 subcontract files (including proposals of successful and unsuccessful Bidders, Bid recaps, etc.);

.4 original estimates and estimating work sheets;

.5 correspondence;

.6 Change Order files (including documentation covering negotiated settlements);

.7 back charge logs and supporting documentation;

.8 general ledger entries detailing cash and trade discounts earned, insurance rebates and dividends;

.9 lump sum agreements between CONTRACTOR and any Subcontractor or Supplier;

.10 records necessary to evaluate: Contract compliance, Change Order pricing, and any Claim submitted by CONTRACTOR or any of its payees; and

.11 any other CONTRACTOR record that may substantiate any charge related to this Contract.

17.8.2 CONTRACTOR shall allow OWNER'S agent or its authorized representative to inspect, audit, and/or reproduce, or all three, all Records generated by or on behalf of CONTRACTOR and each Subcontractor and Supplier, upon OWNER'S written request. Further, CONTRACTOR shall allow OWNER'S agent or authorized representative to interview any of CONTRACTOR'S employees, all Subcontractors and all Suppliers, and all their respective employees.

17.8.3 CONTRACTOR shall retain all its Records, and require all its Subcontractors and Suppliers to retain their respective Records, during this Contract and for three (3) years after final payment, until all audit and litigation matters that OWNER has brought to the attention of CONTRACTOR are resolved, or as otherwise required by law, whichever is longer. OWNER'S right to inspect, audit, or reproduce Records, or interview employees of CONTRACTOR or its respective Subcontractors or Suppliers exists during this Contract, and for three (3) years after final payment, until all audit and litigation matters that OWNER has brought to CONTRACTOR'S attention are resolved, or as otherwise required by law, whichever is longer, and at no cost to OWNER, either from CONTRACTOR or any of its Subcontractors or Suppliers that may furnish Records or make employees available for interviewing.

17.8.4 CONTRACTOR must provide sufficient and accessible facilities during its normal business hours for OWNER to inspect, audit, or reproduce Records, or all three, and to interview any person about the Records.

17.8.5 CONTRACTOR shall insert these requirements in each written contract between CONTRACTOR and any Subcontractor or Supplier and require each Subcontractor and Supplier to comply with these provisions.

17.9 Survival: The terms and conditions of this Contract, which contemplate a period of time beyond completion or termination will survive such completion or termination and not be merged therein or otherwise terminated.

17.10 No Waiver: The waiver of any provision of this Contract will not be deemed to be a waiver of any other provision of this Contract. No waiver of any provision of this Contract will be deemed to constitute a continuing waiver unless expressly provided in writing, nor will a waiver of any default be deemed a waiver of any subsequent defaults of the same type. The failure at any time to enforce this Contract, whether the default is known or not, shall not constitute a waiver or estoppel of the right to do so.

17.11 Conditions Precedent to Right to Sue: Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, a suing party must give a minimum of ninety (90) days written notice prior to filing suit. The notice must state the factual and legal basis for the claims. Notices provided pursuant to Section 16 herein can also serve for the calculation of the 90 days if the other requirements herein are met.

17.12 Waiver of Trial by Jury: OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree that they have knowingly waived the right to trial by jury and have instead agreed that, in the event of any litigation arising out of or connected to this Contract, to proceed with a trial before the court, unless both parties subsequently agree otherwise in writing.

17.13 Force Majeure: Force Majeure Event means an event caused by any of the following conditions: act of God; fire; flood; labor strike; sabotage; material shortages or unavailability or other delay in delivery of services not resulting from the responsible Party's failure to timely provide services therefor; power blackouts; lack of or delay in transportation; government codes, ordinances, laws, rules, regulations, permits, or restrictions; war or civil disorder; or any other cause beyond the reasonable control of such Party. Neither Party shall be liable to the other for any delay or failure in performance of any part of this Contract to the extent that a Force Majeure Event causes such delay or failure. A party experiencing a force majeure event has an obligation to take mitigating steps and to put the other party on notice of the force majeure event, the steps taken to mitigate the events, and the expected timeframe of resolution.

End

00810 Supplementary Conditions

The Supplemental General Conditions contained herein amend or supplement the General Conditions, Section 00700.

ARTICLE 1 – DEFINITIONS

Add to the following definition:
2
1.20 Engineer/Architect (E/A): The OWNER's design professional for this contract is:

Name: LJA Engineering
Address: 2700 La Frontera Blvd
Suite 150
Round Rock, Texas 78681

Add the following definition:

1.55 Commissioning Authority or Agent - A consultant retained by the OWNER charged with supporting E/A in monitoring the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents, and with assisting in the facility's start-up and testing as a member of the commissioning team.

ARTICLE 5 - BONDS AND INSURANCE

5.3 Other Bond and Insurance Requirements:

5.3.1 CONTRACTOR Provided Insurance

5.3.1.1 General Requirements.

.1 CONTRACTOR shall carry insurance in the types and amounts indicated below for the duration of the Contract, which shall include items owned by OWNER in the care, custody and control of CONTRACTOR prior to and during construction and warranty period.

.2 CONTRACTOR must complete and forward the Certificate of Insurance, Section 00650, to OWNER before the Contract is executed as verification of coverage required below. CONTRACTOR shall not commence Work until the required insurance is obtained and until such insurance has been reviewed by OWNER. Approval of insurance by OWNER shall not relieve or decrease the liability of CONTRACTOR hereunder and shall not be construed to be a limitation of liability on the part of CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR must also complete and forward the Certificate of Insurance, Section 00650, to OWNER whenever a previously identified policy period has expired as verification of continuing coverage.

.3 CONTRACTOR's insurance coverage is to be written by companies authorized to do business in the State of Texas at the time the policies are issued and shall be written by companies with A.M. Best ratings of B+VII or better, except for hazardous material insurance which shall be written by companies with A.M. Best ratings of A- or better.

.4 All endorsements naming the OWNER as additional insured, waivers, and notices of cancellation endorsements as well as the Certificate of Insurance shall indicate: Project Manager, City of Kyle City Hall, 100 W. Center Street, Kyle, TX 78640.

5.3.1.2 Business Automobile Liability Insurance. Provide coverage for all owned, non-owned and hired vehicles. The policy shall contain the following endorsements in favor of OWNER:

a) Waiver of Subrogation endorsement CA 0444;
b) 30 day Notice of Cancellation endorsement CA 0244; and
c) Additional Insured endorsement CA 2048.

Provide coverage in the following types and amounts:

.1 A minimum combined single limit of $500,000 per occurrence for bodily injury and property damage. Alternate acceptable limits are $250,000 bodily injury per person, $500,000 bodily injury per occurrence and at least $100,000 property damage liability each accident.

5.3.1.3 Workers' Compensation And Employers' Liability Insurance. Coverage shall be consistent with statutory benefits outlined in the Texas Workers' Compensation Act (Section 401). CONTRACTOR shall assure compliance with this Statute by submitting two (2) copies of a standard certificate of coverage (e.g. ACCORD form) to Owner's Representative for every person providing services on the Project as acceptable proof of coverage. The Certificate of Insurance, Section 00650, must be presented as evidence of coverage for CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR's policy shall apply to the State of Texas and include these endorsements in favor of OWNER:

a) Waiver of Subrogation, form WC 420304; and
b) 30 day Notice of Cancellation, form WC 420601.

The minimum policy limits for Employers' Liability Insurance coverage shall be as follows:

.1 $100,000 bodily injury per accident, $500,000 bodily injury by disease policy limit and $100,000 bodily injury by disease each employee.

5.3.1.4 Commercial General Liability Insurance. The Policy shall contain the following provisions:

a) Contractual liability coverage for liability assumed under the Contract and all contracts relative to this Project.
b) Completed Operations/Products Liability for the duration of the warranty period.
c) Explosion, Collapse and Underground (X, C & U) coverage.
d) Independent Contractors coverage (Contractors/ Subcontractors work).
e) Aggregate limits of insurance per project, endorsement CG 2503.
f) OWNER listed as an additional insured, endorsements CG 2010 and CG 2037 or equivalent.
g) 30 day notice of cancellation in favor of OWNER, endorsement CG 0205.
h) Waiver of Transfer of Recovery Against Others in favor of OWNER, endorsement CG 2404.

Provide coverages A&B with minimum limits as follows:

.1 A combined bodily injury and property damage limit of $500,000 per occurrence.

5.3.1.5 Professional Liability Insurance. For Work which requires professional engineering or professional survey services to meet the requirements of the Contract, including but not

limited to excavation safety systems, traffic control plans, and construction surveying, the CONTRACTOR or Subcontractors, responsible for performing the professional services shall provide Professional Liability Insurance with a minimum limit of $500,000 per claim and in the aggregate to pay on behalf of the assured all sums which the assured shall become legally obligated to pay as damages by reason of any negligent act, error, or omission committed with respect to all professional services provided in due course of the Work of this Contract. CONTRACTOR's policy shall include the following endorsement in favor of the OWNER:

a) 30 day Notice of Cancellation endorsement CA 0244

ARTICLE 13 - TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK

13.7 Warranty Period: *Add the following*:

13.7.5 OWNER will utilize a "Warranty Item Form" (attached at the end of this Section) for the purpose of providing Written Notice of warranty defects to CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR shall date, sign, complete and return the form to OWNER when the defect is corrected, including such information on or attached to the form to describe the nature of the repairs or corrections that were made. If the defect cannot be corrected in seven (7) Calendar Days, CONTRACTOR shall provide a written explanation to the Owner's Representative describing the repairs needed and the time required to complete the repairs.

ARTICLE 14 - PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR AND COMPLETION

14.7 Substantial Completion: *Reference 14.7.1, and one of the following three provisions*:

14.7.1.1 For water and wastewater lines construction, Substantial Completion means that the Work, including all testing and disinfection, has been completed and accepted and the line(s) placed into service. A certificate of Substantial Completion will not be issued. Work that remains after Substantial Completion could include the final pavement of roadways, adjustment of structures to final grade and revegetation. Owner's Representative will issue a notice specifying what portion of the Work is partially completed for the purpose of payment and what Work remains to be done on the portion being accepted as Substantially Complete. This subsection 14.7.1.1 changes the 00700 General Conditions definition of Substantial Completion.

14.8 Partial Utilization: *Delete 14.8.1 and replace with the following (changes to the original text are identified by underlining)*:

14.8.1 OWNER at any time may request CONTRACTOR to permit OWNER to use any such part of the Work which OWNER believes to be ready for its intended use and substantially complete. If CONTRACTOR agrees that such part of the Work is substantially complete, CONTRACTOR will certify to Owner's Representative that such part of the Work is substantially complete and request Owner's Representative to issue a notice specifying what portion of the Work is substantially complete for the purpose of payment and what Work remains to be done on the portion being accepted. CONTRACTOR at any time may notify Owner's Representative that CONTRACTOR considers any such part of the Work ready for its intended use and substantially complete and request Owner's Representative to issue a notice specifying what portion of the Work is partially completed for the purpose of payment and what Work remains to be done on the portion being accepted. The provisions of paragraphs 14.7.1 and 14.7.2 will apply with respect to the notice specifying what portion of

the Work is partially completed for the purpose of payment and what Work remains to be done on the portion being accepted."

END

WARRANTY ITEM NO. _____ (SCHLEMMER AND PORTER STREET, PHASE 2 WASTEWATER IMPROVEMENTS)

The General Conditions of the Contract require that Warranty Defects be corrected within 7 days after written notice is received.

TO: _____
contractor name address / telephone / fax / email

ATTENTION OF: _____

FROM: _____
project manager name / address / telephone / fax / email

PROJECT: _____
name / location / CIP ID number

END OF ONE YEAR WARRANTY:_____

SUBJECT:_____
[ ] If checked, the damage requires immediate attention. The Contractor has been called.
[ ] If checked, the Consultant has been asked to consult with the Contractor on the problem.

PLEASE CORRECT OR REPAIR THE FOLLOWING ITEM(S):

DATE OF REQUEST_____ **SIGNATURE** _____
Project Manager

xc:
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____

RESPONSE FROM CONTRACTOR: DATE CORRECTION WAS MADE:_____

The Contractor must endeavor to correct the defect within 7 calendar days after written notice is given. If the defect cannot be corrected in that time, Contractor shall provide a written explanation to the Owner's Representative describing the repairs needed and the time required to complete the repairs.

Description of corrections made:

DATE OF REPLY_____SIGNATURE_____
When the repair is complete, the contractor should return a copy to each of the following:
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____

END

Division 01000 General Requirements

Specifications attached may be missing additional referenced specifications. Please contact the engineer prior to bid with any questions pertaining to specifications or their use.

SECTION 01000

GOVERNING SPECIFICATIONS

PART 1: DESCRIPTION

A. All specifications and special provisions applicable to this project are identified as follows:

1. City of Austin Standard Specifications – Currently adopted by the City of Austin at the date of the agreement. Standard Specifications are incorporated into the contract by reference.

2. Standard Specifications – Adopted by the Texas Department of Transportation November 1, 2014. Standard Specifications are incorporated into the contract by reference

3. All other General and Supplemental conditions included elsewhere in the contract documents.

4. All other technical specifications included elsewhere in the contract documents.

B. Where discrepancies occur between the various governing specifications, the special provisions shall govern over the standard specifications.

C. City of Austin Applicable Sections: Wherever, in the City of Austin Standard Specifications, reference is made to the City of Austin and its representatives, such a reference shall be taken to mean the City of Kyle and its representatives.

ITEM 210S	Flexible Base
ITEM 403S	Concrete for Structures
ITEM 406S	Reinforcing Steel
ITEM 410S	Concrete Structures
ITEM 503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
ITEM 506	Manholes
ITEM 507S	Bulkheads
ITEM 509S	Excavation Safety Systems
ITEM 510	Pipe
ITEM 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
ITEM 642S	Silt Fence
ITEM 700S	Mobilization
ITEM 702S	Removal and Relocation of Existing Fences
ITEM 803S	Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling

D. TxDOT: Wherever, in the TxDOT Standard Specifications, reference is made to the State of Texas, the Department and its representatives, such reference shall be taken to mean the City of Kyle and its representatives.

TxDOT-247	Flexible Base

E. Special Specifications: Wherever, in the City of Austin Standard Specifications, reference is made to the City of Austin and its representatives, such a reference shall be taken to mean the City of Kyle and its representatives.

F. Modifications to Standard Specifications:

ITEM 506MOD
ITEM 510MOD

G. The above-listed specification items are those under which payment is to be made. These, together with such other pertinent items, if any, as may be referred to in the above-listed specification items, and including the special provisions and special specifications listed above and the other technical specifications included in the project manual, constitute the complete specifications for this project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01010

SUMMARY OF WORK

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General Conditions, Section 00700, and Division 1 requirements.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

1.2.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. This section describes the Project in general and provides an overview of the extent of the Work to be performed by the CONTRACTOR. Detailed requirements and extent of Work is stated in the applicable Specification Sections and shown on the Drawings. CONTRACTOR shall, except as otherwise specifically stated herein or in any applicable part of these Contract Documents, provide and pay for all labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution, testing, and completion of the Work.

B. Any part or item of the Work which is reasonably implied or normally required to make the installation satisfactorily operable shall be performed by the CONTRACTOR and the expense thereof shall be included in the applicable unit prices or lump sum prices bid for the Work. It is the intent of these Specifications to provide the OWNER with the complete system. All miscellaneous appurtenances and other items of Work that are incidental to meeting the intent of the Specifications shall be considered as having been included in the applicable unit prices or lump sum prices bid for the Work even though these appurtenances and items may not be specifically called for in the Bid Documents.

C. The Work shall include furnishing all tools, labor, materials, equipment, and miscellaneous items necessary for the complete construction of approximately 850 linear feet of 12-inch sanitary sewer lines and 640 linear feet of 8-inch sanitary sewer lines to include 7 – 48-inch sanitary manholes, 1 – 60-inch sanitary manholes, and surface repairs.

1.2.2 LOCATION OF PROJECT

The project location/route is shown on the Drawings.

1.2.3 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Execute all Work as is specified in the Specifications, Special Provisions and Special Specifications listed in the Table of Contents.

B. Secure all construction-related permits, other than those provided by OWNER, and pay for the same.

C. Arrange for the necessary temporary water and electric service and pay for these services and all water and electricity consumed during the construction Work.

D. Provide adequate temporary sanitary facilities.

1.2.4 EASEMENTS AND RIGHTS-OF-WAY

CONTRACTOR shall confine his construction operations within the limits indicated on the Drawings, and shall use due care in placing construction tools, equipment, excavated materials, and pipeline materials and supplies so as to cause the least possible damage to property and interference with traffic. If the CONTRACTOR requires additional easement for his operations, the CONTRACTOR is solely responsible for acquisition and maintenance of the easement. No additional compensation will be provided by the OWNER.

A. Easements

Easements across private property are indicated on the Drawings. CONTRACTOR shall set stakes to mark the boundaries of construction easement across private property. The stakes shall be protected and maintained until completion of construction and cleanup.

B. Rights-of-Way

All Work performed and all operations of CONTRACTOR, his employees, or subcontractors, within the limits of railroad and highway rights-of-way, shall be in conformity with the requirements and be under the control (through OWNER) of the railroad or highway authority owning, or having jurisdiction over and control of, the right-of-way in each case.

1.2.5 OPERATION OF EXISTING FACILITIES

Existing water and wastewater facilities shall be kept in continuous operation throughout the construction period. No interruption will be permitted which adversely affects the degree of service provided. Provided permission is obtained from OWNER in advance, portions of the existing facilities may be taken out of service for short periods corresponding with periods of minimum service demands.

CONTRACTOR shall provide temporary facilities and make temporary modifications as necessary to keep the existing facilities in operation during the construction period.

1.2.6 CONNECTIONS TO EXISTING FACILITIES

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, CONTRACTOR shall make all necessary connections to existing facilities including structures, drain lines, and utilities. In each case, CONTRACTOR shall receive permission from OWNER or the owning utility prior to undertaking connections. CONTRACTOR shall protect facilities against deleterious substances and damage.

Connections to existing facilities which are in service shall be thoroughly planned in advance, and all required equipment, materials and labor shall be on hand at the time of undertaking the connection. Work shall proceed continuously (around the clock) if necessary to complete connections in the minimum time. Operation of valves or other appurtenances on existing utilities, when required, shall be by or under the direct supervision of the owning utility.

1.2.7 UNFAVORABLE CONSTRUCTION CONDITIONS

No portion of the Work shall be constructed under conditions which adversely affect the quality or efficiency thereof, unless special means or precautions are taken by CONTRACTOR to perform the Work in a proper and satisfactory manner.

1.3 WORK SEQUENCE

The CONTRACTOR shall determine his own method of construction and detailed work sequence while observing all construction constraints and substantial and overall completion times are achieved. The CONTRACTOR shall properly coordinate his sequence of work and submit a detailed construction schedule to the Engineer for approval.

PART 2: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate measurement or payment will be made for this item.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01014

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

Construction of the Work covered by these Contract Documents is subject to the applicable provisions and rules of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and United States Army Corps of Engineers and all other local applicable Federal, State, and Local laws, rules, regulations, ordinances, and conditions/requirements of permits issued by governmental agencies for the conduct of this project.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 01300 Submittals
B. Section 02551 Waste Material Disposal

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. **Record Data - Storage and Fueling Plan:** for hydraulic fluid, oil, and fuel: Submit for approval by ENGINEER prior to bringing fuel storage on-site. Describe plan for fueling equipment and fuel storage including spill prevention, containment, and cleanup provisions. Provide a list of all equipment that will contain more than 55 gallons of hydraulic fluid, oil, or fuel. Provide drawings for the secondary containment systems pertaining to above ground fuel storage tanks, equipment-mounted fuel tanks, oil reservoirs, and oil and fuel lines (including hydraulic fluid lines). Provide a description on how secondary containment will be inspected. Provide a description on how fueling operations will be handled over or near a waterway, or on shore, describing environmental protection methods that will be implemented. Provide description for requesting additional fuel storage containers not included in initial request. Provide inspection form to be used on a weekly basis in evaluating these areas.

B. **Record Data - Equipment Maintenance Plan:** Describe plan for minimizing the potential environmental impacts of preventative and non-scheduled equipment maintenance activities. Describe what environmental protections measures will be implemented prior to and during both preventative and non-scheduled equipment maintenance activities.

C. **Record Data – Equipment Inspection Reports:** Provide inspection procedure and example inspection form to be used on a weekly basis to report equipment inspections.

D. **Record Data – MSDS:** Provide MSDS data sheets on all proposed fuels, chemicals, paints greases, hydraulic fluids, coatings, epoxies, cements, admixtures, etc. to be used on and with equipment, to be used temporarily during construction, and to be permanently incorporated into the work.

E. **Record Data – Materials used to perform the Work:** Provide a list for the following types of materials that will be used in performing the Work.
   1. Ozone-depleted chemicals
   2. Materials with volatile organic compounds (VOC's)
   3. Any material that will become an F-Listed waste (e.g. acetone, xylene, toluene, methyl ethyl ketone).
   4. Acutely toxic materials.
   5. Constituents subject to reporting under the state and federal Right-to-Know regulations (as shown on the Material Data Sheets).

F. **Record Data – Care of Water Plan:** Describe plan for dewatering an area and managing water flows and infiltration into the work area. All water flows from, or generated by the work, must meet State and Federal regulations prior to entering a creek, stream or a lake. Regulations include, but not limited, to 30 TAC 307 and 26 TWC 121, Surface Water Quality Standards and Water Quality Control for the State of Texas respectively.

G. **Record Data – Storm Water Inspections:** Contractor to submit weekly storm water inspections to OWNER based on Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan provided by OWNER.

1.4 PROTECTION OF LAND RESOURCES

The land resources, within the project boundaries and outside the limits of work under the Work of this Contract, shall be preserved in their present condition or be restored to a condition after construction that will appear to be natural and not detract from the appearance of the project. Activities shall be confined to areas defined by the Drawings and Specifications.

1.5 PROTECTION OF WATER RESOURCES

A. No water courses shall be polluted with any construction debris, loose soil, suspended sediment, petroleum products, abrasives, epoxies, paints, solvents, cleaners, fuels, surface preparation materials, oils, lubricants, bitumens, calcium chlorides, insecticides, herbicides, or other toxic materials harmful to life unless specifically permitted. Chemical emulsifiers, dispersant, coagulants, or other cleanup compounds shall not be used without prior written approval. It is the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to insure compliance with state and local water quality standards and to identify if any additional discharge permits are required to perform Work.

B. The CONTRACTOR may be required to submit a certified Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasures Plan (SPCC) that will fulfill the requirements of the Clean Water Act, CFR Part 112. In the event that the total capacity of all hydraulic fluid, oil, fuel containing tanks, containers, and equipment exceeds 1,320 gallons and if the project continues after 8/1/06 then an SPCC I required. The plan must be prepared prior to installing or mobilizing equipment that would cause the 1,320 gallon limit to be exceeded.

C. The CONTRACTOR will submit for approval all fuel storage containers, prior to mobilizing containers onto site, in accordance with Edwards Aquifer Rules (30 TAC 213). Additional fuel storage containers not approved in initial request must be individually approved by the ENGINEER.

1.6 DEWATERING

A. The CONTRACTOR will control and manage all dewatering of the project, and any non-storm water discharges from the construction site in compliance with all TCEQ water quality discharge requirements, including but not limited to 30 TAC 307, Surface Water Quality Standards for the State of Texas.

B. Contractor shall provide continuous observation of dewatering activities and effectiveness of BMP's.

C. The following non-storm water discharges from construction activities are acceptable.
   1. Discharges from fire fighting activities
   2. Fire hydrant flushings
   3. Vehicle, external building, and pavement wash water where detergents and soaps are not used and where spills or leaks of toxic or hazardous materials have not occurred (unless spilled materials have been removed; and if local, state, or federal regulations are applicable, the materials are removed

according to those regulations), and where the purpose is to remove mud, dirt, and dust
4. Water used to control dust
5. Potable water sources including waterline flushings
6. Air conditioning condensate
7. Uncontaminated ground water or spring water, including foundation or footing drains where flows are not contaminated with industrial materials such as solvents or other pollutants

D. Dewatering and non-storm water discharges will, at a minimum, flow through silt fence, or other suitable structural controls, prior to leaving the site, as necessary to meet compliance requirements with all State and Federal water quality discharge requirements, including but not limited to 30 TAC 307 or 26 TWC 121, Surface Water Quality Standards and Water Quality Control for the State of Texas respectively.

E. Dewatering of water contaminated with hydrocarbons or other oils is prohibited from being discharged to a creek, stream, lake, or the soil surface.

1.7 PROTECTION OF AIR QUALITY

All Work shall be performed in such a manner as to ensure that air quality is protected. CONTRACTOR will complete and maintain all records to support compliance with the applicable air quality standards including but not limited to 30 TAC 106.183.

1.8 PROTECTION OF FISH AND WILDLIFE

All Work shall be performed and all steps taken to prevent interference or disturbance to fish and wildlife. Water courses or habitats outside the project boundaries shall not be altered or disturbed, without OWNER's written prior consent.

1.9 BURNING OF DEBRIS

No debris or surplus materials may be disposed of by burning at the job site or at any other location.

1.10 INFORMATION REGARDING WASTES REQUIRED WITH BID

Waste control measures shall be implemented during construction activities to prevent unauthorized release and ensure proper management of waste in accordance with Section 02105 – Containment and Disposal of Waste.

1.11 PROHIBITED MATERIALS

A. The CONTRACTOR is strictly prohibited from using any of the following types of materials that could generate waste in performance of the work.
   1. Asbestos, asbestos-containing material (ACM)
   2. Mercury containing material
   3. Surface coatings with lead, cadmium, chromium, or mercury
   4. PCB containing material
   5. Radioactive containing material

1.12 ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTIONS

The OWNER reserves the right to perform environmental inspections. The CONTRACTOR shall provide remedial action as required by the OWNER.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.1 EROSION CONTROL DURING CONSTRUCTION

The CONTRACTOR shall utilize the Best Management Practices (BMP's) with regard to controlling erodible soils within the construction lay-down area, project site, and while working near water, or water courses. This may include installing and maintaining silt fences or other similar structural controls as prescribed within the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan or additional controls as needed for any erodible soil, or storage of materials within the lay-down area and work site.

3.2 STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN SWPPP

Implementation of the SWPPP is required. The CONTRACTOR will perform all actions required within the SWPPP in relation to day to day on site activities including: weekly inspections of controls, and maintenance to sediment and erosion controls based on inspection records. Contractor shall provide a copy of the inspection records to Owners Representative on a weekly basis beginning with first required inspection, in addition, CONTRACTOR will maintain records in accordance with Texas Pollution Discharge Elimination System requirements.

3.3 PLACEMENT OF TEMPORARY PLATFORMS AND ACCESS FACILITIES

Temporary platforms or other temporary access facilities may be placed for temporary construction access to perform required Work. All placements of temporary platforms shall be conducted in accordance with the terms and general conditions of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Nationwide Permit Program and other environmental compliance requirements specified herein.

3.4 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE, FUELING, AND SPILL CONTAINMENT

A. Scheduled preventive maintenance shall be performed on all construction equipment prior to mobilization in the work area. CONTRACTOR shall establish a maintenance area within the staging area for performing all routine and preventative maintenance, when possible. CONTRACTOR shall thoroughly inspect all construction equipment for any leaks prior to use at the job site and on a daily basis.

B. A spill can be defined as an accidental release of a solid, liquid, or gas to land, air, or water that would create a potential or actual hazard to human health or the environment.

1. The CONTRACTOR is solely responsible for any spills or release caused by himself or any of his subcontractors that occur during the performance of, or in connection with the performance of the Work under this Contract. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for all notifications required by any federal, state, or local law or regulations. The CONTRACTOR shall immediately notify the OWNER of the nature and location of any spill. The CONTRACTOR shall provide a written report to OWNER that identifies the substance, quantity released, location of the spill, agencies notified/talked to if any, cleanup and remediation activities conducted or planned. The written report should be a narrative that summarizes on the scene activity, remediation efforts, and if long term remediation will be required. This initial report shall be provided to the OWNER within 24 hours after the incident. Follow up reports may be required if requested by the OWNER. These requirements are also required if the spill occurs off the OWNER's property as a result of contractors performance of the Work under this Contract.

2. The CONTRACTOR shall be liable for, and agrees to indemnify and hold the OWNER harmless from any and all liabilities, including, but not limited to, remediation costs, fines, penalties, court costs, and attorney fees resulting from spills, releases, improper handling and/or disposal of wastes connected with a spill by the CONTRACTOR.

3. Spills shall be cleaned up to background levels or to criteria as set forth in the applicable federal, state, or local laws and regulations, or whichever is the most stringent.

C. The CONTRACTOR shall provide a temporary secondary containment berm with plastic liner around all stationary construction equipment subject to potential leakage of fluids or fuel to contain accidental leakage and/or discharges. Detection and cleanup of liquid fuel, oil leaks, or spills, shall be accomplished as follows.

1. **Leak Detection:** Leaks from any tanks or lines on equipment shall be detected by the CONTRACTOR during a daily check. Any fuel, oil, or chemical leak shall be reported immediately verbally and then in writing, in the appropriate format, to the OWNER's Resident Representative. The CONTRACTOR shall ensure that the source of the leak is repaired and that the spilled fluid is cleaned up immediately and thoroughly.

2. **Leak Cleanup:** The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for all spill cleanups and notify OWNER's Resident Representative immediately. Any fuel, oil, or chemical leakage shall be collected in the bermed area surrounding the equipment using absorbent material. Contractor shall keep absorbent materials on site for clean up. Contaminated absorbent materials shall be disposed of in accordance with Section 02105 – Containment and Disposal of Waste.

3. **Oil Filters:** Used oil, oil filters, and cartridges shall be collected by the CONTRACTOR and these items will be recycled at an OWNER approved and audited recycling facility.

4. **Operation of Equipment in Areas Subject to Direct Discharge to Waterways:** Special precautions shall be taken to prevent releases of fuel, oil or chemicals when equipment is working over or adjacent to the water. This shall include provision of secondary containment for equipment-mounted fuel tanks, oil reservoirs, and fuel and oil lines (including hydraulic fluid lines). Exposed hydraulic lines shall be double wrapped and/or shielded by the use of deflectors, as necessary, to prevent a release to the water in the event of a line rupture. No fuel container larger than 250 gallons shall be stored on-site outside of the staging area designated on the construction drawings, unless prior written approval by the owner. Fueling of equipment over or adjacent to water shall be done using a maximum fuel storage/transfer container size of five (5) gallons. A funnel shall be used to minimize fuel spillage, and a drip pan shall be used to capture any spillage of fuel. If the total quantity of containers smaller than five gallons on a barge, platform, walkway, or structure exceeds five (5) gallons, then these multiple items shall be kept in secondary containment while in storage.

D. The CONTRACTOR should attempt to use and work with the least amount of chemicals or fuels needed for a given job.

3.5 NOISE CONTROL

The CONTRACTOR shall take reasonable measures to avoid unnecessary noise. Such measures shall be appropriate for the normal ambient sound levels in the area during working hours. All construction machinery and vehicles shall be equipped with appropriate sound muffling devices and operated in a manner to cause the least noise consistent with efficient performance of the Work.

3.6 EQUIPMENT HYDRAULIC SYSTEMS

All hydraulic systems and lines on CONTRACTOR's equipment should be evaluated to determine if vegetable-based or environmental friendly hydraulic oil can be utilized over waterways. Vegetable-based or environmental friendly hydraulic oil is required if equipment manufacturer allows replacement of standard hydraulic oils. Provide MSDS sheets on the proposed hydraulic fluids. All hydraulic systems shall be double wrapped with absorbent materials or use deflective devises.

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate measurement or payment will not be made for Work required under this Section. All costs in connection with the Work specified herein will be considered to be included with the related item of Work in the Bid Schedule, or incidental to the Project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01015

CONTRACTOR USE OF THE PREMISES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. The CONTRACTOR shall not begin construction until all erosion and sedimentation control devices shown on the plans and related to the portion of the work have been installed, a preconstruction meeting at the site has been held per the plans, and the inspector has approved the erosion and sedimentation controls.

B. Spoil material to be used on the job shall be stored within the limits of construction shown on the Plans. Trash, material unsuitable for fill and spoil material shall be permanently disposed of offsite. The CONTRACTOR shall take care not to cause mud, dirt and dust to be carried off the site. When construction is complete the site shall be fully restored and cleaned up of all trash, debris and contaminated soils due to chemical spills or other similar products. No burning on-site is permitted.

C. All workers employed by the CONTRACTOR shall have such skill and experience as will enable them to properly perform the duties assigned them. Any person employed by the CONTRACTOR or a subcontractor who, in the opinion of the OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE, does not perform his work in a proper and skillful manner, or who is disrespectful, intemperate, disorderly, or otherwise objectionable, shall at the written request of the OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE be forthwith discharged and shall not be employed again on any portion of the work without the written consent of the OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish such suitable machinery, equipment, and construction forces as may be necessary, in the opinion of the OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE, for the proper prosecution of the work, and failure to do so may cause the OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE to withhold all estimates which have or may become due or the OWNER may suspend the work until his requests are complied with.

D. All work within temporary or permanent easements shall conform to any and all restrictions, conditions, and/or requirements as may be set forth in the related specific easement documents. Easements secured for this project are shown on the plans and will be presented to the CONTRACTOR.

E. All work within staging and storage areas obtained by CONTRACTOR shall conform to all requirements of these specifications.

1.2 NOTIFICATION OF PROPERTY OWNERS

A. Unless otherwise indicated, the CONTRACTOR will notify property owners abutting the right-of-way or easements, or otherwise that will be affected by construction activities, of impending construction. The CONTRACTOR shall exercise diplomacy and tact with individual property owners. The CONTRACTOR shall specifically designate a single responsible individual that will be responsible for the giving of notifications to the affected property owners or tenants in accordance with this section. The OWNER will have the right to approve the responsible individual and may ask that they be replaced at anytime.

B. CONTRACTOR shall give to property owners or tenants 48 hours notice prior to initiating work in their vicinity (within one city block or otherwise which might be affected by the work. Such notice shall be at a minimum presented by door hangers, the language on which shall be previously approved by the OWNER. The notice shall include a general description of the work to be accomplished, a direct contact

name and local phone number for either the CONTRACTOR's superintendent or the employee responsible for the giving of notices, the name and phone number of the OWNER's onsite inspector, a general and accurate schedule identifying the time anticipated for the work and any other information pertinent to the work. Once notices are given, CONTRACTOR shall focus on completing that phase of work within the duration given. Subsequent notices may be required, at the sole discretion and direction of the OWNER, should the CONTRACTOR fail to complete the work within the identified schedule.

C. Additional 48 hours notices shall be provided to property owners, or others that may be affected by the work, at the sole discretion and direction of the OWNER, for subsequent work activities or phases in the same area that occur beyond 10 working days of completing a work phase identified in an initial notice.

1.3 PROTECTION OF PUBLIC AND PRIVATE PROPERTY

A. Contractor shall protect, shore, brace, support and maintain all underground pipes, conduits, drains, and other underground facilities uncovered or otherwise affected by the Contractor's operations. All pavement, surfacing, driveways, curbs, walks, buildings, utility poles, guy wires, fences, sod, landscaping, irrigation, and other surface structures affected by construction operations shall be restored to their original condition, whether within or outside the easement/right-of-way. All replacements shall be made with new materials of equal appearance.

B. Only trees marked on the plan to be removed may be removed. All other trees shall be protected against injury from construction operations. Tree protection shall be installed at locations as indicated on the plans. Whenever practicable, the Contractor shall utilize hand excavations to tunnel underneath large tree roots.

C. Dust Control during construction shall be performed by the Contractor in a manner to minimize nuisance conditions and to the satisfaction of the Owner's Representative. The Contractor shall provide a dust control system for trenching operations. No direct payment will be made for dust control.

D. On a daily basis the Contractor shall sweep all streets, driveways and parking areas on which trenching, excavating, pipe laying or other dust generating activities occur. A street sweeper containing a dust control system shall be maintained on the project site at all times that trenching, excavating, pipe laying or other dust generating activities are ongoing.

E. Hand excavate to tunnel under other underground obstructions.

1.4 TEMPORARY DRAINAGE PROVISIONS

Contractor shall be responsible for providing for the drainage of stormwater and such water as may be applied or discharged on the site in performance of the Work. Contractor shall construct temporary drainage facilities to handle, carry through, or divert around his Work all drainage flow, including storm flows to prevent silting of waterways or flooding damage to adjacent properties.

1.5 NOISE CONTROL

Contractor shall take reasonable measures to avoid unnecessary noise. Such measures shall be appropriate for the normal ambient sound level in the area during working hours. All construction machinery and vehicles shall be equipped with practical sound-muffling devices, and operated in a manner to cause the least noise consistent with efficient performance of the Work.

1.6 FENCES AND MAILBOXES

A. All existing fences affected by the Work shall be maintained by the Contractor until completion of the work. Fences which interfere with construction operations shall be maintained with temporary fencing that shall be in place at nights/weekends and when the Work is not progressing at that site.

B. Contractor shall remove, reset temporarily, and replace permanently all mailboxes that are affected by the work. Access to mailboxes for delivery U.S. Mail shall be provided at all times. Temporary and permanent installations shall conform to the requirements of the United States Postal Service. Payment for removing and resetting of mailboxes will not be paid for directly, but will be considered subsidiary to the various bid items. Any damage to mail boxes or posts shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

1.7 WORK ON COMMERCIAL PROPERTIES

The CONTRACTOR shall maintain driveway access to all commercial properties during construction of mains and services. Work shall be phased to have a minimal impact on parking during construction. The CONTRACTOR shall coordinate with the property representative regarding the timing of parking space closures and timing of deliveries to the properties.

1.8 MAINTENANCE OF TRAFFIC

A. CONTRACTOR shall conduct his Work to have the least impact with vehicular and pedestrian traffic as is practicable. Whenever it is necessary to cross, obstruct, or close roads, driveways, and walks, whether private or public, the Contractor shall provide and maintain suitable traffic control devices, detours, or other temporary measures to accommodate travel, and shall provide reasonable notice to owners of private drives prior to interfering with them.

B. Safety and conveyance of traffic shall be regarded with prime importance. Unless otherwise directed, all portions of streets associated with this Project shall be kept open and provided a dust free, smooth and comfortable ride to traffic. In making open cut street/driveway crossings, the CONTRACTOR shall not block more than one-half of the street/driveway at one time without approval of the Owner.

C. Prior to beginning Work, CONTRACTOR shall designate to the Owner a competent person who will be responsible and available to ensure compliance with the traffic control plans.

D. The CONTRACTOR shall perform the necessary cleanup and temporary or final finishing immediately at the end of each day to fully reopen all streets and driveways. Temporary surfacing shall be provided where necessary to provide a smooth and safe ride in public streets and driveways.

E. Where indicated on the traffic control plan, CONTRACTOR shall erect and maintain detours around construction activities.

F. All traffic control devices shall be constructed and placed in accordance with the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices and the traffic control plans for the project. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for their placement and maintenance throughout the project.

G. All open trenches and other excavations shall have suitable barricades, signs, and lights to provide adequate protection to the public. Obstructions, such as material piles and equipment shall be provided with similar warning signs and lights, and shall be illuminated with warning lights from sunset to sunrise.

1.9 EMERGENCY FACILITIES

A. Free access shall be maintained at all times to fire lanes and emergency and utility control facilities such as fire hydrants, fire alarm boxes, police call boxes, and utility valves, manholes, junction boxes, etc. In the event that it is necessary to make on of these facilities temporarily inaccessible, the Contractor shall obtain approval of such action. Contractor shall also provide at least 24 hours prior notice to the Fire Department, Police Department, and/or governing agency of the facility.

B. Should a water line or gas line be broken by the Contractor during Work activities, or should other emergency conditions arise during the project, the following emergency notifications shall be immediately made by the Contractor.

Should a gas line be broken, the Contractor is to immediately notify the gas company owning the gas line and the following entities:

City of Kyle Police Dept.	512-268-0859
City of Kyle Fire Dept.	512-268-3131
City of Kyle Inspector	To be provided
City of Kyle Public Works	512-262-3024

Should a water or wastewater line be broken, the Contractor is to immediately notify the owner of the water or wastewater line and the following entities:

City of Kyle Public Works	512-262-3024
City of Kyle Inspector	To be provided

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION

NOT USED

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment shall be made for work described in this section.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01016

EXISTING UTILITIES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This Section covers the requirements with respect to existing public or private utilities.

1.2 PROXIMITY TO WATER MAINS

All Plans are drawn in such a manner that all know utilities are shown using the best available information including utility maps, field surveys, or other sources of information. A minimum distance of 9 ft. shall be maintained between water and sanitary sewer lines where possible. Where this separation distance cannot be achieved, refer to the requirements provide in Section 2963 – Separation Distances.

1.3 PROXIMITY TO OTHER UTILITIES

All Plans are drawn in such a manner that all known utilities are shown using the best available information including utility maps, field surveys, or other sources of information. Contractor shall carefully field verify all existing gas, electric, telephone, fiber optic, and other utilities located in the project area prior to construction. Any adjustments to the Plans to avoid conflicts with existing utilities shall only be made after approval of the Owner and Engineer

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED.

PART 3: EXECUTION

NOT USED.

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment shall be made for this item.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01040

COORDINATION AND SITE CONDITIONS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Requirements for coordinating the work under the Contract with other contracts, and requirements regarding existing site conditions.

B. Requirements for cutting and patching of new and existing work.

1.2 JOBSITE COORDINATION

A. Coordination with Work by Others: N/A

B. Coordination with Driveway Owners: CONTRACTOR shall coordinate construction with driveway owners and maintain ingress and egress at all times.

C. Coordination with City of Kyle Fire Department: CONTRACTOR shall coordinate all TCP changes and City of Kyle Fire Department driveway modifications with the City of Kyle Fire Department to maintain ingress and egress at all times.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. CONTRACTOR shall submit the following information as applicable to coordination activities:

1. **Subsurface Information and Utilities:**
   a. Records or logs of boring or test holes made by CONTRACTOR, if any.

   b. Results of exploratory excavations made to verify locations and nature, shape, dimensions, etc., of existing utilities and facilities; where possible, indicate this information on clean copy of Contract Drawings.

2. **Field Relocation:** Clearly show proposed relocation of new or existing facilities, or related work affected by the relocation, on clean copy of the Contract Drawings and submit prior to performing the relocation.

3. **Connecting Work:** Proposed methods of connecting new work to existing facilities:

4. **Cutting and Patching:**
   a. Written notice requesting consent to perform cutting which may affect structural safety or normal functioning of existing facilities.

   b. Notifications indicating changed conditions, proposal of alternative materials or methods, time when uncovered work may be observed, and other information necessary to evaluate substitutions when work conditions necessitate change of materials or methods. CONTRACTOR shall provide and pay for engineering services as required for alternatives and substitutions.

1.4 SITE CONDITIONS

A. **General:** Information obtained by the OWNER regarding site conditions, topography, subsurface information, groundwater elevations, existing construction of site facilities as applicable, and similar data will be available for inspection at the office of the ENGINEER upon request.

B. **Profile Evaluations:** Existing ground contours shown on the Drawings were developed from topographic data and some field survey work.

C. **CONTRACTOR's Responsibilities for Existing Utilities:**

1. Where CONTRACTOR's operations could cause damage or inconvenience to railway, telegraph, telephone, television, power, oil, gas, water, sewer or irrigation systems, the CONTRACTOR shall make arrangements necessary for the protection of these utilities and services. Replace existing utilities removed or damaged during construction, unless otherwise provided for in these Contract Documents.

2. Notify utility offices that are affected by construction operations at least 48 hours in advance. Under no circumstances expose any utility without first obtaining permission from the appropriate agency. Once permission has been granted, locate, expose, and provide temporary support for the utilities.

3. Contractor shall be solely and directly responsible to OWNER and operator of such properties for damage, injury, expense, loss, inconvenience, delay, suits, actions, or claims of any character brought because of injuries or damage which may result from construction operations under this Contract.

4. Neither OWNER nor its officers or agents shall be responsible to CONTRACTOR for damages as a result of CONTRACTOR's failure to protect utilities encountered in the work.

5. In event of interruption to domestic water, sewer, storm drain, or other utility services as a result of accidental damage due to construction operations, promptly notify the proper authority. Cooperate with said authority in restoration as promptly as possible and pay for repair. Prevent interruption of utility service unless granted by the utility owner.

D. **Interfering Structures:**

1. The CONTRACTOR shall protect from damage, all existing structures aboveground or underground which are to remain. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for all costs associated with any restoration of existing structures. An attempt has been made to show major structures on the Drawings. While the information has been compiled from the best available sources, its completeness and accuracy cannot be guaranteed.

2. Protect existing structures from damage. Where existing fences, gates, barns, sheds, buildings, or other structure must be removed to properly carry out work, or are damaged during work, restore them to original condition and to the satisfaction of property owner.

3. CONTRACTOR may remove and replace in equal or better than original condition, small structures such as fences, mailboxes, and signposts that interfere with CONTRACTOR's operations.

E. **Field Relocation:**

1. During construction, it is expected that minor relocations of proposed facilities will be necessary. Make such relocations only by direction of the OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE. If existing structures are encountered that prevent construction as shown, notify the OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE before

continuing with work so OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE may make necessary field revisions.

2. Where shown or directed by and acceptable to the OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE and OWNER, provide relocation of existing facilities to include piping, utilities, equipment, structures, electrical conduit wiring, electrical duct bank, and other miscellaneous items. Use only new materials for relocation of existing facilities. Match materials of existing facilities, unless otherwise shown or specified. Perform relocations to minimize downtime of existing facilities. Install new portions of existing facilities in their relocated position prior to removing existing facilities, unless otherwise accepted by OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE. Comply with cutting and patching requirements in this section.

F. **Monuments and Markers:**
1. Preserve and protect survey monuments and markers throughout construction. If damage occurs or removal becomes necessary, immediately notify OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE and restore monument or marker to original condition.

2. Preserve private and public monuments that are found. If monument must be removed, replace at original location using registered land surveyor. Notify OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE when monuments are encountered.

G. **Salvage of Materials:**
1. CONTRACTOR shall salvage materials for OWNER's use as directed by the OWNER or OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE. Store materials where instructed on the jobsite. Promptly remove materials to be salvaged from the work area.

2. Remove material to be salvaged with extreme care so as not to damage it for future use. Equipment shall be cleaned and protected from dirt and the elements, and stored as directed. Prior to dismantling equipment or piping. The CONTRACTOR shall confer with the OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE. The OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE will indicate the locations where equipment is to be disconnected. Damage caused by the CONTRACTOR to the equipment or material specified or indicated on the Drawings to be salvaged shall be replaced or repaired by the CONTRACTOR.

H. **Connecting to Existing Facilities:** Unless otherwise shown or specified, determine methods of connecting new work to existing facilities, and obtain OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE's review and acceptance of connections. CONTRACTOR shall provide necessary engineering services and include the cost for these services in the CONTRACTOR's bid.
1. Determine location, elevation, nature, materials, dimensions, and configurations of existing facilities where necessary for connecting new work.

2. Inspect existing record drawings and shop drawings, conduct exploratory excavations and field inspections, and conduct similar activities as needed.

3. Water and wastewater connection procedures shall conform Specification 510 Pipe.

I. It will be the CONTRACTOR's responsibility to provide construction staking for all structures, facilities and piping systems.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.1 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. **General:**

1. Execute cutting (including excavating), fitting, or patching of work, required to:
   a) Make the several parts fit properly.
   b) Uncover work to provide for installation of specified work.
   c) Remove and replace defective work or work not conforming to requirements of Contract Documents.
   d) Remove samples of installed materials as specified for testing.
   e) Install specified work in existing construction.

2. Perform the following upon written instruction of the OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE or OWNER.
   a) Uncover work to provide for OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE's observation of covered work.
   b) Remove samples of installed materials for testing.
   c) Remove work to provide for alteration of existing work.

3. CONTRACTOR shall not, without written consent of OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE of OWNER.
   a) Cut or alter work of another CONTRACTOR.
   b) Cut structural or reinforcing steel.
   c) Endanger existing or new structures or facilities.
   d) Shut down or disrupt existing operations.

4. Materials for replacement of work removed shall comply with applicable sections of these Specifications for corresponding type of work to be done.

5. Provide all tools and equipment required to accomplish cutting and patching.

B. **Inspection and Preparation:**

1. Inspect existing conditions of work, including elements subject to movement or damage during cutting, patching, excavating, and backfilling.

2. After uncovering work, inspect conditions affecting installation of new products.

3. Prior to cutting, provide safety protection.

C. **Procedures:**

1. Execute fitting and adjustment of products to provide finished installation to comply with specified tolerances and finishes.

2. Execute excavating and backfilling as specified in Division 2.

3. Restore work which has been cut or removed; install new products to provide completed work in accordance with specified requirements.

4. Restore structures and surfaces damaged that are to remain in the completed work including concrete-embedded piping, conduit, and other utilities.

5. Make restorations with new materials and appropriate methods as specified for new work of similar

nature; if not specified, use best recommended practice of manufacturer or appropriate trade association.

6. Restore damaged work so there is a secure and intimate bond or fastening between new and old work. Finish restored surfaces to such planes, shapes, and textures that not transition between new and old work is evident in finished surfaces.

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate measurement or payment will not be made for Work required under this Section. All costs in connection with the Work specified herein will be considered to be included with the related item of Work in the Bid Schedule, or incidental to the Project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01050

GRADES, LINES AND LEVELS

PART 1: GENERAL

A. The OWNERS survey crews will not stake for construction and will not be on site, except to perform quality control checks.

B. The bench mark for horizontal/vertical control is noted on the Plans.

C. The OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE will meet with CONTRACTOR on site to point out controls at a mutually convenient date.

All Work shall be done to the lines, grades and elevations indicated on the drawings. Information concerning basic horizontal and vertical control points will be provided by the Engineer. These points shall be used as datum under this Contract. All work to transfer all controls for grades, lines, levels, layout and measurements shall be performed by the CONTRACTOR and require the approval of the Owner's Representative. The CONTRACTOR shall place grade stakes and establish construction staking layout sheets. The centerline and offset centerline stakes will be set at fifty (50) foot intervals and at points of alignment or grade changes. References to lines and grades as established by the CONTRACTOR's surveyor shall be in reference to these stake lines. The CONTRACTOR shall allow a minimum of ten (10) days after submission to the OWNER for approval of construction staking layout sheets. Construction layout sheets shall be in a format acceptable to the Owner's Representative. No Work shall be performed without OWNER approved construction staking layout sheets.

The CONTRACTOR shall provide a registered surveyor, an experienced instrument man, competent assistants, and such instruments, tools, stakes and other materials as required to complete the survey layout and measurement work to conform to the Texas Society of Professional Surveyors Manual of Practice for Land Surveying in the State of Texas, Category 5, Section 1-9 inclusive, and in a format to be established by the Owner's Representative. Prior to any excavation, the CONTRACTOR shall provide the elevation to top of ground at centerline of the pipe as well as cuts and offset stakes at the distance deemed appropriate by the CONTRACTOR to preclude disturbance of offset stakes during construction. In addition, the CONTRACTOR shall furnish, without charge, competent men from his force and such tools, stakes, and other materials as the Owner's Representative may require in establishing or designating control points, or in checking survey, layout, and measurement work performed by the CONTRACTOR.

The CONTRACTOR shall keep the Owner's Representative informed, a reasonable time in advance of the times and places at which he wishes to do Work, so that any checking deemed necessary by the Owner's Representative may be done with minimum inconvenience to the Engineer and minimum delay to the CONTRACTOR. Surveying will be coordinated between the Engineer and CONTRACTOR in a manner convenient to both.

Any Work done without being properly located may be ordered removed and replaced at the CONTRACTOR's expense.

The Engineer will furnish control data, benchmarks and northing and easting coordinate values at PC's, PI's, PT's, and other control points as indicated on the construction Drawings. The CONTRACTOR shall carefully preserve all monuments, benchmarks, reference points, and stakes. In case of the destruction thereof, the CONTRACTOR shall be charged with the expense of replacement and shall be responsible

for any mistake or loss of time that may be caused. Permanent monuments or benchmarks which must be removed or disturbed shall be protected until properly referenced for relocation. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish materials and assistance for the proper replacement of such monuments or benchmarks.

The CONTRACTOR shall satisfy himself before commencing Work as to the meaning and correctness of all control stakes, marks, etc., and no claim will be entertained by the OWNER for or on account of any alleged inaccuracies, unless the CONTRACTOR notifies the OWNER thereof in writing before commencing work thereon.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION

NOT USED

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate measurement or payment will not be made for Work required under this Section. All costs in connection with the Work specified herein will be considered to be included with the related item of Work in the Bid Schedule, or incidental to the Project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01070

ABBREVIATIONS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

The following abbreviations, in addition to those included in Division 0, whenever used in these Contract Documents, the intent and meaning shall be interpreted as follows:

AA	Aluminum Association
AAMA	Architectural Aluminum Manufacturers Association
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
ACI	American Concrete Institute
AFBMA	Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association
AGA	American Gas Association
AGMA	American Gear Manufacturers Association
AIMA	Acoustical and Insulating Materials Association
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction
AMCA	Air Moving and Conditioning Association
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
APA	American Plywood Association
API	American Petroleum Institute
AREA	American Railway Engineering Association
ASAE	American Society of Agricultural Engineers
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air-Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute
AWPA	American Wood Preservers Association
AWPB	American Wood Preservers Bureau
AWPI	American Wood Preservers Institute
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Works Association
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
CBMA	Certified Ballast Manufacturers Association
CDA	Copper Development Association
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
CLFMI	Chain Link Fencing Manufacturers Institute
CMAA	Crane Manufacturers Association of America
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute
CS	Commercial Standard, U.S. Department of Commerce
ETL	Electrical Testing Laboratories
Fed. Spec.	Federal Specifications
HI	Hydraulic Institute
HMI	Hoist Manufacturers Institute
ICBO	International Conference of Building Officials

IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
IPCEA	Insulated Power Cable Engineers Association
MIL-	Military Specification (leading symbol)
MMA	Monorail Manufacturers Association
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry
NAPF	National Association of Plastic Fabricators
NBHA	National Builders Hardware Association
NEC	National Electrical Code
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NESC	National Electric Safety Code
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NGVD	National Geodetic Verified Datum
NLMA	National Lumber Manufacturers Association
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
NWMA	National Woodwork Manufacturers Association
OECI	Overhead Electrical Crane Institute
OFCI	OWNER-furnished, CONTRACTOR-installed
OFCR	OWNER-furnished, CONTRACTOR-relocated
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Act (both Federal & State)
PCA	Portland Cement Association
PDI	Plumbing and Drainage Institute
PS	Product Standards Sections - U.S. Department of Commerce
RMA	Rubber Manufacturers Association
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SDI	Steel Deck Institute
SJI	Steel Joist Institute
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors, National Association
SPR	Simplified Practice Recommendations, U.S. Department of Commerce
SSPC	Steel Structures Painting Council
TCA	Tile Council of America
TEMA	Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association
UBC	Uniform Building Code
UL	Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
WIC	Woodwork Institute of California
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association

PART 2: PRODUCTS

Not applicable to this Section.

PART 3: EXECUTION

Not applicable to this Section.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01200

PROJECT MEETINGS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. This section describes the various project related meetings which will be held on a routine schedule throughout the duration of the project.

B. The CONTRACTOR shall attend all project related meetings as indicated hereinafter. The CONTRACTOR's representatives, as a minimum, shall include his Project Manager and Construction Site Superintendent. Other CONTRACTOR representatives may attend project related meetings; however, a limit of four (4) representatives at any one meeting is mandatory unless the Owner's Representative approves a larger number.

C. The CONTRACTOR shall provide all pertinent reports, copies of reports, etc., for each meeting as may be required by this or other sections of the Specifications.

D. All project related meetings shall be held in the Owner's Representative office unless otherwise specified.

E. The Owner's Representative will record the minutes of all meetings and will furnish all attendees and others, as necessary and appropriate, with copies within three (3) working days. The CONTRACTOR shall advise the Owner's Representative, in writing, of any inaccuracies, discrepancies, objections and or missing items in the minutes, within seven (7) calendar days or receipt of the minutes or by the next meeting, whichever is sooner.

1.2 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

A. Prior to issuance of the Notice to Proceed, a Preconstruction Conference shall be held at a location, date and time designated by the OWNER. In addition to the OWNER's, ENGINEER's and CONTRACTOR's representatives the meeting shall be attended by the representatives of regulatory agencies having jurisdiction of the project, if required, and such other persons the OWNER may designate.

B. Unless otherwise specified or agreed by the OWNER and CONTRACTOR, the CONTRACTOR shall present to the OWNER the written safety program, names of salaried specialists of CONTRACTOR and Subcontractors, and all other preconstruction documents required of him by the Contract at that time.

C. In general, matters to be discussed and the instructions and information to be furnished to or given by the CONTRACTOR shall include:
   1. Project meeting schedule.
   2. Progress schedule and schedule of values submitted by CONTRACTOR.
   3. Communication procedures between the CONTRACTOR, OWNER and ENGINEER.
   4. The names and titles of all persons authorized by the CONTRACTOR to represent and execute documents for him, with samples of all authorized signatures.
   5. The names, addresses and telephone numbers of all those authorized by the CONTRACTOR to act for him in emergencies.
   6. Construction permit requirements, procedures and posting.
   7. Public notice of starting work.
   8. Procedures concerning the installation of work on public or private property not owned by the

OWNER.

9. Access and rights-of-way furnished by the OWNER.
10. Forms and procedures for CONTRACTOR's submittals.
11. Change order forms and procedures.
12. Payment application forms and procedures and the revised progress schedule reports to accompany the applications.
13. CONTRACTOR's safety and training program and designation of the CONTRACTOR's safety officer and his qualifications.
14. First-aid and medical facilities to be furnished by CONTRACTOR.
15. Contractor's provisions for barricades, traffic control, utilities, sanitary facilities, and other temporary facilities and controls.
16. Project sign for OWNER if required by the Specifications.
17. Inspector and his duties.
18. Construction surveyor and initiation of surveying services.
19. Testing laboratory or agency, and testing procedures.
20. Construction equipment and methods proposed by the CONTRACTOR.
21. Procedures for payroll and labor cost reporting by the CONTRACTOR.
22. Procedures to ensure nondiscrimination in employment on and for the work.
23. Issuance of the notice to proceed.
24. Use of site for construction, storage, staging, etc. and its interrelationship with other contracts.
25. Inventory of materials to be stored on site.

1.3 PROGRESS MEETINGS

A. Progress meetings shall be held throughout the duration of the project at the frequency determined by the Owner's Representative. The meetings shall be held on the same day and at the same time in an office, all to be determined at the preconstruction conference. In addition to the OWNER's, ENGINEER's and CONTRACTOR's representatives, the meeting shall be attended by other persons designated/requested by the OWNER, ENGINEER and/or CONTRACTOR.

B. The format may include, but not necessarily be limited to, the following subjects:
   1. Review of previous meetings notes and update of pertinent information and project status.
   2. Identification and discussion of new job related construction problems. Such discussion will be toward resolving identified problems.
   3. Establishment of proposed construction activities for the upcoming month.
   4. Coordination with other contracts, including meeting with other contractors.

1.4 OTHER MEETINGS

A. Other meetings shall be held from time to time as may be requested by the CONTRACTOR, the ENGINEER or the OWNER. The time and place of the meetings shall be as mutually agreed upon. Those required to be in attendance at the meetings shall be as requested by that party requesting the meeting.

B. Other meetings shall also include meetings with regulatory agencies. When requested, the CONTRACTOR shall attend meetings held or required by the governmental regulatory agencies having jurisdiction of the project.

C. Other meetings shall also include post-construction conference. A post-construction conference shall be held prior to final inspection of the work to discuss and resolve all unsettled matters. The bonds and insurance to remain in force, and other documents required to be submitted by the CONTRACTOR, will

be reviewed and any deficiencies determined. Schedules and procedures for the final inspection process and for the correction of defects and deficiencies shall be discussed and agreed.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

Not applicable to this Section.

PART 3: EXECUTION

Not applicable to this Section.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01300

SUBMITTALS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

This Section specifies the general methods and requirements of submissions for Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples, Record Drawings, and Construction Progress Schedules.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A.	Section 01700	Contract Closeout
B.	Section 02960	Temporary Bypass Pumping
C.	210S	Flexible Base
D.	340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
E.	403S	Concrete for Structures
F.	406S	Reinforcing Steel
G.	410S	Concrete Structures
H.	503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
I.	506	Manholes
J.	506MOD	
K.	507S	Bulkheads
L.	509S	Excavation Safety Systems
M.	510	Pipe
N.	510MOD	
O.	604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
P.	642S	Silt Fence
Q.	700S	Mobilization
R.	702S	Removal and Relocation of Existing Fences
S.	803S	Barricades , Signs and Traffic Handling

1.3 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, SAMPLES

A. Shop Drawings
   1. Deliver submittals to the Engineer at the following address:

      LJA Engineering.
      2700 La Frontera Blvd
      Suite 150
      Austin, Texas 78681

   2. In lieu of hardcopy submittals, electronic submittals may be submitted to the Engineer in PDF format. Electronic submittals shall meet all the requirements of hardcopy submittals and one reviewed electronic submittal will be returned to the Contractor for his use.

   3. Each specific product, class of material, and equipment system shall be submitted separately unless integrally related.

   4. Assign a number to the documents originated to allow tracking of the submittal during the review

process.

a. Issue sequence numbers in chronological order for each submittal.

b. Assign each submittal a Contractor's Submittal Number consisting of a prefix, a sequence number, and a letter suffix. Prefixes shall be as follows:

Prefix	Description	Originator
AP	Application for Payment	Contractor
CO	Change Order	Engineer
CMR	Contract Modification Request	Contractor
CTR	Certified Test Report	Contractor
EIR	Equipment Installation Report	Contractor
FO	Field Order	Engineer
NBC	Notification by Contractor	Contractor
O&M	Operation & Maintenance Manuals	Contractor
PD	Product Data	Contractor
RD	Record Data	Contractor
RFI	Request for Information	Contractor
SAM	Sample	Contractor
SD	Shop Drawing	Contractor
SCH	Progress Schedule	Contractor

5. Issue numbers for resubmittals that have the same number as the original submittal followed by an alphabetical suffix indicating the number of times the same submittal has been sent to the Engineer for processing. For example: 025-A represents the twenty-fifth submittal and is the second time this submittal has been sent for review. Shop drawings, as defined in the Supplementary Conditions, and as specified in individual work Sections include, but are not necessarily limited to, custom-prepared data such as fabrication and erection/installation drawings, installation instructions, scheduled information, setting diagrams, actual shopwork manufacturing instructions, custom templates, wiring diagrams, coordination drawings, individual system or equipment inspection and test reports including performance curves and certifications, as applicable to the work

6. Within 14 days of the notice to proceed per section 01600 the CONTRACTOR shall submit to the Owner's Representative a "SUBMITTAL REGISTER" for review and approval. This register shall include, but is not limited to:
   a. Listings of all submittals and samples;
   b. Estimated date submittal will be transmitted;
   c. Estimated procurement time for each item;
   d. Blanks for dates transmitted, approved, and received for initial and follow-up transmittals.

7. All shop drawings submitted by subcontractors for approval shall be sent directly to the CONTRACTOR for preliminary checking. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for their submission at the proper time so as to prevent delays in delivery of materials.

8. The CONTRACTOR shall check all subcontractor's shop drawings regarding measurements, size of members, materials, and details to satisfy himself that they conform to the intent of the Drawings and Specifications. Drawings found to be inaccurate or otherwise in error shall be returned to the subcontractors for correction before submission thereof.

9. All details on shop drawings submitted for approval shall show clearly the elevations of the various parts to the main members and lines of the structure, and where correct fabrication of the work depends upon field measurements, such measurements shall be made and noted on the drawings before being submitted for approval.

B. Product Data as specified in individual Sections, include, but are not necessarily limited to, standard prepared data for manufactured products (sometimes referred to as catalog data); manufacturer's product specification and installation instructions, availability of colors and patterns, manufacturer's printed statements of compliances and applicability, roughing-in diagrams and templates, catalog cuts, product photographs, standard wiring diagrams, printed performance curves and operational-range diagrams, production or quality control inspection and test reports and certifications, mill reports, product operating and maintenance instructions and recommended spare parts listing, and printed product warranties, as applicable to the work.

C. Samples, as specified in individual Sections, include, but are not necessarily limited to, physical examples of the work such as sections of manufactured or fabricated work, small cuts or containers of materials, complete units of repetitively-used products, color/texture/pattern swatches and range sets, specimens for coordination of visual effect, graphic symbols, and units of work to be used by the Owner's Representative for independent inspection and testing, as applicable to the work.

D. Contractor's Responsibilities
   1. The CONTRACTOR shall review shop drawings, product data and samples prior to submission to determine and verify the following:
      a. Field measurements
      b. Field construction criteria
      c. Catalog numbers and similar data
      d. Conformance with the Specifications

   2. Each shop drawing, working drawing, sample and catalog data submitted by the CONTRACTOR shall have affixed to it the following Certification Statement, signed by the CONTRACTOR:

      "Certification Statement: By this submittal, I hereby represent that I have determined and verified all field measurements, field construction criteria, materials, dimensions, catalog numbers and similar data and I have checked and coordinated each item with other applicable approved shop drawings and all Contract requirements."

   3. Submittals shall be organized by Specification Section when possible. Each submittal shall include a cover/transmittal sheet displaying the specification section (s) covered by the submittal.

   4. The CONTRACTOR shall submit a minimum of 5 copies of each submittal/shop drawing to the OWNER or CONTRACTOR may submit electronically.

   5. When submittals/shop drawings are returned for correction by the CONTRACTOR, the CONTRACTOR shall resubmit the complete submittal/shop drawing.

E. Engineer's Duties
   1. Review the submittals and return with reasonable promptness.
   2. Indicate approval, rejection, and the need for resubmittal.
   3. Distribute documents.

F. **Operation and Maintenance Manuals:** Submit operation and maintenance manuals for all

equipment, mechanical devices, or components described in the contract documents per Section 01730 - Operation and Maintenance Manuals. Include copies of approved shop drawings/product data in the manual.

1.4 SUBSTITUTE AND “OR-EQUAL” EQUIPMENT

A. Unless otherwise specifically stated in a specification section, substitute and "or-equal" equipment will not be considered.

B. Substitutions are defined as any product that the Contractor proposes to provide for the project in lieu of the specified product.

C. Where specifically stated in a specification section that "or-equal" equipment will be considered, application for such acceptance will be made during the bid phase. All “or equal” equipment will be subject to approval based on submittal review.

D. Where specifically stated in a specification section that "Engineer approved equivalent" equipment will be considered prior to the bid date, application for such acceptance shall include the following
   1. Manufacturers brochure describing the proposed equipment.

   2. Complete written specification for the proposed equipment.

   3. Complete drawings of the proposed equipment.

   4. An installation list for the proposed equipment with contact person name, telephone number, location and date of installation. The list shall verify the specific requirement of the specification regarding minimum number of operational installations and minimum time in operation.

   5. A complete list of exceptions taken to the specified equipment.

   6. Provide a certification that in making the substitution request, the Contractor:
      a. Has determined that the substituted product will perform in substantially the same manner and result in the same ability to meet the specified performance as the specified product.

      b. Will provide the same warranties and/or bonds for the substituted product as specified or as would be provided by the manufacturer of the specified product.

      c. Will assume all responsibility to coordinate any modifications that may be necessary to incorporate the substituted product into the project and will waive all claims for additional work which may be necessary to incorporate the substituted product into the project which may subsequently become apparent.

      d. Will maintain the same time schedule as for the specified product.

   7. This information shall be submitted to the Engineer for receipt not later than ten (10) days prior to the date of the bid opening. Approval of “Engineer approved equivalent” shall be so stated in a written addendum issued prior to the bid date. Any submission of “Engineer approved equivalent" equipment will not be considered after the deadline listed prior to the bid date including after the project is awarded.

E. This information shall be submitted to the Engineer for receipt not later than ten (10) days prior to the date of the bid opening.

F. The Contractor shall be responsible for any additional costs or delays for having furnished materials, equipment, or fixtures other than those specified and shall reimburse the Owner for any increased costs, including but not limited to design and testing, resulting from such substitutions.

G. Prove that the product is acceptable as a substitute. It is not the Engineer's responsibility to prove the product is not acceptable as a substitute.

H. The decision of the Engineer regarding the acceptability of the proposed substitution is final.

1.5 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record Drawings shall be maintained continually throughout the project by the CONTRACTOR. Record Drawings shall be reviewed with the Owner's Representative prior to submittal of monthly pay requests.

B. Before final payment will be made, the CONTRACTOR must furnish the OWNER with one (1) set of Record Drawings.

C. The Record Drawings shall be marked neatly in red showing all changes, additions or deletions to the Design Drawings to reflect the actual construction conditions.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULES

A. Submit initial progress schedule in duplicate within 10 calendar days after the effective date of the agreement and no later than the pre-construction conference.

B. Submit revised schedules with each application for payment, identifying changes since previous version.

C. Indicate estimated percentage of completion for each item of work at each submission.

1.7 GUARANTEES

Warranties and guarantees shall be submitted as required by the contract documents and submitted with the shop drawings/product data.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION

NOT USED

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate measurement or payment will not be made for Work required under this section.

SAMPLE

SHOP DRAWING COVER SHEET
(ATTACHED TO ALL SHOP DRAWINGS & SUBMITTALS)
(USED FOR REVIEW STAMP & COMMENTS)

NAME OF PROJECT

Transmittal No.		Date:	
Description:		Spec Section Reference:	
Supplier:			

CONTRACTOR REVIEW STAMP	LJA ENGINEERING REVIEW STAMP
CONTRACTOR COMMENTS	
KSA COMMENTS	

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01307

PROTECTION AND PRESERVATION OF PRIMITIVE RIGHTS AND ANTIQUITIES

PART 1: GENERAL

The Contractor shall take responsible precaution to avoid disturbing primitive records and antiquities of archaeological, paleontological or historical significance. No objects of this nature shall be disturbed without written permission of the Engineer. When such objects are uncovered unexpectedly, the Contractor shall stop all work in close proximity and notify the Engineer of their presence and shall not disturb them until written permission to do so is granted. All materials uncovered shall become the property of the owner of the land on which they are uncovered and shall be handled in accordance with all rules, regulations and laws governing the disposition of such materials.

If it is determined by the Owner, in consultation with the Texas Antiquities Committee, that exploration or excavation of primitive records or antiquities on the project site is necessary to avoid loss, the Contractor shall cooperate in the salvage work attendant to preservation. If the Engineer determines that the salvage work will increase the project cost or will delay the Contractors work, an appropriate change order shall be executed.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01410

TESTING LABORATORY SERVICES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Pre-construction testing to verify conformance of materials with the requirements of the specifications shall be performed and paid for by the CONTRACTOR. Testing results shall be submitted to the ENGINEER in accordance with Section 01300.

B. The OWNER will employ and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory to perform QA/QC services specified in this Section. All other required tests shall be paid for by the CONTRACTOR, including tests required for gradation, concrete mix designs, asphalt mix designs, etc. See related Sections for specific requirements of the CONTRACTOR.

C. Employment of a testing laboratory by the OWNER or the CONTRACTOR in no way relieves the CONTRACTOR of his obligation to perform the work according to the Contract.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

Testing is required for the following items of work:

A. Soils compaction control.
B. Cast-in-place concrete.
C. HMAC Compaction Control

PART 2: TESTING LABORATORY

2.1 DUTIES

A. Cooperate with the ENGINEER and CONTRACTOR; provide qualified personnel promptly on notice.

B. Perform specified inspections, sampling and testing of materials and methods of construction:
   1. Comply with specified standards; ASTM, other recognized authorities and as specified.
   2. Ascertain compliance with requirements of the Contract documents.

C. Promptly notify the ENGINEER and CONTRACTOR of irregularities or deficiencies of work which are observed during performance of services.

D. Promptly prepare and distribute reports of inspections and tests as follows:
   1. ENGINEER: 2 copies
   2. CONTRACTOR: 2 copies
   3. OWNER: 2 copies

2.2 LIMITS OF AUTHORITY

The laboratory is not authorized to:

A. Release, revoke, alter or enlarge on requirements of the Contract documents.

B. Approve or accept any portion of the work.
C. Perform any duties of the CONTRACTOR.

PART 3: CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Cooperate with laboratory personnel; provide access to the work or to manufacturer's operations.

B. Provide to laboratory preliminary representative samples of materials to be tested in required quantities.

C. Furnish copies of mill test reports.

D. Furnish casual labor and facilities:

1. To provide access to the work to be tested.

2. To obtain and handle samples at the site.

3. To facilitate inspections and tests.

4. For laboratory's exclusive use for storage and curing of test samples.

E. Coordinate/schedule all laboratory tests with the Owner’s Representative. Notify the Owner’s Representative sufficiently in advance of operations to allow for his coordination with the testing laboratory.

F. Arrange with the laboratory and pay for additional samples and tests required for the CONTRACTOR's convenience.

G. CONTRACTOR to pay for any quality control test that fails and requires retesting of the material.

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate measurement or payment will not be made for Work required under this Section. All costs in connection with the Work specified herein will be considered to be included with the related item of Work in the Bid Schedule, or incidental to the Project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01500

TEMPORARY FACILITIES

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 DESCROPTION

The facilities and controls specified in this section are considered minimum for the project. After obtaining approval, the Contractor can provide additional facilities and controls which he deems necessary for proper execution of the work and to meet his responsibilities for protection of persons and property. Contractor shall obtain all required permits for temporary facilities at his own expense.

1.2 BUILDINGS

A. **STORAGE.** Provide watertight storage facilities of suitable size with floor above ground level for all materials susceptible to weather damage. Storage of other materials on blocks off the ground is acceptable. Place materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification.

B. **OTHER BUILDINGS.** The location or building of structures or the erection of tents or other forms of protection are allowed as approved.

1.3 UTILITIES

A. **JOB TELEPHONE.** A cellular telephone will be acceptable provided the Contractor's superintendent (as specified in the General Conditions) shall be accessible by telephone at all times that work is in progress.

B. **TEMPORARY CONNECTIONS.** Arrange and secure all temporary connections for water, electricity, gas and other services needed to do the work. The cost of connection and use is paid by the Contractor.

1.4 SANITATION

Provide and maintain sanitary conveniences to satisfy requirements of local or state health authorities, ordinances, and laws. Obtain approval for location, secluded from public view.

1.5 ACCESS ROAD AND PARKING

Access to the work from existing roads shall be provided by the Contractor at his expense. The Owner assumes no responsibility for the conditions or maintenance of any existing road or structure thereon that may be used by the Contractor for performing the work under these specifications for traveling to and from the site of the work. No direct payment will be made to Contractor for constructing temporary road and structures for construction operations, or for improving, repairing, or maintaining any existing road or structure thereon that may be used by the Contractor for performance of the work under these specifications. Contractor shall restore all temporary roads to their condition immediately prior to use by the Contractor. The cost of all work described in this paragraph shall be included in the prices bid in the other items of work. Access to the work site must be through a public right-of-way, or through a public easement. Crossing of lots except in the easements will not be allowed, unless contractor has obtained specific permission from the property owner.

1.6 BARRICADES AND WARNINGS

A. The safety of the public shall be regarded as of primary importance during construction. In all respects,

provisions for public safety shall be the Contractor's responsibility.

B. Should conditions be such that the public safety is involved, the Contractor shall provide warning lights which shall be kept burning between the hours of sunset and sunrise and the Contractor shall maintain a watchman on the site during these hours and during all other hours in which work is not in progress and the watchman's primary responsibility shall be to maintain the lights and warnings. Barricades and warnings shall be as approved by the Engineer.

1.7 REMOVAL OF TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

Prior to the final inspection remove all temporary buildings, storage facilities, sanitary conveniences, and signs. Disconnect all temporary utility connections. Clear the area of unnecessary safety items and temporary controls. Remove or restore, as required, all temporary roads and parking areas. Clean up the entire area as specified in the Section 01700.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION

NOT USED

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01550

PUBLIC SAFETY AND CONVENIENCE

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

A. General Conditions: Section 00700
B. Supplemental General Conditions: Section 00800
C. General Requirements

PART 2: PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. CONTRACTOR shall maintain reasonable local vehicular and pedestrian dust free traffic, including use of driveways, to proceed safely with minimum inconvenience, except during actual construction operations. CONTRACTOR provided flaggers shall assist traffic when a street is operating under a single lane. Two-way traffic shall be maintained at all other times.

B. CONTRACTOR shall maintain traffic by placing steel plates with Asphaltic concrete berms, temporary fill or bridging and temporary surfacing with cold-mix Asphaltic concrete paving.

C. Sidewalks shall not be obstructed, except by special permission of the local government as applicable. Access to private dwelling and to commercial establishments shall be provided at all times.

D. CONTRACTOR shall plan and execute his operations in a manner that will cause a minimum interference with traffic. The CONTRACTOR shall place and maintain in good condition, standard barricades at each end of the Project and at other locations where traffic is rerouted or blocked from using regular traffic lanes. Barricades and warning signs shall be in accordance with Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT).

E. Signs, barricades and warning devices informing public of construction features shall be placed and maintained by the CONTRACTOR who shall be solely responsible for their maintenance

F. Neither explosives nor blasting shall be permitted on this Work.

G. The CONTRACTOR shall adhere to work hours and noise ordinances of the local government. Dust control shall be maintained at all times.

H. Any private property damaged during the course of construction shall be immediately repaired or replaced to its original condition.

3.2 TRAFFIC CONTROL

A. It shall be sole responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to furnish, install, and maintain barricades, detour

signs, warning signs, lights and all regulatory traffic control devices of the size and type specified, at locations indicated, or as directed or approved by the Owner's Representative.

B. Throughout the life of the Contract, all existing roads and Traffic Control devices included in the Work shall be maintained by the CONTRACTOR to a condition, in the opinion of the OWNER, which is equal to or better than that which existed when Work commenced. Maintenance of existing roads and devices shall take priority over all other Work items and shall be subject to a seven-day-a-week, 24-hours-per-day time frame. The CONTRACTOR shall provide a smooth and safe riding surface for all vehicles traveling the posted speed limit along the route of this Project. This could include, but not be limited to, small cars, motorcycles, mopeds and bicycles. If the condition of the street surface deteriorates, for any reason, CONTRACTOR shall take necessary steps to insure immediate restoration.

C. Maintenance work will not be paid for directly but will be considered subsidiary to various Bid items of this Contract.

D. In the event that CONTRACTOR fails, in opinion of OWNER, to maintain a smooth surface for public comfort, fails to provide ingress and egress to private property, and/or does not provide and maintain proper traffic control devices, OWNER may provide these services and deduct any cost thereof, including overtime and administrative expenses, from all estimates thereafter due the CONTRACTOR. Such action by the OWNER shall not relieve the CONTRACTOR of his liability to protect the public at construction site.

E. CONTRACTOR shall notify the Police Department, Fire Department, EMS, Williamson County, LISD, and the local government, as applicable, at least four Working Days in advance of beginning proposed Work with intention to close or partially block any street or any part thereof, or of any construction affecting free flow of traffic. The CONTRACTOR shall plan and adequately provide barricades and warning devices. The same parties shall be notified when normal traffic flow is restored.

F. Should the CONTRACTOR, in his operations, reduce an existing two-way roadway to less than two-way traffic, CONTRACTOR shall provide flagging operations and route traffic through the construction area one lane at a time.

G. The CONTRACTOR's Flaggers shall be required any time it is necessary for the CONTRACTOR's equipment to move into or across an open traffic lane, or at other such times as directed by the Owner's Representative. A flagger shall be utilized to aid exit of hauling equipment from open traffic lanes to the Work area, and entry of hauling equipment from Work area to open traffic lanes. Flaggers shall be dressed and conduct operations in accordance with Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices. CONTRACTOR shall provide English speaking flaggers. Flagging operations shall be the sole responsibility of the CONTRACTOR.

H. The CONTRACTOR and Subcontractors shall confine their activities to the immediate area of the construction site and provide the following:

1) Appropriate temporary fences, barricades, and/or Metal Beam Guard Fence if required, for site work involving excavation, utility extensions, remote construction work or other circumstances involving safety of public or protection of the work in progress.

2) Warning lights at open trenches, excavations, etc., during hours from dusk to dawn each day. Protection of structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities immediately adjacent to excavations, from damages caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards.

3.3 SPOILS DISPOSAL

CONTRACTOR shall submit a haul route plan including a map of the proposed route(s) for the ENGINEER's approval.

3.4 RESTORATION

A. In order to minimize environmental and potential flood impacts, the sum of the amount of trench opened in advance of the completed line and the amount of trench left unfilled at any time shall be restricted to one (1) full block or 300 linear feet, whichever is less.

B. Restoration shall be an on-going process during construction operations and shall immediately precede completion of construction of each successive section of the line, which shall not exceed 1,200 linear feet without approval of the ENGINEER.

3.5 STREET MARKERS AND TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNS

It shall be responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to remove, preserve and reset, as required, Street Marker and Traffic Control Signs that are within construction limits to the line and heights as described in Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices before any sidewalks or street excavation is begun. Signs shall not be laid on the ground. No payment will be made for this work but shall be considered subsidiary to the various Bid items. Any damage to signs or posts shall be paid for by the CONTRACTOR.

3.6 BURNING PERMIT

No burning shall be allowed on site.

3.7 DRIVEWAYS

The approach grade of existing driveways shall not be modified unless specifically indicated on the drawings or directed by the Owner's Representative. Within the right-of-way, and outside the right-of-way, all driveways shall be replaced per existing conditions. Excavation, Flexible Base, Portland Cement Concrete and Asphaltic Concrete, used for driveways as prescribed above shall not be measured for payment but shall be considered subsidiary to various Bid items in the Contract unless payment is included as a separate Contract pay item.

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

4.1 TRAFFIC CONTROL

All costs in connection with the Work specified herein will be considered to be included with the related item of Work in the Bid Schedule

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01600

MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing the Contractor's selection of products for use in the Project.

B. **Related Sections:** The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
   1. Section 01070 specifies abbreviations of industry standards to products specified.
   2. Section 01300 specifies requirements for submittal of the Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittal Schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Definitions used in this Article are not intended to change the meaning of other terms used in the Contract Documents, such as "specialties," "systems," "structure," "finishes," "accessories," and similar terms. Such terms are self-explanatory and have well-recognized meanings in the construction industry.
   1. **"Products"** are items purchased for incorporation in the Work, whether purchased for the Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.

   2. **"Named Products"** are items identified by the manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation, shown or listed in the manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of the date of the Contract Documents.

   3. **"Materials"** are products substantially shaped, cut, worked, mixed, finished, refined or otherwise fabricated, processed, or installed to form a part of the Work.

   4. **"Equipment"** is a product with operational parts, whether motorized or manually operated, that requires service connections, such as wiring or piping.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. **Product List:** Prepare a list showing products specified in tabular form acceptable to the OWNER. Include generic names of products required. Include the manufacturer's name and proprietary product names for each item listed.
   1. Coordinate product list with the Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Schedule of Submittals.

   2. *Form:* Prepare product list with information on each item tabulated under the following column headings:
      a) Related Specification Section number.

b) Generic name used in Contract Documents.
c) Proprietary name, model number, and similar designations.
d) Manufacturer's name and address.
e) Supplier's name and address.

B. **Initial Submittal:** Within 14 days after date of Notice to Proceed, submit copies of an initial product list in accordance with Section 01300. Provide a written explanation for omissions of data and for known variations from Contract requirements.

1. At the Contractor's option, the initial submittal may be limited to product selections and designations that must be established early in the Contract period.

C. **Completed List:** Within 21 days after date of Notice to Proceed, submit copies of the completed product list in accordance with Section 01300. Provide a written explanation for omissions of data and for known variations from Contract requirements.

D. **ENGINEER's Action:** The ENGINEER will respond in writing to Contractor within 2 weeks of receipt of the completed product list. No response within this period constitutes no objection to listed manufacturers or products but does not constitute a waiver of the requirement that products comply with Contract Documents. The ENGINEER's response will include a list of unacceptable product selections, containing a brief explanation of reasons for this action.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. **Source Limitations:** To the fullest extent possible, provide products of the same kind from a single source.

B. **Compatibility of Options:** When the Contractor is given the option of selecting between 2 or more products for use on the Project, the product selected shall be compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

C. **Nameplates:** Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer's or producer's nameplates or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
1) *Labels:* Locate required product labels and stamps on concealed surfaces or, where required for observation after installation, on accessible surfaces that are not conspicuous.

2) *Equipment Nameplates:* Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on an easily accessible surface that is inconspicuous in occupied spaces. The nameplate shall contain the following information and other essential operating data:
a) Name of product and manufacturer
b) Model and serial number
c) Capacity
d) Speed
e) Ratings

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products according to the manufacturer's recommendations, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft.
1) Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at the site and to prevent overcrowding of

construction spaces.

2) Coordinate delivery with installation time to assure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.

3) Deliver products to the site in an undamaged condition in the manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.

4) Inspect products upon delivery to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and to ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.

5) Store products at the site in a manner that will facilitate inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION

A. **General Product Requirements:** Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, that are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, new at the time of installation.
   1) Provide products complete with accessories, safety guards, and other devices and details needed for a complete installation and the intended use and effect.

   2) *Standard Products:* Where available, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.

B. **Product Selection Procedures:** The Contract Documents and governing regulations govern product selection. Procedures governing product selection include the following:
   1) Where Specifications specify products or manufacturers by name, accompanied by the term "or equal" or "or approved equal," comply with the Contract Document provisions concerning "substitutions" to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

   2) *Nonproprietary Specifications:* When Specifications list products or manufacturers that are available and may be incorporated in the Work, but do not restrict the Contractor to use of these products only, the Contractor may propose any available product that complies with Contract requirements. Comply with Contract Document provisions concerning "substitutions" to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

   3) *Descriptive Specification Requirements:* Where Specifications describe a product or assembly, listing exact characteristics required, with or without use of a brand or trade name, provide a product or assembly that provides the characteristics and otherwise complies with Contract requirements.

   4) *Performance Specification Requirements:* Where Specifications require compliance with performance requirements, provide products that comply with these requirements and are recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Manufacturer's recommendations may be contained in published product literature or by the manufacturer's certification of performance.

   5) *Compliance with Standards, Codes, and Regulations:* Where Specifications only require compliance with an imposed code, standard, or regulation, select a product that complies with the standards,

codes, or regulations specified.

PART 3: EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PRODUCTS

A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of products in the applications indicated. Anchor each product securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other Work.

B. Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 4: PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate measurement or payment will not be made for Work required under this Section. All costs in connection with the Work specified herein will be considered to be included with the related item of Work in the Bid Schedule, or incidental to the Project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01700

CONTRACT CLOSEOUT

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

This Section outlines the procedure to be followed in closing out the contract.

1.2 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

The Substantial and Final completion dates for the contract shall be established as stated in paragraph 4.02 of the Agreement Between Owner and Contractor For Construction Contract.

1.3 FINAL CLEANING

A. At the completion of work and immediately prior to final inspection, cleaning of the entire project shall be accomplished according to the following provisions:
   1. The CONTRACTOR shall thoroughly clean, sweep, wash and polish all work and equipment provided under this Contract, including finishes. The cleaning shall leave the structures and site in a complete and finished condition to the satisfaction of the Owner's Representative and OWNER.

   2. The CONTRACTOR shall remove all temporary structures and all debris, including all dirt, sand, gravel, rubbish and waste material.

   3. Should the CONTRACTOR not remove rubbish or debris or not clean the buildings and site as specified above, the OWNER reserves the right to have the cleaning done at the expense of the CONTRACTOR.

B. Repair, patch and touch-up any marred surfaces equivalent to the specified finish and to match adjacent surfaces, including repair or replacement of pavement, curb and gutter, and other surfaces marred by construction equipment.

C. Schedule cleaning operations so that dust and other contaminants resulting from cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly-painted surfaces.

1.4 FINAL INSPECTION

A. After final cleaning and restoration and upon written notice from the CONTRACTOR that the work is completed, the Owner's Representative will make an inspection with the CONTRACTOR. Upon completion of this inspection, the Owner's Representative will notify the CONTRACTOR, in writing, of any particulars in which this inspection reveals that the work is defective or incomplete with a copy to the OWNER.

B. Upon receiving written notice from the Owner's Representative, the CONTRACTOR shall immediately undertake the work required to remedy deficiencies and complete the work to the satisfaction of the Owner's Representative.

C. When the CONTRACTOR has corrected or completed the items as listed in the Owner's Representative's written notice, he shall inform the Owner's Representative, in writing, that the required work has been

completed. Upon receipt of this notice, the Owner's Representative, in the presence of the OWNER and CONTRACTOR, will make another inspection of the project.

D. Should the Owner's Representative find all work satisfactory at the time of this inspection, the CONTRACTOR will be allowed to make application for final payment in accordance with the provisions of the GENERAL CONDITIONS. Should the Owner's Representative still find deficiencies in the work, the Owner's Representative will inform the CONTRACTOR of the deficiencies in writing and will deny the CONTRACTOR's request for final payment until such time as the CONTRACTOR has satisfactorily completed the required work.

1.5 FINAL SUBMITTALS

A. No application for final payment will be accepted until all of the following have been submitted as required in Section 01300, SUBMITTALS including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Final shop drawings
   2. Record drawings
   3. All Operation and Maintenance Manuals
   4. All Equipment Manufacturers' Certificates of Proper Installation

1.6 ACCESSORY ITEMS

The CONTRACTOR shall provide to the OWNER, upon acceptance of the equipment, all special accessories required to place each item of equipment in full operation. These special accessory items include, but are not limited to, the specified spare parts, one year's supply of oil and grease, light bulbs, fuses, hydrant wrenches, valve keys, handwheels, chain operators for valve handles more than 6 feet above floor and other expendable items as required for initial startup and operation of all equipment furnished by the CONTRACTOR.

1.7 GUARANTEES, BONDS AND AFFIDAVITS

No application for final payment will be accepted until all guarantees, bonds, certificates, licenses and affidavits required for work or equipment as specified are satisfactorily filed with the Owner's Representative.

1.8 RELEASE OF LIENS OR CLAIMS

No application for final payment will be accepted until satisfactory evidence of release of liens has been submitted to the OWNER as required by the contract.

1.9 FINAL PAYMENT

Final payment will be made to the CONTRACTOR in accordance with the contract and construction specifications.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01785

PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1: GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

Maintenance and submittal of record documents and Samples.

1.2 MAINTENANCE OF DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES

A. Maintain one record copy of documents at the site.
B. Store record documents and Samples in field office, if a field office is required by the Contract, or in a secure location. Provide files, racks, and secure storage for records documents and Samples.
C. Label each document "PROJECT RECORD" in neat, large, printed letters.
D. Maintain record documents in a clean, dry, and legible condition. Do not use record documents for construction purposes. Do not use permit drawings to record Modifications to the Work.
E. Keep record documents and Samples available for inspection by ENGINEER.
F. Bring record documents to progress review meetings for viewing by ENGINEER.

1.3 RECORDING

A. Record information legibly with red ink pen on a set of blueline opaque drawings, concurrently with construction progress. Maintain an instrument on site at all times for measuring elevations accurately. Do not conceal work until required information is recorded.

B. **Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:** Mark each item to record completed Modifications, or when minor deviations exist, the actual construction including:
   1. Measured horizontal locations and elevations of Underground Facilities and appurtenances, referenced to permanent surface improvements.
   2. Elevations of Underground Facilities referenced to benchmark utilized for the Work.
   3. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenances concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.
   4. Dimensions and details of field changes.
   5. Changes made by Modification.
   6. Details not on original Drawings.
   7. References to related Shop Drawings and Modifications.

C. Survey all joints of water mains at the time of construction. Record on Drawings, water main invert elevation, elevation top of manway, and centerline horizontal location relative to baseline.

D. For large diameter water mains, mark specifications and addenda to record:
   1. Manufacturer, trade name, catalog number and Supplier of each Product actually installed.
   2. Changes made by Modification or field order.
   3. Other matters not originally specified.

E. Annotate Shop Drawings to record changes made after review.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

At closeout of the Contract, deliver Project record documents to ENGINEER.

PART 2: PRODUCTS

Not applicable for this Section

PART 3: EXECUTION

Not applicable for this Section

PART 4: MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate measurement or payment will not be made for Work required under this Section. All costs in connection with the Work specified herein will be considered to be included with the related item of Work in the Bid Schedule, or incidental to the Project.

END OF SECTION

Division 02000 Site Work Requirements

Specifications attached may be missing additional referenced specifications. Please contact the engineer prior to bid with any questions pertaining to specifications or their use.

SECTION 02506

UNDERGROUND UTILITY LOCATOR SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

The Contract work to be performed under this section of the Specifications includes furnishing all labor, materials, equipment, implements, transportation, supplies and supervision for performing all work in accordance with the installation of electrically continuous trace wire, with access points, for locating pipe with an electronic pipe locator. All items shall be completed in strict accordance with this section of the Specifications and the applicable drawings and subject to the terms and conditions of the Contract.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Submit under provisions of Section 01300.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. **Tracer Wire:** Tracer wire shall be 14 gauge minimum solid copper clad steel with minimum 30 mil HDPE thermoplastic insulation recommended for direct burial. Tracer wire shall have a minimum break load of 380 pounds. THNN Nylon Thermoplastic insulated solid or stranded copper wire is **NOT** permitted.

Tracer wire for open ditch installations shall be Copperhead HS-CCS HDPE 30 MIL or approved equal.

Tracer wire for boring installations shall be Copperhead SoloShot EHS-CCS HDPE 45 MIL or approved equal.

B. **Wire Connectors:** Wire connectors shall be Copperhead Snakebite, or approved equal, suitable for underground service and shall be watertight to provide electrical continuity. Electrical wire nut connectors or taped twisted wire splices are **NOT** permitted.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Tracer wire shall be installed on all water and sewer mains. The wire shall be installed in such a manner as to be able to properly trace all mains without loss or deterioration of signal or without the transmitted signal migrating off the tracer wire.

B. Tracer wire shall be installed in the same trench and inside bored holes and casing with pipe during installation. It shall be secured to the pipe as required to ensure that the wire remains adjacent to the pipe. The tracer wire shall be securely bonded together at all wire joints with an approved watertight connector to provide electrical continuity and it shall be accessible at all tracer wire access points.

C. Tracer wire access points shall in general be no more than 500 feet apart and at every proposed valve box or manhole. Concentrations of multiple proposed valves near pipe intersections may require more than one access point assembly.

D. At the point of connection between ductile iron water mains and non iron water mains, the tracer wire shall be properly connected to the ductile iron water main with a cad weld of approved equivalent. Tracer wire welds shall be completely sealed through the use of an approved mastic type sealer specifically manufactured for underground use. Mastic shall be applied in a thick coat a minimum of 2 inches thick and shall be protected from contamination by the backfill material with the use of a plastic membrane.

E. Tracer wire shall be laid flat and securely affixed to the pipe at 10 foot intervals at the springline of the pipe. The wire shall be protected from damage during the execution of the works. No breaks or cuts in the tracer wire or tracer wire insulation shall be permitted. At water service saddles, the tracer wire shall not be allowed to be placed between the saddle and the water main.

F. Except for approved splice-in connections, tracer wire shall be continuous and without splices from each tracer wire access point.

G. At all utility main end caps, a minimum of 6 feet of tracer wire shall be installed beyond the end of the pipe, coiled and secured for future connections. The end of the tracer wire shall be spliced to the wire of a Copperhead, or approved equal, High Potential Magnesium anode with Strain Relief Connector and is to be buried at the same elevation as the utility main.

H. Spliced connections between the main line tracer wire and branch connection tracer wire shall only be allowed at tees, crosses or at iron or copper services where a portion of the branch connection or service is replaced with a non iron or non copper material. The branch connection tracer wire shall be a single tracer wire properly connected to the main line tracer wire without cutting the main line tracer wire by means of a Copperhead DryConn Direct Bury Lug or approved equal. Where the existing branch connection is neither iron nor copper, then the new branch connection tracer wire shall be properly spliced to the existing tracer wire on the branch connection using approved connectors as noted above.

I. At all repair locations where there is an existing tracer wire, the tracer wire shall be properly reconnected and spliced as outlined above.

J. Locator system appurtenances shall be colored appropriately in accordance with the APWA color code standard for identification of buried utilities.

Color	Type of Utility
Red	Electric Power Lines, Cables, Conduits and Lighting Cables
Yellow	Gas, Oil, Steam, Petroleum or Gaseous Materials
Orange	Communications, Alarm or Signal Lines, Cables or Conduit
Blue	Potable Water
Green	Gravity Sewers, Force Mains and Drain Lines
Purple	Reclaimed Water, Raw Water, Irrigation and Slurry Lines

PART 4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

There is no separated payment for the supply and installation of the underground utility locator system. Tracer wire and system appurtenances shall be considered subsidiary to the item for which they pertain.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02551

WASTE MATERIAL DISPOSAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

Waste material disposal consists of disposal of trees, stumps, logs, brush, roots, grass, vegetation, humus, rubbish and other objectionable matter from operations such as clearing and grubbing, excavation and grading. Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor is responsible for removal and disposal of waste material.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

A. Specific products are not required. Use equipment and materials necessary to properly complete disposal of waste materials.

B. Obtain approval for equipment and materials before beginning disposal of waste materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

A. All waste material becomes the property of the Contractor and is to be removed from the worksite and legally disposed of in a manner not to damage the owner. All rules of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, Texas Air Control Board, and U.S. Environmental Protection Agency shall be followed in the disposal of waste material.

B. If regulations require, provide "cradle-to-grave" documentation of the disposal including manifests.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 2726

LIFT STATION DECOMMISSIONING

PART1 GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

The work covered under this section will include the following.

A. Decommissioning and removal of the existing lift station from service including, but not limited to, removal of all above-ground structures and appurtenances, demolition of and filling the existing wet well structure, removal of all pumps, piping, valves, water services and meters, control systems, electrical equipment and electrical services as well as the removal of existing fences, gates, access drives and impervious surfaces and replacement with topsoil and hydromulch.

B. Disconnecting, capping and removing identified utilities.

C. Offsite disposal and/or salvaging of identified components.

1.2 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. **Equipment:** The facility includes but is not limited to: wet well with concrete well slabs and electric services.

B. **Utilities:** Locate and protect all utilities impacted by this project.

PART2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. **Flowable Backfill:** All material will conform to the provisions of Item No. 401S, “Structural Excavation and Backfill” or will be of the class as noted on the plans.

B. **Concrete:** All concrete will conform to the provisions of Item No. 360, “Concrete pavement” or will be of the class as noted on the plans.

C. **Topsoil:** All topsoil will conform to the provisions of Item No. 602 “Sodding for Erosion Control” of the City of Austin (CoA) Standard Specifications.

D. **Gravel Subgrade Filler:** All gravel will conform to the provisions of Item 210S “Flexible Base” of the CoA Standard Specifications.

E. **Hydromulch:** All hydromulching will conform to the provisions of Item 604S “Seeding for Erosion Control” of the CoA Standard Specifications

PART3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. Submit demolition and removal procedures and progress schedule. Submit one (1) electronic copy in Adobe PDF format to the Owner and Engineer.

B. **Existing Conditions:** City of Kyle and Engineer assume no responsibility for actual condition of items or structures to be demolished. City of Kyle and Consultant assume no responsibility for any hazardous materials discovered on-site. Contractor will visit the site and verify the nature and extent of demolition required. Conditions existing at time of commencement of contract will be maintained by City of Kyle in so far as practicable.

C. **Property Protection:** Contractor will be responsible for the protection of adjoining property.

D. Prior to starting demolition, make inspection and report observable defects and structural weaknesses of construction designated for demolition. If unsatisfactory conditions exist, do not commence demolition until appropriate determinations have been made.

E. Prior to lift station demolition City of Kyle will perform a site investigation and verify items for demolition and removal by Contractor. Contractor will be responsible for the removal of such items. Materials and items designated for demolition and labeled as “Remove and Dispose” will become the Contractor’s property; remove and dispose of such materials unless otherwise indicated or specified. The sale of salvaged material is not allowed onsite. Contractor will prepare and submit a preconstruction video.

F. Prior to commencing lift station wet well demolition, Contractor will dewater, clean, and disinfect the wet well. Contractor will pump the wet wells dry and dispose of sewage material in accordance with current regulatory standards. Debris (concrete, trash, gravel, rags, mattresses, non-sewage material) and build-up accumulated within existing lift station and other segments of pipeline will be removed/hauled off and disposed of appropriately as necessary to complete decommissioning of the lift station.

G. Contractor to coordinate with City of Kyle in advance of demolition start, for the de- energizing of the lift station. All existing utility services to the lift station will be disconnected and their services terminated, i.e. electric, water, telephone, etc. Mark location of disconnected utilities. Identify utilities and indicate capping locations on Project Record Documents.

H. Remove items designated for demolition within the limits of work indicated and as required to perform the work. Do not remove anything beyond the limits of demolition indicated without the prior written approval of City of Kyle. If in doubt whether to remove an item, obtain written approval prior to proceeding.

I. Demolition work involving grinding, cutting, torching, welding, or similar applications producing a spark, flame, or heat that is capable of initiating fires or explosions (hotwork) will be performed in conformance with OSHA 29 CFR 1910.252-254 and NFPA 51B at a minimum. Prior to commencing such work, Contractor will confirm that all required fire prevention and protection requirements have been implemented.

J. Mechanical equipment will be disconnected at flanges or other obvious disconnection points. All requirement will be unbolted for removal. Torch cutting is not allowed unless approved by Owner on a case-by-case basis.

K. All electrical conductors will be disconnected from the associated equipment and removed from the conduit. All above grade conduit will be removed. Vertical conduit risers will be removed to below grade transition with horizontal conduit. Below grade horizontal conduit runs deeper than 36-inches will be abandoned-in-place. Conduit caps will be provided at the ends of all abandoned conduit.

L. Take care to ensure that there will be no damage to elements or portions thereof which are not required to be removed from the site.

M. Erect and maintain temporary bracing, shoring, lights, barricades, signs and other means to protect workers and other persons; all in accordance with applicable regulatory requirements.

N. Perform demolition in a manner to prevent damage to adjacent property. Contractor is responsible for repairing damage to City of Kyle's property or adjacent property and facilities. Minimize spread of dust and flying particle and use appropriate controls to limit noise from demolition to levels designated in City ordinances. Do not use water where it can create dangerous or objectionable conditions, such as localized flooding, erosion, or sedimentation of nearby ditches or streams. Water contaminated with sediment or hazardous or toxic materials will not be allowed to run off the public storm drain system (including street gutters). Such runoff will be intercepted, collected, and disposed of according to existing environmental regulations and the approved Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.

O. In the event hazardous materials (asbestos, CPC's, etc.) are encountered during the course of the demolition work, or if it is even suspected that such materials will or have been encountered, cease work immediately in the affected area and promptly notify City of Kyle and Consultant.

P. Dispose of removed equipment, materials, waste and debris in a manner conforming to applicable laws and regulations.

Q. Work will be completed in accordance with the state flood plain development permit and Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan for the site, as applicable.

R. Do not use a "drop hammer" where the potential exists for damage to underground utilities, structures, or adjacent improvements.

S. Execute excavating and backfilling by methods which will prevent settlement or damage to other work.

T. The existing wet well, manholes, sewer line and equipment will be removed from service as indicated in the plans and hereafter. Contractor will clean and disinfect wet well, pumps, valves, force main and any other structure of organic material. Contractor will completely empty the wet well and bore a minimum of six (6) 1-inch diameter holes randomly spaced through the bottom for future drainage. Contractor will remove the top of each structure to an elevation of a minimum of 36" below grade. Each structure will then be filled with compacted gravel and capped with a 6" thick non-reinforced concrete cap. The remaining hole will be filled with compacted topsoil up to finish grade and then hydromulched.

U. The existing sewer mains and force mains will be disinfected, abandoned and plugged as identified in the plans. Force mains will be plugged at the lift station sites as well as at the discharge manhole locations.

V. Contractor will remove and dispose of all rubble materials as a result of demolition including, but not limited to, all concrete pads, foundations, curbs, walls, pavements, and fences unless otherwise shown to remain.

W. Remove electrical poles and metering equipment at all lift station locations. Coordinate electrical removals with the City of Kyle Inspector, as necessary. Verify that power is properly de-energized and disconnected.

X. Contractor will spread 6" of topsoil over disturbed demolition/restoration area and grade to provide positive drainage. Hydromulch will be applied to all topsoil per CoA specifications.

Y. All demolition work will conform to the American National Standards Institute (ANSI): A10.6: "American National Standard Safety Requirements for Demolition", procedures indicated herein, and as identified in the plans.

PART4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

4.1 MEASUREMENT:

Demolition and decommissioning of existing lift stations will be measured by the “Lump Sum” for each lift station site for the items identified on each decommission plan sheet in the project plans.

4.2 PAYMENT

This item will be paid for at the contract “Lump Sum” price for each lift station to be decommissioned, which price will be for full compensation for work herein specified including furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools, labor, and incidentals necessary to complete the work per the specifications and plans.

Pumping and removal of sewage material, removal of debris (concrete, trash, gravel, rags, mattresses, non-sewage material) and build-up. Cleaning, disinfecting and emptying of wet well, pumps, valves, piping and force main. Cutting and plugging of existing sanitary sewer lines and force mains (at the lift station and the discharge manhole locations) as well as the grouting of manhole connections for abandoned lines will be included in this pay item.

Backfilling wet well as indicated in the plans and disposing of all rubble materials as a result of demolition of wet well, pad, foundations, curbs, walls, pavements, fences, etc. will be included in this pay item.

Replacement of topsoil, sodding, and hydromulching will be also included in this lump sum price, no separate pay will be allowed for those items associated with lift station demolition decommissioning.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02960

TEMPORARY BYPASS PUMPING

PART1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. The Work covered by this item consists of furnishing all labor, supervision, tools, equipment, appliances, and materials to perform all operations in connection with pumping of wastewater and wet weather flows around pipe segment(s) around work area for the duration of the project. The purpose of bypass pumping is to prevent sewage overflows and provide reliable sewer service to the users of the sanitary sewer at all times. The Contractor will maintain sewage flow in the construction area in order to prevent back-up and/or overflow into upstream pipe segments and laterals, adjacent ditches, storm sewers, and waterways.

B. Bypass pumping is the installation and operation of bulkheads, plugs, hoses, piping, temporary manholes and sumps, and pumps to maintain wastewater flow and prevent backup and overflow. Bypass pumping provides continuous sewer service to the users of the sanitary sewer system while maintenance or construction operations are in progress by diverting flow when necessary around the construction location and pumping it to a downstream manhole.

C. Contractor will construct and maintain all temporary bypass sewers and be responsible for all bypass pumping of sewage that may be required to prevent backing up of sewage and allow appropriate conditions for proper inspection, rehabilitation, testing or drainage during force main rehabilitation, replacement or reconnections to existing sewers. The Contractor will immediately remove and dispose of all offensive matter spilled during the bypass pumping at his own expense. The Contractor will also be responsible for paying any fines imposed as a result of spills or overflows that occur as a result of the bypass pumping operations.

D. Contractor will provide a redundant bypass pump, intake and discharge conduit, and other equipment necessary to provide continuous wastewater flow and prevent the backing up of sewage in the case of emergencies at all times.

E. Primary bypass pumps will be critically silenced when used in residential settings or areas where excessive noise levels would create a disturbance. Redundant bypass pumping does not have to be critically silenced.

F. When directed by the City, the Contractor will put the affected sanitary sewer line back into service at the end of each working day.

G. All unmanned bypass pumping operations will be fitted with an auto-dialer feature, capable of storing, at a minimum, three (3) 24-hour phone numbers direct to a human in the event of a pump failure or overflow situation. Alarm system will be checked daily to confirm proper operation. The automatic dialing system will provide call-out for the following alarms, at a minimum:
   1. High wet well level
   2. Primary pump failure
   3. Secondary pump start
   4. Secondary pump failure
   5. Low fuel level

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. **Plan Review:** The Contractor will submit to the Engineer for the Authority and Engineer's review, a bypass pumping system plan a minimum of seven (7) days prior to the commencement of bypass pumping operations. The plan will include, at a minimum, detailed information on sequencing, set-up, operation, piping, pumps, etc.

B. The Contractor will provide all pipeline plugs, pumps of adequate size to handle peak flow, and temporary discharge piping and fittings to ensure that the total flow of the sewer can be safely diverted around the work. Bypass pumping system will be required to be operated 24 hours per day.

1. Pumps will be selected per the results of the flow calculations and per site requirements as determined by the Contractor. The pumps and drives will be rated for continuous duty and will be capable of pumping the flow range without surging, cavitation, or vibration. Rotative components will be statically and dynamically balanced and will be suitable for use with raw unscreened sewage and trash. The pump will be a self-contained unit, designed for temporary use, and will be fully automatic self-priming units that do not require the use of foot-valves or vacuum pumps in the priming system. All pumps used must be constructed to allow dry running for long periods of time to accommodate the cyclical nature of sewage flows. Pumps will be critically silenced to prevent excessive noise pollution during temporary bypass pumping. Contractor will provide the necessary start/stop controls for each pump.

2. Plugs will be inflatable plugs constructed of specially treated industrial fabric and reinforced neoprene. Plugs will be equipped with steel pull rings and aluminum end clamps. All plugs will be firmly attached to a stationary object at ground level by a steel cable in order to prevent loss of plug in the pipeline.

3. Piping: In order to prevent the accidental spillage of flows, all discharge system must be constructed of rigid pipe with positive, leak-proof connections. Pipe 12-inches and larger will be high density polyethylene pipe with fused joints for a leak-proof piping system.

C. The Contractor will have adequate standby equipment available and ready for immediate operation and use in the event of an emergency or breakdown. One standby pump for each size pump utilized will be installed at the mainline flow bypass locations, ready for use in the event of primary pump failure.

D. Design Requirements:
1. Bypass pumping systems will have sufficient capacity to pump a peak flow of 1,000 gpm. The Contractor will provide all pipeline plugs, pumps of adequate size to handle peak flow, and temporary discharge piping to ensure that the total flow of the main can be safely diverted around the section to be repaired. Bypass pumping system will be required to be operated 24 hours per day.

2. The Contractor will have adequate standby equipment available and ready for immediate operation and use in the event of an emergency or breakdown. One standby pump for each size pump utilized will be installed at the mainline flow bypassing locations, ready for use in the event of primary pump failure.

3. Maintain sewer flow to prevent backup or overflow onto streets, yards and unpaved areas or into buildings, adjacent ditches, storm sewers, and waterways. The contractor is responsible for any leakage from the bypass system. Do not divert sewage outside of the sanitary sewer system.

4. Bypass pumping system will be capable of bypassing the flow around the work area and of releasing any amount of flow up to full available flow into the work area as necessary for satisfactory performances of work.

5. The Contractor will make all arrangements for bypass pumping during the time when the main is shut down for any reason. System must overcome any existing force main pressure on discharge.

E. Performance requirements
   1. It is essential to the operation of the existing sewerage system that there be no interruption in the flow of sewage throughout the duration of the project. To this end, the Contractor will provide, maintain, and operate all temporary facilities such as dams, plugs, pumping equipment (both primary and back-up units as required), conduits, all necessary power, and all other labor and equipment necessary to intercept the sewage flow before it reaches the point where it would interfere with work, carry it past the work area, and return it to the existing sewer downstream of the work area.

   2. The design, installation, and operation of the temporary pumping system will be the Contractor's responsibility. The bypass system will meet the requirements of all local, State, and Federal codes and regulations.

   3. Contractor will provide all necessary means to safely convey the sewage past the work area. The Contractor will not be permitted to stop or impede the main flows under any circumstances.

   4. The Contractor will maintain sewer flow around the work area in a manner that will not cause surcharging of sewers, damage to sewers, and that will protect public and private property from damage and flooding.

   5. The Contractor will protect water resources, wetlands, and other natural resources.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
   1. Detailed plan and description of proposed pumping system to hand existing wastewater and wet weather flows. Indicate number, size, material, location and method of installation of suction and discharge piping, size of pipeline or conveyance system to be bypassed, staging area for pumps, site access point, and expected flow. No construction will begin until all provisions and requirements have been reviewed by the Engineer.

   2. A bypass pumping plan will be prepared by the contractor and submitted to the engineer for review prior to implementing the bypass plan. The bypass plan will contain the minimum information required, such that the engineer has information necessary to evaluate and prioritize a response to emergency conditions. The minimum information includes, but is not limited to
      a. Project information including the project name and location (from plan cover sheet).
      b. Contact information for general contractor/submitting entity. Company name, contact person (24 hours per day), phone number(s), and fax number(s) will be included.
      c. Staging area for pumps;
      d. Sewer plugging methods and types of plugs;
      e. Number, size, material, location, and method of installation of suction pumping;
      f. Number, size, material, method of installation and location of discharge piping;

g. Bypass pump sizes, capacity, number of each size to be on site and power requirements;
h. Backup pump, power and piping equipment
i. Calculations of static lift, friction losses, and flow velocity (pump curves showing pump operating range will be submitted);
j. Standby power generator size, location (if applicable);
k. Downstream discharge plan;
l. Method of protecting discharge manholes or structures from erosion and damage;
m. Thrust and restraint block sizes and locations;
n. Sections showing suction and discharge pipe depth, embedment, select fill and special backfill;
o. Method of noise control for each pump and or/generator;
p. Any temporary pipe supports and anchoring required;
q. Design plans and computation for access to bypass pumping locations indicated on the drawings;
r. Calculations for selection of bypass pumping pipe size;
s. Schedule for installation of and maintenance of bypass pumping lines;
t. Plan indicating selection of bypass pumping line locations.
u. Procedures for setup and breakdown of pumping operations.
v. Emergency plan detailing procedures to be followed in event of pump failures, sewer overflows, service backups, and sewage spillage.
    1) Maintain copy of emergency plan on site for duration of project.

3. Failure to submit the above data will be cause for rejection of the equipment offered for installation.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Follow national standards and as specified herein.
B. Perform leakage and pressure tests on discharge piping using clean water, before operation. Notify Engineer 24 hours prior to testing.
C. Maintain and inspect temporary pumping system every two hours. Responsible operator on site when pumps are operating.
D. Keep and maintain spare parts for pumps and piping on site, as required.
E. Maintain adequate hoisting equipment and accessories on site for each pump.

1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Transport, deliver, handle, and store pipe, fittings, pumps, ancillary equipment and materials to prevent damage and following manufacturer's recommendations.
    1. Inspect all material and equipment for proper operation before initiating work.

B. Material found to be defective or damaged due to manufacturer or shipment.
    1. When Engineer deems repairable: Repair as recommended by manufacturer.
    2. When Engineer deems not repairable: Replace as directed by Engineer before initiating work.
    3. Repair or replacement of defective or damaged material and equipment will be at no cost to the owner.

PART2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. **Flexible Hoses and Associated Couplings and Connectors**.
    1. Abrasion resistant.

2. Suitable for intended service.
3. Rated for external and internal loads anticipated, including test pressure.
    a. External loading design: Incorporate anticipated traffic loadings, including traffic impact loading.

4. When subject to traffic loading, compose system, such as traffic ramps or covers.
    a. Install system and maintain H-20 loading requirements while in use or as directed by the Engineer.

B. **Valves and Fittings:** Determined according to flow calculations, pump sizes previously determined, and system operating pressures.

C. **Plugs:** Selected and installed according to size of line to be plugged, pipe and manhole configurations, and based on specific site.
    1. *Additional plugs:* Available in the event a plug fails. Plugs will be inspected before use for defects which may lead to failure.

D. **High Density Polyethylene (HDPE):** Piping will be homogenous throughout, free of visible cracks, discoloration, pitting, varying wall thickness, holes, foreign material, or other deleterious faults. Pipe will be assembled and joined on site using couplings, flanges or butt-fusion method to provide leak proof joint. Thread or solvent joints are not acceptable. Pipe fusion will be carried out by personnel certified as fusion technicians by manufacturer of HDPE pipe and/or fusing equipment. Butt-fusion joints will be true alignment and uniform roll-backbeads resulting from use of proper temperature and pressure.

E. Discharge and suction pipe sizing will be determined according to flow calculations and system operating calculations.

F. **Discharge piping:** in order to prevent the accidental spillage of flows all discharge systems will be temporarily constructed of rigid pipe with positive, restrained joints. Under no circumstances will aluminum “irrigation type” piping or glued PVC piping will be permitted. Discharge hose will only be allowed in short sections and be specific permissions from the engineer.

G. **Pumps**
    1. All pumps used will be fully automatic self-priming units that do not require the use of foot valves or vacuum pumps in the priming system.
    2. The pumps may be electric or diesel powered.
    3. All pumps used must be constructed to allow dry running for long periods of time to accommodate the cyclic nature of effluent flows.
    4. Contractor will provide the necesssary stop/start controls for each pump.
    5. Pumps will be sound attenuated to produce no more than 70 decibels at a distance of 20 feet.

H. The Contractor will provide the necessary stop/start controls for each pump.

I. The Contractor will include one stand-by pump of each size to be maintained on site. Back-up pumps will be on-line, isolated from the primary system by a valve.

PART3 EXECUTION

3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. **Test:**
   1. The Contractor will perform leakage and pressure tests of the bypass pumping discharge piping using clean water prior to actual operation.
   2. The Contractor is responsible for periodic testing of the automatic backup start system (float style). Daily testing is recommended.

B. **Inspection:** Contractor will inspect bypass pumping system at regular intervals to ensure that the system is working correctly.

C. **Maintenance Service:**
   1. The Contractor will insure that the temporary pumping system is properly maintained and a responsible operator will be on hand or within a distance that the operator can reasonably respond at all times when pumps are operating.
   2. The pump volutes will need to be cleaned out on a regular basis to ensure optimum pumping. Contractor is responsible for ensuring that pump volutes are clear from toilet paper, rags, and other items.
   3. The regular interval maintenance includes fuel, changing fluids and filters as recommended by pump manufacture.
   4. Contractor will provide 24 hour on call maintenance support for pumps while they are in operation. The Contractor's project manager or appointed staff are required to maintain proper pumping operation.

D. **Extra Material:** Spare parts for pumps and piping will be kept on site as required.

E. In the event of accidental spill or overflow, immediately stop the discharge and take action to clean up and disinfect the spill. Promptly notify the Owner's Wastewater operator and Engineer so that required reporting can be made to the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

3.2 PREPARATION

A. **Precautions:**
   1. Contractor is responsible for locating any existing utilities in the area the Contractor selects to locate the bypass pipelines. The Contractor will locate his bypass pipelines to minimize any disturbance to existing utilities and will obtain approval of the pipeline locations from the City and the Engineer. All costs associated with relocating utilities and obtaining approvals will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

   2. During all by pass pumping operation, the Contractor will protect the Pumping Station and main and all local sewer lines from damage inflicted by any equipment. The Contractor will be responsible for all physical damage to the pumping Station and main and all local sewer lines caused by human or mechanical failure.

3.3 INSTALLATION AND REMOVAL

A. The Contractor will remove manhole sections or make connections to the existing sewer and construct temporary bypass pumping structure only at the access location indicated on the plan sheets and as

may be required to provide adequate suction conduit.

B. Plugging or blocking of sewage flows will incorporate a primary and secondary plugging device. When plugging or blocking is no longer needed for performance and acceptance of work, it is to be removed in a manner that permits the sewage flow to slowly return to normal without surge, to prevent surcharging or causing other major disturbances downstream.

C. When working inside manhole or force main, exercise caution. Follow OSHA, Local, State and Federal requirements. Take required measures to protect workforce against sewer gases and/or combustible or oxygen-deficient atmosphere.

D. Installation of Bypass Pipelines:
   1. Pipeline may be placed along shoulder of roads.
      a. Do not place in streets or sidewalks.
   2. When bypass pipeline crosses local streets and private driveways, place in roadway ramps.
      a. When roadway ramps cannot be used, place bypass in trenches and cover with temporary pavement as approved by Engineer.

E. During bypass pumping operation, protect sewer lines from damage inflicted by equipment.

F. Upon completion of bypass pumping operations, and after the receipt of written permission from Engineer, remove piping, restore property to pre-construction condition and restore pavement.

3.4 CLEAN-UP

A. The Contractor will restore the bypass pump area and the bypass piping route to pre-bypass condition including any cleanup measures necessary due to fuel, coolant, oil, and sewage leaks. The Contractor will document any cleanup measures that were necessary. When bypass pumping operations are complete, drain sewage within piping into the sanitary sewer prior to disassembly.

B. The Contractor's bypass pumping plan will ensure that all sewage in the bypass pumps, pipes, and fittings has been emptied into the sanitary sewer system.

PART4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

4.1 MEASUREMENT

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this section, measured as provided under section "02960 Measurement" will be paid for at the contract unit price for temporary bypass.

4.2 PAYMENT

The Work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for as calendar day, when included as a contract pay item. This unit price will include full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, time, materials and incidentals necessary to complete the Work

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02963

SEPARATION DISTANCES

PART1 GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This Section covers the separation distance requirements with respect to existing public or private utilities. The latest standards for separation distances as defined by the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) shall take precedence over these specifications.

PART2 PRODUCT

NOT USED

PART3 EXECUTION

3.1 LOCATION OF WATERLINES

The following rules apply to installations of waterlines, wastewater mains or laterals, and other conveyances/appurtenances identified as potential sources of contamination. Furthermore, all ratings specified shall be defined by ASTM or AWWA standards unless stated otherwise. New mains, service lines, or laterals are those that are installed where no main, service line, or lateral previously existed, or where existing mains, service lines, or laterals are replaced with pipes of different size or material. The location of waterlines from wastewater mains shall comply with the latest edition of TAC 290.44 e.

END OF SECTION

TxDOT Specifications

Item 247
Flexible Base

1. DESCRIPTION

Construct a foundation course composed of flexible base.

2. MATERIALS

Furnish uncontaminated materials of uniform quality that meet the requirements of the plans and specifications. Notify the Engineer of the proposed material sources and of changes to material sources. The Engineer may sample and test project materials at any time before compaction throughout the duration of the project to assure specification compliance. Use Tex-100-E material definitions.

2.1. **Aggregate**. Furnish aggregate of the type and grade shown on the plans and meeting the requirements of Table 1. Each source must meet Table 1 requirements for liquid limit, plasticity index, and wet ball mill for the grade specified. Do not use additives, such as but not limited to lime, cement, or fly ash to modify aggregates to meet the requirements of Table 1 unless shown on the plans.

Table 1
Material Requirements

Property	Test Method	Grade 1–2	Grade 3	Grade 4[2]	Grade 5
Sampling	Tex-400-A				
Master gradation sieve size (cumulative % retained)	Tex-110-E				
2-1/2"		0	0	As shown on the plans	0
1-3/4"		0–10	0–10		0–5
7/8"		10–35	–		10–35
3/8"		30–65	–		35–65
#4		45–75	45–75		45–75
#40		65–90	50–85		70–90
Liquid Limit, % Max	Tex-104-E	40	40	As shown on the plans	35
Plasticity Index, Max[1]	Tex-106-E	10	12	As shown on the plans	10
Plasticity index, Min[1]		As shown on the plans	As shown on the plans	As shown on the plans	As shown on the plans
Wet ball mill, % Max	Tex-116-E	40	–	As shown on the plans	40
Wet ball mill, % Max increase passing the #40 sieve		20	–	As shown on the plans	20
Min compressive strength, psi	Tex-117-E			As shown on the plans	
lateral pressure 0 psi		35	–		–
lateral pressure 3 psi		–	–		90
lateral pressure 15 psi		175	–		175

1. Determine plastic index in accordance with Tex-107-E (linear shrinkage) when liquid limit is unattainable as defined in Tex-104-E.
2. Grade 4 may be further designated as Grade 4A, Grade 4B, etc.

2.1.1. **Material Tolerances**. The Engineer may accept material if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent gradation tests has an individual sieve outside the specified limits of the gradation.

When target grading is required by the plans, no single failing test may exceed the master grading by more than 5 percentage points on sieves No. 4 and larger or 3 percentage points on sieves smaller than No. 4.

The Engineer may accept material if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent plasticity index tests is outside the specified limit. No single failing test may exceed the allowable limit by more than 2 points.

.

2.1.2 **Material Types**. Do not use fillers or binders unless approved. Furnish the type specified on the plans in accordance with the following:

2.1.2.1. **Type A**. Crushed stone produced and graded from oversize quarried aggregate that originates from a single, naturally occurring source. Do not use gravel or multiple sources.

2.1.2.2. **Type B**. Crushed or uncrushed gravel. Blending of 2 or more sources is allowed.

2.1.2.3. **Type C**. Crushed gravel with a minimum of 60% of the particles retained on a No. 4 sieve with 2 or more crushed faces as determined by Tex-460-A, Part I. Blending of 2 or more sources is allowed.

2.1.2.4. **Type D**. Type A material or crushed concrete. Crushed concrete containing gravel will be considered Type D material. Crushed concrete must meet the requirements in Section 247.2.1.3.2., "Recycled Material (Including Crushed Concrete) Requirements," and be managed in a way to provide for uniform quality. The Engineer may require separate dedicated stockpiles in order to verify compliance.

2.1.2.5. **Type E**. Caliche, iron ore or as otherwise shown on the plans.

2.1.3. **Recycled Material**. Recycled asphalt pavement (RAP) and other recycled materials may be used when shown on the plans. Request approval to blend 2 or more sources of recycled materials.

2.1.3.1. **Limits on Percentage**. Do not exceed 20% RAP by weight, when RAP is allowed, unless otherwise shown on the plans. The percentage limitations for other recycled materials will be as shown on the plans.

2.1.3.2. **Recycled Material (Including Crushed Concrete) Requirements**.

2.1.3.2.1. **Contractor-Furnished Recycled Materials**. Provide recycled materials that have a maximum sulfate content of 3,000 ppm when tested in accordance with Tex-145-E. When the Contractor furnishes the recycled materials, including crushed concrete, the final product will be subject to the requirements of Table 1 for the grade specified. Certify compliance with DMS-11000, "Evaluating and Using Nonhazardous Recyclable Materials Guidelines," for Contractor furnished recycled materials. In addition, recycled materials must be free from reinforcing steel and other objectionable material and have at most 1.5% deleterious material when tested in accordance with Tex-413-A. For RAP, do not exceed a maximum percent loss from decantation of 5.0% when tested in accordance with Tex-406-A. Test RAP without removing the asphalt.

2.1.3.2.2. **Department-Furnished Required Recycled Materials**. When the Department furnishes and requires the use of recycled materials, unless otherwise shown on the plans:

- Department-required recycled material will not be subject to the requirements in Table 1,
- Contractor-furnished materials are subject to the requirements in Table 1 and this Item,
- the final product, blended, will be subject to the requirements in Table 1, and
- for final product, unblended (100% Department-furnished required recycled material), the liquid limit, plasticity index, wet ball mill, and compressive strength is waived.

Crush Department-furnished RAP so that 100% passes the 2 in. sieve. The Contractor is responsible for uniformly blending to meet the percentage required.

2.1.3.2.3. **Department-Furnished and Allowed Recycled Materials**. When the Department furnishes and allows the use of recycled materials or allows the Contractor to furnish recycled materials, the final blended product is subject to the requirements of Table 1 and the plans.

2.1.3.3. **Recycled Material Sources**. Department-owned recycled material is available to the Contractor only when shown on the plans. Return unused Department-owned recycled materials to the Department stockpile location designated by the Engineer unless otherwise shown on the plans.

The use of Contractor-owned recycled materials is allowed when shown on the plans. Contractor-owned surplus recycled materials remain the property of the Contractor. Remove Contractor-owned recycled materials from the project and dispose of them in accordance with federal, state, and local regulations before project acceptance. Do not intermingle Contractor-owned recycled material with Department-owned recycled material unless approved.

2.2. **Water**. Furnish water free of industrial wastes and other objectionable matter.

2.3. **Material Sources**. Expose the vertical faces of all strata of material proposed for use when non-commercial sources are used. Secure and process the material by successive vertical cuts extending through all exposed strata, when directed.

3. EQUIPMENT

Provide machinery, tools, and equipment necessary for proper execution of the work.

3.1. Provide rollers in accordance with Item 210, "Rolling." Provide proof rollers in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," when required.

3.2. When ride quality measurement is required, provide a high speed or lightweight inertial profiler certified at the Texas A&M Transportation Institute. Provide equipment certification documentation. Display a current decal on the equipment indicating the certification expiration date.

4. CONSTRUCTION

Construct each layer uniformly, free of loose or segregated areas, and with the required density and moisture content. Provide a smooth surface that conforms to the typical sections, lines, and grades shown on the plans or as directed.

Stockpile base material temporarily at an approved location before delivery to the roadway. Build stockpiles in layers no greater than 2 ft. thick. Stockpiles must have a total height between 10 and 16 ft. unless otherwise approved. After construction and acceptance of the stockpile, loading from the stockpile for delivery is allowed. Load by making successive vertical cuts through the entire depth of the stockpile.

Do not add or remove material from temporary stockpiles that require sampling and testing before delivery unless otherwise approved. Charges for additional sampling and testing required as a result of adding or removing material will be deducted from the Contractor's estimates.

Haul approved flexible base in clean trucks. Deliver the required quantity to each 100-ft. station or designated stockpile site as shown on the plans. Prepare stockpile sites as directed. When delivery is to the 100-ft. station, manipulate in accordance with the applicable Items.

4.1. **Preparation of Subgrade or Existing Base**. Remove or scarify existing asphalt concrete pavement in accordance with Item 105, "Removing Treated and Untreated Base and Asphalt Pavement," when shown on the plans or as directed. Shape the subgrade or existing base to conform to the typical sections shown on the plans or as directed.

When new base is required to be mixed with existing base, deliver, place, and spread the new flexible base in the required amount per station. Manipulate and thoroughly mix the new base with existing material to provide a uniform mixture to the specified depth before shaping.

Proof roll the roadbed in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling," before pulverizing or scarifying when shown on the plans or directed. Correct soft spots as directed.

4.2. **Placing**. Spread and shape flexible base into a uniform layer with an approved spreader the same day as delivered unless otherwise approved. Construct layers to the thickness shown on the plans. Maintain the

shape of the course. Control dust by sprinkling, as directed. Correct or replace segregated areas as directed, at no additional expense to the Department.

Place successive base courses and finish courses using the same construction methods required for the first course.

4.3. **Compaction**. Compact using density control unless otherwise shown on the plans. Multiple lifts are permitted when shown on the plans or approved. Bring each layer to the moisture content directed. When necessary, sprinkle the material in accordance with Item 204, "Sprinkling."

Begin rolling longitudinally at the sides and proceed towards the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1/2 the width of the roller unit. Begin rolling at the low side and progress toward the high side on superelevated curves. Offset alternate trips of the roller. Operate rollers at a speed between 2 and 6 mph as directed.

Rework, re-compact, and refinish material that fails to meet or that loses required moisture, density, stability, or finish requirements before the next course is placed or the project is accepted. Continue work until specification requirements are met. Perform the work at no additional expense to the Department.

Before final acceptance, the Engineer will select the locations of tests and measure the flexible base depth in accordance with Tex-140-E. Correct areas deficient by more than 1/2 in. in thickness by scarifying, adding material as required, reshaping, re-compacting, and refinishing at the Contractor's expense.

4.3.1. **Ordinary Compaction**. Roll with approved compaction equipment as directed. Correct irregularities, depressions, and weak spots immediately by scarifying the areas affected, adding or removing approved material as required, reshaping, and re-compacting.

4.3.2. **Density Control**. Compact to at least 100% of the maximum dry density determined by Tex-113-E, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Maintain moisture during compaction within ±2 percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined by Tex-113-E. Measure the moisture content of the material in accordance with Tex-115-E or Tex-103-E during compaction daily and report the results the same day to the Engineer, unless otherwise shown on the plans or directed. Do not achieve density by drying the material after compaction.

The Engineer will determine roadway density and moisture content of completed sections in accordance with Tex-115-E. The Engineer may accept the section if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent density tests is below the specified density and the failing test is no more than 3 pcf below the specified density.

4.4. **Finishing**. After completing compaction, clip, skin, or tight-blade the surface with a maintainer or subgrade trimmer to a depth of approximately 1/4 in. Remove loosened material and dispose of it at an approved location. Seal the clipped surface immediately by rolling with a pneumatic tire roller until a smooth surface is attained. Add small increments of water as needed during rolling. Shape and maintain the course and surface in conformity with the typical sections, lines, and grades as shown on the plans or as directed.

Correct grade deviations greater than 1/4 in. in 16 feet measured longitudinally or greater than 1/4 in. over the entire width of the cross-section in areas where surfacing is to be placed. Correct by loosening and adding, or removing material. Reshape and re-compact in accordance with Section 247.4.3., "Compaction."

4.5. **Curing**. Cure the finished section until the moisture content is at least 2 percentage points below optimum or as directed before applying the next successive course or prime coat.

4.6. **Ride Quality**. This section applies to the final travel lanes that receive a 1 or 2 course surface treatment for the final surface, unless otherwise shown on the plans. Measure ride quality of the base course after placement of the prime coat and before placement of the surface treatment, unless otherwise approved. Use a certified profiler operator from the Department's MPL. When requested, furnish the Engineer documentation for the person certified to operate the profiler.

Provide all profile measurements to the Engineer in electronic data files within 3 days after placement of the prime coat using the format specified in Tex-1001-S. The Engineer will use Department software to evaluate longitudinal profiles to determine areas requiring corrective action. Correct 0.1-mi.sections having an average international roughness index (IRI) value greater than 100.0 in. per mile to an IRI value of 100.0 in. per mile or less for each wheel path, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

Re-profile and correct sections that fail to maintain ride quality until placement of the next course, as directed. Correct re-profiled sections until specification requirements are met, as approved. Perform this work at no additional expense to the Department.

5. MEASUREMENT

Flexible base will be measured as follows:

- **Flexible Base (Complete In Place)**. The ton, square yard, or any cubic yard method.
- **Flexible Base (Roadway Delivery)**. The ton or any cubic yard method.
- **Flexible Base (Stockpile Delivery)**. The ton, cubic yard in vehicle, or cubic yard in stockpile.

Measurement by the cubic yard in final position and square yard is a plans quantity measurement. The quantity to be paid for is the quantity shown in the proposal unless modified by Article 9.2., "Plans Quantity Measurement." Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

Measurement is further defined for payment as follows.

5.1. **Cubic Yard in Vehicle**. By the cubic yard in vehicles of uniform capacity at the point of delivery.

5.2. **Cubic Yard in Stockpile**. By the cubic yard in the final stockpile position by the method of average end areas.

5.3. **Cubic Yard in Final Position**. By the cubic yard in the completed and accepted final position. The volume of base course is computed in place by the method of average end areas between the original subgrade or existing base surfaces and the lines, grades, and slopes of the accepted base course as shown on the plans.

5.4. **Square Yard**. By the square yard of surface area in the completed and accepted final position. The surface area of the base course is based on the width of flexible base as shown on the plans.

5.5. **Ton**. By the ton of dry weight in vehicles as delivered. The dry weight is determined by deducting the weight of the moisture in the material at the time of weighing from the gross weight of the material. The Engineer will determine the moisture content in the material in accordance with Tex-103-E from samples taken at the time of weighing.

When material is measured in trucks, the weight of the material will be determined on certified scales, or the Contractor must provide a set of standard platform truck scales at a location approved by the Engineer. Scales must conform to the requirements of Item 520, "Weighing and Measuring Equipment."

6. PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for the types of work shown below. No additional payment will be made for thickness or width exceeding that shown on the typical section or provided on the plans for cubic yard in the final position or square yard measurement.

Sprinkling and rolling, except proof rolling, will not be paid for directly but will be subsidiary to this Item unless otherwise shown on the plans. When proof rolling is shown on the plans or directed, it will be paid for in accordance with Item 216, "Proof Rolling."

Where subgrade is constructed under this Contract, correction of soft spots in the subgrade will be at the Contractor's expense. Where subgrade is not constructed under this Contract, correction of soft spots in the subgrade will be paid in accordance with pertinent Items or Article 4.4., "Changes in the Work."

6.1. **Flexible Base (Complete In Place)**. Payment will be made for the type and grade specified. For cubic yard measurement, "In Vehicle," "In Stockpile," or "In Final Position" will be specified. For square yard measurement, a depth will be specified. This price is full compensation for furnishing materials, temporary stockpiling, assistance provided in stockpile sampling and operations to level stockpiles for measurement, loading, hauling, delivery of materials, spreading, blading, mixing, shaping, placing, compacting, reworking, finishing, correcting locations where thickness is deficient, curing, furnishing scales and labor for weighing and measuring, and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

6.2. **Flexible Base (Roadway Delivery)**. Payment will be made for the type and grade specified. For cubic yard measurement, "In Vehicle," "In Stockpile," or "In Final Position" will be specified. The unit price bid will not include processing at the roadway. This price is full compensation for furnishing materials, temporary stockpiling, assistance provided in stockpile sampling and operations to level stockpiles for measurement, loading, hauling, delivery of materials, furnishing scales and labor for weighing and measuring, and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

6.3. **Flexible Base (Stockpile Delivery)**. Payment will be made for the type and grade specified. For cubic yard measurement, "In Vehicle" or "In Stockpile" will be specified. The unit price bid will not include processing at the roadway. This price is full compensation for furnishing and disposing of materials, preparing the stockpile area, temporary or permanent stockpiling, assistance provided in stockpile sampling and operations to level stockpiles for measurement, loading, hauling, delivery of materials to the stockpile, furnishing scales and labor for weighing and measuring, and equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Item 360
Concrete Pavement

1. DESCRIPTION

Construct hydraulic cement concrete pavement with or without curbs on the concrete pavement.

2. MATERIALS

2.1. **Hydraulic Cement Concrete**. Provide hydraulic cement concrete in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Use compressive strength testing unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide Class P concrete designed to meet a minimum average compressive strength of 3,200 psi or a minimum average flexural strength of 450 psi at 7 days or a minimum average compressive strength of 4,000 psi or a minimum average flexural strength of 570 psi at 28 days. Test in accordance with Tex-448-A or Tex-418-A.

Obtain written approval if the concrete mix design exceeds 520 lb. of cementitious material.

Use coarse aggregates for continuously reinforced concrete pavements to produce concrete with a coefficient of thermal expansion not more than 5.5×10^{-6} in./in./°F. Provide satisfactory Tex-428-A test data from an approved testing laboratory if the coarse aggregate coefficient of thermal expansion listed on the Department's *Concrete Rated Source Quality Catalog* is not equal to or less than 5.5×10^{-6} in./in./°F.

Provide Class HES concrete for very early opening of small pavement areas or leave-outs to traffic when shown on the plans or allowed. Design Class HES to meet the requirements of Class P and a minimum average compressive strength of 3,200 psi or a minimum average flexural strength of 450 psi in 24 hr., unless other early strength and time requirements are shown on the plans or allowed.

Use Class A or P concrete for curbs that are placed separately from the pavement. Provide concrete that is workable and cohesive, possesses satisfactory finishing qualities, and conforms to the mix design and mix design slump.

2.2. **Reinforcing Steel**. Provide Grade 60 or above, deformed steel for bar reinforcement in accordance with Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete." Provide positioning and supporting devices (baskets and chairs) capable of securing and holding the reinforcing steel in proper position before and during paving. Provide corrosion protection when shown on the plans.

2.2.1. **Dowels**. Provide smooth, straight dowels of the size shown on the plans, free of burrs, and conforming to the requirements of Item 440, "Reinforcement for Concrete." Coat dowels with a thin film of grease, wax, silicone or other approved de-bonding material. Provide dowel caps on the lubricated end of each dowel bar used in an expansion joint. Provide dowel caps filled with a soft compressible material with enough range of movement to allow complete closure of the expansion joint.

2.2.2. **Tie Bars**. Provide straight deformed steel tie bars. Provide either multiple-piece tie bars or single-piece tie bars as shown on the plans. Furnish multiple piece tie bar assemblies from the list of approved multiple-piece tie bars that have been prequalified in accordance with DMS-4515 "Multiple Piece Tie Bars for Concrete Pavements," when used. Multiple-piece tie bars used on individual projects must be sampled in accordance with Tex-711-I, and tested in accordance with DMS-4515 "Multiple Piece Tie Bars for Concrete Pavements."

2.3. **Alternative Reinforcing Materials**. Provide reinforcement materials of the dimensions and with the physical properties specified when allowed or required by the plans. Provide manufacturer's certification of required material properties.

2.4. **Curing Materials**. Provide Type 2 membrane curing compound conforming to DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants." Provide SS-1 emulsified asphalt conforming to Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions," for concrete pavement to be overlaid with asphalt concrete under this Contract unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved. Provide materials for other methods of curing conforming to the requirements of Item 422, "Concrete Superstructures." Provide insulating blankets for curing fast track concrete pavement with a minimum thermal resistance (R) rating of 0.5 hour-square foot F/BTU. Use insulating blankets that are free from tears and are in good condition.

2.5. **Epoxy**. Provide Type III, Class C epoxy in accordance with DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives," for installing all drilled-in reinforcing steel. Submit a work plan and request approval for the use of epoxy types other than Type III, Class C.

2.6. **Evaporation Retardant**. Provide evaporation retardant conforming to DMS-4650., "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants."

2.7. **Joint Sealants and Fillers**. Provide Class 5 or Class 8 joint-sealant materials and fillers unless otherwise shown on the plans or approved and other sealant materials of the size, shape, and type shown on the plans in accordance with DMS-6310, "Joint Sealants and Fillers."

3. EQUIPMENT

Furnish and maintain all equipment in good working condition. Use measuring, mixing, and delivery equipment conforming to the requirements of Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Obtain approval for other equipment used.

3.1. **Placing, Consolidating, and Finishing Equipment**. Provide approved self-propelled paving equipment that uniformly distributes the concrete with minimal segregation and provides a smooth machine-finished consolidated concrete pavement conforming to plan line and grade. Provide an approved automatic grade control system on slip-forming equipment. Provide approved mechanically-operated finishing floats capable of producing a uniformly smooth pavement surface. Provide equipment capable of providing a fine, light water fog mist.

Provide mechanically-operated vibratory equipment capable of adequately consolidating the concrete. Provide immersion vibrators on the paving equipment at sufficiently close intervals to provide uniform vibration and consolidation of the concrete over the entire width and depth of the pavement and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Provide immersion vibrator units that operate at a frequency in air of at least 8,000 cycles per minute. Provide enough hand-operated immersion vibrators for timely and proper consolidation of the concrete along forms, at all joints and in areas not covered by other vibratory equipment. Surface vibrators may be used to supplement equipment-mounted immersion vibrators. Provide tachometers to verify the proper operation of all vibrators.

For small or irregular areas or when approved, the paving equipment described in this Section is not required.

3.2. **Forming Equipment**.

3.2.1. **Pavement Forms**. Provide metal side forms of sufficient cross-section, strength, and rigidity to support the paving equipment and resist the impact and vibration of the operation without visible springing or settlement. Use forms that are free from detrimental kinks, bends, or warps that could affect ride quality or alignment. Provide flexible or curved metal or wood forms for curves of 100-ft. radius or less.

3.2.2. **Curb Forms**. Provide curb forms for separately placed curbs that are not slipformed that conform to the requirements of Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."

3.3. **Reinforcing Steel Inserting Equipment**. Provide inserting equipment that accurately inserts and positions reinforcing steel in the plastic concrete parallel to the profile grade and horizontal alignment in accordance to plan details when approved.

3.4. **Texturing Equipment**.

3.4.1. **Carpet Drag**. Provide a carpet drag mounted on a work bridge or a manual moveable support system. Provide a single piece of carpet of sufficient transverse length to span the full width of the pavement being placed and adjustable so that a sufficient longitudinal length of carpet is in contact with the concrete being placed to produce the desired texture. Obtain approval to vary the length and width of the carpet to accommodate specific applications.

3.4.2. **Tining Equipment**. Provide a self-propelled metal tine device equipped with steel tines with cross-section approximately 1/32 in. thick × 1/12 in. wide. Provide tines for transverse tining equipment spaced at approximately 1 in., center-to-center, or provide tines for longitudinal tining equipment spaced at approximately 3/4 in., center-to-center. Manual methods that produce an equivalent texture may be used when it is impractical to use self-propelled equipment, such as for small areas, narrow width sections, and in emergencies due to equipment breakdown.

3.5. **Curing Equipment**. Provide a self-propelled machine for applying membrane curing compound using mechanically-pressurized spraying equipment with atomizing nozzles. Provide equipment and controls that maintain the required uniform rate of application over the entire paving area. Provide curing equipment that is independent of all other equipment when required to meet the requirements of Section 360.4.9., "Curing." Hand-operated pressurized spraying equipment with atomizing nozzles may only be used on small or irregular areas, narrow width sections, or in emergencies due to equipment breakdown.

3.6. **Sawing Equipment**. Provide power-driven concrete saws to saw the joints shown on the plans. Provide standby power-driven concrete saws during concrete sawing operations. Provide adequate illumination for nighttime sawing.

3.7. **Grinding Equipment**. Provide self-propelled powered grinding equipment that is specifically designed to smooth and texture concrete pavement using circular diamond blades when required. Provide equipment with automatic grade control capable of grinding at least a 3-ft. width longitudinally in each pass without damaging the concrete.

3.8. **Testing Equipment**. Provide testing equipment regardless of job-control testing responsibilities in accordance with Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete," unless otherwise shown on the plans or specified.

3.9. **Coring Equipment**. Provide coring equipment capable of extracting cores in accordance with the requirements of Tex-424-A when required.

3.10. **Miscellaneous Equipment**. Furnish both 10-ft. and 15-ft. steel or magnesium long-handled, standard straightedges. Furnish enough work bridges, long enough to span the pavement, for finishing and inspection operations.

4. CONSTRUCTION

Obtain approval for adjustments to plan grade-line to maintain thickness over minor subgrade or base high spots while maintaining clearances and drainage. Maintain subgrade or base in a smooth, clean, compacted condition in conformity with the required section and established grade until the pavement concrete is placed. Keep subgrade or base damp with water before placing pavement concrete.

Adequately light the active work areas for all nighttime operations. Provide and maintain tools and materials to perform testing.

4.1. **Paving and Quality Control Plan**. Submit a paving and quality control plan for approval before beginning pavement construction operations. Include details of all operations in the concrete paving process, including methods to construct transverse joints, methods to consolidate concrete at joints, longitudinal construction joint layout, sequencing, curing, lighting, early opening, leave-outs, sawing, inspection, testing, construction methods, other details and description of all equipment. List certified personnel performing the testing. Submit revisions to the paving and quality control plan for approval.

4.2. **Job-Control Testing**. Perform all fresh and hardened concrete job-control testing at the specified frequency unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide job-control testing personnel meeting the requirements of Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Provide and maintain testing equipment, including strength testing equipment at a location acceptable to the Engineer. Use of a commercial laboratory is acceptable. Maintain all testing equipment calibrated in accordance with pertinent test methods. Make strength-testing equipment available to the Engineer for verification testing.

Provide the Engineer the opportunity to witness all tests. The Engineer may require a retest if not given the opportunity to witness. Furnish a copy of all test results to the Engineer daily. Check the first few concrete loads for slump and temperature to verify concrete conformance and consistency on start-up production days. Sample and prepare strength-test specimens (2 specimens per test) on the first day of production and for each 3,000 sq. yd. or fraction thereof of concrete pavement thereafter. Prepare at least 1 set of strength- test specimens for each production day. Perform slump and temperature tests each time strength specimens are made. Monitor concrete temperature to ensure that concrete is consistently within the temperature requirements. The Engineer will direct random job-control sampling and testing. Immediately investigate and take corrective action as approved if any Contractor test result, including tests performed for verification purposes, does not meet specification requirements.

The Engineer will perform job-control testing when the testing by the Contractor is waived by the plans; however, this does not waive the Contractor's responsibility for providing materials and work in accordance with this Item.

4.2.1. **Job-Control Strength**. Use 7-day job-control concrete strength testing in accordance with Tex-448-A or Tex-418-A unless otherwise shown on the plans or permitted.

Use a compressive strength of 3,200 psi or a lower job-control strength value proven to meet a 28-day compressive strength of 4,000 psi as correlated in accordance with Tex-427-A for 7-day job-control by compressive strength. Use a flexural strength of 450 psi or a lower job-control strength value proven to meet a 28-day flexural strength of 570 psi as correlated in accordance with Tex-427-A for 7-day job-control by flexural strength.

Job control of concrete strength may be correlated to an age other than 7 days in accordance with Tex-427-A when approved. Job-control strength of Class HES concrete is based on the required strength and time.

Investigate the strength test procedures, the quality of materials, the concrete production operations, and other possible problem areas to determine the cause when a job-control concrete strength test value is more than 10% below the required job-control strength or when 3 consecutive job-control strength values fall below the required job-control strength. Take necessary action to correct the problem, including redesign of the concrete mix if needed. The Engineer may suspend concrete paving if the Contractor is unable to identify, document, and correct the cause of low-strength test values in a timely manner. The Engineer will evaluate the structural adequacy of the pavements if any job-control strength is more than 15% below the required job-control strength. Remove and replace pavements found to be structurally inadequate at no additional cost when directed.

4.2.2. **Split-Sample Verification Testing**. Perform split-sample verification testing with the Engineer on random samples taken and split by the Engineer at a rate of at least 1 for every 10 job-control samples. The Engineer will evaluate the results of split-sample verification testing. Immediately investigate and take corrective action as approved when results of split-sample verification testing differ more than the allowable differences shown in Table 1, or the average of 10 job-control strength results and the Engineer's split-sample strength result differ by more than 10%.

Table 1
Verification Testing Limits

Test Method	Allowable Differences
Flexural strength, Tex-448-A	19%
Compressive strength, Tex-418-A	10%

4.3. **Reinforcing Steel and Joint Assemblies**. Accurately place and secure in position all reinforcing steel as shown on the plans. Place dowels at mid-depth of the pavement slab, parallel to the surface. Place dowels for transverse contraction joints parallel to the pavement edge. Tolerances for location and alignment of dowels will be shown on the plans. Stagger the lap locations so that no more than 1/3 of the longitudinal steel is spliced in any given 12-ft. width and 2-ft. length of the pavement. Use multiple-piece tie bars, drill and epoxy grout tie bars, or, if approved, mechanically-inserted single-piece tie bars at longitudinal construction joints. Verify that tie bars that are drilled and epoxied or mechanically inserted into concrete at longitudinal construction joints develop a pullout resistance equal to a minimum of 3/4 of the yield strength of the steel after 7 days. Test 15 bars using ASTM E488, except that alternate approved equipment may be used. All 15 tested bars must meet the required pullout strength. Perform corrective measures to provide equivalent pullout resistance if any of the test results do not meet the required minimum pullout strength. Repair damage from testing. Acceptable corrective measures include but are not limited to installation of additional or longer tie bars.

4.3.1. **Manual Placement**. Secure reinforcing bars at alternate intersections with wire ties or locking support chairs. Tie all splices with wire.

4.3.2. **Mechanical Placement**. Complete the work using manual placement methods described above if mechanical placement of reinforcement results in steel misalignment or improper location, poor concrete consolidation, or other inadequacies.

4.4. **Joints**. Install joints as shown on the plans. Joint sealants are not required on concrete pavement that is to be overlaid with asphaltic materials. Clean and seal joints in accordance with Item 438, “Cleaning and Sealing Joints.” Repair excessive spalling of the joint saw groove using an approved method before installing the sealant. Seal all joints before opening the pavement to all traffic. Install a rigid transverse bulkhead, for the reinforcing steel, and shaped accurately to the cross-section of the pavement when placing of concrete is stopped.

4.4.1. **Placing Reinforcement at Joints**. Complete and place the assembly of parts at pavement joints at the required location and elevation, with all parts rigidly secured in the required position, when shown on the plans.

4.4.2. **Transverse Construction Joints**.

4.4.2.1. **Continuously Reinforced Concrete Pavement (CRCP)**. Install additional longitudinal reinforcement through the bulkhead when shown on the plans. Protect the reinforcing steel immediately beyond the construction joint from damage, vibration, and impact.

4.4.2.2. **Concrete Pavement Contraction Design (CPCD)**. Install and rigidly secure a complete joint assembly and bulkhead in the planned transverse contraction joint location when the placing of concrete is intentionally stopped. Install a transverse construction joint either at a planned transverse contraction joint location or mid-slab between planned transverse contraction joints when the placing of concrete is unintentionally stopped. Install tie bars of the size and spacing used in the longitudinal joints for mid-slab construction joints.

4.4.2.3. **Curb Joints**. Provide joints in the curb of the same type and location as the adjacent pavement. Use expansion joint material of the same thickness, type, and quality required for the pavement and of the section shown for the curb. Extend expansion joints through the curb. Construct curb joints at all transverse pavement joints. Place reinforcing steel into the plastic concrete pavement for non-monolithic curbs as shown on the plans unless otherwise approved. Form or saw the weakened plane joint across the full width

of concrete pavement and through the monolithic curbs. Construct curb joints in accordance with Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter."

4.5. **Placing and Removing Forms**. Use clean and oiled forms. Secure forms on a base or firm subgrade that is accurately graded and that provides stable support without deflection and movement by form riding equipment. Pin every form at least at the middle and near each end. Tightly join and key form sections together to prevent relative displacement.

Set side forms far enough in advance of concrete placement to permit inspection. Check conformity of the grade, alignment, and stability of forms immediately before placing concrete, and make all necessary corrections. Use a straightedge or other approved method to test the top of forms to ensure that the ride quality requirements for the completed pavement will be met. Stop paving operations if forms settle or deflect more than 1/8 in. under finishing operations. Reset forms to line and grade, and refinish the concrete surface to correct grade.

Avoid damage to the edge of the pavement when removing forms. Repair damage resulting from form removal and honeycombed areas with a mortar mix within 24 hr. after form removal unless otherwise approved. Clean joint face and repair honeycombed or damaged areas within 24 hr. after a bulkhead for a transverse construction joint has been removed unless otherwise approved. Promptly apply membrane curing compound to the edge of the concrete pavement when forms are removed before 72 hr. after concrete placement.

Forms that are not the same depth as the pavement, but are within 2 in. of that depth are permitted if the subbase is trenched or the full width and length of the form base is supported with a firm material to produce the required pavement thickness. Promptly repair the form trench after use. Use flexible or curved wood or metal forms for curves of 100-ft. radius or less.

4.6. **Concrete Delivery**. Clean delivery equipment as necessary to prevent accumulation of old concrete before loading fresh concrete. Use agitated delivery equipment for concrete designed to have a slump of more than 5 in. Segregated concrete is subject to rejection.

Begin the discharge of concrete delivered in agitated delivery equipment conforming to the requirements of Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete." Place non-agitated concrete within 45 min. after batching. Reduce times as directed when hot weather or other conditions cause quick setting of the concrete.

4.7. **Concrete Placement**. Do not allow the pavement edge to deviate from the established paving line by more than 1/2 in. at any point. Place the concrete as near as possible to its final location, and minimize segregation and rehandling. Distribute concrete using shovels where hand spreading is necessary. Do not use rakes or vibrators to distribute concrete.

4.7.1. **Consolidation**. Consolidate all concrete by approved mechanical vibrators operated on the front of the paving equipment. Use immersion-type vibrators that simultaneously consolidate the full width of the placement when machine finishing. Keep vibrators from dislodging reinforcement. Use hand-operated vibrators to consolidate concrete along forms, at all joints and in areas not accessible to the machine-mounted vibrators. Do not operate machine-mounted vibrators while the paving equipment is stationary. Vibrator operations are subject to review.

4.7.2. **Curbs**. Conform to the requirements of Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter, and Combined Curb and Gutter" where curbs are placed separately.

4.7.3. **Temperature Restrictions**. Place concrete that is between 40°F and 95°F when measured in accordance with Tex-422-A at the time of discharge, except that concrete may be used if it was already in transit when the temperature was found to exceed the allowable maximum. Take immediate corrective action or cease concrete production when the concrete temperature exceeds 95°F.

Do not place concrete when the ambient temperature in the shade is below 40°F and falling unless approved. Concrete may be placed when the ambient temperature in the shade is above 35°F and rising or

above 40°F. Protect the pavement with an approved insulating material capable of protecting the concrete for the specified curing period when temperatures warrant protection against freezing. Submit for approval proposed measures to protect the concrete from anticipated freezing weather for the first 72 hr. after placement. Repair or replace all concrete damaged by freezing.

4.8. **Spreading and Finishing**. Finish all concrete pavement with approved self-propelled equipment. Use power-driven spreaders, power-driven vibrators, power-driven strike-off, screed, or approved alternate equipment. Use the transverse finishing equipment to compact and strike-off the concrete to the required section and grade without surface voids. Use float equipment for final finishing. Use concrete with a consistency that allows completion of all finishing operations without addition of water to the surface. Use the minimal amount of water fog mist necessary to maintain a moist surface. Reduce fogging if float or straightedge operations result in excess slurry.

4.8.1. **Finished Surface**. Perform sufficient checks with long-handled 10-ft. and 15-ft. straightedges on the plastic concrete to ensure the final surface is within the tolerances specified in Surface Test A in Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces." Check with the straightedge parallel to the centerline.

4.8.2. **Maintenance of Surface Moisture**. Prevent surface drying of the pavement before application of the curing system by means that may include water fogging, the use of wind screens, and the use of evaporation retardants. Apply evaporation retardant at the manufacturer's recommended rate. Reapply the evaporation retardant as needed to maintain the concrete surface in a moist condition until curing system is applied. Do not use evaporation retardant as a finishing aid. Failure to take acceptable precautions to prevent surface drying of the pavement will be cause for shutdown of pavement operations.

4.8.3. **Surface Texturing**. Complete final texturing before the concrete has attained its initial set. Drag the carpet longitudinally along the pavement surface with the carpet contact surface area adjusted to provide a satisfactory coarsely textured surface. Prevent the carpet from getting plugged with grout. Do not perform carpet dragging operations while there is excessive bleed water.

A metal-tine texture finish is required unless otherwise shown on the plans. Provide transverse tining unless otherwise shown on the plans. Immediately following the carpet drag, apply a single coat of evaporation retardant, if needed, at the rate recommended by the manufacturer. Provide the metal-tine finish immediately after the concrete surface has set enough for consistent tining. Operate the metal-tine device to obtain grooves approximately 3/16 in. deep, with a minimum depth of 1/8 in., and approximately 1/12 in. wide. Do not overlap a previously tined area. Use manual methods to achieve similar results on ramps, small or irregular areas, and narrow width sections of pavements. Repair damage to the edge of the slab and joints immediately after texturing. Do not tine pavement that will be overlaid or that is scheduled for blanket diamond grinding or shot blasting.

Target a carpet drag texture of 0.04 in., as measured by Tex-436-A, when carpet drag is the only surface texture required on the plans. Ensure adequate and consistent macro-texture is achieved by applying enough weight to the carpet and by keeping the carpet from getting plugged with grout. Correct any location with a texture less than 0.03 in. by diamond grinding or shot blasting. The Engineer will determine the test locations at points located transversely to the direction of traffic in the outside wheel path.

4.8.4. **Small, Irregular Area, or Narrow Width Placements**. Use hand equipment and procedures that produce a consolidated and finished pavement section to the line and grade where machine placements and finishing of concrete pavement are not practical.

4.8.5. **Emergency Procedures**. Use hand-operated equipment for applying texture, evaporation retardant, and cure in the event of equipment breakdown.

4.9. **Curing**. Keep the concrete pavement surface from drying as described in Section 360.4.8.2., "Maintenance of Surface Moisture," until the curing material has been applied. Maintain and promptly repair damage to curing materials on exposed surfaces of concrete pavement continuously for at least 3 curing days. A curing day is defined as a 24-hr. period when either the temperature taken in the shade away from artificial heat is above 50°F for at least 19 hr. or the surface temperature of the concrete is maintained above 40°F for 24 hr.

Curing begins when the concrete curing system has been applied. Stop concrete paving if curing compound is not being applied promptly and maintained adequately. Other methods of curing in accordance with Item 422, "Concrete Superstructures," may be used when specified or approved.

4.9.1. **Membrane Curing**. Spray the concrete surface uniformly with 2 coats of membrane curing compound at an individual application rate of no more than 180 sq. ft. per gallon. Apply the curing compound before allowing the concrete surface to dry.

Manage finishing and texturing operations to ensure placement of curing compound on a moist concrete surface, relatively free of bleed water, to prevent any plastic shrinkage cracking. Time the application of curing compound to prevent plastic shrinkage cracking.

Maintain curing compounds in a uniformly agitated condition, free of settlement before and during application. Do not thin or dilute the curing compound.

Apply additional compound at the same rate of coverage to correct damage where the coating shows discontinuities or other defects or if rain falls on the newly coated surface before the film has dried enough to resist damage. Ensure that the curing compound coats the sides of the tining grooves.

4.9.2. **Asphalt Curing**. Apply a uniform coating of asphalt curing at a rate of 90 to 180 sq. ft. per gallon when an asphaltic concrete overlay is required. Apply curing immediately after texturing and once the free moisture (sheen) has disappeared. Obtain approval to add water to the emulsion to improve spray distribution. Maintain the asphalt application rate when using diluted emulsions. Maintain the emulsion in a mixed condition during application.

4.9.3. **Curing Class HES Concrete**. Provide membrane curing in accordance with Section 360.4.9.1., "Membrane Curing," for all Class HES concrete pavement. Promptly follow by wet mat curing in accordance with Section 422.4.8., "Final Curing," until opening strength is achieved but not less than 24 hr.

4.9.4. **Curing Fast-Track Concrete**. Provide wet mat curing unless otherwise shown on the plans or as directed. Cure in accordance with Section 422.4.8., "Final Curing." Apply a Type 1-D or Type 2 membrane cure instead of wet mat curing if the air temperature is below 65°F and insulating blankets are used.

4.10. **Sawing Joints**. Saw joints to the depth shown on the plans as soon as sawing can be accomplished without damage to the pavement regardless of time of day or weather conditions. Some minor raveling of the saw-cut is acceptable. Use a chalk line, string line, sawing template, or other approved method to provide a true joint alignment. Provide enough saws to match the paving production rate to ensure sawing completion at the earliest possible time to avoid uncontrolled cracking. Reduce paving production if necessary to ensure timely sawing of joints. Promptly restore membrane cure damaged within the first 72 hr. of curing.

4.11. **Protection of Pavement and Opening to Traffic**. Testing for early opening is the responsibility of the Contractor regardless of job-control testing responsibilities unless otherwise shown on the plans or as directed. Testing result interpretation for opening to traffic is subject to approval.

4.11.1. **Protection of Pavement**. Erect and maintain barricades and other standard and approved devices that will exclude all vehicles and equipment from the newly placed pavement for the periods specified. Protect the pavement from damage due to crossings using approved methods before opening to traffic. Where a detour is not readily available or economically feasible, an occasional crossing of the roadway with overweight equipment may be permitted for relocating equipment only but not for hauling material. When an occasional crossing of overweight equipment is permitted, temporary matting or other approved methods may be required.

Maintain an adequate supply of sheeting or other material to cover and protect fresh concrete surface from weather damage. Apply as needed to protect the pavement surface from weather.

4.11.2. **Opening Pavement to All Traffic**. Pavement that is 7 days old may be opened to all traffic. Clean pavement, place stable material against the pavement edges, seal joints, and perform all other traffic safety related work before opening to traffic.

4.11.3. **Opening Pavement to Construction Equipment**. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, concrete pavement may be opened early to concrete paving equipment and related delivery equipment after the concrete is at least 48 hr. old and opening strength has been demonstrated in accordance with Section 360.4.11.4., "Early Opening to All Traffic," before curing is complete. Keep delivery equipment at least 2 ft. from the edge of the concrete pavement. Keep tracks of the paving equipment at least 1 ft. from the pavement edge. Protect textured surfaces from the paving equipment. Restore damaged membrane curing as soon as possible. Repair pavement damaged by paving or delivery equipment before opening to all traffic.

4.11.4. **Early Opening to All Traffic**. Concrete pavement may be opened after curing is complete and the concrete has attained a flexural strength of 450 psi or a compressive strength of 3,200 psi, except that pavement using Class HES concrete may be opened after 24 hr. if the specified strength is achieved.

4.11.4.1. **Strength Testing**. Test concrete specimens cured under the same conditions as the portion of the pavement involved.

4.11.4.2. **Maturity Method**. Use the maturity method, Tex-426-A, to estimate concrete strength for early opening pavement to traffic unless otherwise shown on the plans. Install at least 2 maturity sensors for each day's placement in areas where the maturity method will be used for early opening. Maturity sensors, when used, will be installed near the day's final placement for areas being evaluated for early opening. Use test specimens to verify the strength–maturity relationship in accordance with Tex-426-A, starting with the first day's placement corresponding to the early opening pavement section.

Verify the strength–maturity relationship at least every 10 days of production after the first day. Establish a new strength–maturity relationship when the strength specimens deviate more than 10% from the maturity-estimated strengths. Suspend use of the maturity method for opening pavements to traffic when the strength–maturity relationship deviates by more than 10% until a new strength–maturity relationship is established.

The Engineer will determine the frequency of verification when the maturity method is used intermittently or for only specific areas.

4.11.5. **Fast Track Concrete Pavement**. Open the pavement after the concrete has been cured for at least 8 hr. and attained a minimum compressive strength of 1,800 psi or a minimum flexural strength of 255 psi when tested in accordance with Section 360.4.11.4.1., "Strength Testing," or Section 360.4.11.4.2., "Maturity Method," unless otherwise directed. Cover the pavement with insulating blankets when the air temperature is below 65°F until the pavement is opened to traffic.

4.11.6. **Emergency Opening to Traffic**. Open the pavement to traffic under emergency conditions, when the pavement is at least 72 hr. old when directed in writing. Remove all obstructing materials, place stable material against the pavement edges, and perform other work involved in providing for the safety of traffic as required for emergency opening.

4.12. **Pavement Thickness**. The Engineer will check the thickness in accordance with Tex-423-A unless other methods are shown on the plans. The Engineer will perform 1 thickness test consisting of 1 reading at approximately the center of each lane every 500 ft. or fraction thereof. Core where directed, in accordance with Tex-424-A, to verify deficiencies of more than 0.2 in. from plan thickness and to determine the limits of deficiencies of more than 0.75 in. from plan thickness. Fill core holes using an approved concrete mixture and method.

4.12.1. **Thickness Deficiencies Greater than 0.2 in.** Take one 4-in. diameter core at that location to verify the measurement when any depth test measured in accordance with Tex-423-A is deficient by more than 0.2 in. from the plan thickness.

Take 2 additional cores from the unit (as defined in Section 360.4.12.3., "Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment") at intervals of at least 150 ft. and at selected locations if the core is deficient by more than 0.2 in., but not by more than 0.75 in. from the plan thickness, and determine the thickness of the unit for payment purposes by averaging the length of the 3 cores. In calculations of the average thickness of this unit of pavement, measurements in excess of the specified thickness by more than 0.2 in. will be considered as the specified thickness plus 0.2 in.

4.12.2. **Thickness Deficiencies Greater than 0.75 in.** Take additional cores at 10-ft. intervals in each direction parallel to the centerline to determine the boundary of the deficient area if a core is deficient by more than
0.75 in. The Engineer will evaluate any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 0.75 in., but not more than 1 in. Remove and replace the deficient areas without additional compensation or retain deficient areas without compensation, as directed. Remove and replace any area of pavement found
deficient in thickness by more than 1 in. without additional compensation.

4.12.3. **Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment**. Limits for applying a payment adjustment for deficient pavement thickness from 0.20 in. to not more than 0.75 in. are 500 ft. of pavement in each lane. Lane width will be as shown on typical sections and pavement design standards.

For greater than 0.75 in. deficient thickness, the limits for applying zero payment or requiring removal will be defined by coring or equivalent nondestructive means as determined by the Engineer. The remaining portion of the unit determined to be less than 0.75 in. deficient will be subject to the payment adjustment based on the average core thickness at each end of the 10-ft. interval investigation as determined by the Engineer.

Shoulders will be measured for thickness unless otherwise shown on the plans. Shoulders 6 ft. wide or wider will be considered as lanes. Shoulders less than 6 ft. wide will be considered part of the adjacent lane.

Limits for applying payment adjustment for deficient pavement thickness for ramps, widenings, acceleration and deceleration lanes, and other miscellaneous areas are 500 ft. in length. Areas less than 500 ft. in length will be individually evaluated for payment adjustment based on the plan area.

4.13. **Ride Quality**. Measure ride quality in accordance with Item 585, "Ride Quality for Pavement Surfaces," unless otherwise shown on the plans.

5. MEASUREMENT

This Item will be measured as follows:

5.1. **Concrete Pavement**. Concrete pavement will be measured by the square yard of surface area in place. The surface area includes the portion of the pavement slab extending beneath the curb.

5.2. **Curb**. Curb on concrete pavement will be measured by the foot in place.

6. PAYMENT

These prices are full compensation for materials, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

6.1. **Concrete Pavement**. The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the adjusted unit price bid for "Concrete Pavement" of the type and depth specified as adjusted in accordance with Section 360.6.2., "Deficient Thickness Adjustment."

6.2. **Deficient Thickness Adjustment**. Where the average thickness of pavement is deficient in thickness by more than 0.2 in. but not more than 0.75 in., payment will be made using the adjustment factor as specified in Table 2 applied to the bid price for the deficient area for each unit as defined under Section 360.4.12.3., "Pavement Units for Payment Adjustment."

Table 2
Deficient Thickness Price Adjustment Factor

Deficiency in Thickness Determined by Cores (in.)	Proportional Part of Contract Price Allowed (Adjustment Factor)
Not deficient	1.00
Over 0.00 through 0.20	1.00
Over 0.20 through 0.30	0.80
Over 0.30 through 0.40	0.72
Over 0.40 through 0.50	0.68
Over 0.50 through 0.75	0.57

6.3. Curb. Work performed and furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "curb" of the type specified.

City of Austin Specifications

Specifications attached may be missing additional referenced specifications. Please contact the engineer prior to bid with any questions pertaining to specifications or their use.

Please reference all City of Austin Standard Products Lists for acceptable materials & appurtenances, unless specifically detailed by Engineer.

All references to City of Austin shall be interpreted as referring to the City of Kyle.

SECTION 210S

FLEXIBLE BASE

210S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section governs furnishing and placing a crushed stone base course for surfacing, pavement, or other base courses. "Flexible Base" shall be constructed on an approved, prepared surface in one or more courses conforming to the typical sections and to the lines and grades, indicated on the Drawings or established by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

210S.2 SUBMITTALS

The submittal requirements of this specification section may include:

A. Source, gradation and test results for the crushed limestone material,
B. Notification that the crushed limestone stockpile is completed and ready for testing, and
C. Field density test results for in-place compacted flexible base,

210S.3 MATERIAL

A. **Mineral Aggregate**. The material shall be crushed argillaceous limestone meeting the requirements specified herein. The material shall be from sources approved by the City and shall consist of durable crushed stone that has been screened to the required gradation.

Flexible base materials shall be tested according to the following TxDoT standard test methods:

a) Preparation for Soil Constants and Sieve Analysis	Tex-101-E
b) Liquid Limit	Tex-104-E
c) Plastic Limit	Tex-105-E
d) Plasticity Index	Tex-106-E
e) Sieve Analysis	Tex-110-E
f) Wet Ball Mill	Tex-116-E
g) Triaxial Test	Tex-117-E, Part II

1. Plasticity Index shall be determined in accordance with Tex-107-E (Linear Shrinkage) when liquid limit is unattainable as defined in Tex-104-E.
2. When a soundness value is required on the drawings, the material shall be tested in accordance with Tex-411-A.

Base material shall be stockpiled after crushing, then tested by the City's designated laboratory and approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to being hauled to the Project.

The material shall be well graded and shall meet the following requirements:

Sieve Designation		Other Requirements	% Retained	
US	SI			
1¾"	45 mm		0	
7/8 "	22.4 mm		10—35	
3/8 '	9.5 mm		30—50	
#4	4.75 mm		45—65	
#40	425 µm		70—85	
		Maximum Plasticity Index		10
		Maximum Wet Ball Mill		42
Maximum Increase in passing #40 (425 µm) sieve from Wet Ball Mill Test			20	

Minimum compressive strength when subjected to the triaxial test shall be 35 psi at 0 psi lateral pressure [240 kiloPascal (kPa) at 0 kPa lateral pressure] and 175 psi at 15 psi lateral pressure [1200 kiloPascal (kPa) at 100 kPa lateral pressure].

B. **Asphaltic Material**. Prime Coat. Prime Coat shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Section 306S, "Prime Coat", except for measurement and payment.

210S.4 STOCKPILING, STORAGE AND MANAGEMENT

A. **Managing Material**: The stockpile shall be constructed on a relatively smooth area that has been cleared of debris, weeds, brush, trees and grass. Stockpiles shall contain between 25,000 and 50,000 cubic yards (19,100 to 38,200 cubic meters). The stockpile shall be constructed using scrapers, bottom dumps or other similar equipment that allows dumping and spreading without rehandling. The stockpile shall be constructed to allow dumping and spreading in one direction only. The height of the stockpile shall not exceed the capabilities of available equipment to make a full cut (bottom to top) on any of the four sides.

A stockpile shall be completed before being tested by the City. The Contractor's supplier shall notify the City when a stockpile has been completed and is ready to be tested. The stockpile shall not be added to after it has been tested.

The Contractor shall provide material only from stockpiles that have been inspected, tested and accepted by the City. A ticket showing the date, source, stockpile number, and net weight (mass) shall be provided to the Inspector with each load of material delivered to the Project.

Material shall be loaded from the stockpile by making successive vertical cuts through its entire depth.

B. **Test Sampling**: The Contractor's supplier may choose the method of sample gathering for testing by the City's laboratory as follows:

1. The supplier shall make a full-height cut a sufficient distance into each side of the stockpile to obtain a uniform sample. The four samples (one from each side of the stockpile) shall then be combined and mixed into a single "test" specimen from which the City's laboratory can obtain a sample.
2. As the stockpile is constructed, a perpendicular cut will be made across the spreading direction at every two feet to four feet (0.6 to 1.2 meters) of height and the sample used to start a "mini" stockpile. The process shall be repeated in two feet to four feet (0.6 to 1.2 meter) increments of height, until the

stockpile and the "mini" stockpile are completed. Samples shall be obtained from the "mini" stockpile in the same manner described in (1) above.

C. **Testing and Acceptance**: When initial tests indicate that the material is unacceptable, the City may, if requested by the Contractor's supplier, sample and test the material one more time. The additional sampling and testing shall be paid for by the supplier.

210S.5 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. **Preparation of Subgrade**: Flexible base shall not be placed until the Contractor has verified by proof rolling that the subgrade has been prepared and compacted in conformity with Standard Specification Section 201S, "Subgrade Preparation," to the typical sections, lines and grades indicated on the Drawings. Any deviation shall be corrected and proof rolled prior to placement of the flexible base material.

The Contractor shall not place flexible base until the subgrade has cured to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative, regardless of whether or not the subgrade has been successfully proof rolled. As a minimum, this will be after the surface displays no damp spots and there is no evidence of "sponginess" in the subgrade.

B. **First Lift:** Immediately before placing the flexible base material, the subgrade shall be checked for conformity with grade and section. The thickness of each lift of flexible base shall be equal increments of the total base depth. No single lift shall be more than six inches (150 mm) or less than three inches (75 mm) compacted thickness.

The material shall be delivered in approved vehicles. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to deliver the required amount of material. If it becomes evident that insufficient material was placed, additional material as necessary shall be delivered and the entire course scarified, mixed and compacted.

Material deposited upon the subgrade shall be spread and shaped the same day unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative. In the event inclement weather or other unforeseen circumstances render spreading of the material impractical, the material shall be spread as soon as conditions allow.

Additionally, if the material cannot be spread and worked the same day it is deposited, the Contractor shall "close up" the dump piles before leaving the job site. "Closed up" shall be defined as the use of a motor grader to blade all dump piles together, leaving no open space between piles.

The material shall be spread, sprinkled, if required, then thoroughly mixed; bladed, dragged and shaped to conform to the typical sections indicated on the Drawings.

All areas and "nests" of segregated coarse or fine material shall be corrected or removed and replaced with well-graded material.

Each lift shall be sprinkled as required to bring the material to optimum moisture content, then compacted to the extent necessary to provide not less than the percent density specified in Section 210S.5.D, "Density." In addition to the requirements specified for density, the full depth of flexible base material shall be compacted to the extent necessary to remain firm and stable under construction equipment. After each section of flexible base material is completed, tests, as necessary, will be made by the Engineer or designated representative. As a minimum, three in-place density tests per section per day will be taken. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, it shall be reworked as necessary to meet these requirements. All initial testing will be paid for by the City. All retesting shall be paid for by the Contractor.

Throughout the entire operation, the surface of the material shall be maintained by blading and, upon completion, shall be smooth and shall conform to the typical section indicated on the Drawings and to the established lines and grades.

In that area on which pavement is to be placed, any deviation in excess of 1/4 inch (6.5 mm) in cross section or 1/4 inch in a length of 16 feet (6.5 mm in a length of 5 meters) measured longitudinally shall be corrected by loosening, adding or removing material, and by reshaping and recompacting. All irregularities, depressions or weak spots shall be corrected immediately by scarifying the areas affected, adding suitable material as required, and by reshaping and recompacting. Should the lift, due to any reason or cause, lose the required stability, density and/or finish before the surfacing is complete, it shall be recompacted and refinished at the Contractor's expense.

C. **Succeeding Lifts**: Construction methods for succeeding lifts shall be the same as prescribed for the first lift. For that lift of the flexible base upon which the curb and gutter will be constructed, as well as the last flexible base lift (i.e. top of the flexible base), the Contractor shall check the surface of the lift for conformity to the lines and grades by setting "blue tops" at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 meters) on the centerline, at quarterpoints, at curb lines or edge of pavement, and at other points that may be indicated on the Drawings.

When the thickness of a particular lift of the flexible base is in question, the Contractor shall check the surface of the lift for conformity to the lines and grades by setting "blue tops" at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 meters) on the centerline, at quarter points, at curb lines or edge of pavement, and at other points that may be indicated on the Drawings

D. **Density**: The flexible base shall be compacted to not less than 100 percent density as determined by TxDoT Test Method Tex-113-E.

Field density determination shall be made in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-115-E unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Each lift of the flexible base shall also be tested by proof rolling in conformity with Standard Specification Section 236S "Proof Rolling."

E. **Priming**: After the flexible base material has been compacted to not less than 100 percent density, and tested by proof rolling, a prime coat will be applied in accordance with Standard Specification Section 306S, "Prime Coat."

F. **Curing**: Pavement materials, such as a tack coat or surface course, shall not be placed on the primed surface until the prime coat has been absorbed into the base course. At least 24 hours, or longer if designated by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be allowed when cutback asphalt is used as the prime coat.

210S.6 MEASUREMENT

"Flexible Base" will be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter: 1 cubic meter equals 1.196 cubic yards), complete in place, as indicated in the Contract Documents.

210S.7 PAYMENT

This item will be paid for at the contract unit bid price for "Flexible Base". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for all work specified herein, including the furnishing, hauling, placing and compacting of all materials; for rolling, proof rolling, recompacting and refinishing; for all water required; for retesting as necessary; for priming; and for all equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Prime coat will not be measured nor paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid for Standard Specification Section 210S, "Flexible Base."

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Section 210S-A:	Flexible Base	Per Cubic Yard.

END OF SECTION

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Section 210S Flexible Base

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Section 236S	Proof Rolling
Section 306S	Prime Coat

Texas Department of Transportation:
Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Tex-101-E	Preparation of Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-107-A	Determination of Bar Linear Shrinkage of Soils
Tex-110-E	Determination of Particle Size Analysis of Soils
Tex-113-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials and Cohesionless Sands
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials
Tex-116-E	Ball Mill Method for Determination of the Disintegration of Flexible Base Material
Tex-117-E	Triaxial Compression Tests for Disturbed Soils and Base Materials
Tex-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate By Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Section 210S Flexible Base

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 1000S-2	Flexible Base with Asphalt Surface Trench Repair-Existing Pavement
No. 510S-3	Typical Trench with Paved Surface
No. 1000S	Bus Stop Paving
No. 1000S-10	Local Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(1)	Residential and City of Austin Neighborhood Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Commercial Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
No. 1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
No. 1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections-(4 Lanes divided)
No. 1000S-14	Major Arterial Street Sections

City of Austin Utility Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.8.2	Flexible Base
Section 5.7.3	Flexible Base with Asphalt Surface
Section 5.9.1	Excavation in Alley

City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 3.2.0	General Criteria
Section 3.4.3.D	Layer Data-Minimum Thickness
Table 3-1	Minimum Layer Thickness
Section 3.4.3.F	Layer Data- Minimum Thickness
Table 3-2	Layer Thickness Increment
Section 3.4.3.J	Layer Data-Stiffness Coefficient
Table 3-3	Stiffness Coefficient
Table 3-9	Recommended Salvage values
Table 3-10	AASHTO Layer Coefficients

SECTION 340S

HOT MIX ASPHALTIC CONCRETE PAVEMENT

340S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern base, level up, and pavement surface courses composed of a compacted mixture of aggregate and asphaltic cement mixed hot in a mixing plant. The hot mix asphaltic (HMA) concrete pavement shall be constructed on a previously completed and approved subgrade, subbase material, base material, concrete slab or existing pavement.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

340S.2 SUBMITTALS

The submittal requirements of this specification section may include:

A. A mix design submittal including the plant corrected Job Mix Formula (JMF) for the hot mix asphaltic concrete.
B. Certification that the aggregate materials meet appropriate quality requirements.
C. Particle-size gradation and specific gravity tests on all aggregate materials.
D. Certification that the asphalt cement for paving materials meet appropriate quality requirements.

340S.3 MATERIALS

The Contractor shall furnish materials to meet the requirements specified herein and shall be solely responsible for the quality and consistency of the product delivered to the Project.

A. **Aggregate:** The aggregate shall be composed of coarse aggregate, a fine aggregate and, if required or allowed, mineral filler and reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP). RAP use will be allowed in all base course mixtures except as specifically excluded herein, in the Contract Documents or on the Drawings, provided no more than 20% RAP is used.

   RAP use will not be permitted in pavement surface courses.

   Aggregates shall meet the quality requirements of Table 1 and other requirements as specified herein. The aggregate contained in RAP will not be required to meet Table 1 requirements unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

   1. *Coarse Aggregate:* Coarse aggregate is defined as that part of the aggregate retained on the No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve and shall consist of clean, tough, durable fragments of crushed stone or crushed gravel of uniform quality throughout.

      Gravel from each source shall be crushed to the extent that it has a minimum of 85% of the particles retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve with two or more mechanically induced crushed faces as determined by TxDOT Test Method TEX-460-A (Part I). The material passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve and retained on the No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve must be the produced from crushing aggregate that was originally retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

   2. *Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP):* RAP is defined as a salvaged, milled, pulverized, broken or

crushed asphaltic pavement. The RAP to be used in the mix shall be crushed or broken to the extent that 100 percent will pass the 2-inch (50 mm) sieve.

The RAP shall be stockpiled in such a manner that assures that it will not become contaminated by dirt or other objectionable materials. Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, stockpiled, crushed RAP must not exhibit a decantation more than 5 percent or a plasticity index more than 8, when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-406-A, Part I, or Test Method Tex-106-E, respectively.

3. *Fine Aggregate:* Fine aggregate is defined as that part of the aggregate passing the No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve and shall be of uniform quality throughout. A maximum of 15 percent of the total aggregate may be field sand or other uncrushed fine aggregate.

   Screenings shall be supplied from sources whose coarse aggregate meets the abrasion and magnesium sulfate soundness loss requirements shown in Table 1.

   a) Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, stone screenings, which are the product of a rock crushing operation, are required and shall meet the following gradation requirements when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-200-F, Part I.

Material	Percent by Weight (Mass)
Passing 3/8 inch (9.50 mm) sieve	100
Passing No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve	70—100
Passing No. 200 (75 µm) sieve	0—15

   b) Crushed gravel screenings may be used with, or in lieu of, stone screenings only when indicated on the Drawings. Crushed gravel screenings must be the product of crushing aggregate that was originally retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve and must meet the gradation for stone screenings shown above.

4. *Mineral Filler:* Mineral filler shall consist of thoroughly dried stone dust, Portland cement, fly ash, lime or other mineral dust approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The mineral filler shall be free from foreign matter.

   Portland cement manufactured in a cement kiln fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Natural Resource Conservation Commission (TNRCC) and the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

   Fly ash obtained from a source using a process fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Natural Resource Conservation Commission (TNRCC) and the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

   The addition of baghouse fines or other collected fines will be permitted if the mixture quality is not adversely affected in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative. In no case shall the amount of material passing the No. 200 (75 µm) sieve exceed the tolerances of the job-mix formula or the master gradation limits.

   When tested by TEX-200-F (Part I or Part III, as applicable), the mineral filler shall meet the following

gradation requirements. Baghouse fines are not required to meet the gradation requirements.

Material	Percent by Weight (mass)
Passing No. 30 (600 µm) Sieve	95—100
Passing No. 80 (187.5 µm) Sieve, not less than	75
Passing No. 200 (75 µm) Sieve, not less than	55

TABLE 1: AGGREGATE QUALITY REQUIREMENTS *

Requirement	Test Method	Amount
COARSE AGGREGATE		
Deleterious Material, percent, maximum	Tex-217-F, I	1.5
Decantation, percent, maximum	Tex-217-F, II	1.5
Los Angeles Abrasion, percent, maximum	Tex-410-A	40
Magnesium Sulfate Soundness Loss 5 cycle, percent, maximum	Tex-410-A	30
FINE AGGREGATE		
Linear Shrinkage, maximum	Tex-107-E, II	3
COMBINED AGGREGATES		
Sand Equivalent Value, minimum	Tex-203-F	45

*Aggregates, without added mineral filler or additives, combined as used in the job-mix formula (Plant Corrected).

B. Asphaltic Material:

1. *Paving Mixture:* Asphalt cement for the paving mixture shall conform to the requirements of Standardl Specification Section 301S, "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions", for AC-20 or PG64-22, Styrene (SBS) Modified Asphalt Cement, AC-SBS Blend AC-45P or PG76-22S, unless otherwise indicated in the Project Documents.

2. *Tack Coat:* Tack Coat shall conform to Standard Specification Section 307S, "Tack Coat".

C. **Additives:** Additives to facilitate mixing and/or improve the quality of the asphaltic mixture or tack coat may be used with the authorization of the Engineer or designated representative. The Contractor may choose to use either lime or a liquid anti-stripping agent to reduce moisture susceptibility of the aggregate.

340S.4 PAVING MIXTURES

An asphalt mixture design is developed by a laboratory process, which includes the determination of the quality and quantity of the asphalt cement and the individual aggregates, and the testing of the combined mixture (Laboratory Design). The Laboratory Design is subsequently revised to produce an appropriate job mix formula.

The job mix formula (JMF) lists the quantity of each component to be used in the mix after the laboratory design has been adjusted by running it through a particular plant (i.e. the mix design is Plant Corrected). The JMF will be the standard to which the Acceptance Plan will be applied. The JMF of one drum or batching unit shall not be used for another unit.

The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer on forms provided by the Engineer or designated representative, an asphalt mixture design reviewed, signed and sealed by a Registered Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Texas or certified by a TxDOT Level II Certified Asphalt Technician. An asphalt mixture design shall be submitted for a comprehensive review every two (2) years. Mix designs older than one year will not be accepted without a review of current test data of the proposed materials and current mix design to ensure that the materials meet specification requirements.

The JMF (Plant Corrected) shall be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative on a form provided by the Engineer through the Construction Inspector or Project Manager of the Project for review, for each individual Project, a minimum of three (3) working days before the mixture is to be placed. Under no circumstances will a mixture be placed before its use is reviewed and approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Performance of the mix design shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor.

A. **Mixture Design:** The mix shall be designed in accordance with TxDOT Construction Bulletin C-14 and Test Method Tex-204-F to conform with the requirements herein. The master grading limits of the appropriate type and the JMF will be plotted on a graduated chart with sieve sizes raised to the 0.45 power and will be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative with the asphalt mixture design.

   The Bulk Specific Gravity of aggregates in RAP will be determined on extracted aggregates.

B. **Types:** The blend of coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, and mineral filler, if allowed, that is established by TxDOT Test Method Tex-200-F, Dry Sieve Analysis, shall conform to the master gradation shown in Table 2 for the type of specified mixture. The voids in the mineral aggregate (VMA) will be determined as a mixture design requirement only, in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-207-F, and shall not be less than the value indicated in Table 2.

TABLE 2: Master Grading - Percent Passing by Weight (Mass) or Volume

Sieve Size US (SI)	Type A Coarse Base	Type B Fine Base	Type C Coarse Surface	Type D Fine Surface	Type F Fine Mixture
1½" (37.5 mm)	100				
1¼" (31 mm)	95—100				
1" (25 mm)		100			
7/8 " (22 mm)	70—90	95—100	100		
5/8 " (15.5 mm)		75—95	95—100		
½" (12.5 mm)	50—70			100	
3/8 " (9.5 mm)		60—80	70—85	85—100	100
¼" (6.25 mm)					95—100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	30—50	40—60	43—63	50—70	
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	20—34	27—40	30—40	32—42	32—42
No. 40 (425 µm)	5—20	10—25	10—25	11—26	9—24
No. 80 (187.5 µm)	2—12	3—13	3—13	4—14	3—13
No. 200 (75 µm)	1—6*	1—6*	1—6*	1—6*	1—6*
VMA % minimum	11	12	13	14	15

Rec. Min. Lift	3" (75 mm)	2" (50 mm)	1¾" (70 mm)	1" (50 mm)	¾" (20 mm)

C. **Tolerances:** Fluctuations in the aggregate gradation and asphalt content of the Job Mix Formula (JMF) shall not vary by more than the following criteria but the aggregate gradation shall be limited to the range of the master gradation as established by TEX-210-F.

SIEVES	Percent By Weight (Mass)
2" "(50 mm) Sieve through No. 10" (2.00 mm) Sieve	±5.0
No. 40 (425 µm) through No. 200 (75 µm) Sieve	±3.0
Asphalt Content	±0.5

D. **Stability and Density:** The mixture shall be designed at or near optimum density, as indicated on the Drawings, to conform to the following percent of Maximum Theoretical Density as measured by TxDOT Test Method TEX-227-F and Stability conforming to TxDOT Test Method TEX-208-F. The laboratory mixture shall be molded in accordance with TxDOT Test Method TEX-206-F and the Bulk Specific Gravity determined in accordance with TxDOT Test Method TEX-207-F.

	Optimum Laboratory Density (%)		Laboratory Density (%)		Stability
			Min.	Max.	
Local Streets Surface Courses	96	94.5	97.5	35 Min.	
Collectors & Arterials Surface Courses	96	94.5	97.5	40—60	
All Base Courses	96	94.5	97.5	35 Min.	

E. **Job Mix Formula Field Adjustments:** The Contractor shall produce a mixture of uniform composition closely conforming to the reviewed JMF, that falls within the limits of the tolerances given above and the Acceptance Plan.

If it is determined by the City of Austin that adjustments to the JMF are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, the Engineer or designated representative may allow adjustments of the JMF within the following limits without a laboratory redesign of the mixture. The adjusted JMF shall not exceed the master grading criteria for the type of mixture specified. The proposed JMF adjustments shall not exceed 5 percent on any one sieve, ½-inch (12.5 mm) size and larger, or 3 percent on the sieve size below the ½-inch (12.5 mm) sieve of the JMF (Plant Corrected) reviewed for the Project.

When the proposed adjustments exceed either the 5 or 3 percent limits, and the Engineer or designated representative determines that the impact of these changes may adversely affect pavement performance, a new laboratory mixture design will be required.

The asphalt content may be adjusted with the concurrence of the Engineer or designated representative to maintain desirable laboratory density near the optimum value while achieving other mix requirements. However, increasing the asphalt content of the mixture in order to reduce pavement air voids will not be allowed. Also, if the percent air voids is determined to be less than 4 percent, adjustments shall be made to the plant production by the Contractor, within the tolerances as outlined above, so that an adequate air void level is attained.

340S.5 EQUIPMENT

The trucks that deliver the hot mix asphalt concrete material to the project shall be of sufficient number to insure a continuous paving operation. All equipment used for the production, placement and compaction of the mixture shall be maintained in good repair and operating conditions to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. All equipment shall be made available for inspection. If the Engineer or designated representative expresses concern about the condition of any equipment, it shall not be used until it is repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

A. **Mixing Plants:** Plants may be of the weigh-batch type, the modified weigh-batch type or drum-mix type equipped with suitable material conveyers, power units, mixing equipment, aggregate proportioning devices, dryers, bins, dust collectors and sensing and recording devices as appropriate for the mixing plant type. The mixing plants shall meet the requirements specified in Section 340.4, 'Equipment' of TxDOT Specification Section 340, "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement".

B. **Spreading and Finishing Paving Machine:** The paving machine shall be self-propelled and equipped with a heated compacting screed capable of producing a finish surface meeting the requirements of the street cross-section indicated on the Drawings and all surface criteria. Extensions to the screed shall have the same heating and compacting capabilities as the primary unit, except for use on variable depth tapered areas and/or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

   The paving machine shall be equipped with an approved automatic dual longitudinal screed control system and an automatic transverse screed control system. The longitudinal controls shall be capable of operating from any longitudinal grade reference including a string line, ski, mobile string line or matching shoe. Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, the Contractor may use any one of these grade references. The selected grade reference equipment shall be maintained in good operating condition by personnel trained in the use of the specific type of equipment.

   The Contractor shall furnish all labor and equipment required for establishing and maintaining appropriate grade reference.

C. **Rollers:** The Contractor shall select rollers conforming to Section 230S, "Rolling (Flat Wheel)" and Section 232S, "Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)". Rollers that do not conform to these requirements shall be immediately removed from the Project.

D. **Motor Grader:** A self-propelled power motor grader may only be used when its use is approved by the Engineer or designated representative. It shall have a blade of not less than 12 feet (3.66 meters) and a wheelbase of not less than 16 feet (4.88 meters). Smaller graders may be used for small irregular areas when approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

E. **Material Transfer Equipment:** Equipment for transferring the HMA mixture from the hauling units or the roadbed to the spreading and finishing machine will be allowed unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

   Windrow pick-up equipment, if permitted by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be constructed in such a manner that substantially all of the HMA mixture deposited on the roadbed is picked up and loaded into the spreading and finishing machine. The HMA mixture shall not be contaminated with foreign material. The loading equipment shall be designed so that it does not interfere with the spreading and finishing machine in obtaining the required line, grade and surface without resorting to hand finishing.

F. **Straightedges and Templates:** The Contractor shall provide a ten-foot (3.05 meter) straightedge acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for surface testing. Satisfactory templates shall be provided as required by the Engineer or designated representative.

340S.6 STOCKPILING AGGREGATES

Aggregates shall be stockpiled to facilitate blending. When the aggregate is not stockpiled on a hard, non-contaminant base, the bottom six-inch (150 mm) depth of the stockpiles shall not be used in asphaltic mixtures. Where space is limited at the plant site, the aggregate stockpiles shall be separated by walls or other appropriate barriers.

Aggregates shall be stockpiled and handled in a manner that will insure minimization of segregation and contamination. Aggregate and RAP stockpiles shall only contain material from a single source.

340S.7 MIXTURE TEMPERATURE

The Contractor shall select a target temperature for discharge of the HMA mixture from the mixer between 250°F (120°C) and 350°F (176°C) that is suitable to weather and Project conditions. The target temperature shall be reported to the Engineer or designated representative daily and recorded in the Daily Progress Report. The HMA mixture temperature shall not vary by more than 25°F (14°C) from the target temperature for discharge from the mixer. HMA mixtures that are discharged from the mixer at a temperature exceeding 360°F (182°C) or a temperature more than 50°F (28°C) below the target temperature shall not be accepted and shall not be placed on the Project.

340S.8 MIXTURE STORAGE

A surge-storage system may be used to minimize production interruptions during a normal day of operation. When approved by the Engineer or designated representative, overnight storage of HMA mixture in insulated storage bins may be used provided that material temperature and physical properties of the HMA mixture are not adversely affected. HMA mixtures that include hardened lumps shall not be used. Stored HMA mixtures shall not be exempt from any requirements provided in this specification.

When a surge-storage system is used, it shall be equipped with a device such as a gob hopper or other device approved by the Engineer or designated representative to prevent segregation in the surge-storage bin.

340S.9 MIXTURE MOISTURE CONTENT

Hot mix asphalt (HMA) mixtures produced from any plant shall not have a moisture content in excess of 1 percent by weight (mass) when discharged from the mixer. The moisture content shall be determined in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-212-F, Part II, except that the sample shall be left in the oven a total of not less than four (4) hours.

340S.10 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. **General:** The Contractor shall be responsible for the production, transportation, placement and compaction of the specified HMA paving mixture to the requirements of this specification. The Contractor shall also be responsible for providing a safe environment for inspection personnel to inspect the equipment and to acquire samples.

   All hot mix asphalt concrete pavement surface courses shall be placed with a spreading and finishing (lay-down) machine only. All hot mix asphalt concrete pavement base layers with the possible exception of the first lift of the base layer shall also be placed with a spreading and finishing (lay-down) machine. Longitudinal pavement joints shall be located under the proposed lane lines. Density tests shall be taken prior to opening to traffic.

   The first lift of a base layer may be placed with a motor grader if approved in advance by the Engineer or designated representative. The loose measure thickness of this first lift shall not exceed 6 inches (150 mm).

If placed with a motor grader, the first lift shall achieve a minimum in-place relative density of 89% as determined by TxDOT test procedures TEX-207-F and TEX-227-F. All subsequent lifts should be placed with a spreading and finishing (lay-down) machine and shall be subject to the requirements of Section 340S.12, "Acceptance Plan". Density tests will be taken randomly to confirm compliance with the specification requirements.

For hot mix asphalt overlays, an automatic screed shall be used with outriggers.

Any material delivered to the Project that by visual inspection can reasonably be expected not to meet specification requirements (i.e. segregated or burned material, deficient or excess asphalt, low mixing temperature, visible contaminants, etc.), as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, shall not be used or left in place.

Equipment shall be inspected prior to use and, if found to be defective or in an operating condition that could potentially affect the quality of the finished pavement, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, its use shall not be allowed. Leakage of fuels, oils, grease, hydraulic or brake fluids or other contaminants onto the prepared surface or newly-laid HMA layer will not be allowed and may require replacement of the affected pavement area.

The HMA paving mixture, when placed with a spreading and finishing machine, shall not be placed when the air temperature is below 50°F (10°C) and is falling, but it may be placed when the air temperature is above 40°F (4°C) and is rising.

The paving mixture, when used as a level-up course or when spread with a motor grader, shall not be placed when the air temperature is below 60°F (15°C) and is falling, but it may be placed when the air temperature is 50°F (10°C) and is rising. An HMA layer with a thickness of 1½ inches (37.5 mm) and less shall not be placed when the temperature of the surface on which the layer is to be placed is below 50°F (10°C). The temperature shall be taken in a shaded area away from artificial heat.

Additional surface temperature requirements may be included in the Contract Documents or indicated on the Drawings.

Surfaces to be paved shall be finished, primed, cured, broomed and tacked, as appropriate, to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. If the surface on which the first course of the paving mixture is to be placed is a flexible base course, and a cut-back asphalt is to be used as a prime coat, the flexible base shall have been primed and cured a minimum of 24 hours before the paving mixture may be placed. The 24-hour restriction will not apply to a flexible base that has been primed with material other than a cutback. However, the surface on which the tack coat and/or paving mixture are to be placed shall be in a dry condition.

Pavement shall be opened to traffic as soon as possible after temporary pavement markings or permanent markings are in place as indicated on the Drawings) or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Construction traffic allowed on pavements open to the public will be subject to all laws governing traffic on streets and highways.

B. **Tack Coat:** The surface upon which the tack is to be placed shall be cleaned thoroughly to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. The surface shall be given a uniform application of tack coat as governed by Standard Specification Section 307S, "Tack Coat". The tack coat shall be applied, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, with an approved sprayer at a rate not to exceed 0.05 gallons per square yard. (0.225 liters per square meter) of surface area. Where the paving mixture will adhere to the surface on which it is to be placed without the use of a tack coat, the tack coat may be

eliminated when approved by the Engineer or designated representative. All contact surfaces of curbs, castings and all structures and all joints shall be painted with a thin uniform application of tack coat.

During the application of tack coat, care shall be taken to prevent splattering of adjacent pavement, curb and gutter and structures. Before the Work can be accepted, all splatter shall be removed by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

C. **Transporting Hot Mix Asphaltic (HMA) Concrete:** The HMA mixture shall be hauled to the Work site in tight vehicles that were previously cleaned of all foreign material. Dispatching of the vehicles shall normally be arranged so that all material delivered is placed and all rolling completed during daylight hours. Nighttime paving may be allowed, when approved in advance by the Engineer or designated representative.

In cool weather or for long hauls, truck bodies containing the HMA mixture shall be covered.

If necessary, to prevent the HMA mixture from adhering to the truck body, the inside of the truck may be given a light coating of a release agent satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative.

D. **HMA Placement:** The HMA mixture shall be dumped and spread on the approved prepared surface with the spreading and finishing machine. When properly compacted, the finished pavement shall be smooth, of uniform texture and density and shall meet the requirements of the typical cross sections and the surface tests. In addition the placement of the HMA mixture shall be done without tearing, shoving, gouging or segregating the mixture and without producing streaks in the HMA layer.

Discharge of the HMA mixture into the finishing machine shall be controlled so that the spreading and finishing machine is not bounced or jarred and the required lines and grades shall be obtained without resorting to hand finishing except as permitted below in this Section.

Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, dumping of the HMA material in a windrow and then placing the HMA mixture in the finishing machine with windrow pick-up equipment will be permitted provided the temperature of the HMA mixture does not drop more than 50°F (28°C) below the target temperature before being placed by the finishing machine.

Under no circumstances will the HMA material be permitted to be dumped on or near the job site and then reloaded for hauling to the site of placement. Exceptions may be allowed if approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The windrow pick-up equipment shall be operated in such a manner that substantially all the mixture deposited on the roadbed or prepared surface is picked up and loaded into the finishing machine without contamination by foreign material. The windrow pick-up equipment will also be so operated that the finishing machine will obtain the required line, grade and surface without resorting to hand finishing. Any operation of the windrow pick-up equipment resulting in accumulation and subsequent shedding of accumulated material into the HMA mixture will not be permitted.

When approved by the Engineer or designated representative, level-up courses may be spread with a motor grader that meets the requirements of this specification section.

The spreading and finishing machine shall be operated at a uniform forward speed consistent with the plant production rate, hauling capability and roller train capacity to result in a continuous operation. Stopping of the spreading and finishing machine between trucks is to be held to a minimum. If, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, delivery of material is adversely affecting the condition of the HMA layer (excessive stopping of the spreading and finishing machine, loss of mixture temperature, etc.), the

Engineer or designated representative may require paving operations to cease until acceptable methods are provided to minimize starting and stopping of the spreading and finishing machine.

The hopper gates of the spreading and finishing machine shall be adjusted to provide an adequate and consistent flow of material. This shall result in enough material being delivered to the augers so that they are operating approximately 85 percent of the time or more. The augers shall provide means to supply adequate flow of material to the center of the paver. Augers shall supply an adequate flow of material for the full width of the mat being placed, as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Augers should be kept approximately one-half to three-quarters full of HMA mixture at all times during the paving operation.

When the HMA mixture is placed in a narrow strip along the edge of an existing pavement, or is used to level up small areas of an existing pavement or is placed in small irregular areas where the use of a finishing machine is not practical, the finishing machine may be eliminated when permitted by the Engineer or designated representative.

The paving material adjacent to castings and flush curb and gutter and structures shall be finished uniformly high so that when compacted, it will be slightly above but not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) above the edge of the casting or gutter lip.

Construction joints of successive courses of HMA material shall be offset at least 6 inches (150 mm). Longitudinal joints in the layer shall be placed to coincide with lane lines as directed the Engineer or designated representative. Transverse joints shall be offset a minimum of 5 feet (1.5 meters).

E. **Compaction:** The pavement layers/lifts shall be compacted thoroughly and uniformly to obtain the compaction and cross section meeting the requirements indicated on the Drawings and this specification section.

Regardless of the method used for compaction, all rolling to achieve specified density shall cease before the temperature of the HMA mixture drops below 175°F (80°C).

Rolling with a pneumatic tire roller shall be used to seal the surface. Rolling with a tandem or other steel-wheel roller shall be provided if required to iron out any roller marks. Surface sealing and removal of roller marks may be accomplished at HMA temperatures below 175°F (80°C).

Vibratory rollers shall not be allowed in the vibrating mode on layers with a plan thickness less than 1½ inches (37.5 mm).

The motion of the rollers shall be slow enough to avoid other than usual initial displacement. If any displacement occurs, it shall be corrected to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

The roller shall not be allowed to stand on pavement, which has not been compacted to minimum density requirements. In order to prevent adhesion of the surface mixture to the steel-wheel rollers, the wheels shall be thoroughly moistened with water; however an excess of water will not be allowed. Necessary precautions shall be taken to prevent the dropping of diesel, gasoline, oil, grease or other foreign matter on the pavement, either when the rollers are in operation or when standing.

The edges of the pavement along curbs, headers and similar structures, and all places not accessible to the roller, or in such positions as will not allow thorough compaction with the rollers, shall be thoroughly compacted with lightly oiled tamps.

Rolling with a trench roller will be required on widened areas, in trenches and other limited areas where

satisfactory density cannot be obtained with the approved rollers.

340S.11 SAMPLING AND TESTING

The HMA mixture shall be tested daily at the Project site for conformance to specification requirements. The Engineer or designated representative shall utilize a random selection method to determine sample locations based on the Contractor's anticipated production. Each day's anticipated production shall be divided into three (3) essentially equal single-pass, sub-area lots. Each day's sample locations shall be equally distributed over the three (3) sub-areas. If, due to the weather or plant malfunctions, the Contractor's daily-anticipated production is not attained, the random locations will not be recalculated. Also, no more than one location of the three (3) sub-areas shall be located in an irregular shaped area such as a cul-de-sac.

Unless directed otherwise by the Engineer or designated representative, a minimum of three bag samples and three correlating 6-inch (150-mm) cores will be obtained from each day's production.

Bag samples shall be taken during lay-down operations. The primary sampling point for the bag samples shall be from the windrow if a windrow elevator is used. If a windrow elevator is not used, the sample shall be taken from the middle of the paving machine hopper. This sampling location will require a stoppage in the paving operation in order for the Inspector to safely secure a sample from the hopper.One core shall be taken for every 2,000 single-pass square yards (1,675 single-pass square meters) with a minimum of three (3) cores for all projects. One core shall be taken at the same station and pass sampled for each of the bag samples. Cores shall be taken by the City's laboratory within 48 hours of pavement laydown unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

For total areas of less than 500 square yards (420 square meters), a total of only two bag samples and two correlating cores will be obtained. If the Contractor desires additional testing, it shall be at its own entire expense.

The Engineer or designated representative may alter, increase or waive the testing schedule to ensure that the Work performed and the material used meet specification requirements. Acceptability of the completed pavement shall be based on the average of test results for the Project as defined in Section 340S.12, "Acceptance Plan" of this item.

Gradation, asphalt content and stability value of the HMA mixture shall be reported for each of the bag samples. The stability value reported for each of the bag samples shall be the average of three (3) tests per bag.

Pavement thickness and density shall be determined from 6-inch (150 mm) field cores. For each day's placement, density of cores for which no corresponding bag samples were taken shall be determined by using the average Maximum Theoretical Density of the day's three (3) bag samples or as may otherwise be determined by the Engineer or designated representative.

When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, test results appear unrepresentative, additional testing may be authorized. The retesting will be at the expense of the Contractor and the results of the retesting shall be averaged with the results of the original testing. If the results of retesting indicate that the original test results were erroneous, the original test results will be discarded. In the instance of erroneous original test results the subsequent first set of retests will be at the expense of the City of Austin.

Pavements with low-density results may be recored; but the pavement shall not receive any additional compactive effort.

Pavements that will not or cannot be cored within 48 hours shall be closed to both public and construction traffic.

340S.12 ACCEPTANCE PLAN

For the purpose of the Acceptance Plan only, the "Paving Project" of each of the specified mixture types shall be defined by the Engineer or designated representative before the paving operation begins

Considerations for defining the Paving Project shall include paving operations staged due to traffic considerations, pavement structural section (i.e. with varying layer thicknesses), time required for paving, changes to the Job Mix Formula, phasing of large projects, or other factors affecting the consistency in the production, lay-down/compaction, use of completed portions, and/or aging of in-place material.

Acceptability of the completed pavement structure for a Paving Project shall be based on all daily averages of three test results and when approved by the Engineer or designated representative the overall average of all test results for each of the mixture/layer types specified on the Drawings.

Pay adjustments for two or more acceptance factors shall be accumulative. Pay adjustments of 100% unit price reduction shall require removal and replacement of the Work. Replacement materials shall be subject to all requirements of this specification. Alternatively, the Engineer or designated representative may allow the Work to remain in place without payment provided that the Work is warranted for an extended period under conditions as determined by the Engineer or designated representative. The decision of the Engineer or designated representative related to the removal and replacement of the Work shall be the final authority.

A. Non-Pay-Adjustment Acceptance Factors:

1. *Surface Characteristics:* Unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative, all pavements shall be tested for smoothness. Surfaces shall be tested with a 10-foot (3.05 meter) straightedge parallel to the roadway centerline and perpendicular to the centerline on flat, cross-slope sections. Maximum allowable deviation in 10 feet shall be 1/8 inch (1-mm per meter) parallel to the centerline and 1/4 inch (2-mm per meter) perpendicular to the centerline. Sections exceeding these maximums shall be corrected to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. The completed surface must meet the approval of the Engineer or designated representative for surface smoothness, finish and appearance.

   If the surface ravels, ruts or deteriorates in any manner prior to the end of the warranty period, it will be the Contractor's responsibility to correct this condition at its own entire expense to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative in conformance with the requirements of this specification.

   For HMAC rehabilitation and overlay projects, if cracks develop in the pavement surface within the one-year warranty period, the Contractor shall seal the cracks in accordance with Standard Specification Section 313S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)".

   For new HMAC roadways constructed in accordance with the Drawings and specifications, if cracks less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width develop in the pavement surface within the one year warranty period the Contractor shall seal the cracks in accordance with Standard Specification Section 313S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)".

   If cracks equal to or greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width develop in the pavement surface within the one-year warranty period, the cracking shall be reviewed and evaluated by the Engineer or designated representative before corrective action is taken.

2. *Stability:* Stability test results shall be used as indicators of potential problems. Where stability test results fall below the range specified in this specification, additional tests shall be taken as directed by the Engineer or designated representative for further evaluation and monitoring of the paving mixture. This additional stability testing will be at the expense of the Contractor. When, in the opinion of the

Engineer or designated representative, the stability is deemed unacceptable for the intended use of the pavement, the paving mixture shall be removed and replaced to the limits indicated by test results or may be left in place on conditions acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. When the paving mixture is removed and replaced, it shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.

3. *Laboratory Density:* Laboratory density results as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-207-F shall be used as indicators of potential problems. Where laboratory density test results are less than 94.5% or more than 97.5% of mix design maximum density, additional tests shall be taken as directed by the Engineer or designated representative for further evaluation and monitoring of the paving mixture. This additional laboratory density testing will be at the expense of the Contractor. When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the laboratory density is deemed unacceptable for the intended use of the pavement, the paving mixture shall be removed and replaced to the limits indicated by test results.

   The removal and replacement of the paving mixture shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.

4. *Limited Areas:* Irrespective of an acceptable overall Paving Project average for any or all of the Pay-Adjustment Acceptance Factors, limited substandard portions of the Work, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be remedied or removed and replaced to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative at the sole expense of the Contractor.

B. **Pay-Adjustment Acceptance Factors:** Contract unit prices shall be adjusted for paving mixtures that fail to meet acceptance criteria for gradation, asphalt content, density and mat thickness in accordance with the following:

Gradation Acceptance Schedule (TEX-210-F)

Sieve	Deviation From Job Mix Formula		Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction
	Daily Average	Overall Average	
Total retained on No. 10 (2.00 mm)	±6.5 6.6±	±5.0 5.1±	0 10
Passing No. 200 (75 µm)	±3.9 4.0±	±3.0 3.1±	0 5

Asphalt Content Acceptance Schedule (TEX-210-F, Part II)

Deviation from the Job Mix Formula		Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction	
Daily Average	Overall Average	Local Streets*	All Others
±0.5 ±0.51 to ±0.60 +0.61 to +0.70 -0.61 to -0.70 Over ±0.70	±0.4 ±0.41 to ±0.50 +0.51 to +0.60 -0.51 to -0.60 Over ±0.60	0 15 25** 100: Remove and Replace 100: Remove and Replace	0 25 100; Remove and Replace 100; Remove and Replace 100; Remove and Replace
*A local or residential street that serves as access to residence or other abutting property.			
**If the street has an ADT of 500, or less, with 1%, or less, of truck traffic, plus a 2 year warranty; otherwise, Remove and Replace			

Density Acceptance Schedule (TEX-207-F/TEX-227-F)

*Percent Density	Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction

Daily Average	Overall Average	1½" (38 mm) Thickness or Greater	Less than 1½" (38 mm) Thickness
Above 96.5	Above 96	100; Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
90.5 to 96.5	91 to 96	0	0
90.5 to 87.6	90.9 to 88.1	0.625 per 0.10% deficiency in density	0.50 per 0.10% deficiency in density
Less than 87.6	Less than 88.1	100: Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
*Core bulk density divided by max. theoretical density			

Thickness Acceptance Schedule

Variance Percent of Thickness		Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction
Daily Average	Overall Average	
0—15.0	0—10	0
15.1—20.0	10.1—16	20
20.1—30.0	16.1—25	50
Over 30.0	Over 25	100; Remove and Replace or mill/overlay 1" (25 mm) minimum

The Density Acceptance Schedule For Irregularly Shaped Areas; Hike And Bike Trails And Utility Trenches (see following table) will apply to utility trenches of widths less than 4 feet (1.2 meter) and to irregular shaped areas and hike and bike trails in which an appropriate rolling pattern cannot be established making it difficult to achieve compaction.

Density Acceptance Schedule For Irregularly Shaped Areas; Hike And Bike Trails and Utility Trenches (TEX-207-F/TEX-227-F)

*Percent Density	Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction	
Daily Average	1½" (38 mm) Thickness or Greater	Less than 1½" (38 mm) Thickness
Above 96.5	100; Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
96.5 to 89.0	0	0
89.0 to 86.1	0.625 per 0.10% deficiency in density	0.50 per 0.10% deficiency in density
Less than 86.1	100: Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
*Core bulk density divided by maximum theoretical density		

The Density Acceptance Schedule will apply to utility trenches 4 feet (1.2 meter) or wider.

Core thicknesses greater than Drawing requirements shall be factored into the average thickness calculation as the Drawing required thickness. If total thickness of lift(s) proves to be less than required, the Contractor may remove and replace the overlay deficient areas as agreed to by the Engineer or designated representative. Overlays to correct thickness deficiencies shall be not less than one (1) inch (25-mm) thick. Overlays shall require milling of the asphalt in order to prevent a "featheredge" of the overlaying pavement.

The extent of the area to be overlaid or removed and replaced shall be determined by additional cores with thicknesses greater than or equal to the required thickness. All additional coring that is necessary to determine the area shall be paid for by the Contractor.

340S.13 MEASUREMENT

Work performed and material placed shall be measured under one of the following methods. When Drawing quantity measurement is specified, adjustment of quantity may be made as follows. If the quantity measured as outlined vary

from those shown on the Drawings by more than 5%, either party to the Contract may request in writing and adjustment of the quantity by each separate bid item. The party to the Contract which requests the adjustment shall present to the other party one copy of measurements and calculations showing the revised quantity in question. This revised quantity, when approved by the Engineer or designated representative, shall constitute the final quantity for which payment will be made. However, no adjustment will be made for any quantity, which exceeds the Drawing required thickness.

A. **Method A:** Asphaltic concrete pavement shall be measured by the ton (2,000 pounds) of the type actually used in completed and accepted Work in accordance with the Drawings and specifications.

   The measurement shall be made on approved truck scales that meet the requirements of the National Institute of Standards and Technology Handbooks 44 and 112 except that the required accuracy shall be 0.4 percent of the load being weighed. The Contractor shall furnish a report of calibration from a scale mechanic licensed by the Texas Department of Agriculture certifying that the scales meet this requirement.

B. **Method B:** Asphaltic concrete pavement shall be measured by the square yard of specified total thickness of the type of paving mixture actually used in completed and accepted Work in accordance with Drawings and specifications. Multiple lifts of the same type shall be considered as one for square yard measurement purposes.

C. **Method C:** Asphaltic concrete pavement shall be measured by the lineal foot of specified total thickness of the type of paving mixture actually used in completed and accepted Work in accordance with Drawings and specifications. Multiple lifts of the same type shall be considered as one for linear foot measurement purposes.

340S.14 PAYMENT

Work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this section and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid prices or pay adjusted unit price for Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, of the types and thicknesses specified. The unit bid prices shall include full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, time, materials and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Removal of existing hot mix asphalt concrete transition areas prior to overlay, tack coat, saw cutting and temporary pavement markings will not be measured or paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid for Standard Specification Section 340S, "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement."

Payment for Work meeting these specifications will be made under one of the following:

Pay Section 340S-A:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, Type _____ ,	Per Ton
Pay Section 340S-B:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, _____ inches, Type _____ .	Per Square Yard.
Pay Section 340S-C:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, _____ Inches, Type _____ .	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Section 340S-PQ:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, _____ Inches, Type _____ , Plan Quantity	Per Ton.
Pay Section 340S-L:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, _____ in., Type _____ , Level-up Course.	Lump Sum
Pay Section 340S-M:	Crack Sealing Mobilization,	Lump Sum

Pay Section 340S-S:	Crack Sealing,	per Lineal Foot

END OF SECTION

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Special Specification Section 340S Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Section 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Section 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Section 307S	Tack Coat
Section 313S	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)

Texas Department of Transportation:
Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-106E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-107E	Determination of Bar Linear Shrinkage of Soils
Tex-200-F	Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
Tex-203-F	Sand Equivalent Test
Tex-204-F	Design of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-207-F	Determination of Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-208-F	Test for Stabilometer Value of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-210-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures by Extraction
Tex-212-F, Part II	Determination of Moisture Content of Bituminous Mixtures (by oven drying)
Tex-217-F	Determination of Deleterious Material and Decantation Test For Coarse Aggregates
Tex-227-F	Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-410-A	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using the Los Angeles Machine
Tex-460-A	Determination of Crushed Face Particle

Texas Department of Transportation:
Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 340	Hot Mix Asphalt Concrete Pavement

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Special Specification Section 340S Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 206S	Asphalt Stabilized Base
Section 210S	Flexible Base
Section 306S	Prime Coat
Section 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Section 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving
Section 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment

Texas Department of Transportation:
Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-215-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Rock Asphalt By Hot Solvent Method
Tex-224-F	Determination of Flakiness

Tex-400-A	Method of Sampling Stone, Gravel, Sand and Mineral Aggregates
Tex-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or magnesium Sulfate
Tex-438-A	Accelerated Polish Test for Aggregate

ITEM NO. 403S
CONCRETE FOR STRUCTURES 3-1-22

403S.1 Description

This item shall govern quality, storage, handling, proportioning and mixing of materials for hydraulic cement concrete construction of buildings, bridges, culverts, slabs, prestressed concrete and incidental appurtenances.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

403S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. Mix design option(s) of the class of concrete required on the project,

B. The supplier of the concrete mix design(s) and type of mixing equipment, and

C. Type of admixtures to be used with the concrete mixes.

403S.3 Materials

Concrete shall be composed of hydraulic cement or hydraulic cement and supplementary cementing materials, water, aggregates (fine and coarse), and admixtures proportioned and mixed as hereinafter provided to achieve specified results.

A. Cementitious Materials

Hydraulic cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type I (General Purpose), Type II (General Purpose with Moderate Sulfate Resistance) and Type III (High Early Strength). Type I shall be used when none is specified or indicated on the drawings. Type I and Type III cements shall not be used when a Type II cement is specified or indicated on the drawings. Type III cement may be used in lieu of a Type I cement, when the anticipated air temperature for the succeeding 12 hours will not exceed 60°F (15.6°C). A Type III cement shall only be used in precast concrete or when otherwise specified or allowed. All cement shall be of the same type and from the same source for a monolithic placement.

Unless otherwise specified the cementitious material content shall be limited to no more than 700 lbs. per cubic yard (417 kg per cubic meter). When supplementary cementing materials are used, cement is defined as "cement plus supplementary cementing material." Supplementary cementing materials include fly ash (DMS 4610), ultra-fine fly ash (DMS-4610), ground granulated blast furnace slag grade 100 or 120 (DMS-4620), silica fume (DMS-4630) and metakaolin (DMS-4635).

Supplementary cementing materials shall not be used when white hydraulic cement is specified.

Class C flyash shall not be used in sulfate-resistant concrete.

Hydraulic cement manufactured in a cement kiln fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

When sulfate-resistant concrete is required for a project, mix design options 1, 2, 3 or 4 presented in Section 403S.8, "Mix Design Options" shall be used to develop appropriate mix design utilizing Type I/II, II, V, IP or IS cement.

B. Mixing Water

Water for use in concrete and for curing shall be potable water free of oils, acids, organic matter or other deleterious substances and shall not contain more than 1,000 parts per million of chlorides as Cl or sulfates as SO4.

Water from the City of Austin will not require testing. Contractor may request approval of water from other sources. Contractor shall arrange for samples to be taken from the source and tested at the Contractor's expense. When water from other sources is proposed, test reports shall be provided that indicates compliance with Table 1 before use.

Table 1: Chemical Limits for Mix Water		
Contaminant	**Test Method**	**Maximum Concentration (ppm)**
Chloride (CL) Prestressed concrete Bridge decks & superstructure All other concrete	ASTM D-512	 500 500 1,000
Sulfate (SO_4)	ASTM D-516	1,000
Alkalies (NA_2O + 0.658 K_2O)	ASTM D-4191 & D-4192	600
Total Solids	AASHTO T-26	50,000

Water that has an adverse effect on the air-entraining agent or any other chemical admixture or on strength or time of set of the concrete shall not be used. Water used in white Portland cement concrete shall be free from iron and other impurities, which may cause staining, or discoloration.

C. Coarse Aggregate

Coarse aggregate shall consist of durable particles of crushed or uncrushed gravel, crushed blast furnace slag, crushed stone or combinations thereof; free from frozen material or injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter or other objectionable material either free or as an adherent coating. When white hydraulic cement is specified, the coarse aggregates used in the concrete shall be light colored. Quality shall be reasonably uniform throughout.

The coarse aggregate from each source shall not contain more than 0.25 percent by weight of clay lumps, nor more than 1.0 percent by weight of shale nor more than 5 percent by weight of laminated and/or friable particles when tested in accordance with TXDOT Test Method TEX-413-A. The coarse aggregate from each source shall have a wear of not more than 40 percent when tested in accordance with TXDOT Test Method TEX-410-A.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, the coarse aggregate from each source shall be subjected to 5 cycles of the soundness test conforming to TXDOT Test Method TEX-411-A. The loss shall not be greater than 12 percent when sodium sulfate is used or 18 percent when magnesium sulfate is used.

Coarse aggregate shall be washed. The Loss by Decantation (TXDOT Test Method TEX-406-A), plus allowable weight of clay lumps, shall not exceed 1 percent or the value indicated on the drawings or in the project manual, whichever is less. If material finer than the # 200 (75 micrometer) sieve is definitely established to be dust of fracture of aggregates made primarily from crushing of stone, essentially free from clay or shale as established by Part III of TXDOT Test Method TEX-406-A, the percent may be increased to 1.5. When crushed limestone coarse aggregate is used in concrete pavements, the decant may exceed 1% but not more than 3% if the material finer than the #200 (75 micrometer) sieve is determined to be at least 67% calcium carbonate in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-406-A, Part III.

The coarse aggregate factor may not be more than 0.82; however, when voids in the coarse aggregate exceed

48 percent of the total rodded volume, the coarse aggregate factor shall not exceed 0.85. The coarse aggregate factor may not be less than 0.68 except for a Class I machine extruded mix that shall not have a coarse aggregate factor lower than 0.61.

When exposed aggregate surfaces are required, the coarse aggregate shall consist of particles with at least 40 percent crushed faces. Uncrushed gravel, polished aggregates and clear resilient coatings are not acceptable for exposed aggregate finishes.

When tested by approved methods, the coarse aggregate including combinations of aggregates when used, shall conform to the grading requirements shown in Table 2.

Table 2: Coarse Aggregate Gradation Chart (Percent Passing)

Grade	Nom. Size	2½" (62.5mm)	2" (50mm)	1½" (37.5mm)	1" (25mm)	¾" (19mm)	½" (12.5mm)	⅜" (9.5mm)	No. 4 (4.75mm)	No. 8 (2.36mm)
1	2" (50 mm)	100	80—100	50—85		20—40			0—5	
2 (467)*	1½"(37.5 mm)		100	95—100		35—70		10—30	0—5	
3	1" (50 mm)		100	95—100		60—90	25—60		0—5	
4 (57)*	1" (50 mm)			100	95—100		25—60		0—10	0—5
5 (67)*	¾" (19 mm)				100	90—100		20—55	0—10	0—5
6 (7)*	½" (12.5 mm)					100	90—100	40—70	0—15	0—5
7	⅜" (9.5 mm)						100	70—95	0—25	
8	⅜" (9.5 mm)						100	95—100	20—65	0—10

Notes:

1. Recycled crushed concrete fine aggregate shall be limited to a maximum of 20% of the fine aggregate.
2. The use of recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete as a coarse aggregate shall be limited to Concrete Classes A, B and D (see Table 5).

D. Fine Aggregate

Fine aggregate shall be washed and consist of clean, hard, durable and uncoated particles of natural or manufactured sand or a combination thereof, with or without a mineral filler. When white hydraulic cement is specified, the fine aggregates used in the concrete shall be light colored. Quality shall be reasonably uniform throughout. It shall be free from frozen material or injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter or other objectionable material and it shall not contain more than 0.5 percent by weight of clay lumps in accordance with TEX-413-A. When subjected to color test for organic impurities per TXDOT Test Method TEX-408-A, it shall not show a color darker than standard.

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings the acid insoluble residue of fine aggregate used in slab concrete subject to direct traffic shall not be less than 60 percent by weight (mass) when tested conforming to TXDOT Test Method TEX-612-J.

Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, fine aggregate shall be blended, when necessary, to meet the acid insoluble residue requirement.

When blending the following equation shall be used:

Acid Insoluble (%) = {(A1)(P1)+(A2)(P2)}/100

Where:

A1 = acid insoluble (%) of aggregate 1,

A2 = acid insoluble (%) of aggregate 2,

P1 = % by weight of A1 of the fine aggregate blend, and

P2 = % by weight of A2 of the fine aggregate blend.

When tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-401-A, the fine aggregate, including mineral filler and combinations of aggregates, when used, shall conform to the grading requirements shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Fine Aggregate Gradation Chart[1](Grade 1 - Percent Passing)

⅜ (9.5 mm)	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	No. 8 (2.36 mm)	No. 16 (1.18mm)	No. 30 (600 µm)	No. 50 (300 µm)	No. 100 (150 µm)	No. 200 (75 µm)
100	95—100	80—100	50—85	25—65	10—351	0—10	0—32

Notes:

1. Recycled crushed concrete fine aggregate shall be limited to a maximum of 20% of the fine aggregate.
2. The use of recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete as a fine aggregate shall be limited to Concrete Classes A, B and D (see Table 5).
3. 6 to 35 when sand equivalent value is greater than 85.
4. 0 to 6 for manufactured sand.

Sand equivalent per TXDOT Test Method TEX-203-F shall not be less than 80 nor less than otherwise indicated on the drawings, whichever is greater.

The fineness modulus will be determined by adding the percentages by weight retained on sieve Nos. 4, 8, 16, 30, 50 and 100 (4.75 mm, 2.36 mm, 1.18mm, 600 µm, 300 µm, and 150 µm) and dividing the sum of the six sieves by 100. For all classes of concrete except K (see Table 5), the fineness modulus shall be between 2.30 and 3.10. For Class K concrete, the fineness modulus shall be between 2.40 and 2.90, unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

E. Mineral Filler

Mineral filler shall consist of stone dust, clean crushed sand or other approved inert material. When tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-401-A, it shall conform to the following gradation:

Passing the No. 30 (600 µm) Sieve	100 percent
Passing the No. 200 (75 µm) Sieve	65 to 100 percent

F. Mortar and Grout

Unless otherwise specified, indicated on the drawings or approved by the Engineer or designated

representative mortar and grout shall consist of 1 part cement, 2 parts finely graded sand and enough water to make the mixture plastic. When required to prevent color difference, white cement shall be added to produce color required. When required by the Engineer or designated representative, approved latex adhesive may be added to the mortar. Mortar shall be provided with a consistency such that the mortar can be easily handled and spread by trowel. Grout shall be provided of a consistency that will flow into and completely fill all voids.

G. Admixtures

All chemical admixtures including water reducing, placticizers and air entrainment shall conform to TxDoT DMS-4640, "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete". Calcium chloride-based admixtures shall not be approved. Admixtures shall be included in the prequalified concrete admixtures list maintained by TxDot's Construction Division. High-range water-reducing admixtures (TxDoT Type F or G) and accelerating admixtures (TxDoT Type C or E) shall not be used in bridge deck concrete.

H. Air Entrainment

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, all concrete classes with the exception of Class B shall be air entrained in accordance with Table 8. If the air content is more than 1½ percentage points below or 3 percentage points above the required air, the load of concrete will be rejected. If the air content is more than 1½ but less than 3 percentage points above the required air, the concrete may be accepted based on strength test results.

403S.4 Storage of Materials

A. Cement, Supplementary Cementing Materials and Mineral Filler

All cement, supplementary cementing materials and mineral filler shall be stored in separate and well ventilated, weatherproof buildings or approved bins, which will protect the material from dampness or absorption of moisture. Storage facilities shall be easily accessible and each shipment of packaged cement shall be kept separated to provide for identification and inspection. The Engineer or designated representative may permit small quantities of sacked cement to be stored in the open for a maximum of 48 hours on a raised platform and under waterproof covering.

B. Aggregates

The method of handling and storing concrete aggregates shall prevent contamination with foreign materials. If the aggregates are stored on the ground, the sites for the stockpiles shall be clear of all vegetation and shall be level. Aggregates shall be stockpiled in sizes to facilitate blending. If the aggregate is not stockpiled on a hard, non-contaminant base, the bottom 6-inch (150 mm) layer of the stockpile shall not be used without recleaning the aggregate.

When conditions require the use of 2 or more grades of coarse aggregates, separate stockpiles shall be maintained to prevent intermixing. Where space is limited, stockpiles shall be separated by walls or other appropriate barriers.

Aggregate shall be stockpiled and protected from the weather a minimum of 24 hours prior to use to minimize free moisture content. When stockpiles are too large to protect from the weather, accurate and continuous means acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative shall be provided to monitor aggregate temperature and moisture. Aggregates shall be stockpiled and handled such that segregation and contamination are minimized.

The stockpiles shall be sprinkled to control moisture and temperature as necessary. A reasonably uniform moisture content shall be maintained in aggregate stockpiles.

C. Admixtures

Admixtures shall be stored in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and shall be protected against freezing.

D. Hot Weather Concrete Mixes

Ice may be used during hot weather concrete placement (Section 13 of Standard Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures") to lower the concrete temperature; however, the Contractor shall furnish a mix design acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for class of concrete specified. The addition of ice shall not exceed 50% of the total mix water weight.

403S.5 Measurement of Materials

Water shall be accurately metered. Fine and coarse aggregates, mineral filler, bulk cement and fly ash shall be weighed separately. Allowances shall be made in the water volume and aggregate weights during batching for moisture content of aggregates and admixtures. Volumetric and weight measuring devices shall be acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. Measurement of materials in non-volumetric and volumetric mixers shall conform to Section 421.4.D of TxDot Specification Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete".

Batch weighing of sacked cement is not required; however, bags, individually and entire shipments, may not vary by more than 3 percent from the specified weight of 94 pounds (42.6 kilograms) per bag. The average bag weight of a shipment shall be determined by weighing 50 bags taken at random.

403S.6 Mix Design

The Contractor shall furnish a mix design acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for the class of concrete required in accordance with Table 5. The mix shall be designed by a qualified commercial laboratory and signed/sealed by a registered Professional Engineer, licensed in the state of Texas to conform with requirements contained herein, to ACI 211.1 or TXDOT Bulletin C-11 (and supplements thereto). The maximum water-to-cementitious material ratio identified in Table 5 for specific classes of concrete shall not be exceeded.

A higher-strength class of concrete with equal or lower water-to-cementituous-material ratio may be substituted for the specified class of concrete.

The mix design shall be over-designed in accordance with Table 5 in order to account for production variability and to ensure minimum compressive strength requirements are met.

Allowable mix design options are presented in Section 403S.8.

The Contractor shall perform, at the Contractor's expense, the work required to substantiate the design, including testing of strength specimens. Complete concrete design data shall be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative for approval. The mix design will be valid for a period of one (1) year provided that there are no changes to the component materials.

When there are changes in aggregates or in type, brand or source of cement, supplementary cementing material or chemical admixtures, the mix shall be evaluated as a new mix design. A change in vendor does not necessarily constitute a change in materials or source. When only the brand or source of cement is changed and there is a prior record of satisfactory performance of the cement with the ingredients, the submittal of new trial batches may be waived by the Engineer or designated representative.

At the end of one (1) year, a previously approved mix may be resubmitted for approval if it can be shown that no substantial change in the component materials has occurred and that test results confirming the adequacy of the mix designs have been acquired during the previous year. The resubmittal analysis must be reviewed, signed and sealed by a registered Professional Engineer, licensed in the state of Texas. This resubmittal shall include a reanalysis of

specific gravity, absorption, fineness modulus, sand equivalent, soundness, wear and unit weights of the aggregates. Provided that the fineness modulus did not deviate by more than 0.20 or that the re-proportioned total mixing water, aggregate and cement (or cement plus fly ash) are within 1, 2, and 3 percent, respectively, of pre-approved quantities, a one-year extension on the approval of the mix may be granted by the Engineer or designated representative. Updated cement, fly ash, and admixture certifications shall accompany the resubmittal.

Approved admixtures that are included in the prequalified concrete admixtures list maintained by TxDot's Construction Division may be used with all classes of concrete at the option of the Contractor provided that specific requirements of the governing concrete structure specification are met. Water reducing and retarding agents shall be required for hot weather, large mass, and continuous slab placements. Air entraining agents may be used in all mixes but must be used in the classes indicated on Table 5. Unless approved by the Engineer or designated representative, mix designs shall not exceed air contents for extreme exposure conditions as recommended by ACI 211.1 for the various aggregate grades.

403S.7 Consistency and Quality of Concrete

Concrete shall be workable, cohesive, possess satisfactory finishing qualities and of stiffest consistency that can be placed and vibrated into a homogeneous mass within slump requirements specified in Table 4 without the development of segregation or honeycombing. No concrete will be permitted with a slump in excess of the maximums shown unless water-reducing admixtures have been previously approved. Concrete that exceeds the maximum acceptable placement slump at time of delivery will be rejected. Slump values shall be conducted in accordance with TXDOT Test Method TEX-415-A.

Consistency and quality of concrete should allow efficient placement and completion of finishing operations before initial set. Re-tempering (i.e. addition of water and reworking concrete after initial set) shall not be allowed. When field conditions are such that additional moisture is needed for final concrete surface finishing operation, the required water shall be applied to surface by fog spray only and shall be held to a minimum. Excessive bleeding shall be avoided and in no case will it be permissible to expedite finishing and drying by sprinkling the surface with cement powder.

Table 4: Slump Requirements

	Slump[1], inches (mm)	
Type of Construction	**Maximum**	**Minimum**
Cased Drilled Shafts	4 (100)	3 (75)
Reinforced Foundation Caissons and Footings	3 (75)	1 (25)
Reinforced Footings and Substructure Walls	3 (75)	1 (25)
Uncased Drilled Shafts	6 (150)	5 (125)
Thin-walled Sections; 9 inches (225 mm) or less	6½ (165)	4 (100)
Prestressed Concrete Members1	6½ (165)	4 (100)
Precast Drainage Structures	6 (150)	4 (100)
Wall Sections over 9 inches (225 mm)	5 (125)	3 (75)
Reinforced Building Slabs, Beams, Columns and Walls	4 (100)	1 (25)
Bridge Decks	4 (100)	2 (50)
Pavements, Fixed-form	6½ (165)	4 (100)
Pavements, Slip-form	3 (75)	1½ (37.5)
Sidewalks, Driveways and Slabs on Ground	4 (100)	2 (50)
Curb & Gutter, Hand-vibrated	3 (75)	1 (25)
Curb & Gutter, Hand-tamped or spaded	4 (100)	2 (50)

Curb & Gutter, Slip-form/extrusion machine	2 (50)	½ (12.5)
Heavy Mass Construction	2 (50)	1 (25)
High Strength Concrete	4 (100)	3 (75)
Riprap and Other Miscellaneous Concrete	6 (150)	1 (25)
Under Water or Seal Concrete	8½ (213)	6 (150)

1. Slump values when a high range water reducer (HRWR) is not used.
2. When a high range water reducer (HRWR) is used, maximum acceptable placement slump will be 9 in (225 mm).

During progress of the work, the Engineer or designated representative shall cast test cylinders as a check on compressive strength of concrete actually placed. The Engineer or designated representative will perform slump tests, entrained air tests and temperature checks to ensure compliance with specifications.

Proportioning of all material components shall be checked prior to discharging. Excluding mortar material for pre-coating of the mixer drum [see section 403S.8.B] and adjustment for moisture content of admixtures and aggregates, material components shall fall within the range of + 1% for water, + 2% for aggregates, + 3% for cement, +2% for fly ash and within manufacturer recommended dosage rates for admixtures except that air entrainment shall be within + 1½ percentage points of the mix design requirements.

Unless otherwise specified or indicated on the drawings, concrete mix temperature shall not exceed 90°F (32°C) except in mixes with high range water reducers where a maximum mix temperature of 100°F (38°C) will be allowed. Cooling an otherwise acceptable mix by addition of water or ice during agitation will not be allowed.

Test cylinders will be required for small placements such as manholes, inlets, culverts, wing walls, etc. The Engineer or designated representative will determine number of tests to a minimum of 1 for each 25 cubic yards (1 for each 19 cubic meters) placed over a several day period.

Test cylinders shall be required for each monolithic placement of bridge decks or superstructures, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, cased drilled shafts, structural beams and as otherwise directed by Engineer or designated representative for design strength confirmation or early form removal. Test cylinders made for early form removal or for consideration of use of structure will be at Contractor's expense, except when required by Engineer or designated representative.

A strength test shall be defined as the average breaking strength of 2 cylinders. A minimum of four test cylinders shall be prepared; two each to be tested at 7 and 28 days. Specimens will be tested conforming to TXDOT Test Method TEX-418-A. If required strength or consistency of class of concrete being produced cannot be secured with minimum cementitious material specified or without exceeding maximum water/cementitious material ratio, Contractor will be required to furnish different aggregates, use a water reducing agent, an air entraining agent or increase the cement content in order to provide concrete meeting these specifications.

Slump tests will be performed in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-415-A. Entrained air tests will be performed in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-416-A.

Test specimens shall be cured using the same methods and under the same conditions as the concrete represented. Design strength cylinders shall be cured conforming to TXDOT Bulletin C-11 (and supplements thereto).

Concrete quality is by 28-day compressive tests, job control testing will be by 7-day compressive strength tests. Should the concrete fail to meet the 28-day required strength, the tolerance for acceptance shall follow ACI 301 and be acceptable to the Engineer of Record. The minimum strength requirement for seven (7) day test will be 70 percent of the specified minimum 28-day compressive strength. If the required 7-day strength is not secured the Engineer shall be notified within 3 days to determine how to proceed.

Table 5: Classes of Concrete						
Class	Cement Sks Per CY	Minimum Strength, psi (MPa)		Maximum W/C Ratio[1]	Coarse Aggr. Grade[2,3,4]	Air Entrain.
		28 Days	7 Days			
A	5.0 (280 kg/m^3)	3000 (20.6)	2100 (14.5)	0.6	1,2,3,4,8	Yes
B	4.0 (225 kg/m^3)	2000 (13.8)	1400 (9.7)	0.6	2,3,4,5,6,7	No
C[5]	6.0 (335 kg/m^3)	3600(24.8)	2520 (17.4)	0.45	1,2,3,4,5,6	Yes
D	4.5 (252 kg/m^3)	2500 (17.2)	1750 (12.1)	0.6	2,3,4,5,6,7	No
H[5]	6.0 (335 kg/m^3)	As indicated	As Indicated	0.45	3,4,5,6	Yes
I	5.5 (308 kg/m^3)	3500 (24.1)	2450 (16.9)	0.45	2,3,4,5	Yes
J	2.0 (112 kg/m^3)	800 (5.5)	560 (3.9)	N/A	2,3,4,5	No
S[5]	6.0 (335 kg/m^3)	4000 (27.6)	2800 (19.3)	0.45	2,3,4,5	Yes

Notes:

1. Maximum water-cement or water-cementitious ratio by weight
2. Unless otherwise allowed, Grade 1 coarse aggregate shall only be used in massive foundations with 4-in (100-mm) minimum clear spacing between reinforcing steel bars.
3. Grade 1 coarse aggregate grading shall not be used in drilled shafts.
4. Unless otherwise allowed, Grade 8 coarse aggregate shall be used in extruded curbs.
5. Structural concrete classes.
6. When Type II cement is used in Class C, S or A concrete, the 7-day compressive strength requirement will be 2310 psi (15.9 MPa) for Class C, 2570 psi (17.7 MPa) for Class S and 1925 psi (13.3 MPa) for Class A minimum.

Table 6: Over Design Required to Meet Compressive Strength Requirements[1]					
Number Of Tests[2,3]	**Standard Deviation, psi (MPa)**				
	300 (2.06)	400 (2.75)	500 (3.44)	600 (4.13)	700 (4.82)
15	470 (3.24)	620 (4.27)	850 (5.85)	1,120 (7.71)	1,390 (9.57)
20	430 (2.96)	580 (3.99)	760 (5.23)	1,010 (6.95)	1,260 (8.67)
30 or more	400 (2.75)	530 (3.65)	670 (4.61)	900 (6.20)	1,130 (7.78)

Notes:

1. When designing the mix, add the tabulated amounts to the minimum design strength in Table 5. Maximum water-cement or water-cementitious ratio by weight
2. Number of tests of a concrete mixture used to estimate the standard deviation of a concrete production facility. Test of another mix within 1,000 psi (6.88 MPa) of the specified strength may be used.
3. If less than 15 prior tests are available, the overdesign should be 1,000 psi (6.88 MPa) for specified strength less than 3,000 psi (20.65 MPa), 1,200 psi (8.26 MPa) for specified strengths from 3,000 to 5,000 psi (20.65 to 34.42 MPa) and 1,400 psi (9.64 MPa) for specified strengths greater than 5,000 psi (34.42 MPa).

Table 7: Expected Usage of Concrete Classes	
Class	**General Usage**
A	Inlets, manholes, curb, gutter, curb & gutter, concrete retards, sidewalks, driveways, backup walls and anchors
B	Riprap, small roadside signs and anchors
C[5]	Drilled shafts, bridge substructure, bridge railing, culverts except top slab of direct traffic culverts, headwalls, wing walls, approach slabs, and cast-in-place concrete traffic barrier
D	Riprap
H[5]	Prestressed concrete beams, boxes, piling and precast concrete traffic barrier
J	Utility trench repair
S[5]	Bridge slabs and top slabs of direct traffic culverts

Table 8: Air Entrainment[1]		
Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size In (mm)	**% Air Entrainment**	
	Moderate Exposure	**Severe Exposure**
⅜ (9.5) - Grades 7 & 8	6	7½
½ (12.5) - Grades 6	5½	7
¾ (19) - Grades 5	5	6
1 (25) - Grades 4	4½	6
1½ (37.5) - Grades 2 & 3	4½	5½
2 (50) - Grades 2	4	5

1. For specified concrete strengths above 5,000 psi (34.42 MPa) a reduction of 1 percentage point is allowed.

Source: Rule No. R161-22.01 , 3-1-2022.

403S.8 Mix Design Options

For the structural concretes identified in Table 5 (Classes C, H and S) and any other class of concrete designed using more than 520 lbs. of cementitious material per cubic yard (310 kgs per cubic meter), one of the mix design options presented below shall be used.

For the non-structural concretes identified in Table 5 (Classes A, B, D and I) and any other class of concrete designed using less than 520 lbs. of cementitious material per cubic yard (310 kgs per cubic meter), one of the mix design options presented below will be used, except that Class C fly ash may be used instead of Class F fly ash for Options 1, 3 and 4 unless a sulfate-resistant concrete is required.

A. Option 1: Twenty (20) to thirty-five (35) percent of the cement may be replaced with Class F fly ash.

B. Option 2: Thirty-five (35) to fifty (50) percent of the cement may be replaced with ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

C. Option 3: Thirty-five (35) to fifty (50) percent of the cement may be replaced with a combination of Class F fly ash, ground granulated blast-furnace slag or silica fume. The combination may not include more than thirty-five (35) percent fly ash and no more than ten (10) percent silica fume.

D. Option 4: Type IP or Type IS will be used and up to ten (10) percent of the cement may be replaced with Class F fly ash, ground granulated blast-furnace slag or silica fume.

E. Option 5: Thirty-five (35) to fifty (50) percent of the cement may be replaced with a combination of Class C fly ash and at least six (6) percent of silica fume, ultra fine fly ash or metakaolin. The combination may not include more than thirty-five (35) percent fly ash and no more than ten (10) percent silica fume.

F. Option 6: A lithium nitrate admixture will be added at a minimum dosage of 0.55 gal. of thirty (30) percent lithium nitrate solution per pound of alkalis present in the hydraulic cement.

G. Option 7: When hydraulic cement only is used in the design, the total alkali contribution from the cement in the concrete does not exceed 4.0 lbs. per cubic yard, when calculated as follows:

alkali (lbs. per CY) = .01 (lbs cement/CY) (% Na2O equivalent in cement)

where (% Na2O equivalent in cement) is assumed to be the maximum cement alkali content reported on the cement mill certificate.

H. Option 8: When there are deviations from Options 1 through 7, the following shall be performed:

1. Conduct tests on both coarse and fine aggregate separately in accordance with ASTM C-1260, using 440 g of the proposed cementitious in the same proportions of hydraulic cement to supplementary cementing material to be used in the mix.

2. Prior to use of the mix, a certified test report signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer, licensed in the state of Texas shall be submitted that demonstrates that ASTM C 1260 test results for each aggregate do not exceed 0.10 percent expansion.

403S.9 Mixing and Mixing Equipment

All equipment, tools and machinery used for hauling materials and performing any part of the work shall be maintained in such condition to insure completion of the work without excessive delays for repairs and replacement. Mixing shall be done in a mixer of approved type and size that will produce uniform distribution of material throughout the mass and shall be capable of producing concrete meeting requirements of ASTM C 94, Ready-mixed Concrete and these specifications. Mixing equipment shall be capable of producing sufficient concrete to provide required quantities. Entire contents of the drum shall be discharged before any materials are placed therein for a succeeding batch. Improperly mixed concrete shall not be placed in a structure. For all mixers an adequate water supply and an accurate method of measuring the water shall be provided.

The mixer may be batched by either volumetric or weight sensing equipment and shall be equipped with a suitable timing device that will lock the discharging mechanism and signal when specified time of mixing has elapsed.

A. Proportioning and Mixing Equipment

For all miscellaneous concrete placements, a mobile, continuous, volumetric mixer or a volumetric or weight batch mixer of the rotating paddle type may be used.

When approved by Engineer or designated representative in writing or when specified for use in other items, these mixers may be used for other types of concrete construction, including structural concrete, if the number of mixers furnished will supply the amount of concrete required for the particular operation in question.

These mixers shall be designed to receive all the concrete ingredients, including admixtures, required by the mix design in a continuous uniform rate and mix them to the required consistency before discharging.

For continuous volumetric mixers, the materials delivered during a revolution of the driving mechanism or in a selected interval, will be considered a batch and the proportion of each ingredient will be calculated in the same manner as for a batch type plant.

Mixing time shall conform to recommendations of manufacturer of mixer unless otherwise directed by Engineer or designated representative.

B. Ready-mixed Concrete

Use of ready-mixed concrete will be permitted provided the batching plant and mixer trucks meet quality requirements specified herein. When ready-mixed concrete is used, additional mortar (1 sack cement, 3 parts sand and sufficient water) shall be added to each batch to coat the mixer drum. Ready-mixed concrete, batching plant and mixer truck operation shall include the following:

1. A ticket system will be used that includes a copy for the Inspector. Ticket will have machine stamped time/date of concrete batch, a mix design designation, weight of cement, fly ash, sand and aggregates; exact nomenclature and written quantities of admixtures and water. Any item missing or incomplete on ticket may be cause for rejection of concrete.
2. Sufficient trucks will be available to support continuous placements. The Contractor will satisfy the Engineer or designated representative that adequate standby trucks are available to support monolithic concrete placement requirements.
3. A portion of mixing water required by the mix design to produce the specified slump may be withheld and added at the job site, but only with permission of the Engineer or designated representative and under the Inspector's observation. When water is added under these conditions, the concrete batch will be thoroughly mixed before any slump or strength samples are taken. Additional cement shall not be added at the job site to otherwise unacceptable mixes.
4. A metal plate(s) shall be attached in a prominent place on each truck mixer plainly showing the various uses for which it was designed. The data shall include the drum's speed of rotation for mixing and for agitating and the capacity for complete mixing and/or agitating only. A copy of the manufacturer's design, showing dimensions of blades, shall be available for inspection at the plant at all times. Accumulations of hardened concrete shall be removed to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.
5. The loading of the transit mixers shall not exceed capacity as shown on the manufacturer's plate attached to the mixer or 63 percent of the drum volume, whichever is the lesser volume. The loading of transit mixers to the extent of causing spill-out en route to delivery will not be acceptable. Consistent spillage will be cause for disqualification of a supplier.
6. Excess concrete remaining in the drum after delivery and wash water after delivery shall not be dumped on the project site unless approval of the dump location is first secured from the Engineer or designated representative.

C. Volumetric Batching

Use of volumetric batched concrete will be permitted provided the batching and continuous mixing operations conform to ASTM C 685, "Concrete Made By Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing". This type concrete shall be made from materials continuously batched by volume, mixed in a continuous mixer and delivered to the site in a freshly mixed and unhardened state. Tests and criteria for batching accuracy and mixing efficiency shall be as specified in ASTM C 685.

1. A ticket system will be used that includes a copy for the Inspector. The ticket will have machine stamped time/date of concrete batch, a mix design designation, weight of cement, fly ash, sand and aggregates; exact nomenclature and written quantities of admixtures and water. Any item missing or incomplete on ticket may be cause for rejection of concrete.
2. Each batching or mixing unit, or both, shall carry in a prominent place a metal plate or plates on which are plainly marked the gross volume of the unit in terms of mixed concrete, discharge speed and the

weight-calibrated constant of the machine in terms of a revolution counter or other output indicator. The mixer shall produce a thoroughly mixed and uniform concrete.

3. The batcher-mixer unit shall contain in separate compartments all the necessary ingredients needed for the manufacture of concrete. The unit shall be equipped with calibrated proportioning devices to vary the mix proportions and it shall produce concrete as required by the Work and ASTM C 685.

D. Truck-mixed Concrete

The concrete shall be mixed in a truck mixer from 70 to 100 revolutions at the mixing speed designated by the manufacturer that will produce a uniform concrete mix. The concrete shall be delivered to the project in a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass and shall be discharged with a satisfactory degree of uniformity. Additional mixing at the job site, at the mixing speed designated by the manufacturer, may be allowed by the Engineer or designated representative as long as the concrete is discharged before the drum has revolved a total of 300 revolutions after the introduction of the mixing water to the cement and the aggregates.

Re-tempering or adding concrete chemical admixtures is only permitted at the job site when concrete is delivered in a truck mixer. Water shall not be added after introduction of mixing water at the batch plant except on arrival at the job site with approval of the Engineer or designated representative, in order to adjust the slump of the concrete. When this water is added, the mix design water-cementitious-material ratio shall not be exceeded. The drum or blades shall be turned at least 30 additional revolutions at mixing speed to ensure thorough and uniform mixing of the concrete. Water or chemical admixtures shall not be added to the batch after any concrete has been discharged.

When the concrete contains silica fume, mixing times and batching operations shall be adjusted as necessary to ensure that the material is completely and uniformly dispersed in the mix. The dispersion of the silica fume within the mix shall be verified in trial batches.

E. Hand-mixed Concrete

Hand mixing of concrete may be permitted for small placements or in case of an emergency and then only on authorization of the Engineer or designated representative. Hand-mixed batches shall not exceed a 4 cubic foot (0.113 cubic meters) batch in volume. Material volume ratios shall not be leaner than 1 part cement, 2 parts large aggregate, 1 part fine aggregate and enough water to produce a consistent mix with a slump not to exceed 4 inches (100 mm). Admixtures shall not be used unless specifically approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

403S.10 Excavation, Placing of Concrete, Finishing, Curing and Backfill

Excavation, placing of concrete, finishing, curing and backfill shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill", Standard Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures" and Standard Specification Item No. 411S, "Surface Finishes for Concrete".

403S.11 Measurement

Where measurement of concrete for a structure is not provided by another governing pay item, measurement shall be made under this specification in accordance with the following.

The quantities of concrete of the various classifications which constitute the completed and accepted structure or structures in place will be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meters: 1 cubic meter is equal to 1.308 cubic yards), each, square yard (square meter: 1 square yard equals 0.836 square meters) or linear foot as indicated in the Contract Documents. Measurement will be as follows:

A. General

1. Measurement based on dimensions shall be for the completed structure as measured in place. However, field-measured dimensions shall not exceed those indicated on the drawings or as may have been directed by the Engineer or designated representative in writing.

2. No deductions shall be made for chamfers less than 2 inches (50 mm) in depth, embedded portions of structural steel, reinforcing steel, nuts, bolts, conduits less than 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter, pre/post tensioning tendons, keys, water stops, weep holes and expansion joints 2 inches (50 mm) or less in width.

3. No measurement shall be made for concrete keys between adjoining beams or prestressed concrete planks.

4. No measurement shall be made for fill concrete between the ends or adjoining prestressed concrete planks/box beams at bent caps or between the ends of prestressed concrete planks/box beams and abutment end walls.

5. No measurement shall be made for inlet and junction box invert concrete.

6. No measurement shall be made for any additional concrete required above the normal slab thickness for camber or crown.

B. Plan Quantity. For those items measured for plan quantity payment, adequate calculations have been made. If no adjustment is required by Article 403S.11, additional measurements or calculations will not be required or made.

C. Measured in Place. For those items not measured for Plan Quantity payment, measurement will be made in place, subject to the requirements of Article 403S.10.A.1 above.

403S.12 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item and measured in accordance with the applicable provisions of "Measurement" above will be paid for as follows.

The quantity to be paid for will be that quantity indicated in the contract documents and/or shown on the drawings, regardless of errors in calculations, except as may be modified by the following.

Plan Quantities will be adjusted:

A. When a complete structure element has been erroneously included or omitted from the drawings, the quantity shown on the drawings for that element will be added to or deducted from the plan quantity and included for payment. A complete structure element will be the smallest portion of a total structure for which a quantity is included on the drawings. Quantities revised in this manner will not be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11.

B. When the plan quantity for a complete structure element is in error by 5 percent or more, a recalculation will be made and the corrected quantity included for payment. Quantities revised in this manner will not be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11.

C. When quantities are revised by a change in design, the "plan quantity" will be increased or decreased by the amount involved in the design change. Quantities revised in this manner will be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11.

The party to the contract requesting the adjustment shall present to the other, a copy of the description and location, together with calculations of the quantity for the structure element involved. When this quantity is certified correct by the Engineer or designated representative, it will become the revised plan quantity.

Payment for increased or decreased costs due to a change in design on those items measured as "Cubic Yard", "Each", "Square Foot", "Square Yard" or "Linear Foot" will be determined by Change Order. Quantities revised in this manner will be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11.

The unit prices bid for the various classes of concrete shown shall include full compensation for furnishing, hauling, and mixing all concrete material; placing, finishing and curing all concrete; all grouting, pointing and finishing; furnishing and placing drains; furnishing and placing metal flashing strips; furnishing and placing expansion joint material required by this item; and for all forms and false work, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Pay Item No. 403S-CY:	(Structure or Structural Component)	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 403S-EA:	(Structure or Structural Component)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 403S-SY:	(Structure or Structural Component)	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 403S-LF:	(Structure or Structural Component)	Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Standard Specification Item 403S, "Concrete For Structures"	
City of Austin Standard Specification Items	
Designation	Description
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications	
Designation	Description
DMS-4640	Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
American Association of State Highway & Transportation Officials, AASHTO Standard Method of Test for	
Designation	Description
Method T 26	Quality of Water to be Used in Concrete
American Concrete Institute, ACI	
Designation	Description
ACI 211.1	Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete
American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM	
Designation	Description
ASTM C 94	Specification For Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C 150	Specification For Portland Cement
ASTM C 685	Concrete Made By Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
ASTM C-1260	Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates
ASTM D-512	Test Methods for Chloride Ion in Water
ASTM D-516	Test Methods for Sulfate Ion in Water
ASTM D-4191	Test Method for Sodium in Water by Atomic Absorption

ASTM D-4192	Test Method for Potassium Water by Atomic Absorption
Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures	
Designation	Description
TEX-203-F	Sand Equivalent Test
TEX-401-A	Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate
TEX-406-A	Mineral Finer than 75 µm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates (Decantation Test for Concrete Aggregates)
TEX-408-A	Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregate for Concrete
TEX-410-A	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using The Los Angeles Machine
TEX-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
TEX-413-A	Determination of Deleterious Materials in Mineral Aggregate
TEX-415-A	Slump of Portland Cement Concrete
TEX-416-A	Air Content of Freshly-Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
TEX-418-A	Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
TEX-612-J	Acid Insoluble Residue
Texas Department of Transportation: Publications	
Designation	Description
Bulletin C-11	Construction Bulletin
Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications	
Designation	Description
DMS-4610	Fly Ash
DMS-4620	Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag
DMS-4630	Silica Fume
DMS-4635	Metakaolin

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Standard Specification Item 403S, "Concrete For Structures"	
Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges	
Designation	Description
Item 360	Concrete Pavement
Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item 431	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment
Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications	
Designation	Description
DMS-4650	Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants
DMS-6100	Epoxy and Adhesives
DMS 8900	Fly Ash

SECTION 406S

REINFORCING STEEL

406S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern furnishing and placement of reinforcing steel, deformed and smooth, of the size and quantity indicated on the drawings and in accordance with these specifications.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

406S.2 SUBMITTALS

The submittal requirements of this specification section may include:

A. Evidence that the steel reinforcement producer is included on the TxDoT list of approved producing mills
B. Listing of the size, grade, type and quantity of reinforcing steel proposed for the project.
C. If welding of reinforcing steel is proposed, evidence that carbon equivalent (C.E.) of the proposed steel is at least 0.55% with a report of chemical analysis showing the percentages of elements necessary to establish C.E.
D. If epoxy coated steel is proposed, evidence that the steel reinforcement producer is included on the TxDoT list of approved epoxy coating applicators
E. If epoxy coated steel is proposed, written certification that the epoxy-coated reinforcing steel meets the requirements of this section with a copy of the manufacturer's control tests.
F. When mechanical splices are proposed, the types of couplers proposed for use.

406S.3 MATERIALS

A. **Approved Mills**. Prior to furnishing reinforcing steel, the producing mills must be included on the list of approved producing mills that is maintained by the Construction Division of the State of Texas Department of Transportation

B. **Deformed Bars and Wire Reinforcement**. Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, Bar reinforcement shall be Grade 60 and deformed. Reinforcing steel must conform to one of the following:

1. ASTM A615/615M, Grades 40 or 60 (300 or 420)
2. ASTM A996/996M, Type A, Grades 40 or 60 (300 or 420)
3. ASTM A996/996M, Type R, Grade 60 (420), permitted in concrete pavement only (furnished as straight bars only without bends. Bend tests are not required)
4. ASTM A706/706M

In cases where the provisions of this section are in conflict with the provisions of the ASTM Designation to which reference is made, the provisions of this section shall govern.

The nominal size, area and weight (mass) of reinforcing steel bars covered by these specifications are as follows:

Bar Size Number 1/8 ins (mm)	Nominal Diameter, inches (mm)	Nominal Area, Sq. ins. (mm^2)	Weight/Linear Foot Lbs. (kg)
2 (6)	0.250 (6.6)	0.05 (32)	0.167 (.075)
3 (10)	0.375 (9.5)	0.11 (71)	0.376 (.171)
4 (13)	0.500 (12.5)	0.20 (127)	0.668 (.303)
5 (16)	0.625 (15.5)	0.31 (198)	1.043 (.473)
6 (19)	0.750 (19.0)	0.44 (285)	1.502 (.681)
7 (22)	0.875 (22.0)	0.60 (388)	2.044 (.927)
8 (25)	1.000 (25.5)	0.79 (507)	2.670 (2.211)
9 (29)	1.128 (28.5)	1.00 (641)	3.400 (1.542)
10 (32)	1.270 (32.0)	1.27 (792)	4.303 (1.952)
11 (36)	1.410 (36.0)	1.56 (958)	5.313 (2.410)
14 (43)	1.693 (43.0)	2.25 (1552)	7.65 (3.470)
18 (57)	2.257 (57.5)	4.00 (2565)	13.60 (6.169)

Smooth, round bars shall be designated by size number through a No. 4. Smooth bars above No. 4 shall be designated by diameter in inches.

C. **Smooth Bar and Spiral Reinforcement**. Smooth bars and dowels for concrete pavement must have a minimum yield strength of 60 ksi (414 MPa) and meet ASTM A615/615M. Smooth bars that are greater in diameter than a No. 3 (10 mm) designation shall conform to ASTM A615 or meet the physical requirements of ASTM A36.

Spiral reinforcement shall be either smooth or deformed bars or wire of the minimum size or gauge indicated on the drawings. Bars for spiral reinforcement shall comply with ASTM A615 Grade 40(300), ASTM A996, Type A, Grade 40 (300); or ASTM A675, Grade 80(550), meeting dimensional requirements of ASTM A615. Smooth wire shall comply with ASTM A82, and deformed wire shall comply with ASTM A496.

D. **Weldable Reinforcing Steel**. Reinforcing steel to be welded must comply with ASTM A706 or have a carbon equivalent (C.E.) of at most 0.55%. A report of chemical analysis showing the percentages of elements necessary to establish C.E. is required for reinforcing steel that dose not meet ASTM A706 to be structurally welded. No tack welding will be allowed. All welding shall conform to the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

Carbon Equivalent (C.E.) shall be calculated as follows:

C.E. = %C + 1.67*(% Mn) + .025*(% Cu) + .05*(% Ni) + .01*(%Cr) - .02*(%Mo) - .1*(%V)

Where C is carbon,
Mn is manganese
Cu is copper
Ni is nickel
Cr is chromium
Mo is molybdenum, and

V is vanadium.

The requirements above do not apply to the following miscellaneous welding applications:

1. Splicing reinforcing steel to extend bars in the bottom of a drilled shaft;
2. Attaching chairs to the reinforcing steel cage of a drilled shaft;
3. Armor joints and their supports;
4. Screed rail and form hanger supports where permitted on steel units;
5. Reinforcing steel to R-bars for lateral stability between prestressed beams, spirals, or bands of reinforcing bars in drilled shaft cages;
6. Permanent bridge deck forms;
7. Steel added in railing when slip-form construction is used; and
8. Other similar miscellaneous members that have no load carrying capacity in the completed structure.

E. **Welded Wire Fabric**. Wire shall conform to the requirements of the Standard Specifications for Cold-Drawn Steel Wire for Concrete Reinforcement, ASTM A 82 or A 496. Wire fabric, when used as reinforcement, shall conform to ASTM A 185 or A 497.

When wire is ordered by size numbers, the following relation between size number, diameter in inches and area shall apply unless otherwise indicated on the drawings:

Size, W Number 1/100 in ^{2} (mm ^{2})	Nominal Diameter inch (mm)	Nominal Area, sq. inches (mm ^{2})
31 (200)	0.628 (16.0)	0.310 (200)
30 (194)	0.618 (15.7)	0.300 (194)
28 (181)	0.597 (15.2)	0.280 (181)
26 (168)	0.575 (14.6)	0.260 (168)
24 (155)	0.553 (14.0)	0.240 (155)
22 (142)	0.529 (13.4)	0.220 (142)
20 (129)	0.505 (12.8)	0.200 (129)
18 (116)	0.479 (12.2)	0.180 (116)
16 (103)	0.451 (11.5)	0.160 (103)
14 (90)	0.422 (10.7)	0.140 (90)
12 (77)	0.391 (9.9)	0.120 (77)
10 (65)	0.357 (9.1)	0.100 (65)
8 (52)	0.319 (8.1)	0.080 (52)
7 (45)	0.299 (7.6)	0.070 (45)
6 (39)	0.276 (7.0)	0.060 (39)
5.5 (35)	0.265 (6.7)	0.055 (35)
5 (32)	0.252 (6.4)	0.050 (32)
4.5 (29)	0.239 (6.1)	0.045 (29)
4 (26)	0.226 (5.7)	0.040 (26)
3.5 (23)	0.211 (5.4)	0.035 (23)

3 (19)	0.195 (5.0)	0.030 (19)
2.5 (16)	0.178 (4.5)	0.025 (16)
2 (13)	0.160 (4.1)	0.020 (13)
1.5 (9)	0.138 (3.5)	0.015 (9.7)
1.2 (8)	0.124 (3.1)	0.012 (7.7)
1 (6)	0.113 (2.9)	0.010 (6.5)
0.5 (3)	0.080 (2.0)	0.005 (3.2)

Where deformed wire is required, the size number shall be preceded by D and for smooth wire the prefix W shall be shown.

Welded wire fabric shall be designated as follows: 6 x 12 - W16 x W8, which indicates a 6 in. (150 mm) longitudinal wire spacing and 12-in (300 mm) transverse wire spacing with smooth No. 16 (103) wire longitudinally and smooth no. 8 (52) wire transversely.

F. **Epoxy Coating**. Epoxy coating shall be required as indicated on the drawings. Prior to furnishing epoxy-coated reinforcing steel, the epoxy applicator must be included on the list of approved applicators that is maintained by the Construction Division of the State of Texas Department of Transportation.

The reinforcing steel shall be epoxy coated in accordance with the following.

Epoxy Coating Requirements for Reinforcing Steel

Material	Specification
Bar	ASTM A775 or A934
Wire or Fabric	ASTM A884 Class A or B
Mechanical Coupler	As indicated on the drawings
Hardware	As indicated on the drawings

The epoxy coating material and coating repair material shall comply with TxDoT's DMS-8130, "Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel". The applicator shall not patch more than ¼ inch total length in any foot (20 mm total length in any meter) at the applicator's plant.

The epoxy-coated reinforcing steel shall be sampled and tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-739-I, "Sampling and Testing Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel".

The identification of all reinforcing steel shall be maintained throughout the epoxy coating and fabrication and until delivery to the project site.

Written certification that the epoxy-coated reinforcing steel meets the requirements of this Section shall be provided along with a copy of the manufacturer's control tests.

G. **Mechanical Couplers**. When mechanical splices in reinforcing steel bars are indicated on the drawings, the following types of couplers may be used:

1. Sleeve-filler
2. Sleeve-threaded

3. Sleeve-swaged, or
4. Sleeve-wedge.

H. **Chairs and Supports**. Chairs and Supports shall be steel, precast mortar or concrete blocks cast in molds meeting the approval of the Engineer or designated representative of sufficient strength to position the reinforcement as indicated on the drawings when supporting the dead load of the reinforcement, the weight of the workers placing concrete and the weight of the concrete bearing on the steel. Chairs shall be plastic coated when indicated on the drawings.

Chair Types and Applicable Uses	
Structural or Architectural Elements (columns, beams, walls, slabs) exposed to weather, not subjected to sand blasting, water blasting or grinding.	Galvanized steel or steel chairs with plastic coated feet.
Structural or Architectural Elements exposed to weather and subject to sand blasting, water blasting or grinding.	Stainless steel chairs.
Structural or Architectural Elements not exposed to weather or corrosive conditions.	Uncoated steel chairs
Slabs and grade beams cast on grade.	Steel chairs with a base with 9 inch ^{2} (58 cm ^{2}) minimum area or sufficient area to prevent the chair from sinking into fill or subgrade. Precast mortar or concrete blocks meeting the requirements of this section may be used.

406S.4 BENDING

The reinforcement shall be bent cold, true to the shapes indicated on the drawings. Bending shall preferably be done in the shop. Irregularities in bending shall be cause for rejection. Improperly fabricated, damaged or broken bars shall be replaced at no additional expense to the City. Damaged or broken bars embedded in a previous concrete placement shall be repaired using a method approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, the inside diameter of bar bends, in terms of the nominal bar diameter (d), shall be as follows:

Bends of 90 degrees and greater in stirrups, ties and other secondary bars that enclose another bar in the bend.

Bar Number in1/8inches (mm)	**Diameter**
3, 4, 5 (10, 13, 16)	4d
6, 7, 8	6d

All bends in main bars and in secondary bars not covered above.

Bar Number in1/8inches (mm)	Diameter
3 thru 8 (10 thru 25)	6d
9, 10, 11 (29, 32, 36)	8d
14, 18 (43, 57)	10d

406S.5 TOLERANCES

Fabricating tolerances for bars shall not be greater than shown on Standard (Detail) 406S-1.

406S.6 STORING

Steel reinforcement shall be stored above the surface of the ground upon platforms, skids or other supports and shall be protected as far as practicable from mechanical injury and surface deterioration caused by exposure to conditions producing rust. When placed in the work, reinforcement shall be free from dirt, paint, grease, oil or other foreign materials. Reinforcement shall be free from injurious defects such as cracks and laminations. Rust, surface seams, surface irregularities or mill scale will not be cause for rejection, provided the minimum dimensions, cross sectional area and tensile properties of a hand wire brushed specimen meets the physical requirements for the size and grade of steel indicated on the drawings.

406S.7 SPLICES

Splicing of bars, except when indicated on the drawings or specified herein, will not be permitted without written approval of the Engineer or designated representative. No substitution of bars will be allowed without the approval of the Engineer or designated representative. Any splicing of substituted bars shall conform to the requirements in the Table below.

Splices not indicated on the drawings will be permitted in slabs not more than 15 inches (380 mm) in thickness, columns, walls and parapets.

Splices will not be permitted in bars 30 feet (9.1 meters) or less in plan length unless otherwise approved. For bars exceeding 30 feet (9.1 meters) in plan length, the distance center to center of splices shall not be less than 30 feet (9.1 meters) minus 1 splice length, with no more than 1 individual bar length less than 10 feet (3 meters). Splices not indicated on the drawings, but permitted hereby, shall conform to the Table below. The specified concrete cover shall be maintained at such splices and the bars placed in contact and securely tied together.

Minimum Lap Requirements		
Bar Number in1/8inches (mm)	**Uncoated Lap Length**	**Coated Lap Length**
3 (10)	1 foot 4 inches (0.4 meters)	2 foot 0 inches (0.610 meters)
4 (13)	1 foot 9 inches (0.533 meters)	2 foot 8 inches (0.813 meters)
5 (16)	2 foot 2 inches (0.660 meters)	3 feet 3 inches (0.991meters)
6 (19)	2 foot 7 inches (0.787 meters)	3 feet 11 inches (1.194 meters)
7 (22)	3 feet 5 inches (1.041 meters)	5 feet 2 inches (1.575 meters)
No. 8 (25)	4 feet 6 inches (1.372 meters)	6 feet 9 inches (2.057 meters)
No. 9 (29)	5 feet 8 inches (1.727 meters)	8 feet 6 inches (2.591 meters)

No. 10 (32)	7 feet 3 inches (2.210 meters)	10 feet 11 inches (3.327 meters)
No. 11 (36)	8 feet 11 inches (2.718 meters)	13 feet 5 inches (4.089 meters)

Spiral steel shall be lapped a minimum of 1 turn. Bar No. 14 and No. 18 may not be lapped.

Welded wire fabric shall be spliced using a lap length that includes an overlap of at least 2 cross wires plus 2 inches (50 mm) on each sheet or roll.

Splices using bars that develop equivalent strength and are lapped in accordance with the table above are permitted.

Welding of reinforcing bars may be used only where indicated on the drawings or as permitted herein. All welding operations, processes, equipment, materials, quality of work and inspection shall conform to the requirements indicated on the drawings. All splices shall be of such dimension and character as to develop the full strength of the bar being spliced.

End preparation for butt-welding reinforcing bars shall be done in the field, except Bar No. 6 and larger shall be done in the shop. Delivered bars shall be of sufficient length to permit this practice.

For box culvert extensions with less than 1 foot (0.3 meters) of fill, the existing longitudinal bars shall have a lap with the new bars as shown in the table above. For box culvert extensions with more than 1 foot (0.3 meters) of fill, a minimum lap of 12 inches (300 mm) will be required.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, dowel bars transferring tensile stresses shall have a minimum embedment equal to the minimum lap requirements shown in the table above. Shear transfer dowels shall have a minimum embedment of 12 inches (300 mm).

406S.8 PLACEMENT

Reinforcement shall be placed as near as possible in the position indicated on the drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, dimensions shown for reinforcement are to the centers of the bars. In the plane of the steel parallel to the nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than 1/12 of the spacing between bars. In the plane of the steel perpendicular to the nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than ¼ inch (6 mm). Cover of concrete to the nearest surface of steel shall be as follows:

	Minimum Cover, Inches (mm)
(a) Concrete cast against and permanently exposed to earth	3 (76 mm)
(b) Concrete exposed to earth or weather:	
Bar No. 6 (19) through No. 18 bars (57)	2 (51 mm)
Bar No. 5 (16), W31 (W200) or D31 (D200) wire and smaller	1½ (38 mm)
(c) Concrete not exposed to weather or in contact with ground:	
Slabs, walls, joists:	
Bar No. 14 (43) and 18 (57)	1½ (38mm)
Bar No. 11 (36) and smaller	1 (25 mm)
Beams, columns:	

Primary reinforcement, ties, stirrups, spirals	1 ½ (38 mm)
Shells, folded plate members:	
Bar No. 6 (19) and larger	1 (25 mm)
Bar No. 5 (16), W31 (W200) or D31 (D200) wire, and smaller	1 (25 mm)

Vertical stirrups shall always pass around the main tension members and be attached securely thereto.

The reinforcing steel shall be located accurately in the forms and held firmly in place before and during concrete placement by means of bar supports that are adequate in strength and number to prevent displacement and to keep the steel at the required distance from the form surface. Bars shall be supported by means of approved galvanized metal spacers, metal spacers with plastic coated tips, stainless steel spacers, plastic spacers or approved precast mortar or concrete blocks when supports are in contact with removable or stay-in-place forms. Bright basic bar supports shall be used to support reinforcing steel placed in slab overlays on concrete panels or on existing concrete slabs. Bar supports in contact with soil or subgrade shall be approved.

For bar supports with plastic tips, the plastic protection must be at least 3/32 in. (2.4 mm) thick and extend upward on the wire to a point at least ½ in. (12.5 mm) above the formwork.

For approval of plastic spacers on a project, representative samples of the plastic shall show no visible indications of deterioration after immersion in a 5 percent solution of sodium hydroxide for 120 hours.

All accessories such as tie wires, bar chairs, supports, or clips used with epoxy-coated reinforcement shall be of steel, fully coated with epoxy or plastic. When approved by the Engineer or designated representative, plastic supports may also be used with epoxy-coated reinforcement.

All reinforcing steel shall be tied at all intersections, except that where spacing is less than 1 foot (300 mm) in each direction, alternate intersections only need be tied. For reinforcing steel cages for other structural members, the steel shall be tied at enough intersections to provide a rigid cage of steel. Mats of wire fabric shall overlap each other 1 full space as a minimum to maintain a uniform strength and shall be tied at the ends and edges.

Where prefabricated deformed wire mats are specified or if the Contractor requests, welded wire fabric may be substituted for a comparable area of steel reinforcing bar plan, subject to the approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

Mortar or concrete blocks shall be cast to uniform dimensions with adequate bearing area. A suitable tie wire shall be provided in each block, to be used for anchoring to the steel. Except in unusual cases and when specifically authorized by the Engineer, the size of the surface to be placed adjacent to the forms shall not exceed 2½ inches (63.5 mm) square or the equivalent thereof in cases where circular or rectangular areas are provided. Blocks shall be cast accurately to the thickness required and the surface to be placed adjacent to the forms shall be a true plane, free of surface imperfections. The blocks shall be cured by covering them with wet burlap or mats for a period of 72 hours. Mortar for blocks should contain approximately 1 part hydraulic cement to three parts sand. Concrete for blocks should contain 850 pounds of hydraulic cement per cubic yard (500 kilograms per cubic meter) of concrete

Individual bar supports shall be placed in rows at 4-ft (1.22 meters) maximum spacing in each direction. Continuous type bar supports shall be placed at 4-ft (1.22 meters) maximum spacing. Continuous bar supports shall be used with permanent metal deck forms.

The exposure of the ends of longitudinals, stirrups and spacers used to position the reinforcement in concrete pipe and in precast box culverts or storm drains is not a cause for rejection.

Reinforcing steel for bridge slabs, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, and top slabs of prestressed box beams at all intersections, except tie only alternate intersections where spacing is less than 1 ft. (300 mm) in each direction.

For steel reinforcing cages for other structural members, reinforcement shall be supported and tied in such a manner that a sufficiently rigid cage of steel is provided. Fasten mats of wire fabric securely at the ends and edges. If the cage is not adequately supported to resist settlement or floating upward of the steel, overturning of truss bars or movement in any direction during concrete placement, permission to continue concrete placement will be withheld until corrective measures are taken. Sufficient measurements shall be made during concrete placement to insure compliance with the above.

No concrete shall be deposited until the Engineer or designated representative has reviewed the placement of the reinforcing steel and all mortar, mud, dirt, etc, shall be cleaned from the reinforcement, forms, workers' boots and tools. Do not place concrete until authorized by the Engineer or designated representative

406S.9 HANDLING, PLACEMENT AND REPAIR OF EPOXY-COATED REINFORCEMENT STEEL

A. **Handling**. Systems for handling coated-reinforcement with padded contact areas shall be provided. Handling bands shall be padded to prevent damage to the coating. Bundles of coated reinforcement shall be lifted with a strongback, spreader bar, multiple supports or a platform bridge. The bundled reinforcement shall be carefully transported and stored on protective cribbing. The coated reinforcement should not be dropped or drug during handling.

B. **Construction Methods**. Coated reinforcement shall not be flame-cut but shall be sawn or shear-cut only when approved. Cut ends shall be coated as specified in Section C, "Repair of Coating".

   Coated reinforcement steel shall not be welded or mechanically coupled except where specifically indicated on the drawings. When welding or coupling is indicated on the drawing, the epoxy coating shall be removed at least 6 in. (150 mm) beyond the weld limits before welding and 2 in. (50 mm) beyond the limits of the mechanical coupler before assembly. After the welding or coupling operation is completed the steel shall be cleaned of oil, grease, moisture, dirt, welding contamination (slag or acid residue) and rust to a near-white finish. The existing epoxy coating shall be examined for damage and any damaged or loose epoxy shall be removed to expose sound epoxy coating.

   After cleaning the coated-steel, the splice area shall be coated with epoxy repair material to a thickness of 7 to 17 mils (0.18 to 0.43 mm) after curing. A second application of the repair material shall be applied to the bar and coupler interface to ensure complete sealing of the joint.

C. **Repair of Coating**. The material used for coating repair shall comply with the requirements of this Section and ASTM D3963/D3963M, "Specification for Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-coated Reinforcing Steel Bars". Repairs shall be made in accordance with procedures recommended by the manufacturer of the epoxy coating powder. For areas to be patched, a minimum coating thickness as required for the original coating shall be applied. All visible damage to the coating shall be repaired.

   Sawed and sheared ends, cuts, breaks and other damage shall be promptly repaired before additional oxidation occurs. The areas to be repaired shall be cleaned to ensure that they free from surface contaminants. Repairs shall be made in the shop or in the field as required.

406S.10 MEASUREMENT

The measurement of quantities of reinforcement furnished and placed will be based on the calculated weight of the steel actually placed as indicated on the drawings, with no allowance made for added bar lengths for splices requested by the Contractor nor for extra steel used when bars larger than those indicated on the drawings are used or for a higher grade of steel that is substituted with the permission of the Engineer or designated representative. Tie wires and supporting devices will not be included in the calculated weights. The calculated weight of bar reinforcement will be determined using the theoretical bar weight set forth in this section.

Measurement required by a change in design will be computed as described above for the actual steel required to complete the work.

406S.11 PAYMENT

This section shall be paid for at the contract unit price bid per pound of "Reinforcing Steel". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for all work specified herein including furnishing, bending, fabricating, welding and placing reinforcement, for all clips, blocks, metal spacers, ties, chairs, wire or other materials used for fastening reinforcement in place and for all tools, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Reinforcing steel will generally not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the items of construction in which the reinforcing steel is used.

When specified in the contract bid form as a separate pay item, this item shall be paid for at the contract unit price bid per pound of "Reinforcing Steel". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for all work specified herein including furnishing, bending, fabricating, welding and placing reinforcement, for all clips, blocks, metal spacers, ties, chairs, wire or other materials used for fastening reinforcement in place and for all tools, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under:

Pay Section 406S-RC:	Reinforcing Steel	Per Pound.
Pay Section 406S-ERC:	Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel	Per Pound.

END OF SECTION

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Section 406S Reinforcing Steel

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM A 36/A 36M	Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A 82	Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 185	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 496	Steel Wire, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 497	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 615/A 615M	Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 675/A 675M	Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties
ASTM A 706/A 706M	Low- Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 775/A 775M	Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars
ASTM A 884/A 884M	Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Fabric For Reinforcement
ASTM A 934/A 934M	Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Reinforcing Steel Bars
ASTM A 996/A 996M	Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM D3963/D3963M	Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-coated Reinforcing Steel Bars

Texas Department of Transportation:
Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-739-I	Sampling and Testing Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel

City of Austin Standard (Details)

Designation	Description
Standard 406S-1	Reinforced Steel Tolerances

Texas Department of Transportation:
Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS 8130	Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel

American Welding Society

Designation	Description
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	Structural Welding Code

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Section 406S Reinforcing Steel

City of Austin Standard Specification Sections

Designation	Description
Section 360	Concrete Pavement
Section 403S	Concrete for Structures
Section 410S	Concrete Structures
Section 414S	Concrete Retaining Walls
Section 420S	Drilled Shaft Foundations
Section 830S	Traffic Signal Controller Foundation
Section 831S	Traffic Signal Drilled Shaft Foundation

Texas Department of Transportation:
Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Section 360	Concrete Pavement
Section 420	Concrete Structures
Section 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Section 422	Reinforced Concrete Slab
Section 423	Retaining Walls
Section 440	Reinforcing Steels

ITEM NO. 410S
CONCRETE STRUCTURES 9-14-21

410S.1 Description

This item shall govern the construction of all types of structures involving the use of structural concrete, except where the requirements are waived or revised by other governing specifications.

All concrete structures shall be constructed in accordance with the design requirements and details indicated on the drawings, in conformity with the pertinent provisions of the items contracted for, the incidental items referred to and in conformity with the requirements herein.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

410S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

Appropriate mix designs for class of concrete for each type of structure or unit;
Appropriate mortar and grout mix designs;
Product name, description, technical information and supplier of any acrylic-polymer latex admixture;
Type, supplier and certified test results for expansion joint materials;
Type of waterstop and confirmation that the product conforms to TxDoT DMS-6160;
Type and manufacturer of proposed evaporation retardant and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4650;
Type and manufacturer of proposed chemical admixtures and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4640;
Type and manufacturer of proposed curing admixtures and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4640;
Type and manufacturer of proposed chemical admixtures and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4640;
Type and manufacturer of proposed epoxy and/or adhesives and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-6100;
Reinforcing steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel";
Contractors formwork plan for placing and consolidating concrete around wall penetrations and at locations designated as having congested reinforcing steel.

410S.3 Materials

A. Concrete

Concrete shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".
The class of concrete for each type of structure or unit shall be as indicated on the drawings or by pertinent governing specifications.

B. Grout or Mortar

When required or shown on the drawings, mortar and grout consisting of 1 part hydraulic cement and 2 parts sand with sufficient water to provide the desired consistency shall be provided. Mortar shall be provided with a consistency that can be handled easily and spread by a trowel. Grout shall be provided with a consistency that will flow into and completely fill all voids.

C. Latex

When required an acrylic-polymer latex admixture (acrylic resin emulsion in accordance with TxDoT DMS-4640, "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete") suitable for producing polymer-modified concrete or mortar shall be provided. The latex shall not be allowed to freeze.

The following information shall be submitted for latex:

Name and information of company contact personnel,
Product name and polymer description, and
The latex shall meet the following requirements.

Table 1: LATEX ADDITIVE REQUIREMENTS	
Property	Value
Total Solids, minimum, percent	47
PH	9.0 to 11.0
Brookfield viscosity (# 1 spindle @ 10 rpm), mPas, maximum	60
Butadiene Content, percent	30 to 40
Freeze-thaw stability, 2 cycles, maximum	0.1

Specification targets and production tolerances shall also be provided for the following properties.

1. viscosity (including test method and temperature reference),
2. percent solids,
3. pH,
4. specific gravity, and
5. styrene/butadiene ratio.

D. Reinforcing Steel

Reinforcing steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel".

E. Expansion Joint Material

The expansion joint material shall conform to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-6310, "Joint Materials and Fillers".

1. Preformed Fiber Sheets

   Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings preformed bituminous fiber material shall be provided. The preformed fiber material shall conform to the dimensions indicated on the drawings. Preformed fiber sheets shall meet the requirements of ASTM D-1751, "Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types). The requirements related to bitumen content, density and water absorption shall not apply to nonbituminous materials.

2. Joint Sealing Material

   Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings a Class 4, 5 or 7 low-modulus silicone sealant shall be provided that conforms to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-6310, "Joint Sealants and Fillers".

3. Timber Boards

   Timber boards shall be made from redwood or cypress and must be free from sapwood, knots, clustered bird's eye, checks and splits. When oven dried at 230°F (110°C) to a constant weight (mass), the density of the board shall be between 20 and 35 lbs. Per cubic foot (between 320 and 560 kgs per cubic meter)

4. Asphalt Board
   Asphalt Board shall conform to the dimensions indicated on the drawings and shall meet the description, general requirements and distortion testing of ASTM D-994, "Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (bituminous Type)".

5. Rebonded Neoprene Filler Sheet
   Rebonded neoprene filler shall consist of ground closed cell neoprene particles, rebonded and molded into sheets of uniform thickness of the dimensions indicated on the drawings. These sheets shall meet the requirements of ASTM D-1752, Type I.

   The manufacturer shall furnish the Engineer or designated representative with certified test results as to the compliance with the above requirements.

F. Waterstop
   Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, rubber waterstops or Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) waterstops that conform to TxDoT DMS-6160, "Waterstops, Nylon Reinforced Neoprene Sheet, and Elastomeric Pads" shall be provided.

G. Evaporation Retardants
   Evaporation retardants shall conform to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants". The evaporation retardant must be a commercially available monomolecular film compound. The evaporation retardant shall have no adverse effect on the cement hydration process or the concrete and shall reduce surface moisture evaporation from the concrete when performing concrete operations in direct sun, wind, high temperatures, or low relative humidity. The producer of the evaporation retardant shall certify that it meets these specified requirements.

H. Curing Materials
   1. Liquid Membrane Forming compounds
      Liquid Membrane Forming compounds shall conform to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants". The compound shall be applied to damp concrete as a fine mist through atomizing nozzles at a wet film thickness of 8 to 9 mils (200 to 230 µm). The liquid membrane-forming compound must not react deleteriously with concrete or its components. It must produce a firm, continuous, uniform moisture-impermeable film that is free of pinholes, cracks, or other film defects. It must also exhibit satisfactory adhesion.

      The consistency must be such that the compound can be applied satisfactorily by conventional or airless spray at atmospheric and material temperatures above 40°F (5°C) without thinning. When applied at the manufacturer's recommended thickness, not less than 8 mils (200 µm) wet, to vertical surfaces of damp concrete, the compound must not run off or appreciably sag. The liquid membrane-forming compound must not disintegrate, check, peel, or crack during the required curing period. It must not peel or pick up under traffic, and must disappear from the surface of the cured concrete by gradual disintegration.

   2. Cotton Mats
      Cotton mats shall consist of a filling material of cotton "bat" or "bats" [at least 12 oz. Per square yard (400 grams per square meter)] completely covered with unsized cloth [at least 6 oz. Per square yard (200 grams per square meter)] stitched longitudinally with continuous parallel rows of stitching spaced at less than 4 in. (100 mm), or tuft both longitudinally and transversely at intervals less than 3 in. (75 mm).

The cotton mats shall be free from tears and in good general condition. A flap at least 6 in. (150 mm) wide with two (2) thicknesses of the covering that extends along one side of the mat shall be provided.

3. Polyethylene Sheeting
   The polyethylene sheeting shall be at least 4 mils thick (0.1 mm) and free from visible defects. Clear or opaque white sheeting shall be provided when the ambient temperature during curing exceeds 60°F (15°C) or when applicable to control temperature during mass pours.

4. Burlap-Polyethylene Mats
   The burlap-polyethylene mats shall be made from burlap impregnated on 1 side with a film of opaque white-pigmented polyethylene, free from visible defects. The laminated mats shall have at least 1 layer of an impervious material such as polyethylene, vinyl plastic, or other acceptable material (either as a solid sheet or impregnated into another fabric) and shall be free of visible defects.

I. Chemical Admixtures
   Chemical admixtures including water reducing, placticizers and air entrainment shall conform to TxDoT DMS-4640, "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete" Calcium chloride shall not be used. Admixtures shall be included in the prequalified concrete admixtures list maintained by TxDot's Construction Division.

J. City of Austin Survey Monuments
   The Public Works Department may furnish permanent survey monuments to be cast in concrete as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

K. Epoxy
   Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, epoxy materials shall conform to TxDoT DMS-6100, "Epoxy and Adhesives".

410S.4 General Requirements

Before starting work, the Contractor shall inform the Engineer or designated representative fully of the construction methods the Contractor proposes to use, the adequacy of which shall be subject to the review by the Engineer or designated representative. Drawings for forms and falsework for piers and superstructure spans over 20 feet (6 meters) long, bracing systems for girders when the overhang exceeds 3 ft. 6 in. (1 meter) and for all bridge widening details shall be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative for review, if requested. Similar drawings shall be submitted for other units of the structure, if requested by the Engineer or designated representative. The drawings shall be prepared on standard 22 inch by 36-inch (550mm by 900 mm) sheets and shall show all essential details of the proposed forms, falsework and bracing to permit a structural analysis. Four sets of such drawings will be required.

Concurrence on the part of the Engineer or designated representative in any proposed construction methods, approval of equipment or of form and falsework drawings does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety or correctness of the Contractor's methods, adequacy of equipment or from carrying out the work in full accordance with the contract.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, the requirements in the succeeding paragraphs shall govern the time sequence in which construction operations may be carried on and for the opening of completed structures to traffic:

Superstructure members, forms, falsework or erection equipment shall not be placed on the substructure before the

concrete therein has attained a 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) compressive strength.

Storage of materials on completed portions of a structure will not be permitted until all curing requirements for those particular portions have been met.

No forms shall be erected on concrete footings supported by piling or drilled shafts until the concrete therein has attained a minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.2 MPa). Such work may begin on spread footings after the therein has aged at least 2 curing days. Concrete may be placed as soon as the forms and reinforcing steel are approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The support of tie beam and/or forms by falsework placed on previously placed tie beams is permissible provided such beams have attained 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) compressive strength, curing requirements are completed and the beams are properly supported to eliminate stresses not provided for in the design.

Bridges and direct traffic culverts shall not be opened to construction traffic or to the traveling public until authorized by the Engineer or designated representative in accordance with the following:

Authorization may be given after the last slab concrete has been in place at least 14 days for light construction traffic not to exceed a ¾-ton (0.68 Mg) vehicle. Authorization to place embankments to allow normal construction traffic and when necessary to the traveling public, may be given after the last slab concrete has been in place 30 days or when the minimum compressive strength (fc') has reached the 28 day strength conforming to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" or as indicated on the drawings.

410S.5 Drains

Weep holes and roadway drains shall be installed and constructed as indicated on the drawings.

410S.6 Expansion Joints

Joints and devices shall be used to provide for expansion and contraction of concrete slabs and shall be constructed as indicated on the drawings.

The bearing area under the expansion ends of concrete slabs and slab and girder spans shall be given a steel trowel finish and finished to the exact grades required on the drawings. The material used to separate expansion surfaces shall be as indicated on the drawings and placed so that concrete or mortar cannot be subsequently worked around or under it. The bridging of concrete or mortar around expansion joint material in bearings and expansion joints shall be prevented.

Concrete adjacent to armor joints and finger joints shall be placed carefully to avoid defective anchorage and porous or honeycombed concrete in such areas.

All open joints and joints to be filled with expansion joint material shall be constructed using forms adaptable to loosening or early removal. To avoid expansion or contraction damage to the adjacent concrete, these forms shall be loosened as soon as possible after final concrete set to permit free movement of the span without requiring full form removal.

Preformed fiber joint material or other material indicated shall be used in the vertical joints of the roadway slab, curb, median or sidewalk. The top 1-inch (25 mm) thereof shall be filled with joint sealing material, as specified herein. The sealer shall be installed in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 413S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (PC Concrete)" and the manufacturer's recommendations.

Prior to placing the sealing material, the vertical faces of the joint shall be cleaned of all laitance by sandblasting or by mechanical routing. Cracked or spalled edges shall be repaired. The joint shall be blown clean of all foreign material and sealed.

Where preformed fiber joint material is used, it shall be anchored to the concrete on one side of the joint by light wire or nails to prevent the material from falling out.

Finished joints shall conform to the drawing details with the concrete sections completely separated by the specified opening or joint material.

Soon after form removal and where necessary after surface finishing, all projecting concrete shall be removed along exposed edges to secure full effectiveness of the expansion joints.

410S.7 Construction Joints

The joint formed by placing plastic concrete in direct contact with concrete that has attained its initial set shall be deemed a construction joint. The term monolithic placement shall be interpreted to mean that the manner and sequence of concrete placing shall not create construction joints.

Construction joints shall be of the type and at the locations indicated on the drawings. Additional joints will not be permitted without written authorization from the Engineer or designated representative and when authorized, shall have details equivalent to those indicated for joints in similar locations.

Unless otherwise provided, construction joints shall be square and normal to the forms. Bulkheads shall be provided in the forms for all joints, except when horizontal. All vertical construction joints shall be chamfered. All horizontal construction joints shall be routed or grooved.

Construction joints requiring the use of joint sealing material shall be as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The material will be indicated on the drawings without reference to joint type.

A concrete placement terminating at a horizontal construction joint shall have the top surface roughened thoroughly as soon as practicable after initial set is attained. The surfaces at bulkheads shall be roughened as soon as the forms are removed.

The hardened concrete surface shall be thoroughly cleaned of all loose material, laitance, dirt or foreign matter and saturated with water so it is moist when placing fresh concrete against it. Remove all free water and moisten the surface before concrete or bonding grout is placed against it. Forms shall be drawn tight against the existing concrete and the joint surface flushed with grout just prior to placing the fresh concrete.

The joint surface shall be coated with bonding mortar, grout, epoxy or other material as indicated on the drawings or other items. A Type V epoxy shall be provided in accordance with TxDoT DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives" for bonding fresh concrete to hardened concrete. The epoxy shall be placed on a clean dry surface and the fresh concrete shall be placed while the epoxy is still tacky. Bonding mortar or grout shall be placed on a surface that is saturated surface dry and the concrete shall be placed before the bonding mortar or grout dries. Other bonding agents shall be placed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

410S.8 Foundation and Substructure

Excavation for foundations and substructure shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill".

Concrete for foundation seals, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, shall be Class C Concrete with a coarse aggregate grade of 2, 3, 4 or 5 and placed in accordance with the requirements herein. The top of the completed seal shall not vary from plan grade or the grade established by the Engineer or designated representative.

Where a concrete seal is indicated on the Drawings, the design will be based on the normal water elevation as indicated on the Drawings. If the foundation concrete can be placed in the dry at the time of construction, the seal will not be required. If additional seal is necessary for the conditions existing during the time of construction, its thickness shall be increased as deemed necessary by the Contractor and at the Contractor's expense. If the conditions existing at the time of construction require a seal for placing the foundation concrete in the dry and none is indicated on the Drawings, the Contractor shall place an adequate seal at the Contractor's expense.

The seal shall be allowed to set for at least 36 hours before the caisson or cofferdam is dewatered, after which the top of the seal shall be cleaned of all laitance or other soft material and all high spots exceeding the above limitation shall be cut off and removed.

410S.9 Falsework

The Contractor is totally responsible for all falsework. The Contractor shall design and construct it to safely carry the maximum anticipated loads and to provide the necessary rigidity. Details of falsework construction shall be subject to review by the Engineer or designated representative, but Engineer's review shall in no way relieve the Contractor of responsibility of the adequacy and safety of the falsework design.

All timber used in falsework centering shall be sound, in good condition and free from defects which will impair its strength. When wedges are used to adjust falsework to desired elevations, they shall be used in pairs to insure even bearing.

Sills or grillages shall be large enough to support the superimposed load without settlement and unless founded on solid rock, shale or other hard materials, precautions shall be taken to prevent yielding of the supporting material.

Falsework, which cannot be founded on a satisfactory spread footing, shall be placed on piling driven to a bearing capacity sufficient to support the superimposed load without settlement. The safe bearing capacity of piling shall be determined by test loads or by such other methods that may be required or acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative.

In general, each falsework bent shall be capped transversely by a member of proper size. A short cap section forming a T-head may be substituted to permit the removal of portions of the forms without disturbing the falsework. Caps shall be securely fastened to each pile or column in the bent and set at the proper elevation to produce, in conjunction with the use of approved wedges or jacks, permanent camber indicated on the Drawings, plus a construction camber covering allowance for deformation of the forms and falsework. The use of wedges to compensate for incorrectly cut bearing surfaces will not be permitted. Each falsework bent shall be securely braced to provide the stiffness required with the bracing securely fastened to each pile or column it crosses.

In setting falsework for arches, allowances shall be made for settlement of falsework, deflection of the arch and permanent camber. Provision shall be made by suitable wedges, sand jacks or other acceptable devices for the controlled lowering of falsework when the arch is swung. Falsework may be required to be placed on jacks to provide

for settlement correction during concrete placement.

When the falsework is no longer required, it shall be removed. Falsework piling shall be pulled or cut off not less than 2 feet (0.6 meter) below finished ground level. Falsework and piling in a stream, lake or bay shall be completely removed to a point specified by the Engineer or designated representative to prevent any obstruction to the waterway.

410S.10 Forms

Forms for precast prestressed concrete members and for prestressed piling shall be constructed conforming to Item No. 425S, "Prestressed Concrete Structures".

A. General

Except where otherwise indicated on the drawings, forms may be of either timber or metal.

Forms for round columns exposed to view shall be of steel, except that other materials will be allowed with written permission of the Engineer or designated representative.

Forming plans shall be submitted for approval by the Engineer or designated representative. Forms shall be designed for the pressure exerted by a liquid weighing 150 pounds per cubic foot (2.4 Mega grams per cubic meter). The rate of placing the concrete shall be taken into consideration in determining the depth of the equivalent liquid. For job-fabricated forms an additional live load of 50 pounds per square foot (1.675 MPa) shall be allowed on horizontal surfaces. The maximum unit stresses shall not exceed 125 percent of the allowable stresses used by the Engineer or designated representative for the design of structures.

Formwork for wall and/or column pours equal or exceeding 8 feet (2.44 meters) shall be designed in accordance with ACI 347, "Guide to Formwork for Concrete" and sealed by a Registered Civil Engineer Licensed in the State of Texas, who is experienced in formwork design.

Commercially produced structural units used in formwork shall not exceed the manufacturer's maximum allowable working load for moment, shear or end reaction. The maximum working load shall include a live load of 35 pounds per square foot (1.175 MPa) of horizontal form surface and sufficient details and data shall be submitted for use in checking formwork details for approval.

Forms shall be practically mortar-tight, rigidly braced and strong enough to prevent bulging between supports and maintained to the proper line and grade during concrete placement. Forms shall be maintained in a manner that will prevent warping and shrinkage.

Deflections due to cast-in-place slab concrete and railing shown in the dead load deflection diagram shall be taken into account in the setting of slab forms.

All forms and footing areas shall be cleaned of any extraneous matter before placing concrete.

Permission to place concrete will not be given until all of such work is complete to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

If, at any stage of the work, the forms show signs of bulging or sagging, the portion of the concrete causing such condition shall be removed immediately, if necessary and the forms shall be reset and securely braced against further movement.

B. Timber Forms

Lumber for forms shall be properly seasoned, of good quality and free from imperfections, which would affect its strength or impair the finished surface of the concrete. The lumber used for facing or sheathing shall be finished on at least 1 side and 2 edges and shall be sized to uniform thickness.

Form or form lumber that will be reused shall be maintained clean and in good condition. Lumber that is split, warped, bulged, or marred or that has defects that will produce inferior forms shall not be used but shall be removed from the work.

Form lining will be required for all formed surfaces, except for the inside of culvert barrels, inlets, manholes and box girders, the bottom of bridge decks between beams or girders, surfaces that are subsequently covered by backfill material or are completely enclosed and any surface formed by a single finished board. Lining will not be required when plywood forms are used.

Form lining shall be of an approved type such as masonite or plywood. Thin membrane sheeting such as polyethylene sheets shall not be used for form lining.

Forms may be constructed of plywood not less than ¾ inch (19 mm) in thickness, with no form lining required. The grain of the face plies on plywood forms shall be placed parallel to the span between the supporting studs or joists.

Plywood used for forming surfaces, which remain exposed, shall be equal to that specified as B-B Plyform Class I or Class II Exterior of the U.S. Department of Commerce Voluntary Product Standard, PS 1.

Studs and joists shall be spaced so that the facing form material remains in true alignment under the imposed loads.

Wales shall be spaced close enough to hold forms securely to the designated lines and scabbed at least 4 feet (1.22 meters) on each side of joints to provide continuity. A row of wales shall be placed near the bottom of each placement.

Facing material shall be placed with parallel and square joints and securely fastened to supporting studs.

Forms for surfaces receiving only an ordinary finish and exposed to view shall be placed with the form panels symmetrical, i.e., long dimensions set in the same direction. Horizontal joints shall be continuous.

Molding specified for chamfer strips or other uses shall be made of materials of a grade that will not split when nailed and which can be maintained to a true line without warping. Wood molding shall be mill cut and dressed on all faces. Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, forms shall be filleted at all sharp corners and edges with triangular chamfer strips measuring ¾ inch (19 mm) on the sides.

Forms for railings and ornamental work shall be constructed to standards equivalent to first class millwork. All moldings, panel work and bevel strips shall be straight and true with neatly mitered joints designed so the finish work is true, sharp and clean cut. All forms shall be constructed to permit their removal without marring or damaging the concrete. The forms may be given a slight draft to permit ease of removal.

Metal form ties of an approved type or a satisfactory substitute shall be used to hold forms in place and shall be

of a type that permits ease of removal of the metal as hereinafter specified.

All metal appliances used inside of forms for alignment purposes shall be removed to a depth of at least ½ inch (13 mm) from the concrete surface. They shall be made so the metal may be removed without undue chipping or spalling and when removed, shall leave a smooth opening in the concrete surface. Burning off of rods, bolts or ties will not be permitted.

Any wire ties used shall be cut back at least ½ inch (13 mm) from the face of the concrete and properly patched.

Devices holding metal ties in place shall be capable of developing the strength of the tie and adjustable to allow for proper alignment.

Metal and wooden spreaders, which are separate from the forms, shall be removed entirely as the concrete is being placed.

Adequate clean-out openings shall be provided for narrow walls and other locations where access to the bottom of the forms is not readily attainable.

Prior to placing concrete, the facing of all forms shall be treated with oil or other bond breaking coating of such composition that it will not discolor or otherwise injuriously affect the concrete surface. Care shall be exercised to prevent coating of the reinforcing steel.

C. Metal Forms

The foregoing requirements for timber forms as regards design, mortar-tightness, filleted corners, beveled projections, bracing, alignment, removal, reuse and wetting shall also apply to metal forms, except that these will not require lining, unless specifically indicated on the drawings.

The thickness of form metal shall be as required to maintain the true shape without warping or bulging. All bolt and rivet heads on the facing sides shall be countersunk. Clamps, pins or other connecting devices shall be designed to hold the forms rigidly together and to allow removal without injury to the concrete. Metal forms, which do not present a smooth surface or line up properly, shall not be used. Metal shall be kept free from rust, grease or other foreign materials.

D. Form Supports for Overhang Slabs

Form supports which transmit a horizontal force to a steel girder or beam or to a prestressed concrete beam will be permitted, but shall not be used unless a structural analysis has been made of the affect on the girder or beam and approval is granted by the Engineer or designated representative.

In normal or skewed spans with standard overhangs not exceeding 3 feet, 1 ½ inches (0.95 meter), beam bracing as shown in the drawings shall be used.

Spans in which the overhang width exceeds 3 feet, 1½ inches (0.95 meter) will require additional support for the outside beams to resist torsion. Details of the Contractor's proposed method of providing additional support shall be included with the slab forming plans submitted to the Engineer or designated representative for review and approval.

Holes in steel members for support of overhang brackets may be punched or drilled full size or may be torch

cut to ¼ inch (6 mm) under size and reamed full size. In no case shall the holes be burned full size. The hole shall be left open unless indicated to be filled with a button head bolt. They shall never be filled by welding.

410S.11 Placing Reinforcement

Reinforcement in concrete structures shall be placed carefully and accurately and rigidly supported as provided in Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel". Reinforcing steel supports shall not be welded to I-beams or girders or stirrups of prestressed concrete beams.

410S.12 Placing Concrete

A. General

Concrete shall not be placed when impending weather conditions would impair the quality of the finished work. If conditions of wind, humidity and temperature are such that concrete cannot be placed without the potential for shrinkage cracking, the concrete should be placed in early morning, at night or on a schedule with more favorable weather. When mixing, placing and finishing concrete is scheduled during non-daylight hours; the entire placement site should be illuminated to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

If changes in weather conditions require protective measures after work starts, adequate shelter shall be provided to protect the concrete against damage from rainfall or from freezing temperatures as outlined in this Item. Operations during rainfall shall only be continued if approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Aggregate stockpiles shall be covered to the extent necessary to control the moisture conditions in the aggregates.

Slab concrete shall be mixed in a plant located off the structure. Carting or wheeling concrete batches over completed slabs will not be permitted until they have aged at least 4 full curing days or timber planking placed on top of the slab for the carts to traverse along. Carts shall be equipped with pneumatic tires. Curing operations shall not be interrupted for the purpose of wheeling concrete over finished slabs.

Exposed concrete surfaces, while still plastic, shall be stamped with an impression having the Contractor's name, the month and year. The stamp shall be of an approved design.

At least 1 day of curing shall be allowed after the concrete has achieved initial set before placing strain on projecting reinforcement to prevent damage to the concrete.

The storing of reinforcing or structural steel on completed roadway slabs generally shall be avoided and when permitted, shall be limited to quantities and distribution that will not induce excessive stresses.

B. Preparation of Surfaces

All forms, prestressed concrete panels, T-beams and concrete box beams on which concrete will be placed shall be thoroughly wetted before the placement of concrete. Puddles of excess water shall be removed before placing the concrete. The various surfaces shall be in a moist, saturated surface dry condition when concrete is placed on or against them.

The subgrade or foundation shall be moist before placing concrete for bridge approach slabs or other concrete placed on grade. If dry the subgrade shall be lightly sprinkled.

C. Placing Temperature

The minimum temperature of all concrete at the time of placement shall not be less than 50°F (10°C). The maximum temperature of any concrete, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, shall not exceed 95°F

(35°C) when placed. The maximum temperature of cast-in-place concrete in bridge superstructures, diaphragms, parapets, concrete portions of railing, curbs and sidewalks and direct traffic box culverts shall not exceed 85°F (30°C) when placed. Other portions of structures, when indicated on the drawings, shall require the temperature control specified.

For continuous placement of the deck on continuous steel units, the initial set of the concrete shall be retarded sufficiently to insure that it remains plastic in not less than 3 spans immediately preceding the one being placed. For simple spans, retardation shall be required only if necessary to complete finishing operations.

The consistency of the concrete as placed should allow the completion of all finishing operations without the addition of water to the surface. When conditions are such that additional moisture is needed for finishing, the required water shall be applied to the surface by fog spray only and shall be held to a minimum amount. Fog spray for this purpose may be applied with hand operated fogging equipment.

The height of free fall of concrete shall be limited to 5 feet (1.575 meters) to prevent segregation.

D. Transporting Time

The maximum time interval between the addition of cement to the batch and the placing of concrete in the forms shall not exceed the following:

Table 2: Allowable Transportation Times

Air or Concrete Temperature whichever is higher	Maximum Time w/o Retarder	Maximum Time with Retarder	
		*Specific Applications	All others
Non-agitated Concrete			
35°F to 79°F (2°C to 26°C)	45 minutes	45 minutes	45 minutes
Over 80°F (Over 25°C)	30 minutes	45 minutes	45 minutes
Agitated Concrete			
90°F (32°C) or above	45 minutes	75 minutes	105 minutes
75°F to 89°F (24°C to 32°C)	60 minutes	90 minutes	120 minutes
35°F to 74°F (2°C to 23°C)	90 minutes	120 minutes	150 minutes

* Specific applications include Bridge decks, cased drilled shafts and slabs of direct traffic culverts

The use of an approved retarding agent in the concrete will permit the extension of each of the above temperature-time maximums by 30 minutes for bridge decks, top slabs of direct traffic culverts and cased drilled shafts and 1 hour for all other concrete except that the maximum time shall not exceed 45 minutes for non-agitated concrete.

E. Handling and Placing

The Contractor shall give the Engineer or designated representative sufficient advance notice before placing concrete in any unit of the structure to permit the review of forms, reinforcing steel placement and other preparations. Concrete shall not be placed in any unit prior to the completion of formwork and placement of reinforcement therein.

The sequence for placing concrete shall be as indicated on the drawings or as required herein. The placing shall be regulated so the pressures caused by the plastic concrete shall not exceed the loads used in the form design.

The method of handling, placing and consolidation of concrete shall minimize segregation and displacement of the reinforcement and produce a uniformly dense and compact mass. Concrete shall not have a free fall of more than 5 feet (1.5 meters), except in the case of drilled shafts, thin wall sections such as in culverts, or as allowed by other Items. Any hardened concrete spatter ahead of the plastic concrete shall be removed.

Each part of the forms shall be filled by depositing concrete as near its final position as possible. The coarse aggregate shall be worked back from the face and the concrete forced under and around the reinforcement bars without displacing them. Depositing large quantities at one point and running or working it along the forms will not be allowed.

Concrete shall be deposited in the forms in layers of suitable depth but not more than 36 inches (0.9 meter) in thickness, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Cold joints in a monolithic placement shall be avoided. The sequence of successive layers or adjacent portions of concrete shall be such that they can be vibrated into a homogeneous mass with the previously placed concrete without a cold joint. Not more than 1 hour (1 ½ hours if a normal dosage of retarding admixture is used) shall elapse between adjacent or successive placements of concrete. Unauthorized construction joints shall be avoided by placing all concrete between the authorized joints in one continuous operation.

An approved retarding agent shall be used to control stress cracks and/or authorized cold joints in mass placements where differential settlement and/or setting time may induce stress cracking, such as on false work, in deep girder stems, etc.

Openings in forms shall be provided, if needed, for the removal of laitance or foreign matter of any kind.

All forms shall be wetted thoroughly before the concrete is placed therein.

F. Consolidation

All concrete shall be carefully consolidated and the mortar flushed to the form surfaces by continuous working with immersion type vibrators. Vibrators which operate by attachment to forms or reinforcement will not be permitted, except on steel forms. At least 1 standby vibrator shall be provided for emergency use in addition to the ones required for placement. For lightweight concrete, vibrators of the high frequency type, which produce a minimum of 7000 impulses per minute, will be required.

The concrete shall be vibrated immediately after deposition. Prior to the beginning of work, a systematic spacing of the points of vibration shall be established to insure complete consolidation and thorough working of the concrete around the reinforcement, embedded fixtures and into the corners and angles of the forms. Immersion type vibrators shall be inserted vertically, at points 18 to 30 inches (450 to 750 mm) apart and slowly withdrawn. The vibrator may only be inserted in a sloping or horizontal position in shallow slabs. The entire depth of each lift shall be vibrated, allowing the vibrator to penetrate several inches (several cms) into the preceding lift. The vibrator shall not be used to move the concrete to other locations. In addition the vibrator shall not be dragged through the concrete. Concrete along construction joints shall be thoroughly consolidated by operating the vibrator along and close to but not against the joint surface. The vibration shall continue until

thorough consolidation and complete embedment of reinforcement and fixtures is produced, but not long enough to cause segregation. Vibration may be supplemented by hand spading or rodding, if necessary, to insure the flushing of mortar to the surface of all forms.

G. Finishing

From the time of initial strike off until final finish is completed and required interim curing is in place, the unformed surfaces of slab concrete in bridge decks and top slab of direct traffic culverts and concrete slabs, shall be kept damp, not wet, to offset the effects of rapid evaporation of mixing water from the concrete due to wind, temperature, low humidity or combinations thereof. Fogging equipment capable of applying water in the form of a fine fog mist, not a spray, will be required. Fogging will be applied at the times and in the manner directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Fogging equipment may be either water pumped under high pressure or a combination of air and water, either system in combination with a proper atomizing nozzle. The equipment shall be sufficiently portable for use in the direction of any prevailing winds. The equipment shall be adapted for intermittent use to prevent excessive wetting of the surfaces.

Upon completion of the final finish, interim curing will be required for slab concrete in bridge decks and top slabs of direct traffic culverts as follows:

(1) Required water curing shall begin as soon as it can be done without damaging the concrete finish.
(2) Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, Type 1-D membrane curing compound that conforms to TxDoT DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants" shall be applied to the slab surface.

H. Installation of Dowels and Anchor Bolts

Dowels and anchor bolts shall be installed by casting them in place or by grouting with grout, epoxy, or epoxy mortar unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.

Holes for grouting shall be formed or drilled. Holes for anchor bolts shall be drilled to accommodate the bolt embedment required on the drawings. Holes for dowels shall be made at least 12 in. (300 mm) deep unless indicated otherwise on the drawings. When grout or epoxy mortar is specified the diameter of the hole shall be at least twice the dowel or bolt diameter but shall not exceed the dowel or bolt diameter plus 1 ½ in (38 mm). When epoxy is specified the hole diameter should be 1/16to ¼ in. (1.6 to 6.35 mm) greater than the dowel or bolt diameter.

Holes for anchor bolts in piers, abutments, bents or pedestals may be drilled or formed by the insertion of oiled wooden plugs or metal sleeves in the plastic concrete. Formed holes shall be large enough to permit horizontal adjustments of the bolts. The bolts shall be carefully set in mortar. In lieu of the above, anchor bolts may be set to exact locations when the concrete is placed.

The holes shall be thoroughly cleaned of all loose material, oil, grease or other bond-breaking substance and blow them clean with filtered compressed air. When an epoxy type material is used the holes shall be in a surface dry condition. When hydraulic cement grout is used the holes shall be in a surface moist condition. The void space between the hole and the dowel or bolt shall be completely filled with grouting material. The requirements for cleaning outlined in the product specification for prepackaged systems shall be followed exactly.

The following should be used as a guide in selection of an appropriate grout, mortar, epoxy or epoxy grout.

Table 3: Guide for Selection of Epoxy, Epoxy Mortar, Grout and Epoxy Grout

Material Type	Recommendation
Epoxy, Epoxy Mortar or other prepackaged Mortar	As Approved
Cast-in-place or Grouted system	1 part hydraulic cement, 2 parts sand and sufficient water for desired consistency
Neat Epoxy	Type III epoxy per TxDoT DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives"
Epoxy Grout	Type III epoxy per TxDoT DMS-6100, "Epoxies and Adhesives"Provide grout, epoxy or epoxy mortar as the binding agent unless otherwise indicated on the drawings

410S.13 Placing Concrete in Cold Weather

A. General

The Contractor is responsible for the protection of concrete placed under any and all weather conditions and is responsible for producing concrete equal in quality to that placed under normal conditions. Permission given by the Engineer or designated representative to allow placement of the concrete during cold weather does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for producing concrete equal in quality to that placed under normal conditions. Concrete placed under adverse weather conditions that proves to be unsatisfactory shall be removed and replaced at Contractor' expense.

B. Cast-in-Place Concrete

Concrete may be placed when the ambient temperature is not less than 35°F (2°C) in the shade and rising or above 40°F (4°C). Concrete shall not be placed when the ambient temperature in the shade is below 40°F (4°C) and falling unless approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Concrete shall not be placed in contact with any material coated with frost or having a temperature less than 32°F (0°C).

Aggregates shall be free from ice, frost and frozen lumps. When required, in order to produce the minimum specified concrete temperature; the aggregate and/or the water shall be heated uniformly, in accordance with the following:

The water temperature shall not exceed 180°F(82°C) and/or the aggregate temperature shall not exceed 150°F(66°C). The heating apparatus shall heat the mass of aggregate uniformly. The temperature of the mixture of aggregates and water shall be between 50°F(10°C) and 85°F(29°C) before introduction of the cement.

All concrete shall be effectively protected as follows:

1. The temperature of slab concrete of all unformed surfaces shall be maintained at 50°F(10°C) or above for a period of 72 hours from time of placement and above 40°F(4°C) for an additional 72 hours.

2. The temperature at the surface of all concrete in bents, piers, culvert walls, retaining walls, parapets, wingwalls, bottom of slabs and other similar forms shall be maintained at 40°F(4°C) or above for a period of 72 hours from time of placement.

3. The temperature of all concrete, including the bottom slabs of culverts placed on or in the ground, shall be maintained above 32°F(0°C) for a period of 72 hours from time of placement.

Protection shall consist of providing additional covering, insulated forms or other means and if necessary, supplementing such covering with artificial heating. Avoid applying heat directly to concrete surfaces. Curing shall be provided during this period until all requirements for curing have been satisfied.

When impending weather conditions indicate the possibility of the need for such temperature protection, all necessary heating and covering material shall be on hand ready for use before permission is granted to begin placement.

Sufficient extra test specimens will be made and cured with the placement to ascertain the condition of the concrete as placed prior to form removal and acceptance.

C. Precast Concrete

A fabricating plant for precast products which has adequate protection from cold weather in the form of permanent or portable framework and covering, which protects the concrete when placed the forms and is equipped with approved steam curing facilities may place concrete under any low temperature conditions provided:

1. The framework and covering are placed and heat is provided for the concrete and the forms within 1 hour after the concrete is placed. This shall not be construed to be 1 hour after the last concrete is placed, but that no concrete shall remain unprotected longer than 1 hour.

2. Steam heat shall keep the air surrounding the concrete between 50°F (10°C) and 85°F(29°C) for a minimum of 3 hours prior to beginning the temperature rise, which is required for steam curing.

410S.14 Placing Concrete in Hot Weather

When the temperature of the air is above 85°F (29°C), an approved retarding agent will be required in all exposed concrete, concrete used in superstructures, top slabs of direct traffic culverts and all cased drilled shafts regardless of temperatures. Concrete mix temperatures shall not exceed 90°F (32°C) except for mixes that include high range water reducers where a maximum mix temperature of 100°F (38°C) will be allowed.

If the concrete mix temperature is expected to exceed 90°F (32°C) (or 100°F (38°C) in mixes with high range water reducers) ice may be utilized to lower the concrete mix temperature. Ice may be added to the concrete mix as a portion by weight of the mix water. However the addition of ice shall not exceed 50% of the total mix water weight.

When weather conditions are such that the addition of ice at 50% of the mix water is not sufficient to reduce the concrete mix temperature to an acceptable temperature, concrete work shall not be allowed.

When ice is to be used in hot weather concrete placement, the Contractor shall furnish a mix design (Section 4.4 of Standard Specification Item 360S, "Concrete Pavement" and Section 6 of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures") acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for class of concrete specified on the drawings.

410S.15 Placing Concrete in Water

Concrete shall be deposited in water only when indicated on the drawings or with written permission of the Engineer or designated representative. The forms, cofferdams or caissons shall be sufficiently tight to prevent any water current passing through the space in which the concrete is being deposited. Pumping will not be permitted during the concrete placing nor until it has set for at least 36 hours.

The concrete shall be placed with a tremie, pump or other approved method and shall not be permitted to fall freely

through the water nor shall it be disturbed after it has been placed. Its surface shall be kept approximately level during placement.

The tremie shall be supported or the pump operated so that it can be easily moved horizontally to cover all the work area and vertically to control the concrete flow. The lower end of the tremie or pump hose shall be submerged in the concrete at all times.

The placing operations shall be continuous until the work is complete.

For concrete to be placed under water, the concrete mix shall be designed in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete For Structures" with a minimum cement content of 650 lb. Per cubic yard (10.4 Mg per cubic meter). An anti-wash admixture may be included in the mix design as necessary to produce a satisfactory finished product.

410S.16 Placing Concrete in Superstructure

A. General

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, simple span roadway slabs shall be placed without transverse construction joints by using a mechanical longitudinal screed or a self-propelled transverse finishing machine or a mechanical longitudinal screed. For small placements or unusual conditions such as narrow widening, variable cross-slopes, or transitions, manually operated screeding equipment may be used if approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Transverse Screeding

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, slabs on continuous units shall be placed in one continuous operation without transverse construction joints using a longitudinal screed or a self-propelled transverse finishing machine. Rails for transverse finishing machines supported from the beams or girders shall be installed so they may be removed without damage to the slab. Bond between removable supports and the concrete shall be prevented in a manner acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. Rail support parts, which remain embedded in the slab, shall not project above the upper mat of reinforcing steel. Rail or screed supports attached to I-beams or girders shall be subject to "General Requirements" stated above. Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, the minimum rate of concrete placement is 30 lineal feet (9.144 lineal meters) of bridge slab per hour. The concrete shall be deposited parallel to the skew of the bridge so that all girders are loaded uniformly along their length. Slab concrete shall be deposited between the exterior beam and the adjacent beam before placing concrete in the overhang portion of the slab. Personnel and equipment shall be furnished that is capable of placing, finishing and curing the slab at an acceptable rate to ensure compliance with this Item. Concrete shall be placed in transverse strips. On profile grades greater than 1.5 %, placement shall be started at the lower end.

C. Longitudinal Screeding

The screed shall be adequately supported on a header or rail system sufficiently stable to withstand the longitudinal or lateral thrust of the equipment. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, temporary intermediate headers will be permitted for placements exceeding 50 feet (15.24 meters) in length for the longitudinal screed, provided the rate of placement is rapid enough to prevent a cold joint and these headers are designed for early removal to permit satisfactory consolidation and finish of the concrete at their locations. The slab concrete shall be deposited between the exterior beam and the adjacent beam before placing concrete in the overhang portion of the slab.

For longitudinal screeding, concrete shall be placed in longitudinal strips starting at a point in the center of the

segment adjacent to one side, except as provided herein and the strip completed by placing uniformly in both directions toward the ends except that for spans on a grade of 1.5 percent or more, placing shall start at the lower end. The width of strips shall be such that the concrete therein will remain plastic until the adjacent strip is placed. Where monolithic curb construction is specified, the concrete shall be placed therein in proper sequence to be monolithic with the adjacent longitudinal strips of the slabs.

D. Placements on Continuous Steel Units
Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, slabs on continuous steel units shall be placed in a single continuous operation without transverse construction joints using a mechanical longitudinal screed or a self-propelled transverse finishing machine. The initial set of the concrete shall be retarded sufficiently to ensure that concrete remains plastic in at least 3 spans immediately preceding the slab being placed. Construction joints shall be used, when required for slab placements on steel beams or girders, as shown on the drawings. When staged placement of a slab is specified in the drawings, it shall be necessary to ensure that the previously placed concrete attains a compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) before placing the next stage concrete. Multiple stages may be placed in a single day if approved by the Engineer or designated representative. When drawings permit staged concrete placement without specifying a particular order of placement, a placing sequence that will not overstress any of the supporting members shall be submitted for the approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

E. Slab and Girder Units
Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, girders, slab and curbs of slab and girder spans shall be placed monolithically. Concrete girders shall be filled first, and the slab concrete placed within the time limits specified in this Item. If a transverse screed is used, the concrete shall be placed in the stem for a short distance and then the concrete placed in transverse strips. If a longitudinal screed is used, the concrete shall be placed in the outside girder stem first beginning at the low end or side, and then continue the concrete placed in longitudinal strips.

410S.17 Placing Concrete in Concrete Arches

Concrete shall be placed in arch rings so the loading is kept symmetrical on the falsework. The arch rings and ribs shall be placed in one continuous operation unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or permitted by the Engineer or designated representative. The spandrel walls or columns and the beams shall not be placed until the arch is swung. Floor slab, railing, parapet walls, etc., shall not be placed until all spandrels are complete. Slab placement shall be symmetrical about the transverse centerline so the loading of the arch is kept approximately symmetrical.

The placing sequence shall be as indicated on the drawings.

410S.18 Placing Concrete in Box Culverts

In general, construction joints will be permitted only where indicated on the drawings.

Where the top slab and walls are placed monolithically in culverts more than 4 feet (1.22 meters) in clear height, an interval of not less than 1 nor more than 2 hours shall elapse before placing the top slab to allow for settlement and shrinkage in the concrete wall.

The base slab shall be trowel finished accurately at the proper time to provide a smooth uniform surface. Top slabs, which carry traffic, shall be finished as specified for roadway slabs in "Finish of Roadway Slabs", below. Top slabs of fill type culverts shall be given a reasonably smooth float finish.

410S.19 Placing Concrete in Foundations and Substructure

Concrete shall not be placed in footings until the depth and character of the foundation has been inspected by the Engineer or designated representative and permission has been given to proceed.

Placing of concrete footings upon seal courses will be permitted after the caissons or cofferdams are free from water and the seal course cleaned. Any necessary pumping or bailing during the concrete placement shall be done from a suitable sump located outside the forms.

All temporary wales or braces inside cofferdams or caissons shall be constructed or adjusted as the work proceeds to prevent unauthorized construction joints in footings or shafts.

When footings can be placed in a dry excavation without the use of cofferdams or caissons, forms may be omitted if desired by the Contractor and approved by the Engineer or designated representative and the entire excavation filled with concrete to the elevation of the top of footing.

Concrete in columns shall be placed monolithically unless otherwise indicated on the drawings. Columns and caps and/or tie beams supported thereon may be placed in the same operation or separately. To allow for settlement and shrinkage of the column concrete, it shall be placed o the lower level of the cap or tie beam and placement delayed for not less than 1 hour nor more than 2 before proceeding with the cap or tie beam placement.

410S.20 Treatment and Finishing of Horizontal Surfaces Except Bridge Slabs

All unformed upper surfaces shall be struck off to grade and finished. The use of mortar topping for surfaces under this classification will not be permitted.

After the concrete has been struck off, the surface shall be floated with a suitable float. Bridge sidewalks shall be given a wood float or broom finish or may be striped with a brush as specified by the Engineer or designated representative.

The tops of caps and piers between bearing areas shall be sloped slightly from the center toward the edge and the tops of abutments and transition bents sloped from the back wall to the edge, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, so that water will drain from the surface. The concrete shall be given a smooth trowel finish. Bearing areas for steel units shall be constructed in such a manner to have a full and even bearing upon the concrete. When the concrete is placed below grade, bearing areas may be raised to grade on beds of Portland cement mortar consisting of 1 part cement, 2 parts sand and a minimum amount of water.

Bearing seat buildups or pedestals for concrete units shall be cast integrally with the cap or with a construction joint. The construction joint area under the bearing shall have the surface roughened thoroughly as soon as practical after initial set is obtained. The bearing seat buildups shall be placed using a latex based grout, an epoxy grout, or an approved proprietary bearing mortar, mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Pedestals shall be placed using Class C concrete, reinforced as indicated on the drawings.

The bearing area under the expansion end of concrete slabs and slab and girder spans shall be given a steel-trowel finish to the exact grades required on the drawings. Bearing areas under elastomeric bearing pads or nonreinforced bearing seat buildups shall be given a textured wood float finish. The bearing area shall not vary from a level plane more than 1/16in. (1.6 mm) in all directions.

410S.21 Finish of Bridge Slabs

In all roadway slab-finishing operations, camber for specified vertical curvature and transverse slopes shall be provided.

For concrete flat slab and concrete slab and girder spans cast in place on falsework, an additional amount of camber shall be provided to offset the initial and final deflections of the span indicated in the drawings. For concrete slab and girder spans using pan forms, a camber of approximately 3/8 in. for 30 ft. (9.5 mm for 9.14 meter) spans and ½ in. for 40 ft. (12.7 mm for 12.19 meter) spans shall be provided to offset initial and final deflections unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. When dead load deflection requirements for concrete flat slab and concrete slab and girder spans not using pan forms is not indicated on the drawings, the additional amount of camber shall be ⅛ inch per 10 foot (3.2 mm per 3 meter) of span length but not to exceed ½ inch (12.7 mm).

Bridge slabs supported on prestressed concrete beams, steel beams or girders shall receive no additional camber, except that for slabs without vertical curvature, the longitudinal camber shall be approximately ¼ inch (6.35 mm).

Work bridges or other suitable facilities shall be provided from which to perform all finishing operations and to provide access, if necessary, for the Engineer or designated representative to check measurements for slab thickness and reinforcement cover.

As soon as the concrete has been placed and vibrated in a section of sufficient width to permit working, the surface shall be struck off, leveled and screeded, carrying a slight excess of concrete ahead of the screed to insure filling of all low spots. The screed shall be designed rigid enough to hold true to shape and shall have sufficient adjustments to provide for the required camber. A vibrating screed shall be used in all slabs more than 20 feet (6.1 meters) in width. A vibrating screed may be used if heavy enough to prevent undue distortion. The screeds shall be provided with a metal edge.

Longitudinal screeds shall be moved across the concrete with a saw like motion while their ends rest on headers or templates set true to the roadway grade or on the adjacent finished slab. The transverse screeds shall be moved longitudinally approximately 1/5 of the drum length for each complete out-and-back pass of the carriage.

The surface of the concrete shall be screeded a sufficient number of times and at such intervals to produce a uniform surface, true to grade and free of voids. If necessary, the screeded surface shall be worked to a smooth finish with a long handled wood or metal float of the proper size or hand floated from bridges over the slab. Floating may not be necessary if the pan float attached to a transverse screed produces an acceptable finish. Overworking the concrete surface and overuse of finish water shall be avoided.

The Contractor shall perform in the presence of the Engineer or designated representative sufficient checks with a long handled 16-foot (5 meter) straightedge on the plastic concrete to insure that the final surface will be within the specified tolerances. The check shall be made with the straightedge parallel to the centerline. Each pass thereof shall lap half of the preceding pass. All high spots shall be removed and all depressions over 1/16inch (1.6 mm) in depth shall be filled with fresh concrete and floated. The checking and floating shall be continued until the surface is true to grade and free of depressions, high spots, voids or rough spots.

Screed-rail support holes shall be filled with concrete and finished to match the top of the slab.

The concrete surface shall be finished to a uniform texture using a carpet drag, burlap drag or broom finish. The surface shall be finished to a smooth sandy texture without blemishes, marks or scratches deeper than 1/16inch (1.6 mm). The surface texturing shall be applied using a work bridge or platform immediately after completing the straightedge checks. The carpet or burlap drag shall be drug longitudinally along the concrete surface, adjusting the surface contact area or pressure to provide a satisfactory coarsely textured surface. A broom finish may be performed using a fine bristle broom transversely.

The concrete surface shall be coated immediately after the carpet or burlay drag, or broom finish with a single application of evaporation retardant at a rate recommended by the manufacturer. The time between the texturing at any location and subsequent application of evaporation retardant shall not exceed 10 minutes. The evaporation retardant may be applied using the same workbridge used for surface texturing. The concrete surface shall not be worked once the evaporation retardant has been applied.

Interim and final curing shall be applied in accordance with Section P410S.23, "Curing Concrete".

The Contractor is responsible for the ride quality of the finished bridge slab. The Engineer or designated representative will use a 10-ft. (3.05 meter) straightedge to verify ride quality [⅛ in. or less in 10 ft (3.2 mm or less in 3.05 meters)] and to determine locations where corrections are needed. If the Engineer or designated representative determines that the ride quality is unacceptable, then the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer or designated representative for approval a plan to produce a ride of acceptable quality. All corrections for ride-quality shall be made before saw-cutting grooves.

At the option of the Contractor or when indicated on the drawings, the hardened concrete surface of bridge slabs, bridge approach slabs and direct-traffic culverts shall be given its final texture by saw grooving to meet the above requirements after completion of the required curing period. Grooves shall be cut perpendicular to the structure centerline. The grooves shall be cut continuously across the slab to within 18 in. (450 mm) of the barrier rail, curb or median divider. At skewed metal expansion joints in bridge slabs, groove cutting shall be adjusted by using narrow-width cutting heads so that all grooves end within 6 in. (150 mm) of the joint, measured perpendicular to the centerline of the metal joint. There should not be any ungrooved surface wider than 6 in. (150 mm) adjacent to either side of the joint. The minimum distance to the first groove, measured perpendicular to the edge of the concrete joint or from the junction between the concrete and the metal leg of the joint shall be 1 in. (25 mm), Grooves shall be continuously cut across construction joints or other joints in the concrete that are less than ½ in. (13 mm) wide. The same procedure described above shall be used where barrier rails, curbs or median dividers are not parallel to the structure centerline in order to maintain the 18-in. (450-mm) maximum dimension from the end of the grooves to the gutter line. The grooves shall be cut continuously across formed concrete joints.

When the plans require that a concrete overlay be placed on the slab (new construction) or on prestressed concrete box beams or other precast elements, a carpet drag, burlap drag or broom finish shall be given to all concrete surfaces to be overlaid. Saw grooving is not necessary in this case. An average texture depth for the finish of approximately 0.035 in. (0.9 mm) shall be provided with no individual test falling below 0.020 in. (0.5 mm), unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, when tested in accordance with TxDoT's Tex-436-A, "Measurement of Texture Depth by the Sand Patch Method". If the texture depth falls below what is specified, the finishing procedure shall be revised to produce the desired texture.

When the drawings require an asphalt seal with or without overlay on the slab (new construction), on prestressed concrete box beams or on other precast elements, all concrete surfaces to be covered shall be given a lightly textured broom or carpet drag finish, similar to a sidewalk finish having an average texture depth of approximately 0.025 inch (0.635 mm), when tested in accordance with TxDoT's Tex-436-A, ".

410S.22 Placing Survey Monuments

The Contractor shall obtain City Survey Monuments, for a fee of 10 dollars, from the Department of Public Works, Construction Inspection Division. Monuments shall be embedded in freshly poured concrete at locations indicated on the drawings and accessible to survey equipment at the completion of the project. The monuments shall be installed flush with the adjacent concrete.

410S.23 Curing Concrete

The Contractor shall inform the Engineer or designated representative fully of the methods and procedures proposed for curing, shall provide the proper equipment and material in adequate amounts and shall have the proposed method, equipment and material approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to placing concrete.

Inadequate curing and/or facilities therefore shall be cause for the Engineer or designated representative to notify the Contractor, in writing, that the work is unsatisfactory and the concrete will have to be removed and replaced.

All concrete shall be cured for a period of 4 curing days except as noted herein. A curing day is a calendar day when the temperature, taken in the shade away from artificial heat is above 50°F (10°C) for at least 19 hours or on colder days if the temperature of all surfaces of the concrete is maintained above 40°F (4°C) for the entire 24 hours. The required curing shall begin when all concrete has attained its initial set. TxDoT's Tex-440-A, "Initial Time-of-Set of Fresh Concrete" may be used to establish when the concrete has attained its initial set.

Table 4: Exceptions to 4-Day Curing

Description	Type of Cement	Required Curing Days
Upper Surfaces of Bridge Slabs, Top Slabs of Direct Traffic Culverts and Concrete Overlays	I or II	8
	II or I/II	10
	All types with supplementary cementing materials	10
Concrete Piling buildups		6

For upper surfaces of bridge slabs, bridge support slabs, median and sidewalk slabs and culvert top slabs constructed using Class S Concrete (Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures") interim curing using a Type 1-D curing compound shall be applied as soon as possible after application of the evaporation retardant and after the water sheen has disappeared, but no more than 45 minutes after application of the evaporation retardant. Membrane interim curing shall be applied using a work bridge or other approved apparatus to ensure a uniform application. Final curing with water cure in accordance with this section shall start as soon as possible without damaging the surface finish. Water curing shall be maintained for the duration noted in the table above. Polyethylene sheeting, burlap-polyethylene blankets, laminated mats or insulating curing mats shall be placed in direct contact with the slab when the ambient temperature is expected to drop below 40°F (4°C) during the first 72 hours of the curing period. The curing materials will be weighed down with dry mats to maintain direct contact with the concrete and to provide insulation against cold weather. Supplemental heating or insulation may be required in cold and wet weather if the insulating cotton mats become wet or if the concrete temperature drops below the specified curing temperature. Application of heat directly to concrete surfaces shall be avoided.

For the top surface of any concrete unit upon which concrete is to be placed and bonded at a later date (i.e. stub walls, risers, etc.), only water-cure in accordance with this Section shall be used.

All other concrete shall be cured as specified in pertinent Items.

The following methods are permitted for curing concrete subject to the restrictions of this Item .

A. Form Curing
   When forms are left in intimate contact with the concrete, other curing methods will not be required except for exposed surfaces and for cold weather protection.

When forms are striped before the 4-day minimum curing time has elapsed, curing shall continue by an approved method.

B. Water Curing

All exposed surfaces of the concrete shall be kept wet continuously for the required curing time. The water used for curing shall meet the requirements for concrete mixing water as indicated in Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures". Seawater will not be permitted. Water, which stains or leaves an unsightly residue, shall not be used.

1. Wet Mats

   Wet cotton mats placed in direct contact with the slab shall be maintained for the required curing time. If needed damp burlap blankets made from 9-ounce (255 gm) stock may be placed on the damp concrete surface for temporary protection prior to the application of the cotton mats, which may be placed dry and wetted down after placement.

   The mats shall be weighted down adequately to provide continuous contact with all concrete surfaces where possible. The surfaces of the concrete shall be kept wet for the required curing time. Surfaces, which cannot be cured by contact, shall be enclosed with mats, anchored positively to the forms or to the ground, so that outside air cannot enter the enclosure. Sufficient moisture shall be provided inside the enclosure to keep all surfaces of the concrete wet.

2. Water Spray

   This method shall consist of overlapping sprays or sprinklers that keep all unformed surfaces continuously wet.

3. Ponding

   This method requires the covering of the surfaces with a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of clean granular material, kept wet at all times or a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) depth of water. Satisfactory provisions shall be made to provide a dam to retain the water or saturated granular material.

C. Membrane Curing

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, either Type 1-D or Type 2 membrane curing compound may be used where permitted except that Type 1-D (Resin Base Only) will be permitted for slab concrete in bridge decks and top slabs of direct traffic culverts and all other surfaces that require a higher grade of surface finish. For substructure concrete, only one Type of curing compound will be permitted on any one structure.

TABLE 5

	REQUIRED		PERMITTED	
STRUCTURE UNIT DESCRIPTION	**Water for Complete Curing**	**Membrane for Interim Curing**	**Water for Complete Curing**	**Membrane for Complete Curing**
1. Upper surfaces of Bridge Roadway, Median and Side walk Slabs, Top Slabs of Direct Traffic, and Culverts.	X	X (resin base)		
2.Top Surface of any Concrete Unit upon which Concrete is to be placed and bonded at a later interval (Stub Walls, Risers, etc.). Other Super-structure Concrete (curbs, wing- walls, Parapet Walls, etc.).	X		*X	*X
3. Top Surface of Precast and/or Pre-stressed Piling.	X	X		
4. All Substructure Concrete Culverts. Box Sewers, Inlets, Manholes, Retaining Walls, Riprap.			*X	*X

* Polyethylene Sheeting, Burlap-Polyethylene Mats or Laminated Mats in close intimate contact with the concrete surfaces, will be considered equivalent to water or membrane curing for items under 4.

The membrane curing shall be applied just after free moisture has disappeared in a single, uniform coating at the rate of coverage recommended by the manufacturer and as approved by the Engineer or designated representative, but not less than 1 gallon per 180 square feet (1 liter per 4.4 square meters) of area. Tests for acceptance shall be at this specified rate.

Membrane curing shall not be applied to dry surfaces, but shall be applied just after free moisture has disappeared. Formed surfaces and surfaces which have given a first rub shall be dampened and shall be moist at the time of application of the membrane.

When membrane is used for complete curing, the film shall remain unbroken for the minimum curing period specified. Membrane, which is damaged, shall be corrected immediately by reapplication of membrane. Polyethylene sheeting, burlap-polyethylene mats or laminated mats in close intimate contact with the concrete surfaces, will be considered equivalent to membrane curing. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawing, the choice of membrane type shall be at the option of the Contractor, except that the Engineer or designated representative may require the same curing method for like portions of a single structure.

410S.24 Removal of Forms and Falsework

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawing, forms for vertical surfaces may be removed when the concrete has aged 12 hours after initial set, provided it can be done without damage to the concrete. Forms for mass concrete placements shall be maintained in place for 4-days following concrete placement. Mass placements are defined as concrete placements with a least dimension greater than equal to 5 ft. (1.575 meters), or those designated as such on the drawings.

Forms for inside curb faces may be removed in approximately 3 hours provided it can be done without damage to the curb.

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings weight supporting forms and falsework spanning more than 1 ft. (300 mm) for structures, bridge components and culvert slabs shall remain in place until the concrete has attained a minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.25 MPa). Forms for other structural components may be removed as specified by the Engineer or designated representative.

Inside forms (walls and top slabs) for inlets, box culverts and sewers may be removed after the concrete has attained a minimum compressive strength of 1800 psi (12.4 MPa), provided an overhead support system, approved by the Engineer or designated representative, is used to transfer the weight (mass) of the top slab to the walls of the box culvert or sewer before the support provided by the forms is removed.

If all test cylinders made for the purpose of form removal have been broken without attaining the required strength, forms shall remain in place for a total of 14 curing days.

The above provisions relative to form removal shall apply only to forms or parts thereof which are constructed to permit removal without disturbing forms or falsework required to be left in place for a longer period on other portions of the structure.

Remove all metal appliances used inside forms for alignment shall be removed to a depth of at least ½ in. (13 mm) from the concrete surface. The appliances shall be manufactured to allow the removal without undue chipping or spalling of the concrete, and so that it leaves a smooth opening in the concrete surface when removed. Rods, bolts and ties shall not be burned-off.

Backfilling against walls of Type I or Type II cement shall not take place for a minimum of 7 days. Backfilling against walls of Type III cement shall not take place until the cylinder compressive strength has reached 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) or the wall has cured for 5 days.

All forms and falsework shall be removed unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.

410S.25 Defective Work

Any defective work discovered after the forms have been removed shall be repaired as soon as possible in accordance with "Finishing Exposed Surfaces", below.

If the surface of the concrete is bulged, uneven or shows excess honeycombing or form marks, which in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, cannot be repaired satisfactorily, the entire section shall be removed and replaced at the expense of the Contractor.

410S.26 Finishing Exposed Surfaces

A. Ordinary Surface Finish

An Ordinary Surface Finish shall be applied to all concrete surfaces either as a final finish or preparatory to a higher grade or class of finish. Higher grades and classes of finish shall conform to Item No. 411S, "Surface Finishes for Concrete". Where neither a grade or class of finish is specified, an Ordinary Surface Finish only, will be required.

Ordinary Surface Finish shall be provided as follows:

1. After formal removal, all porous, honeycombed areas and spalled areas shall be corrected by chipping away all loose or broken material to sound concrete.

2. Featheredges shall be eliminated by saw-cutting and chipping spalled areas to a depth at least ½ in. (13 mm) deep perpendicular to the surface. Shallow cavities shall be repaired using a latex adhesive grout, cement mortar or epoxy grout approved by the Engineer or designated representative. If judged repairable by the Engineer or designated representative, large defective areas shall be corrected using concrete or other material approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

3. Holes and spalls caused by removal of form ties, etc., shall be cleaned and filled with latex adhesive grout, cement mortar or epoxy grout approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Only the holes shall be filled. The patch shall not be blended with the surrounding concrete. On surfaces to receive a rub finish in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 411S, "Surface Finishes for Concrete" the exposed parts of metal chairs shall be chipped out to a depth of ½ inch (13 mm) and the surface repaired.

4. All fins, runs, drips or mortar that will be exposed shall be removed from surfaces. Form marks and chamfer edges shall be smoothed by grinding and/or dry rubbing.

5. Grease, oil, dirt, curing compound, etc., shall be removed from surfaces requiring a higher grade of finish. Discolorations resulting from spillage or splashing of asphalt, paint or other similar material shall be removed.

6. Repairs shall be dense, well bonded and properly cured and when made on surfaces, which remain exposed and do not require a higher finish, shall be finished to blend with the surrounding concrete.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings Ordinary Surface Finish shall be the final finish for the following exposed surfaces:

1. inside and top of inlets,
2. inside and top of manholes,
3. inside of sewer appurtenances,
4. inside of culvert barrels,
5. bottom of bridge decks between beams or girders,
6. vertical and bottom surfaces of interior concrete beams or girders.

B. Rubbed Finish

In general, the following areas shall require a rubbed finish and shall receive a first and second rubbing:

1. The top, exterior and roadway facia of curbs and parapet walls.
2. All concrete surfaces of railing.
3. The exterior vertical facia of slab spans, rigid frames, arches and box girders.
4. The outside and bottom surfaces of facia beams or girders (except precast concrete beams).
5. The underside of overhanging slabs to the point of juncture of the supporting beams.
6. All vertical surfaces of piers, columns, bent caps, abutments, wing walls and retaining walls which are exposed to view after all backfill and embankments is placed.
7. Exposed formed surfaces of inlet and outlet structures on culverts, transition structures, headwalls and inlets.
8. Such other surfaces specified elsewhere to receive a rubbed finish and such additional surfaces required by the Engineer or designated representative to receive a rubbed finish.

After removal of forms and as soon as the mortar used in pointing has set sufficiently, surfaces to be rubbed shall be wet with a brush and given a first surface rubbing with a medium coarse carborundum stone. This

rubbing shall be done before the concrete has cured more than 48 hours.

The second rubbing shall present a cleaned uniform appearance free from drip marks and discoloration. It shall be given with a No. 30 carborundum stone or an abrasive of equal quality.

If the Contractor elects to use epoxy paint in lieu of the second rubbings the Contractor may do so upon approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

C. Special Surface Finishes
Striated, exposed aggregate and other special surface finishes shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 411S, "Surface Finishes for Concrete" and/or with the requirements indicated on the drawings.

410S.27 Repair of Existing Structures

Assessment, repair and rehabilitation of structural concrete in existing structures shall be in accordance with current version of ACI 562 Code Requirements for Assessment, Repair, and Rehabilitation of Existing Concrete Structures. Source: Rule No. R161-21.17 , 9-14-2021.

410S.28 Measurement and Payment

No direct measurement or payment will be made for the work to be done or the equipment to be furnished under this item, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.17 , 9-14-2021.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Standard Specification Item 410S, "Concrete Structures"	
City of Austin Standard Specification Items	
Designation	Description
Item No. 360S	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 413S	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (PC Concrete)
Item No. 425S	Prestressed Concrete Structures
U.S. Department of Commerce Voluntary Product Standard, PS 1 American Concrete Institute	
Designation	Description
ACI 347	Guide to Formwork for Concrete
American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)	
Designation	Description
ASTM D-994	Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (bituminous Type)
ASTM D-1751	Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D-1752	Prefprmed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving

	and Structural Construction
Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications	
Designation	Description
DMS-4640	Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
DMS-4650	Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants"
DMS-6100	Epoxy and Adhesives
DMS-6160	Waterstops, Nylon Reinforced Neoprene Sheet, and Elastomeric Pads
DMS-6310	Joint Materials and Fillers
Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures	
Designation	Description
Tex-436-A	Measurement of Texture Depth by the Sand Patch Method
Tex-440-A	Initial Time-of-Set of Fresh Concrete

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Standard Specification Item 410S, "Concrete Structures"	
American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM	
Designation	Description
A 36/A 36M	Carbon Structural Steel
A 82	Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
A 185	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
A 496	Steel Wire, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
A 497	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
A 615/A 615M	Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
A 675/A 675M	Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties
A 706/A 706M	Low- Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
A 775/A 775M	Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars
A 884/A 884M	Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Fabric For Reinforcement
A 934/A 934M	Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Reinforcing Steel Bars
A 996/A 996M	Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
D3963/D3963M	Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-coated Reinforcing Steel Bars
Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures	
Designation	Description
Tex-739-I	Sampling and Testing Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel
City of Austin Standard (Details)	
Designation	Description
Standard 406S-1	Reinforced Steel Tolerances
Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications	
Designation	Description
DMS 8130	Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel

City of Austin Standard Specification Items	
Designation	Description
Item No. 404S	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item No. 407S	Fibrous Concrete
Item No. 414S	Concrete Retaining Walls
Item No. 420S	Drilled Shaft Foundations
Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges	
Designation	Description
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 420	Concrete Structures
Item No. 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item No. 422	Reinforced Concrete Slab
Item No. 423	Retaining Walls
Item No. 440	Reinforcing Steels

SECTION 503S

FRAMES, GRATES, RINGS AND COVERS

503S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern furnishing and installation of frames, grates, rings and covers for inlets, manholes and other structures indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

503S.2 SUBMITTALS

The submittal requirements of this specification section include manufacturer, model number, description, painting requirements and characteristics of frames, grates, rings, covers, height adjustment insert and nuts and bolts required for completion of the work.

503S.3 MATERIALS

The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials and equipment the Contractor proposes for incorporation in the Work is the kind and quality that satisfies the specified functions and quality. The City of Austin Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Lists (SPLs) form a part of these Specifications. Contractors may, when appropriate, elect to use products from the SPLs; however, submittal to the Engineer or designated representative is still required. If the Contractor elects to use any materials from these lists, each product shall be completely and clearly identified by its corresponding SPL number when making the product submittal.

The purpose of the SPLs is to expedite the review by the Engineer or designated representative and, if necessary, the City of Austin Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Committee of Contractor product submittals. The SPL's should not be interpreted as being a pre-approved list of products necessarily meeting the requirements for a given construction Project. Items contained in the SPL cannot be substituted for items that are shown on the Drawings, called for in the specifications, or specified in the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of Contract, unless approved by the Engineer or designated representative in conjunction with the Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Committee. The Standard Product List current at the time of plan approval will govern.

A. **Welded**. Steel Welded steel grates and frames shall conform to the number; size, dimensions and details indicated on the Drawings and shall be welded into an assembly in accordance with those details. Steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 36/A 36M, "Specification for Structural Steel".

B. **Castings**. Castings, whether Carbon-Steel, Gray Cast Iron or Ductile Iron shall conform to the shape and dimensions indicated on the Drawings and shall be clean substantial castings, free from sand or blowholes or other defects. Surfaces of the castings shall be free from burnt on sand and shall be reasonably smooth. Runners, risers, fins and other cast on pieces shall be removed from the castings and such areas ground smooth. Bearing surfaces between manhole rings and covers or grates and frames shall be cast or machined with such precision that uniform bearing shall be provided throughout the perimeter area of contact. Pairs of machined castings shall be matchmarked to facilitate subsequent identification at installation with the exception of water and wastewater manhole and valve castings. These manhole and valve castings shall be fabricated with such draft, tolerances, bolt hole spacing, etc., that all rings and covers of a particular type or class are interchangeable and match-marking will not be required.

Steel castings shall conform to ASTM A 27/27M, "Specifications for Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application". Grade 70-36 (480-250) shall be furnished unless otherwise specified on the Drawings.

Cast iron castings shall conform to ASTM A 48, "Specification for Gray Iron Castings", Class 30.
Ductile Iron castings shall conform to ASTM A 536, "Specification for Ductile Iron Castings". Grade 60-40-18 (415-275-125) shall be used unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

C. **Manhole Cover Riser Rings**. Height-adjustment inserts for wastewater manhole rings, which are used for raising standard manhole covers, shall be those models listed in Water and Wastewater Standard Products List item QPL WW-330.

D. **Nuts and Bolts**. Nuts and bolts shall be hex head 5/8 " × 2.5" (16 mm × 63.5 mm) #11 National Coarse Thread, Type 316 stainless steel. For bolted manhole covers, a thin film of an approved "Anti-freeze" compound, approved by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be applied to all bolts.

E. **Mortar**. Unless otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer or designated representative, the mortar for bedding castings shall consist of one (1) part Portland cement and three (3) parts sand and sufficient water to provide the desired consistency. The gradation of the fine aggregate shall meet the requirements for Grade No. 1, Section 403, "Concrete for Structures".

503S.4 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

Frames, grates, rings and covers shall be constructed of the specified materials in accordance with the details indicated on the Drawings or in the City of Austin Standard Details. The Frames, grates, rings and covers shall be placed carefully to the lines or grades indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

All welding shall conform to the requirements of the ANSI/AWS Structural Welding Code D1.1. Welded frames, grates, rings and covers shall be given 1 coat of a commercial grade red lead oil paint and 2 coats of commercial grade aluminum paint. All coats shall be a minimum of 1.5 mils (0.4 mm), dry.

Painting of gray iron castings will not be required, except when used in conjunction with structural steel shapes.

503S.5 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Frames, grates, rings and covers will not be measured and payment for furnishing all materials, tools, equipment, labor and incidentals to complete the Work will be included in the Bid Items which constitute the complete structures.

END OF SECTION

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Section 503S Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 403S	Concrete for Structures

City of Austin Water and Wastewater Standard Products List

Designation	Description
QPL-WW-330	Manhole Cover Riser Rings for raising City of Austin Standard Manhole Covers

American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
A36/A36M	Specification for Structural Steel
A27/A27M	Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application
A48	Specification for Gray Iron Castings
A536	Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

ANSI/AWS

Designation	Description
Code D 1.1	Structural Welding Code

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Section 503S Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 504S	Adjusting Structures
Section 510	Pipe

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 503S-1	457mm (18") Cover and Frame
No. 503S-2S	Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-2W	Sanitary Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-3S	Bolted Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-3W	Bolted Sanitary Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-4S	Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 503S-4W	Sanitary Sewer Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 503S-5S	Bolted Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 503S-5W	Watertight Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 506S-2	Major Manhole Adjustment
No. 506S-11	Storm Sewer Manhole Details

TxDOT Specifications

Designation	Description
Item 421	Portland Cement Concrete

ITEM NO. 506
MANHOLES 2-22-21

506.1 Description

This item governs construction of pre-cast and cast-in-place wastewater manholes, storm water manholes, storm water junction boxes and cast-in-place wastewater junction boxes, complete in place, including excavation, installation, backfilling and surface restoration; required items including rings, covers, coatings, and appurtenances; and incidental work such as pumping and drainage necessary to complete the work. Contractor-performed acceptance testing is required for wastewater manholes.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

506.2 Qualifications

Applicators of coatings to the interior surfaces of wastewater manholes, as specified in 506.4.R and 506.5.J, shall be listed on Austin Water (AW) Standard Products List (SPL) WW-511. Individual(s) setting up and operating equipment to core through the walls of existing manholes or junction boxes shall have experience in coring similar size holes through the walls of similar size and type structures on at least ten projects (or 15 manholes) in AW's jurisdiction.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

506.3 Project Submittals

A. Products and Materials

The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials the Contractor proposes for incorporation in the Work are of the kind and quality that satisfy the requirements in the Contract Documents. AW shall be included in all submittal review. The AW SPLs are considered a part of the Specifications for the Work. The Contractor shall use products from the SPLs for all water and wastewater construction unless alternative products are shown on the Drawings; called for in the specifications; or specified in the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of the Contract.

The products included in the SPLs current at the time of plan approval shall govern; unless a specific product or products on the lists have subsequently been removed from those SPLs because of quality or performance issues. Products and materials that are not covered by SPLs shall meet the requirements in the contract documents.

Submittals for the products and materials covered by this specification shall include manufacturer catalog sheets, technical data sheets, shop drawings, product or material test results, requirements listed below, and any other information needed to adequately describe the product or material. For products covered by SPLs, the submittal shall include a copy of the applicable SPL with the proposed product identified. An SPL by itself is not considered an adequate submittal.

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

1. For pre-cast manholes and junction boxes: shop drawings for each structure showing, at a minimum, the Project and Contractor's name: manufacturer's name and plant location; applicable specifications; list of materials (such as adjusting rings, boots, gaskets, and pre-cast sections) by type and quantity; elevation view showing diameter or size, ring and cover size and elevation, ring type (bolted or unbolted, flared top or flared bottom) wall thickness, elevations of transitions from large diameter sections to smaller diameter sections, base width and thickness, total depth, size of openings, reinforcement, and length of each pre-cast section; structure identification number and station location; pipe line identification; pipe material and

size; pipe flowline elevations; plan view showing azimuthal orientation (based on 360 degrees clockwise) of the pipes relative to the outflow pipe; technical data sheets covering pipe-to-manhole or pipe-to-junction box connectors, and gaskets.

2. For cast-in-place manholes and junction boxes: formwork drawings sealed by a registered Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Texas with documented experience in formwork design for wall pours that exceed 4 feet in height and slabs that are not ground supported.
3. For hydraulic cement concrete; mix components and proportions, material sources, materials test results.
4. For mortar: mix components and proportions, material sources, materials test results.
5. For non-shrink grout: technical data sheet indicating ASTM type and containing instructions on surface preparation, mixing, placing, and curing procedures.
6. For wastewater manhole coatings and linings: technical data sheets that include instructions on surface preparation, mixing, placing, and curing procedures; technical data sheets for coating thickness measuring equipment and for holiday detection test equipment.
7. For connections to existing manholes or junction boxes: details showing the size, location, and method of removal of the wall section, including any temporary supports attached to the manhole or junction box wall; details showing the location of existing joints, other connecting pipes, and other features that penetrate or attach to the wall; and technical data sheets covering the pipe-to-manhole or pipe-to-junction box connectors.

B. Acceptance Test Records

Submittal of acceptance test records is required for wastewater manholes and shall include as a minimum the following items:

Name of the manhole manufacturer.
Interior surface coating type and application method.
Model and manufacturer of vacuum tester.
Date tested/date re-tested.
Indication of whether test passed or failed and statement of corrective action taken if test failed.
Test Method Used.
Location/station of manhole.
Type of base: Precast/cast-in-place.
Type of repairs made to the joints.
The test records shall also be included as part of the Project records turned in with the acceptance package.

C. Installation

The Contractor shall submit evidence that the individual(s) setting up the equipment and coring through the walls of manholes and junction boxes are experienced with the equipment and procedures and have successfully cored through the same types of materials using the same types of equipment.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

506.4 Materials

A. Concrete

All cast-in-place concrete shall conform to City of Austin (COA) Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures." Cast in place concrete shall be Class A or as specified on the Drawings. Concrete used in precast concrete manhole base sections, riser sections and appurtenances shall conform to the requirements of Texas Department of Transportation Item 421, Hydraulic Cement Concrete. Concrete for backfill of over-excavated areas shall be COA Class A, or Class J (COA Standard Specification Item 403S, Concrete For Structures) or Controlled Low Strength Material (COA Standard Specification Item 402S) as

indicated on the Drawings.

B. Mortar
Mortar shall be composed of one part Portland cement, one part masonry cement (or ¼ part hydrated lime), and sand equal to 2½ to 3 times the sum of the volumes of the cements and lime used. The sand shall meet the requirements for "Fine Aggregate" as given in Standard Specification Item No. 403S "Concrete For Structures." Mortar shall not be used for any purpose on the inside of wastewater manholes.

C. Grout
Grout shall be the non-shrink type conforming to ASTM C 1107, Packaged, Dry, Hydraulic Cement Grout (Nonshrink), Grade C. Grout shall be used as packaged, with the mixed ingredients requiring only the addition of water.

D. Reinforcement
The reinforcing steel shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel." Secondary, non-structural steel in cast-in-place stormwater manholes may be replaced by collated fibrillated polypropylene fibers, if approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

E. Brick
The brick for ring adjustment courses and for stormwater manholes shall be of first quality, sound, hard burned, perfectly shaped brick conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 62, Grade SW, or concrete brick meeting the requirements of ASTM C 55, Grade N-1. Use of brick to construct any part of wastewater manholes is prohibited.

F. Rings and Covers
Rings and covers shall conform to the requirements of COA Standard Specification Item No. 503, "Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers."

1. Replacement Rings and Covers, 24-inch Diameter Lids
This ring and cover shall be used for the replacement of broken rings and covers, minor manhole adjustment, or as otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

2. Rings and Covers, 32-inch Diameter Lids
This ring and cover shall be used for all new manhole construction, except as otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

G. Bulkheads
Bulkheads shall meet the requirements of COA Standard Specification Item No. 507 "Bulkheads."

H. Precast Base Sections, Riser Sections, Flat-top Slabs and Cones
Precast concrete base sections, riser sections, flat-top slabs, and cones shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 478. The width of the invert shall be specifically sized for the connecting pipes. Inverts shall be "U" shaped channels. The channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall, for pipes 24 inches in diameter and smaller, shall be a minimum of three-fourths of the diameter of the pipe, with the top of the channel being a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipe connection points. For manholes connecting to pipes larger than 24 inches in diameter, the channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall shall be at least equal to the full pipe diameter. Changes in flow direction in the inverts of manholes shall be made by constructing smooth, long-radius sweeps to minimize splashing, turbulence, and eddies. The manhole invert grade shall 1) be a continuation of the inlet and outlet pipe grades carried through

to the centerline of the manhole, or 2) have a minimum slope of 2.5 percent between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts, or 3) have a minimum difference of 0.10 feet between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts, whichever provides the maximum difference in invert elevation between the inlet and outlet pipes, 4) have a straight section of invert that is 4 to 6 inches in length to transition between the curved portion of the invert channel and the connecting pipes in order to accommodate the mandrel apparatus for up to 15-inch dimeter pipes. In all cases, the bottom(s) of the channel(s) shall provide a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipes. Where wastewater lines enter a manhole above the flowline of the outlet, the invert shall be filleted to prevent splashing and solids deposition.

Joints for wastewater base sections, riser sections, and cones shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 443. Additionally, joint dimensions for 48-inch inside diameter wastewater manhole sections and cones shall comply with the "Wedge Seal Offset Joint Detail, Precast Manhole Section", located in SPL WW-146. Joint dimensions for wastewater manhole sections and cones larger than 48-inch inside diameter shall comply with COA Standard No. 506S-12, "O-Ring Joint Detail Precast Manhole Section" or "Wedge Seal Offset Joint Detail, Precast Manhole Section", located in SPL WW-146. Precast bases for 48-inch inside diameter manholes shall have preformed inverts. Inserts acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative shall be embedded in the concrete wall of the manhole sections to facilitate handling; however, through-wall holes for lifting will not be permitted.

I. Precast Junction Boxes
Precast junction boxes shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C913 and shall be allowed only where indicated on the Drawings or acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative.

J. Pipe-to-Manhole and Pipe-to-Junction-Box Connectors
Resilient connectors, ring waterstops, and seals at connections of wastewater pipes to pre-cast and cast-in-place manholes and junction boxes shall be watertight, flexible, resilient and non-corrosive, conforming to ASTM C 923. Metallic mechanical devices for securing the connectors, ring waterstops, and seals in place shall be Type 304 stainless steel.

K. Precast Flat-Slab Transition/Junction Box Lids
Precast slab transitions and lids shall be designed to safely resist pressures resulting from loads which might result from any combination of forces imposed by an HS-20 loading as defined by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO). The joints of precast slab transitions and of lids for wastewater applications shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443.

L. Precast-Prefabricated Tee Manholes
Tee manholes shall be allowed only where indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The main pipe section shall conform to the requirements of COA Standard Specification Item No. 510, "Pipe." The vertical manhole portion (tee) above the main pipe shall conform to the requirements of the precast components.

The manhole tee shall have a minimum inside diameter of 48 inches and shall rise vertically centered or tangent to the main pipe, as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. An access hole less than 48 inches in diameter shall be cut into the main pipe to allow a ledge for support of access ladders. Unless otherwise specified on the Drawings, the main pipe portion of the tee manhole shall be included in the unit price bid for the unit tee manhole price.

M. Precast Grade Rings
Rings shall be reinforced Class A concrete

1. Precast Grade Rings, 24½ inches Inside Diameter
   This adjustment ring shall be used only for adjusting existing manholes with 24-inch diameter lids and for Wastewater Access Device. Inside to outside diameter dimension of ring shall be 6 inches with a thickness of 3 to 6 inches.
2. Precast Grade Rings, 35 inches Inside Diameter
   This adjustment ring shall be used for all new manhole construction with 32-inch diameter lids. Inside to outside diameter dimension of ring shall be 6 inches with a thickness of 2 to 6 inches.

N. High Density Polyethylene Grade Rings
Plastic grade (adjusting) rings shall be injection molded from high density polyethylene identified according to ASTM D4976. Reprocessable and recyclable ethylene plastic materials are allowed. Manufacturers of HDPE adjusting rings shall be listed on SPL WW-146G.

O. Controlled Low Strength Material
Controlled low strength material (CLSM) shall meet Standard Specification Item 402S, Controlled Low Strength Material.

P. Cement Stabilized Sand
Cement stabilized sand for bedding or backfilling shall contain 2 bags of Portland cement per cubic yard. The sand shall meet the requirements for "Fine Aggregate" in Standard Specification Item 403S, "Concrete for Structures."

Q. Waterproofing Joint Materials
O-rings and wedge seals for the joints of all wastewater manholes, and for stormwater manholes when indicated on the Drawings, shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443. Cold applied preformed plastic gaskets for stormwater manholes shall be as specified in City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 510, "Pipe." Plastic seals wrapped around manholes at joints, and hydrophillic waterstops installed in joints, shall be listed on SPL WW-146A. PVC waterstops installed in joints and waterproofing compounds applied to the exterior surfaces of manholes and junction boxes shall be as specified in the Contract Documents.

R. Interior Surface Coatings for Wastewater Manholes
Interior surface coatings for wastewater manholes shall be either: as specified on the Drawings, as designated in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, or as included on SPL WW-511, which lists acceptable products, uses and applicators.

S. Structural Lining Systems for Wastewater Manholes
Structural lining systems for wastewater manholes shall be either: as specified on the Drawings, as designated in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, or as included on SPL WW-511A.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

506.5 Construction

A. General
Pipe ends within the base section or junction box walls shall not be relied upon to support overlying manhole dead and live load weights. All wastewater branch connections to new or existing mains shall be made at manholes, with the branch pipe crown installed at an elevation no lower than the elevation of the effluent pipe crown. Changes in flow direction in the inverts shall be made by constructing smooth, long-radius sweeps to minimize splashing, turbulence, and eddies. Where wastewater lines enter the manhole up to 24 inches above the flowline of the outlet, the invert shall be sloped upward in a U-shaped channel three-fourths of the diameter

of the incoming pipe to receive the flow, thus preventing splashing or solids deposition. A drop pipe shall be provided for a wastewater pipe entering a manhole whenever the invert cannot be constructed to prevent splashing and solids deposition. Construction of extensions to existing systems shall require placement of bulkheads at locations indicated or directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, stormwater manholes shall have eccentric cones and wastewater manholes shall have concentric cones, except on manholes over large mains where an eccentric cone shall be situated to provide access to an invert ledge. Eccentric cones may be used where conflicts with other utilities dictate. Flat-slab tops may be used only where clearance problems are encountered or where specified on the Drawings. Cast-in-place wastewater junction boxes shall be allowed only where indicated on the Drawings or where accepted by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Foundation Support

Manholes shall be founded at the established elevations on uniformly stable subgrade. Unstable subgrade shall be over-excavated a minimum of 12 inches and replaced with a material acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. Precast base units shall be founded and leveled on a 6-inch thick layer of coarse aggregate bedding. A pipe section with a prefabricated tee manhole and half the length of the adjoining pipe sections on each side shall be founded on a minimum 6-inch thick layer of unreinforced Class A concrete (COA Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete For Structures"). The cast-in-place concrete cradle shall be placed against undisturbed trench walls up to the pipe's springline.

C. Cast-in-Place Concrete

Structural concrete work shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures." Forms shall be used for all slabs that are not ground supported and for all vertical surfaces above the foundation level. Formwork shall be designed according to American Concrete Institute ACI 347, Guide to Formwork for Concrete. Outside forms on vertical surfaces may be omitted where concrete can be cast against the surrounding earthen material that can be trimmed to a smooth vertical face.

D. Manhole Bases

Pre-cast bases shall conform to requirements in 506.4.H.

Cast-in-place bases shall have a minimum thickness of 12 inches at the invert flowline. The widths of all manhole inverts shall be specifically sized for the connecting pipes. Inverts shall be "U" shaped channels. The channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall, for pipes 24 inches in diameter and smaller, shall be a minimum of three-fourths of the pipe diameter, with the top of the channel being a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipe connection points. For manholes connecting to pipes greater than 24 inches in diameter, the channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall shall be equal to the full pipe diameter. The manhole invert grade shall 1) be a continuation of the inlet and outlet pipe grades carried through to the centerline of the manhole, or 2) have a minimum slope of 2.5 percent between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts, or 3) have a minimum difference of 0.10 feet between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts, whichever provides the maximum difference in invert elevation between the inlet and outlet pipes, 4) have a straight section of invert that is 4 to 6 inches in length to transition between the curved portion of the invert channel and the connecting pipes in order to accommodate the mandrel apparatus for up to 15-inch dimeter pipes. In all cases, the bottom(s) of the channel(s) shall provide a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipes. Changes in flow direction in the inverts of manholes shall be made by constructing smooth, large-radius sweeps to prevent splashing, turbulence, and eddies. The lowermost riser section may be set in the Portland cement concrete, while still plastic, after which the base shall be cured a minimum of 24 hours prior to proceeding with construction of the manhole up to 12 feet in depth. The base shall be cured an additional 24 hours prior to continuing construction above the 12-foot level.

Wastewater manholes having cast-in-place bases may be constructed over existing wastewater pipes and the top half of the pipe removed to facilitate invert construction, except where the existing pipe is PVC, in which case, the entire pipe shall be removed from inside the manhole. The manhole floor shall rise outwardly from the springline elevation of the pipe, approximately one inch for each 12 inches of run (8 percent slope). The floors of stormwater manholes, also, shall rise outwardly from the springline elevation of the pipe, approximately one inch for each 12 inches of run (8 percent slope).

Wastewater manholes with lines larger than 18 inches shall require pre-cast bases; manholes constructed over in-service mains however, may be built on cast-in-place bases if the flow cannot be interrupted.

E. Pipe Connections to New Manholes and Junctions Boxes

Wastewater pipe connections to new manholes and junction boxes shall be made using flexible, resilient, and non-corrosive watertight boot connectors or ring waterstops acceptable to the Engineer and conforming to the requirements of ASTM C-923. Any voids in the annular space between the pipe and boot connector or ring waterstop and the inside of the manhole wall shall be filled with non-shrink grout to prevent solids collection. New precast manholes and manholes with cast-in-place bases shall have holes for pipe penetrations in the manhole wall separated by a minimum of 7 inches, designed by the manhole manufacturer and as measured from the inside diameter of the cored or formed holes on the inside wall of the manhole to ensure the structural integrity of the manhole wall.

F. Pipe Connections to Existing Manholes and Junction Boxes

Wastewater pipe connections to existing manholes and junction boxes shall be made by removing the wall section by coring; installing flexible, resilient, and non-corrosive boot connectors or ring waterstops acceptable to the Engineer and conforming to the requirements of ASTM C-923; filling any voids in the annular space between the pipe and boot connector or ring waterstop and the inside of the manhole or junction box wall with non-shrink grout; rebuilding the invert to conform to Section 506.5.D; rehabilitating the interior walls with structural lining material listed on SPL WW-511A, and coating the interior of the manhole with material listed on SPL WW-511. Connections to existing manholes and junction boxes shall be made at locations that allow the removal limits of the wall section to be no closer than 12 inches to the inside diameter of the nearest existing connecting pipe. Equipment used to remove the wall section shall be operated in a manner that does not damage the adjacent interior coating, substrate, or wall. This includes installation of anchors or other supports that are attached to the manhole or junction box wall for temporary support of the removal equipment.

G. Waterproofing

PVC waterstops, hydrophillic waterstops, joint wrapping, and waterproofing compounds shall be installed as specified. Material wrapped around manholes at joints shall be listed on SPL WW-146A regardless of whether installation of the material is required by the Contract for waterproofing or is volunteered by the Contractor for ensuring acceptance of the manhole joints.

H. Backfilling

Backfilling of manholes shall conform to the density requirements of COA Standard Specification Item No. 510, "Pipe." Manhole construction in roadways may be staged to facilitate pavement base construction. Manholes constructed to interim elevations to facilitate interim construction shall be covered with steel plates that conform to the requirements of COA Standard 804S-4, sheets 5, 6 and 7, Steel Plating. Steel plates on wastewater manholes shall be set in mortar to minimize inflow of storm water runoff. Manholes shall be completed to finish elevation prior to placement of the roadway's finish surface except on pavement reconstruction projects, where castings may be adjusted after paving is completed. The excavation for completion of manhole construction shall be backfilled in accordance with COA Standards for Trench Repair.

I. Height Adjustment of Manholes

1. General

All adjustments shall be completed prior to the placement of the final roadway surface except on pavement reconstruction projects, where castings may be adjusted after paving is completed.

Brick shall not be used in making height adjustments to wastewater manholes. Mortar shall not be used for any purpose on the inside of wastewater manholes.

Manhole components to be reused shall be carefully removed and the contact areas shall be cleaned of all mortar, concrete, grease and sealing compounds. Any items broken in the process of removal and cleaning shall be replaced in kind by the Contractor at its expense.

If the adjustment involves lowering the top of a manhole, a sufficient depth of pre-cast concrete rings or brick courses shall be removed to permit reconstruction. Existing mortar shall be cleaned from the top surface remaining in place and from all brick or concrete rings to be reused and the manhole rebuilt to the required elevation. The manhole ring and cover shall then be installed with the top surface conforming to the proposed grade.

If the adjustment involves raising the elevation of the top of the manhole in accordance with "Minor Manhole Height Adjustment," the top of brick or concrete ring shall be cleaned and built up vertically to the new elevation, using new or salvaged concrete rings or bricks and the ring and cover installed with the top surface conforming to the proposed grade.

After rings and covers are set to grade, the inside and outside of the precast concrete grade rings shall be wiped with non-shrink grout to form a durable surface and water-tight joints. The grouted surface shall be smooth and even with the manhole cone section. Grout shall not be placed when the atmospheric temperature is at or below 40°F. If a sudden drop in temperature below 40°F occurs or temperatures below 40°F are predicted, the grouted surfaces shall be protected against freezing for at least 24 hours.

2. Minor Manhole Height Adjustment (New and Existing Manholes)

Minor manhole height adjustments shall be performed as indicated on COA Standard 506S-4, "Minor Manhole Height Adjustment", and shall consist of adding precast reinforced concrete rings to adjust new and existing manholes to final grade. Brick shall not be used in making height adjustments to wastewater manholes.

If the adjustment involves raising the elevation of the top of the manhole, the top of brick or concrete ring shall be cleaned and built up vertically to the new elevation, using new or salvaged concrete rings or bricks and the ring and cover installed with the top surface conforming to the proposed grade.

For new manhole construction, the maximum allowable throat or chimney height, including the depth of the ring casting, shall be limited to 21 inches of vertical face on the interior surface. For adjustments of existing manholes that fall within the limits of overlay and street reconstruction projects, the maximum vertical allowable height, including the depth of the ring casting, shall be limited to 27 inches of vertical face on the interior surface. All other existing manholes shall have a maximum allowable throat or chimney height adjustment, including the depth of the ring casting, of 12 inches of vertical face on the interior surface. Any adjustment that will exceed these requirements shall be accomplished as indicated on COA Standard 506S-2, "Major Manhole Height Adjustment" and as described below. Manholes not located in paved areas shall have bolted covers. Manholes located within paved areas (street right-of-

way only) shall be standard non-bolted unless otherwise noted on the drawings.

3. Major Manhole Height Adjustment (Existing Manholes Only)
Any adjustment that exceeds the requirements of Minor Manhole Adjustments, shall be accomplished as indicated on COA Standard 506S-2, "Major Manhole Height Adjustment," and shall consist of any combination of removing and replacing the concrete rings, and/or the manhole cone section, and/or the straight riser section of the manhole in order to bring the manhole to final grade. Major manhole adjustments shall apply only to existing manholes. Manholes not located in paved areas shall have bolted covers. Manholes located within paved areas (street right-of-way only) shall be standard non-bolted unless otherwise noted on the drawings.

J. Interior Coatings of Wastewater Manholes and Junction Boxes
The interior surfaces of all Portland cement concrete wastewater manholes and junction boxes shall be coated with products specified either on the Drawings, designated in writing by the Engineer or representative, or listed on SPL WW-511. Product selection shall conform to usage described in that SPL. Surface preparation shall follow the product manufacturer's recommended procedures contained in technical data sheets unless otherwise specified in the contract documents. The Contractor shall measure the coating thickness according to ASTM D 6132, Nondestructive Measurement of Dry Film Thickness of Applied Organic Coatings Over Concrete Using an Ultrasonic Gage. Thickness measures shall be made at locations designated by the Engineer or designated representative. All thickness measurements shall be witnessed by the Engineer or designated representative.

The contractor shall test for discontinuities (holidays) in each new layer of interior organic coating applied to wastewater manholes and junction boxes. The test methods and equipment shall confirm to ASTM D4787, Continuity Verification of Liquid or Sheet Linings Applied to Concrete Substrate. Each new layer of applied coating shall be tested to detect pinholes, voids, cracks, thin spots, and foreign inclusions. All discontinuity testing shall be performed using high-voltage, pulse-type equipment and witnessed by the Engineer or designated representative. The test voltage shall depend on the coating thickness according to the tabulated values in ASTM D4787. Test voltages for common coating thicknesses are as follow:

Coating or Lining Thickness, Mils	Test Voltage
20	2700
40	5500
80	11500
120	16500

K. Structural Linings of Existing Wastewater Manholes
The interior surfaces of existing wastewater manholes and junction boxes at locations shown in the Drawings or as designated by the Engineer shall be strengthened by application of structural lining systems either as specified on the Drawings, directed in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, or listed on SPL WW-511A. Selection of products for coating the interior of existing manholes shall be based on the condition of the manholes. Surface preparation shall follow the product manufacturer's recommended procedures contained in technical data sheets unless otherwise specified in the contract documents.

L. Abandonment of Existing Manholes
Manholes designated on the Drawings for abandonment, shall be removed to a level not less than four feet below grade. Two-foot long sections of the inlet and outlet pipes shall be cut and removed on the outside of the manhole, the ends of the remaining pipe and the pipe sections penetrating the manhole wall shall be securely

plugged, and the structure filled with material in accordance with COA Standard 506S-15 or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

506.6 Acceptance Testing of Wastewater Manholes

Manholes shall be tested separately and independently of the wastewater lines.

A. Test by the Vacuum Method

A vacuum test shall be performed by the Contractor prior to backfilling those manholes that fall within the right-of-way that require detouring of vehicular traffic. A second vacuum test will not be required after backfilling and compaction is complete unless there is evidence that the manhole has been damaged or disturbed subsequent to the initial vacuum test.

For manhole installations which do not require detouring of vehicular traffic, the vacuum method is recommended and may be used by the Contractor prior to backfilling the manhole to insure proper installation so that defects may be located and repaired; however, a vacuum test shall be performed after backfilling, and compaction are complete. Testing after backfill and compaction are complete will be the basis for acceptance of the manhole.

1. Equipment
   a) The manhole vacuum tester shall be a device approved for use by the Engineer or designated representative.
   b) Pipe sealing plugs shall have a load resisting capacity equal to or greater than that required for the size of the connected pipe to be sealed.
   c) Gauges shall be calibrated and read in inches of mercury (inches Hg or in Hg) or pounds per square inch gauge (psig) or both.

2. Procedures applicable to new 48-inch diameter manholes
   a) Manhole section interiors shall be carefully inspected; units found to have through-wall lift holes, or any penetration of the interior surface by inserts provided to facilitate handling, will not be accepted. Coating shall be applied after the testing unless coating is applied before installation or unless it is applied at the factory. All lift holes and exterior joints shall be plugged with an acceptable non-shrink grout. No grout shall be placed in horizontal joints. Tests shall be performed before grouting the invert or around pipe penetrations and before coating the interior surfaces of the manhole or junction box.
   b) After cleaning the interior surfaces of the manhole, the Contractor shall place and inflate pneumatic plugs in all of the connecting pipes to isolate the manhole; sealing pressure within the plugs shall be as recommended by the plug manufacturer. Plugs and the ends of pipes connected by flexible boots shall be blocked to prevent their movement during the vacuum test.
   c) The vacuum test head shall be placed on the top of the cone section or, inside of the top of the manhole cone section, and the compression seal band inflated to the pressure recommended by its manufacturer. The vacuum pump shall be connected to the outlet port with the valve open. When a vacuum of 10 inches of mercury (-10" Hg) (-5 psig) has been attained, the valve shall be closed and the time noted. Tampering with the test equipment will not be allowed.
   d) The manhole shall have passed the test if the vacuum does not drop below 9 inches of mercury (-9" Hg) (-4.5 psig) within 3 minutes of the time the valve was closed. The actual vacuum shall be recorded at the end of the 3 minutes during which the valve was closed.
   e) When the standard vacuum test cannot be performed because of design or material constraints

(examples: T-Type manholes, T-Lock Liners, or other reasons acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative), testing of individual joints shall be performed as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Test by the Exfiltration Method

At the discretion of the Engineer or designated representative, the Contractor may substitute the Exfiltration Method of testing for the Vacuum test described in Section 506.6.A. above. This method may only be used when ground water is not present. If ground water is present a Vacuum Test shall be used unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. All backfilling and compaction shall be completed prior to the commencement of testing.

The procedures for the test shall include the following:

1. Manhole section interiors shall be carefully inspected; units found to have through-wall lift holes, or any penetration of the interior surface by inserts provided to facilitate handling, will not be accepted. Coating shall be applied after the testing unless coating is applied before field assembly, or at the factory. All lift holes and exterior joints shall be plugged with an acceptable non-shrink grout. No grout shall be placed in horizontal joints. Tests shall be performed before grouting the invert or around pipe penetrations and before coating the interior surfaces of the manhole or junction box.
2. After cleaning the interior surface of the manhole, the Contractor shall place and inflate pneumatic plugs in all of the connecting pipes to isolate the manhole; sealing pressure within the plugs shall be as recommended by the plug manufacturer.
3. Concrete manholes shall be filled with water or otherwise thoroughly wetted for a period of 24 hours prior to testing.
4. At the start of the test, the manhole shall be filled to the top with water. The test time shall be 1 hour. The Construction Inspector must be present for observation during the entire time of the test. Permissible loss of water in the 1-hour test time is 0.025 gallons per diameter foot, per foot of manhole depth. For a 4-foot diameter manhole, this quantity converts to a maximum permissible drop in the water level (from the top of the manhole cone) of 0.1 inches per foot of manhole depth or 1.0 inch for a 10-foot deep manhole.

C. Failure to Pass the Test - Records of Tests

If the manhole fails to pass the initial test method as described in (A) Test by the Vacuum Method and, if allowed, (B) Test by the Exfiltration Method, or if visible groundwater leakage into the manhole is observed, the Contractor shall locate the leak, if necessary by disassembly of the manhole. The Contractor shall check the gaskets and replace them if necessary. The Contractor may re-lubricate the joints and re-assemble the manhole, or the Contractor may install an acceptable exterior joint sealing product (see AW Standard Products List Item SPL WW-146A) on all joints and then retest the manhole. If any manhole fails the vacuum and/or exfiltration test twice, the Contractor shall consider replacing that manhole. If the Contractor chooses to attempt to repair that manhole, the manhole must be retested until it passes. In no case shall cold applied preformed plastic gaskets be used for repair. Records of all manhole testing shall be made available to the Engineer or designated representative at the close of each working day, or as otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Any damaged or visually defective products, or any products out of acceptable tolerance shall be removed from the site.

D. Inspection

The Engineer or designated representative shall make a visual inspection of each manhole after it has passed the testing requirements and is considered to be in its final condition. The inspection shall determine the completeness of the manhole; any defects shall be corrected to the satisfaction of Engineer or designated representative.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

506.7 Measurement

A "Junction Box" and "Box Manholes" will be measured by each structure of the indicated size regardless of depth.

A "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base", "Special Manhole", "Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Drop Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base", "Centered Tee Manhole", or "Tangent Tee Manhole" will be measured by each structure of the indicated size for the first 8 feet of depth.

An "Extra Depth Manhole" will be measured by linear vertical foot of Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Standard Pre-cast Manhole with CIP Base, Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Drop Manhole with CIP Base, Special Manhole, Centered Tee Manhole, or Tangent Tee Manhole of the indicated size in excess of eight feet of depth. Manhole depth will be measured from the invert flow line to the finished surface elevation.

"Minor Manhole Height Adjustment" and "Major Manhole Height Adjustment" will be measured by each unit for the indicated size. Only existing manholes will be measured for minor or major manhole height adjustment.

"Connection to Existing Manhole or Junction Box" will be measured per each for the indicated type of structure and location.

"Structural Lining" will be measured by the linear vertical foot for the indicated structure.

New manholes constructed to interim elevations to facilitate stage construction shall be measured as one unit regardless of the number of interim elevations constructed. All labor, materials and other expenses necessary for the stage construction shall be included in the unit price bid for the completed unit. Cost of abandonment of existing manholes shall be included in the unit price bid for the completed unit, unless Pay Item No. 506 AB is indicated on the Drawings and identified in Standard Contract Bid Form 00300U.

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

506.8 Payment

Payment for completed junction boxes and manholes of the type indicated on the Drawings shall be made at the appropriate unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include all labor, equipment, materials, (including but not limited to frames and grates, rings and covers, adjusting rings, cone sections, riser sections, gaskets, drop piping and fittings, bases, pipe-to-manhole connectors, concrete, reinforcing steel, non-shrink grout, mortar, joint wrap where specified, and, for wastewater manholes, interior coatings), time and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment for a "Junction Box" and "Box Manhole" will be made at the unit price bid for the indicated size, complete in place.

Payment for the first 8 feet of a "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base", "Special Manhole", "Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Drop Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base", "Centered Tee Manhole", or "Tangent Tee Manhole" will be made at the unit price bid for the indicated type and size, complete in place.

Payment for that portion of a Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Standard Pre-cast Manhole with CIP Base, Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Drop Manhole with CIP Base, Special Manhole, Centered Tee Manhole, or Tangent Tee Manhole in excess of 8 feet in depth will be made at the unit price bid for "Extra Depth Manhole" of the

indicated type and size, complete in place.

Payment for "Minor Manhole Height Adjustment" and "Major Manhole Height Adjustment" will be made at the unit bid price, complete in place.

Payment for "Structural Lining" will be made at the unit price per linear vertical foot, which will include surface preparation, environmental adjustments, lining application, and curing, as required.

Payment for "Connection to Existing Manhole or Junction Box" shall be made at the unit price per connection and will include removing the wall section by coring or alternative method approved by the Engineer or designated representative, rehabilitating the interior walls, rebuilding the invert, and preparing and coating the interior surfaces of the structure.

When indicated in the Drawings, abandonment of existing manholes shall be made at the unit price for abandonment.

The intended use of each item shall be designated by a two-letter code (Wastewater = WW; Stormwater = SW) in the spaces provided after the pay item number:

Pay Item No. 506 M___:	Standard Pre-cast Manhole w/Pre-cast Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 M1___:	Standard Pre-Cast Manhole w/CIP Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 S___:	Special Manhole, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 D___:	Drop Manhole w/Pre-cast Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 D1___:	Drop Manhole w/CIP Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 C___:	Centered Tee Manhole, ___ Dia. × ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 T___:	Tangent Tee Manhole, ___ Dia. × ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 J___:	Junction Box, ___ Ft. × ___ Ft.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 B___:	Box Manhole ___ Ft. × ___ Ft.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 2___:	Major Manhole Height Adjustment, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 4___:	Minor Manhole Height Adjustment, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 AB___:	Abandonment of existing Manholes:	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506 EDM___	Extra Depth of Manhole, ___ Dia.	Per Linear Vert. Foot.
Pay Item No. 506 SL___:	Structural Lining of ___:	Per Linear Vert. Foot.
Pay Item No. 506 CN___:	Connection to Existing ___:	Per Each.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Standard Specification Item No. 506, "Manholes"	
COA Standard Specifications Items	
Designation	Description
Item 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item 403S	Concrete For Structures
Item 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item 410S	Concrete Structures
Item 503	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
Item 504	Adjusting Structures
Item 507	Bulkheads
Item 510	Pipe
Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications For Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets and Bridges	
Designation	Description
Item 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
COA Utilities Criteria Manual	
Designation	Description
Section 2.8.0	Abandonment of Facilities
Subsection 2.9.4.D	Manholes
AW Standard Products Lists	
Designation	Description
SPL WW-146	Concrete Manhole Sections
SPL WW-146A	Manhole Seals
SPL WW-146G	Manhole Grade Rings, Plastic
SPL WW-511	Organic Lining for Wastewater Manholes
SPL WW-511A	Structural Lining for Wastewater Manholes
COA Standard Details	
Designation	Description
506S-2	Major Manhole Height Adjustment
506S-4	Minor Manhole Height Adjustment
506S-15	Abandoned Manhole
506S-12	O-Ring Joint Detail, Precast Manhole Section
506S-15	Abandoned Manhole
804S-4, 5, 6 and 7 of 9	Steel Plating
COA Standard Contract	
Designation	Description
00300U	Bid Form (Unit Prices)

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)	
Designation	Description
ASTM C 55	Specification for Concrete Building Brick
Designation	Description
ASTM C 62	Specification for Building Brick Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay of Shale
ASTM C478/C478M	Standard Specification for Precast Concrete Manhole
ASTM C443/C443M	Specification for Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets
ASTM C923/C923M	Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures Pipes
ASTM C1107	Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM D4787	Continuity Verification of Liquid or Sheet Lining Applied to Concrete Substrate
ASTM D4976	Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials
ASTM D6132	Test Method for Nondestructive Measurement of Dry Film Thickness of Applied Organic Coating Over Concrete Using an Ultrasonic Gage
American Concrete Institute	
Designation	Description
Item 347	Guide to Formwork for Concrete

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Standard Specification Item No. 506, "Manholes"	
AW Standard Products Lists	
SPL WW-219	32 Inch Manhole Cover Casting Sets
COA Utilities Criteria Manual	
Designation	Description
Section 2	Water, Reclaimed Water and Wastewater Criteria
COA Standards	
Designation	Description
1100S-1	Casting Adjustments
503S-4S	Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 32" Cover
503S-5S	Bolted Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 32" Cover
506S-1	Manhole Invert Plan
506S-5	Typical Box Manhole 30" and Larger Pipe
506S-7	Precast Manhole with Drop Inlet on Cast in Place Foundation
506S-8	Precast Manhole with Drop Inlet on Precast Base
506S-9	Precast Manhole on Cast-In-Place Foundation
506S-10	Wastewater Manhole on Precast Base
506S-11	Storm Sewer Manhole Details
American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)	
Designation	Description
M306	Standard Specifications for Drainage Structure Castings

Source: Rule No. R161-21.08 , 2-22-2021.

MODIFICATIONS TO SECTION 506

MANHOLES

This modification page modifies, amplifies, or amends the technical specifications and plans. In the event of discrepancy, this modification shall take precedence over the plans and the technical specifications.

The following are added pay items:

506S-PWW: Sewer Plug (All Sizes)

506S ID: Installation of Drop Connection for Ex WWMH 105

Paragraph 506.7 MEASUREMENT

Measurement for "Sewer Plug (All Sizes)" will be per each. (506S-PWW)

Measurement for "Installation of Drop Connection for Ex WWMH 105" will be per each. (506S ID)

Paragraph 506.8 PAYMENT

Payment for "Sewer Plug (All Sizes)" will be at the unit price bid per each. This unit price shall include full compensation for furnishing and placement of all materials and for all labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment for "Installation of Drop Connection for Ex WWMH 105" will be at the unit price bid per each. This unit price shall include full compensation for furnishing materials, cutting the existing inflow pipe, placement of drop connection and labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete work.

SECTION 507S

BULKHEADS

507S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern furnishing and installing plywood or end caps as a temporary utility plug at locations indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The work will be placed in conjunction with installation of a pipe where a continuation of the utility system will be performed later.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

507S.2 SUBMITTALS

The submittal requirements of this specification section include the type (wood, plastic, rubber, etc.) and application (pipe characteristics and location) of bulkheads.

507S.3 MATERIAL

Plywood shall be construction grade, ¾ inch (19 mm) thick and need not be new or treated. End caps may be plastic, vitrified clay pipe, rubber or concrete.

507S.4 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

After installation of the utility requiring temporary bulkheading, an end cap or a section of plywood, having dimensions at least 6 inches (150 mm) in excess of the outside pipe diameter shall be attached to the exposed bell or spigot and backfilled immediately after installation. Care shall be exercised to prevent the backfill material from entering the pipe.

Bulkheads used with staged construction shall be sound, reasonably free of knots and warps and have a 3 inch (75 mm) nominal thickness.

507S.5 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Bulkheading will not be measured and paid for separately but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this section is used.

END OF SECTION

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Section 507S Bulkheads

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 2	Water and Wastewater Design Criteria

City of Austin Standard Specification

Designation	Description
Section 506	Manholes
Section 510	Pipe

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
506S-1	Manhole Invert Plan
506S-5	Typical Box Manhole 750 mm (30") and Larger Pipe
506S-7	Precast Manhole with Drop Inlet
506S-8	Precast Manhole with Drop Inlet on Precast Base
506S-9	Precast Manhole on Cast-In-Place Foundation
506S-10	Wastewater Manhole on Precast Base
506S-11	Storm Sewer Manhole Details

SECTION 509S

EXCAVATION SAFETY SYSTEMS

509S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern the designing, furnishing, installing, maintaining and removing or abandoning of temporary Excavation Safety Systems consisting of trench shields, aluminum hydraulic shoring, timber shoring, trench jacks, tied-back or braced sheeting, tied-back slurry walls, soil nailing, rock bolting, tied-back or braced soldier piles and lagging, and other systems for protecting workers in excavations. This section shall also govern the designing and constructing of sloping and benching systems for protecting workers in excavations.

At a minimum, the Excavation Safety Systems shall conform to United States Department of Labor Rules 29 CFR, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Part 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction, Subpart P, Excavation (hereinafter called OSHA).

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

509S.2 DEFINITIONS

COMPETENT PERSON shall mean one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings, or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them. The ***COMPETENT PERSON*** shall be capable of interpreting the manufacturer's data sheets and interpreting and implementing the Excavation Safety System Plan.

An ***EXCAVATION*** shall mean any cut, cavity, trench, or depression in an earth surface, formed by earth removed by the Contractor. The Contractor shall provide an Excavation Safety System for all excavations except when 1) the excavation is in stable rock as determined by the Texas-licensed Professional Engineer who prepared the Contractor's Excavation Safety System Plan or 2) the excavation is less than 5 feet (1.52 m) in depth and examination of the ground by the Contractor's competent person provides no indication of a potential cave-in.

TRENCH (TRENCH EXCAVATION) shall mean any narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground. In general, the depth shall be greater than the width, but the trench (measured at the bottom) shall not be wider than 15 feet (4.56 m). Excavation Safety Systems for such trenches shall be defined as Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems.

If the Contractor installs or constructs forms or other structures in an excavation such that the dimension measured from the forms or structures to the sides of the excavation is reduced to 15 feet (4.6 m) or less (measured at the bottom of the excavation), those excavations shall also be defined as a ***TRENCH*** if workers must enter it. Excavation Safety Systems for such ***TRENCHES*** shall also be defined as ***TRENCH EXCAVATION SAFETY PROTECTIVE SYSTEMS***.

509S.3 EXCAVATION SAFETY SYSTEM PLAN SUBMITTAL

A. **Notice to Proceed**. The Notice to Proceed with construction may be issued by the Owner before the Contractor has submitted the necessary Excavation Safety Plan(s); however, excavation shall not proceed until the Owner has received the Contractor's Excavation Safety Plan(s) for the Project.

B. **Prior to Starting Excavation**. Prior to starting any Excavation, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner:

1. A certificate indicating that the Contractor's Competent Person(s) has completed training in an excavation safety program based on OSHA regulations within the past 5 years.

2. Manufacturer's tabulated data or other tabulated data for Excavation Safety Systems consisting of pre-engineered protective systems such as trench shields, aluminum hydraulic shoring, timber shoring, pneumatic shoring, or trench jacks, or benching or sloping or other protective systems that are not designed specifically for the Project.

Manufacturer's tabulated data shall meet the requirements in OSHA and shall describe the specific equipment to be used on the Project. Tabulated data must bear the seal of the licensed professional engineer who approved the data. Manufacturer's tabulated data shall be an attachment to the Contractor's Excavation Safety System Plan described below.

509S.4 EXCAVATION SAFETY SYSTEM PLAN REVIEW

The Contractor shall prepare an Excavation Safety System Plan (hereafter called the "Plan") specifically for the Project. The Contractor shall retain a Texas-licensed Professional Engineer to prepare the Plan. On City-funded projects, the Contractor must follow qualifications-based procedures to procure the required Professional Engineering services, according to Chapter 2254 of the Texas Government Code.

The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining geotechnical information necessary for design of the Excavation Safety System. If geotechnical information for design of the Project has been acquired by the Owner or designated representative, it shall be provided to the Contractor for information purposes subject to the provisions of City of Austin Standard Contract Section 00220, "Geotechnical Data."

A. The Plan for Excavation Safety Systems consisting of pre-engineered protective systems such as trench shields, aluminum hydraulic shoring, timber shoring, pneumatic shoring, or trench jacks, or benching or sloping or other protective systems that are not designed specifically for the Project shall include:

1. Detailed Drawings of the Excavation Safety System(s) that will provide worker protection conforming to OSHA. The Drawings shall note the required load carrying capacity, dimensions, materials, and other physical properties or characteristics in sufficient detail to describe thoroughly and completely the Excavation Safety System(s).

2. Drawings, notes, or tables clearly detailing the specific areas of the Project in which each Excavation Safety System shall be used, the permissible size of the excavation, the length of time that the excavation shall remain open, the means of egress from the excavation, the location of material storage sites in relation to the excavation, the methods for placing/compacting bedding/backfill within the safety of the system, any excavation safety equipment restrictions and subsequent removal of the system.

3. Recommendations and limitations for using the Excavation Safety Systems.

4. A Certificate of Insurance of the Excavation Safety System Engineer's Professional Liability Insurance coverage. For City-funded projects, coverage meeting the requirements of Standard Contact Documents Section 00810 shall be provided. For privately funded projects the coverage shall be at least $1,000,000.

B. The Plan for Excavation Safety Systems consisting of tied-back or braced sheeting, tied-back or braced soldier piles and lagging, slurry walls, soil nailing, rock bolting or other protective systems that are designed

specifically for the Project shall include:

1. Detailed Drawings of the Excavation Safety System(s) that will provide worker protection conforming to OSHA. The Drawings shall note the design assumptions, design criteria, factors of safety, applicable codes, dimensions, components, types of materials, and other physical properties or characteristics in sufficient detail to describe thoroughly and completely the Excavation Safety System(s).

2. Detailed technical specifications for the Excavation Safety System addressing the properties of the materials, construction means and methods, quality control and quality assurance testing, performance monitoring, and monitoring of adjacent features, as appropriate.

3. Drawings that clearly detail the specific areas of the Project in which each type of system shall be used and showing the Special Shoring in plan and elevation (vertical profile) views.

4. Drawings, notes or tables clearly detailing the length of time that the excavation shall remain open, the means of egress from the excavation, the location of material storage sites in relation to the excavation, the methods for placing/compacting bedding/backfill within the safety of the system, any excavation safety equipment restrictions and subsequent removal or abandonment of the system or parts thereof.

5. Recommendations and limitations for using the Excavation Safety Systems.

6. A Certificate of Insurance of the Excavation Safety System Engineer's Professional Liability Insurance coverage. For City-funded projects, coverage meeting the requirements of Standard Contract Documents Section 00810 shall be provided. For privately funded projects the coverage shall be at least $1,000,000.

509S.5 EXCAVATION SAFETY SYSTEM SUBMITTAL REVIEW

Review of the Excavation Safety System submittal conducted by the Owner or designated representative shall only relate to conformance with the requirements herein. The Owner's failure to note exceptions to the submittal shall not relieve the Contractor of any or all responsibility or liability for the adequacy of the Excavation Safety System. The Contractor shall remain solely and completely responsible for all Excavation Safety Systems and for the associated means, methods, procedures, and materials.

509S.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

The Contractor shall be responsible for implementing the Excavation Safety System Plan and for confirming that the Excavation Safety System(s) used on the Project meets the requirements of the Plan.

The Contractor's Competent Person(s) shall be on the Project whenever workers are in an excavation meeting the definitions of a Trench given in 509S.2.

509S.7 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

The Contractor's Competent Person(s) shall maintain a copy of appropriate OSHA regulations on-site and shall implement OSHA excavation safety regulations at the work site. The Contractor shall perform all excavation in a safe manner and shall maintain the Excavation Safety Systems to prevent death or injury to personnel or damage to structures, utilities or property in or near excavation.

If evidence of possible cave-ins or earthen slides is apparent or an installed Excavation Safety System is damaged, the Contractor shall immediately cease work in the excavation, evacuate personnel from any potentially hazardous

areas and notify the Owner. Personnel shall not be allowed to re-enter the excavation until necessary repairs or replacements are completed and are inspected and approved by the Contractor's Competent Person(s). Repair and replacement of damaged Excavation Safety System shall be at the Contractor's sole expense.

509S.8 CHANGED CONDITIONS

When changed conditions require modifications to the Excavation Safety System, the Contractor shall provide to the Owner or designated representative a new design or an alternate Excavation Safety System Plan that is proposed by the Contractor's Excavation Safety System Engineer to address the changed conditions. Copies of the new design or alternate system shall be provided to the Owner or designated representative in accordance with the requirements of section 509S.3, "Excavation Safety System Plan Submittals." A copy of the most current Excavation Safety System Plan shall be maintained on site and made available to inspection and enforcement officials at all times.

Any changes to the Excavation Safety System Plan that are initiated by the Contractor for operational efficiency or as a result of changed conditions, that could be reasonably anticipated, will not be cause for contract time extension or cost adjustment. When changes to the Excavation Safety System Plan are necessitated by severe and uncharacteristic natural conditions or other conditions not reasonably within the control of the Contractor, the Contractor may make a written request to the Owner for a Change Order to address the anticipated work. The Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing within 24 hours of the occurrence of changed conditions that the Contractor anticipates the submittal of a claim for additional compensation. Under "Changed Conditions" the work deemed immediately necessary by the Contractor to protect the safety of workers and public, equipment or materials may only be accomplished until the Owner or designated representative has a reasonable opportunity to investigate the Contractor's written request for a Change Order and respond in writing to the request.

509S.9 MEASUREMENT

Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems will only be measured and paid for those trenches that workers would reasonably be expected to enter.

Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems for Trenches excavated to a final width (measured at the bottom of the excavation) not exceeding 15 feet (4.56 m) shall be measured by the linear foot (meter: 1 meter equals 3.281 feet) through manholes, bore pits, receiving pits, and other appurtenances along the centerline of the trench. This method of measurement shall apply to any and all protective systems, including but not limited to tieback or braced sheeting, tieback or braced soldier piles and lagging, slurry walls, soil nails, rock bolts, shoring, trench boxes, and sloping or benching as used to provide a Trench Excavation Safety Protective System in accordance with the Excavation Safety System Plan.

Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems for Trenches created by installation or construction of forms or other structures in an excavation whose width is greater than 15 feet (4.56 m) such that the dimension measured from the forms or structures to the sides of the excavation is reduced to 15 feet (4.56 m) or less (measured at the bottom of the excavation) shall be measured by the linear foot along the centerline of the Trench. Where forms or structures create multiple Trenches in one excavation, each Trench shall be measured separately. This method of measurement shall apply to any and all protective systems, including but not limited to tieback or braced sheeting, tieback or braced soldier piles and lagging, slurry walls, soil nails, rock bolts, shoring, trench boxes, and sloping or benching as used to provide a Trench Excavation Safety Protective System in accordance with the Excavation Safety System Plan.

509S.10 PAYMENT

Payment for Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems, measured as prescribed above, will be made at unit bid price per centerline linear foot of Trench. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for designing, furnishing,

installing the system; for dewatering, and for maintaining, replacing, repairing and removing the Trench Excavation Safety Protective System and for sloping, special clearing, and excavation necessary to safely implement the Excavation Safety System Plan. No payment will be made for Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems made necessary by the Contractor's selection of an optional design or sequence of work that creates the need for the Trench Excavation Safety Protective System

Payment will be made under the following:

Pay Section 509S-1:	Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems (all depths)	Per Linear Foot.

END OF SECTION

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Section 509S Excavation Safety Systems

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00020	Invitation for Bids
Section 00220	Geotechnical Data
Section 00650	Certificate of Insurance
Section 00700, Article 6.11	Safety and Protection
Section 810	Supplemental General Conditions

29 CFR, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Part 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction, Subpart P, Excavation

Texas Health and Safety Code Title 9 Chapter 756 Subchapter C

Texas Government Code Chapter 2254

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Section 509S Excavation Safety Systems

Texas Department of Transportation:
Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 104	Removing Concrete
Item 110	Excavation
Item 402	Trench Excavation Protection

City of Austin Standard Specification Sections

Designation	Description
Section 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Section 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Section 110S	Street Excavation
Section 111S	Excavation
Section 130S	Borrow
Section 132S	Embankment
Section 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Section 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Section 501S	Jacking or Boring Pipe
Section 503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
Section 504S	Adjusting Structures
Section 505S	Concrete Encasement and Encasement Pipe
Section 506	Manholes
Section 507S	Bulkheads
Section 510	Pipe
Section 511S	Water Valves
Section 593S	Concrete Retards
Section 594S	Gabions and Revet Mattresses

ITEM NO. 510
PIPE 12-8-18

510.1 Description

This item governs the furnishing and installing all pipe and/or materials for constructing pipe mains, sewers, laterals, stubs, inlet leads, service connections, culverts, temporary service lines and temporary diversion lines, including all applicable Work such as excavating, bedding, jointing, backfilling materials, tests, concrete trench cap, concrete cap and encasement, etc., prescribed under this item in accordance with the provisions of the Edwards Aquifer Protection Ordinance, when applicable, and City of Austin Utility Criteria Manual, Section 5, "Working in Public Rights-of-Way." The pipe shall be of the sizes, types, class and dimensions indicated or as designated by the E/A and shall include all joints or connections to new or existing mains, pipes, sewers, manholes, inlets, structures, etc., as may be required to complete the Work in accordance with specifications and published standard practices of the trade associations for the material specified and to the lines and grades indicated. This item shall include any pumping, bailing, and drainage when indicated or applicable. Unless otherwise provided, this item shall consist of the removal and disposition of trees, stumps and other obstructions, old structures or portions thereof such as house foundations, old sewers, masonry or concrete walls, the plugging of the ends of abandoned piped utilities cut and left in place and the restoration of existing utilities damaged in the process of excavation, cutting and restoration of pavement and base courses, the furnishing and placing of select bedding, backfilling and cement or lime stabilized backfill, the hauling and disposition of surplus materials, bridging of trenches and other provisions for maintenance of traffic or access as indicated.

510.2 Materials

The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials and equipment the Contractor proposes for incorporation into the Work are of the kind and quality that satisfies the specified functions and quality. Austin Water Utility Standard Products Lists (SPL) form a part of the Specifications. Contractors may, when appropriate, elect to use products from the SPL; however, submittal to the E/A is still required. Should the Contractor elect to use any materials from these lists, each product shall be completely and clearly identified by its corresponding SPL number when making the product submittal. This will expedite the review process in which the E/A, and, if necessary, the Austin Water Utility Standard Products Committee, decides whether the products meet the Contract requirements and the specific use foreseen by the E/A in the design of this engineered Project. The purpose of the SPL's is to expedite review, by the E/A and, if necessary, the Austin Water Utility Standard Products Committee, of Contractor product submittals. The SPL's shall not be considered as being a pre-approved list of products necessarily meeting the requirements of the Project. Items contained in the SPL cannot be substituted for items shown on the Drawings, or called for in the specifications, or specified in the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of Contract, unless approved by the E/A in conjunction with the Austin Water Utility Standard Products Committee. The Standard Product List current at the time of plan approval will govern.

(1) Concrete
Concrete shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

(2) Coarse Aggregate
Coarse aggregate shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" or one of the following:
(a) Pipe Bedding Stone
Pipe bedding stone shall be clean gravel, crushed gravel or crushed limestone, free of mud, clay, vegetation or other debris, conforming to ASTM C 33 for stone quality. Size gradation shall conform to ASTM C-33 No. 57 or No. 67 or the following Table:

SIEVE SIZE	% RETAINED BY WEIGHT
1½"	0
1"	0—10
½'	40—85
#4	90—100
#8	95—100

(b) Foundation Rock
Foundation rock shall be well graded coarse aggregate ranging in size from 2 to 8 inches.

(c) Flexible Base
Flexible base shall conform to Item No. 210S, "Flexible Base".

(3) Fine Aggregate
(a) Concrete and Mortar Sand
Fine aggregate shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".
(b) Bedding Sand
Sand for use as pipe bedding shall be clean, granular and homogeneous material composed mainly of mineral matter, free of mud, silt, clay lumps or clods, vegetation or debris. The material removed by decantation TxDOT Test Method Tex-406-A, plus the weight of any clay lumps, shall not exceed 4.5 percent by weight.

The resistivity shall not be less than 3000 ohms-cm as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-129-E. Size gradation of sand for bedding shall be as follows:

GRADATION TABLE	
SIEVE SIZE	% RETAINED BY WEIGHT
¼"	0
#60	75—100
#100	95—100

(c) Stone Screenings
Stone screenings shall be free of mud, clay, vegetation or other debris, and shall conform to the following Table:

SIEVE SIZE	% PASSING
⅜"	100
No. 4	95 to 100
No. 8	80 to 100
No. 16	50 to 85
No. 30	25 to 60
No. 50	10 to 30
No. 100	2 to 10

All screenings shall be the result of a rock crushing operation.

(4) Controlled Low Strength Material
Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM) shall conform to Item 402S, "Controlled Low Strength Material.

(5) Pea Gravel
Pea gravel bedding shall be clean washed material, hard and insoluble in water, free of mud, clay, silt, vegetation or other debris. Stone quality shall meet ASTM C 33. Size gradation shall be as follows:

SIEVE SIZE	% RETAINED BY WEIGHT
¾"	0
½"	0—25
¼"	90—100

(6) Select Backfill or Borrow
This material shall consist of borrow or suitable material excavated from the trench. It shall be free of stones or rocks over 8 inches and shall have a plasticity index of less than 20. The moisture content at the time of compaction shall be within 2 percent of optimum as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-114-E. Sandy loam borrow will not be allowed unless shown on the Drawings or authorized by the E/A.

All suitable materials from excavation operations not required for backfilling the trench may be placed in embankments, if applicable. All unsuitable materials that cannot be made suitable shall be considered surplus excavated materials as described in 510.3(13). The Contractor may, if approved by the engineer, modify unsuitable materials to make them suitable for use. Modification may include drying, removal or crushing of over-size material, and lime or cement treatment.

(7) Cement Stabilized Backfill
When indicated or directed by the E/A, all backfill shall be with cement-stabilized backfill rather than the usual materials. Unless otherwise indicated, cement stabilized backfill material shall consist of a mixture of the dry constituents described for Class J Concrete. The cement and aggregates shall be thoroughly dry mixed with no water added to the mixture except as may be directed by the E/A.

(8) Pipe
General
Fire line leads and fire hydrant leads shall be ductile iron. Domestic water services shall not be supplied from fire service leads, unless the domestic and fire connections are on separately valved branches with an approved backflow prevention device in the fire service branch. All wastewater force mains shall be constructed of ductile iron pipe Pressure Class 250 minimum for pipe greater than 12-inch size and Pressure Class 350 for pipe 12-inch size and smaller. Wastewater pipe shall be in accordance with Austin Water Utility's Standard Products List SPL WW-534 and shall have a corrosion resistant interior lining acceptable to the Owner.

All water pipe within utility easements on private property shall be Ductile Iron Pipe, Pressure Class 350 minimum for pipe 12-inch size and smaller and Pressure Class 250 minimum for pipe greater than 12-inch size wrapped as indicated. For sizes over 24 inches, Concrete Pressure Pipe, steel cylinder type, conforming to the requirements of AWWA C-301 will be acceptable.

There may be no service connections to Concrete Pressure Pipe installed in utility easements on private property. Approved service clamps or saddles shall be used when tapping ductile iron pipe 12 inch size

and smaller. All service tubing (¾ inch thru 2 inches) installed in utility easements on private property shall be 150 psi annealed seamless Type K copper tubing with no sweat or soldered joints.

All reclaimed water mains shall be constructed of ductile iron pipe, Pressure Class 350 minimum for pipe 12-inch size and smaller and pressure class 250 for pipe greater than 12-inch size. For mains 12-inch size and smaller, PVC pipe, conforming to the requirements of AWWA C-900, DR 14 shall be acceptable. Reclaimed water pipe shall be manufactured purple, painted purple, or wrapped in purple polyethylene film wrap.

Manufacturers of concrete pipe and pipe larger than 24-inch diameter shall have a quality control program consisting of one or more of the following: 1) a quality management system certified by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) or National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) to comply with ISO 9001:2000, 2) a quality management system certified by the QCast Program following the requirements of the ACPA Plant Certification Manual, 3) a quality management system certified by the National Precast Concrete Association 4) a quality control program approved by the OWNER prior to submittal of bids for the PROJECT, or 5) an independent, third party quality control testing and inspection firm for testing and inspecting pipe produced for the PROJECT and approved by the OWNER prior to submittal of bids for the PROJECT. All such quality control programs shall be paid for by the manufacturer. It is the intent of this requirement that the manufacturer will document all appropriate tests and inspections with sampling and inspection criteria, frequency of testing and inspection, date of testing and inspection and date on which every piece was manufactured. Required testing and inspection, including that by an independent, third party, shall be performed full-time during production of pipe for the PROJECT. When requested by the OWNER, the manufacturer will provide copies of test data and results and inspection reports with the shipment of pipe for the PROJECT. Test data and results and inspection reports shall be traceable to specific pipe lots or pieces. Owner approval of the manufacturer's quality control program will expire after three years, at which time the manufacturer must present a current quality control program for approval in order to retain listing on the applicable SPL. Owner approval of the Concrete Pipe manufacturer's quality control program will expire after three years, at which time the manufacturer must present a current quality control program for approval.

The quality of materials, the process of manufacture and the finished pipe shall be subject to inspection and approval by the E/A at the pipe manufacturing plant and at the project site prior to and during installation. Plant inspections shall be conducted at the discretion of the City Representative. Only manufacturers having a quality control program of the type described above will be considered as approved providers of concrete pipe and pipe products as listed in the Standard Products List (SPL).

All water distribution pipe and fittings shall be listed in the Fire Protection Equipment Directory published by the Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc., or shall be Factory Mutual approved for fire service. All water pipe and related products shall be registered by the National Sanitation Foundation as having been certified to meet NSF/ANSI Standard 61.

(a) Reserved

(b) Iron Pipe
Iron pipe shall be ductile iron pipe meeting all requirements of standards as follows:

-For push-on and mechanical joint pipe: AWWA C-151
-For flanged pipe: AWWA C-115

Barrels shall have a nominal thickness required by Table 1 of AWWA C-115, which thickness corresponds to Special Class 53 in sizes through 54 inch, and Class 350 in 60 and 64-inch sizes. Flanges shall be ductile iron (gray iron is not acceptable); they shall be as shown in ANSI/AWWA C115/A21.15 and shall conform to dimensions shown in Table 2 and Figure 1 of AWWA C115. These flanges are the same in all respects as flanges shown in ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 for fittings and are standard for all flanges used with pipe, valve, and equipment units in the City of Austin water distribution and wastewater force main systems. Flanges shall be fabricated and attached to the pipe barrels by U.S. fabricators using flanges and pipe barrels of U.S. manufacture. If fabrication is to be by other than the pipe barrel manufacturer, a complete product submittal and approval by the Austin Water Utility will be required. Additionally, such fabricator shall furnish certification that each fabricated joint has been satisfactorily tested hydrostatically at a minimum pressure of 300 psi.

-Linings and Coating:

Interior surfaces of all iron potable or reclaimed water pipe shall be cement-mortar lined and seal coated as required by AWWA C104. Interior surfaces of all iron wastewater line and force main pipe shall be coated with a non-corrosive lining material as indicated on Austin Water Utility's Standard Products List SPL WW-534. Pipe exteriors shall be coated as required by the applicable pipe specification. The type and brand of interior lining shall be clearly marked on the outside of the pipe and fittings. Except as authorized by the E/A, only one type and brand of pipe lining shall be used on a given project.

Except as described above for flanged pipe (Thickness Class 53) and where not otherwise indicated, ductile iron pipe shall be minimum Class 250 as defined by ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50-current; all ductile iron pipe and flanges shall meet the following minimum physical requirements:

Grade 60-42-10:

-Minimum tensile strength: 60,000 psi (414 mPa).
-Minimum yield strength: 42,000 psi (290 mPa).
-Minimum elongation: 10 percent.

The flanges for AWWA C115 pipe may be also be made from:
Grade 70-50-05:

-Minimum tensile strength: 70,000 psi (483 mPa).
-Minimum yield strength: 50,000 psi (345 mPa).
-Minimum elongation: 5 percent.

1. Ductile Iron Fittings:

Fittings shall be push-on, flanged or mechanical joint as indicated or approved and shall meet all requirements of standards as follows:
-Sizes 4 inch through 24 inch: AWWA C-110 or AWWA C-153
-Sizes larger than 24 inch: AWWA C-110.
-Lining and Coating:

Interior surfaces or all iron potable/reclaimed water pipe fittings shall be lined with cement- mortar and seal coated as required by AWWA C104. Interior surfaces of all iron wastewater and force main fittings shall be coated with a non-corrosive lining material acceptable to Owner. Fitting exteriors shall

be coated as required by the applicable pipe specification.

2. Joint Materials
Gaskets for mechanical joints shall conform to ANSI/AWWA A21.11/C-111.

Joining of slip joint iron pipe shall, without exception, be accomplished with the natural or synthetic rubber gaskets of the manufacturer of that particular pipe being used. A joint lubricant shall be used and applicable recommendations of the manufacturer shall be followed.

Gaskets for flanged joints shall be continuous full face gaskets, of ⅛ inch minimum thickness of natural or synthetic rubber, cloth-reinforced rubber or neoprene material, preferably of deformed cross section design and shall meet all applicable requirements of ANSI/AWWA A21.11/C-111 for gaskets. They shall be manufactured by, or satisfy all recommendations of, the manufacturer of the pipe/fittings being used and be fabricated for use with Class 125 ANSI B16.1 flanges.

Tee-head bolts, nuts and washers for mechanical joints shall be high strength, low alloy, corrosion resistant steel stock equal to "COR-TEN A" having UNC Class 2 rolled threads or alloyed ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 536; either shall be fabricated in accordance with ANSI/AWWA A21.11/C-111.

Hex head bolts and nuts shall satisfy the chemical and mechanical requirements of ASTM A449 SAE Grade 5 plain, and shall be fabricated in accordance with ASTM B 18.2 with UNC Class 2 rolled threads.

Either Tee-Head or Hex-Head bolts, nuts and washers as required, shall be protected with bonded fluoro-polymer corrosion resistant coating where specifically required by the E/A.

All threaded fasteners shall be marked with a readily visible symbol cast, forged or stamped on each nut and bolt, which will identify the fastener material and grade. The producer and the supplier shall provide adequate literature to facilitate such identification; painted markings are not acceptable.

3. Polyethylene Film Wrap
All iron pipe, fittings and accessories shall be wrapped with standard 8 mil (minimum) low density polyethylene film or 4-mil (minimum) cross laminated high-density polyethylene conforming to AWWA C-105, with all edges overlapped and taped securely with duct tape to provide a continuous wrap to prevent contact between the piping and the surrounding backfill. Repair all punctures of the polyethylene, including those caused in the placement of bedding aggregates, with duct tape to restore the continuous protective wrap before backfilling. Polyethylene film wrap for reclaimed water pipe shall be purple.

4. Marking
Each pipe joint and fitting shall be marked as required by the applicable AWWA specification. This includes in all cases: Manufacturer's identification, Country where cast, year of casting, and "DUCTILE" or "DI". Barrels of flanged pipe shall show thickness class; others shall show pressure class. The flanges of pipe sections shall be stamped with the fabricators

identification; fittings shall show pressure rating, the nominal diameter of openings and the number of degrees for bends. Painted markings are not acceptable.

5. Warning Tape
   Warning tape for identifying restrained joint pipe and fittings shall be yellow and shall have black lettering at least 2inches high that reads "Restrained Joint / Junta de Restriccion" at intervals not exceeding 24 inches. The warning tape shall be polypropylene having a minimum thickness of 2 mils, a minimum width of 3 inches, and adhesive backing on the side opposite the lettering.

(c) Concrete

1. General
   Pipe shall conform to ASTM C 76 for Circular Pipe. Concrete pipe smaller than 12 inches in diameter shall conform to ASTM C 14, Extra Strength. All pipe shall be machine made or cast by a process which will provide uniform placement of the concrete in the form and compaction by mechanical devices, which will assure a dense concrete. Concrete shall be mixed in a central batch plant or other approved batching facility from which the quality and uniformity of the concrete can be assured. Transit mixed concrete shall not be acceptable for use in precast pipe. The pipe shall be Class III or the class indicated. Storm sewer pipe shall be of the tongue and groove or 0-ring joint design. Wastewater pipe shall be of the 0-ring joint design; it shall be acceptably lined for corrosion protection.

2. Marking
   Each joint of pipe shall be marked with the pipe class, the date of manufacture, the manufacturer's name or trade mark, diameter of pipe and orientation, if required.

   Pipe marking shall be waterproof and conform to ASTM C 76.

3. Minimum Age for Shipment
   Pipe shall be considered ready for shipment when it conforms to the tests specified in ASTM C 76.

4. Joint Materials
   When installing storm sewers (or storm drains), the Contractor shall have the option of using joints with preformed flexible joint sealants or with rubber gaskets. Preformed flexible joint sealants for storm drain joints shall comply with ASTM C990, and rubber gaskets for storm drain joints shall comply with ASTM C 1619. Mortar shall not be used to seal pre-fabricated joints. Pipe manufacturer shall be responsible for submitting to the Owner a detailed design of the joint upon request. The pipe manufacturer shall be responsible for submitting to the Owner a complete list of joint sizes showing the minimum size of material to be used with each size joint, along with complete instructions on recommended installation procedures. Quality control testing at the manufacturing plant shall be in accordance with Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) Departmental Materials Specifications (DMS) 7310, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe And Machine-Made Precast Concrete Box Culvert Fabrication And Plant Qualification". The pipe manufacturer shall be verified as compliant with TxDOT DMS 7310 at time of pipe delivery to the jobsite.

a. Mortar

Mortar for joints shall meet the requirements set forth below in "Mortar".

b. Cold Applied Preformed Plastic Gaskets

Cold Applied Plastic Gaskets shall be suitable for sealing joints of tongue and groove concrete pipe. The gasket sealing the joint shall be produced from blends of refined hydrocarbon resins and plasticizing compounds reinforced with inert mineral filler and shall contain no solvents, irritating fumes or obnoxious odors. The gasket joint sealer shall not depend on oxidizing, evaporating or chemical action for its adhesive or cohesive strength and shall be supplied in extruded rope form of suitable cross section. The size of the plastic gasket joint sealer shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and sufficient to obtain squeeze-out around the joint. The gasket joint sealer shall be protected by a suitable removable wrapper that may be removed longitudinally without disturbing the joint sealer to facilitate application.

The chemical composition of the gasket joint sealing compound as shipped shall meet the following requirements:

Composition (% by weight)	Test Method	Typical Analysis
Bitumen (petroleum plastic content)	ASTM D 4	50-70
Ash-inert Mineral Water	Tex-526-C	30-50
Volatile Matter (at 325 F)	Tex-506-C	2.0 Maximum

The gasket joint sealing compound when immersed for 30 days at ambient room temperature separately in 5 percent solution of caustic potash, a mixture of 5 percent hydrochloric acid, a 5 percent solution of sulfuric acid and a saturated H2S solution shall show no visible deterioration.

The physical properties of the gasket joint sealing compound as shipped shall meet the following requirements:

Property	Test Method	Typical Analysis	
		Minimum	Maximum
Specific Gravity at 77 F	ASTM D 71	1.20	1.35
Ductility at 77F (cm) Minimum	Tex-503-C	5.0	
Softening point	Tex-505-C	275 F	
Penetration:			
32 F (300 g) 60 sec	Tex-502-C	75	
77 F (150 g) 5 sec	Tex-502-C	50	120
115 F (150 g) 5 sec	Tex-502-C		150
Flashpoint C.O.C. F	Tex-504-C	600 F	
Fire Point C.O.C. F	Tex-504-C	625 F	

When constructing wastewater lines, the Contractor shall use 0-ring gasket joints conforming to ASTM C 443. Just before making a joint, the ends of the pipe shall be clean, dry, free of blisters or foreign matter and shall be wire brushed. For O-ring joints,

the gasket and the inside surface of the bell shall be lubricated with a light film of soft vegetable soap compound to facilitate assembly of the joint. The rubber O-ring gasket shall be stretched uniformly in the joint. Wedge seal type ("Forsheda" pre-lubricated) gaskets may be used if joint details submitted are approved; installation of such gaskets shall be in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and shall be the sole element depended upon to make the joint flexible and watertight.

In wastewater lines no horizontal or vertical angles in the alignment of pipes shall be permitted unless indicated. The spigot shall be centered in the bell, the pipe pushed uniformly home and brought into true alignment. Bedding material shall be placed and tamped against pipe to secure the joint.

5. Bends
When horizontal or vertical angles in the alignment of storm sewers are indicated, the bend or angle shall be constructed by cutting on a bias one or both pipes as may be required for the alignment indicated. The pipe cut shall be sufficiently long to allow exposing the reinforcement, which shall be bent, welded and incorporated into the pipe bend and reinforced concrete collar to maintain the structural integrity. The collar shall be 6 inches minimum, reinforced with #4 bars on a 1 foot center both directions. Builder's hardware cloth may be used on the outside of the joint to aid in holding cementing materials in place. Plywood, fiberboard or other materials placed on the inside of the pipe as formwork shall be removed as soon as the joint materials have obtained initial set, after which the inside surface of the pipe joint shall be finished smooth and true to the line and grade established. The Contractor may use prefabricated bends meeting the specification requirements in lieu of field fabricated bends. All bends shall be watertight, have a smooth flow line and be equal or greater in strength to the adjacent pipe.

Horizontal or vertical changes in alignment in wastewater lines shall be accomplished by use of manholes. With the E/A's approval, horizontal changes in alignment may be made by the "Joint Deflection" method. Joint deflection is limited by regulations of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) to 80 percent of the maximum recommended by the manufacturer; such deflection may not exceed 5 degrees at any joint. Changes in alignment using pipe flexure shall not be allowed.

6. Sulfide and Corrosion Control
All concrete pipe used for wastewater installations shall be protected from sulfide and corrosion damage by using limestone aggregate.

(d) Concrete Steel Cylinder (CSC) Pipe
1. General Requirements
The Contractor shall submit to the E/A for approval along with other required data a tabulated layout schedule with reference to the stationing and grade lines to be used.

The manufacturer shall furnish all fittings and special pieces required for closures, bends, branches, manholes, air valves, blow offs and connections to main line valves and other fittings as indicated.

Each pipe length, fitting and special joint shall have plainly marked on the bell end of the

pipe, the head condition for which it is designed. In addition, marking shall be required to indicate the location of each pipe length or special joint in the line and such markings will be referenced to the layout schedules and drawings and submitted for approval.

Concrete steel cylinder fittings shall be tested as required by the applicable AWWA Standards.

2. Design and Inspection

Where not otherwise indicated, concrete steel cylinder pipe shall be Class 150, designed to withstand a vacuum of not less than 28 feet of water. Valve reducers, tees and outlets from a pipe run shall be designed and fabricated so that all stresses are carried by the steel forming the fitting or outlet.

Concrete steel cylinder pipe shall meet one of the following specifications:

AWWA C-301 - Any Size
AWWA C-303 - 24-inch maximum size

All pipe flanges shall conform to AWWA C-207, requirements for standard steel flanges of pressure classes corresponding to the pipe class.

Pipe to be installed in a tunnel or encasement shall be manufactured with 1 inch thick by 24-inch wide skid bands of mechanically impacted mortar in addition to the normal coating.

All concrete steel cylinder fittings shall be constructed of steel plate of adequate strength to withstand both internal pressure and external loading. Rod reinforcing shall not be used to figure the required steel area. The fittings shall have a concrete lining and 1 inch minimum coating of cement mortar, except that centrifugally spun lining need not be reinforced.

Minimum lining thickness shall be ½ inch for 16-inch pipe and ¾ inch for sizes larger than 16-inch pipe. Where it is impractical to place such concrete protection on interior surfaces of small outlets, 2 coats of "Bitumastic Tank Solution" shall be applied.

No fitting shall be made by cutting of standard pipe, except that outlets of less than 75 percent of the pipe diameter may be placed in a standard pipe. Beveled spigots may be placed on standard pipe.

3. Joint Materials

Joints shall be of the rubber gasket type conforming to the applicable standards. The inside and outside recesses between the bell and spigot shall be completely filled with Cement Grout in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's recommendations. Grout materials for jointing such pipe, unless otherwise indicated, shall be as described herein.

(e) Reserved

(f) Polyethylene Tubing

1. General

All polyethylene (PE) tubing shall be high density, high molecular weight plastic tubing meeting ASTM D2737; it shall be pressure rated at 200 psi working pressure and must bear the National Sanitation Foundation seal of approval for potable water service. Pipe

manufacturers shall be listed on SPL WW-65.

2. Materials
Polyethylene plastics shall be Designation PE3408 (Grade P34 with hydrostatic design stress of 800 psi).

3. Markings
Permanent marking on the tubing shall include the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:

Nominal tubing size.
Type of plastic material, i.e., PE 3408.
Dimension Ratio (SDR) and pressure rating in psi for water at 73.4 F (e.g., SDR-9, 200 psi).
ASTM D 2737 designation.
Manufacturer's name or trademark, code and seal of approval (NSF mark) of the National Sanitation Foundation.
Polyethylene tubing for reclaimed service lines shall be purple.

4. Tube Size
PE tubing shall be standard copper tube size outside diameter, with Standard Dimension Ratio (SDR) of 9.

(g) Copper Tubing
All copper service tubing shall be annealed seamless Type K water tube meeting ASTM B88 and rated at 150 psi working pressure. The tubing shall be homogenous throughout and free from cracks, holes, crimping, foreign inclusions or other defects. It shall be uniform in density and other physical properties. Copper tubing for reclaimed water shall be wrapped in purple polyethylene film wrap. Pipe manufacturers shall be listed on SPL WW-613.

(h) Service Connection Fittings
All fittings used in customer service connection - tapping mains, connecting meters, etc. - must be currently listed on the applicable Water and Wastewater Standard Products List (SPL WW-68), or called for in the City of Austin Standard Details (520 - series).

(i) Brass Goods
All brass valves, couplings, bends, connections, nipples and miscellaneous brass pipe fittings and accessories used in meter connections, service lines, air release piping assemblies, and wherever needed in the water distribution system, shall conform to the City of Austin Standards, Austin Water Utility Standard Products Lists, and AWWA C-800, except as herein modified or supplemented.

Unless otherwise noted, the goods described herein shall be fabricated of standard Red Brass (Waterworks Brass) meeting ASTM B62 or B584, alloy 83600, consisting of 85 percent copper and 5 percent each of tin, lead and zinc.

Exposed threads shall be covered with plastic caps or sheeting to protect the threads.

Brass goods of each type and class shall be compatible with other fittings in common usage for

similar purposes. Where not otherwise indicated, all such materials shall meet the following requirements:

Inlet threads of corporation valves shall be AWWA iron pipe (IP) thread (male); outlets of service saddles shall be tapped with AWWA IP thread (female). AWWA IP threads shall conform to ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 as required by AWWA C800 for "General Purpose (Inch) Pipe Threads". For ¾" and 1" sizes only, corporation valve inlet threads, and the internal threads of saddles may be the AWWA taper thread conforming to AWWA C800 Figure 1 and Table 6. External threads of corporation valve inlet must be compatible with internal threads of the service saddle.

Connections of all new tubing, and of tubing repairs wherever possible, shall be by compression fittings. Compression connections shall be designed to provide a seal and to retain the tubing, without slippage, at a working water pressure of 150 psig.

Flanges shall conform to ANSI B16.1, Class 125, as to dimensions, drillings, etc. Copper tubing, when used, shall be Type K tubing having dimensions and weights given in Table A.1 of AWWA C800.

Brass pipe shall conform to the weights and dimensions for Extra Strong pipe given in Table A.2 of AWWA C800.

All fittings shall be suitable for use at hydrostatic working pressures up to 150 psig (hydrostatic testing of installed systems is at 200 psig).

(j) Reserved

(k) Polyvinyl Chloride Potable/Reclaimed Water Pipe

1. General

   All polyvinyl chloride (PVC) potable/reclaimed water pipe shall be of the rigid (UNPLASTICIZED) type and must bear the National Sanitation Foundation seal of approval for potable water pipe. Each joint of pipe shall consist of single continuous extrusion; bells or other components attached by solvent welding are not acceptable. Pipe shall be pressure rated at 200 psi (SDR-14).

   Pipe shall have push-on, rubber gasket joints of the bell and spigot type with thickened integral bells with rubber gasket joints. The wall thickness of each pipe bell and joint coupling must be greater than the standard pipe barrel thickness. Clearance must be provided in every gasket joint for both lateral pipe deflection and for linear expansion and contraction. Concrete thrust blocking shall be placed behind bends and tees. Concrete support cradles or blocking shall be required for support of all fire hydrants, valves and AWWA C110 fittings; such support shall be provided for AWWA C153 fittings when required by the E/A.

2. Applicable Specifications

   Except as modified or supplemented herein, PVC pipe shall meet the following standards:

   AWWA C-900, or SDR 14 for PVC Pressure Pipe, in 4, 6, 8 and 12 inch nominal sizes, having Cast Iron Pipe size outside diameters.

Fittings used with PVC Pressure pipe shall be AWWA C-110 or AWWA C-153 compact ductile iron fittings.

All pipe 4 inches and larger must be approved Underwriter's Laboratories for use in buried water supply and fire protection systems.

3. Material Requirements
All pipe and fittings shall be made from clean, virgin, NSF certified, Class 12454B PVC. Clean reworked materials generated from the manufacturers own production may be used within the current limits of the referenced AWWA C-900.

4. Marking
PVC for reclaimed piping shall be purple or wrapped in purple polyethylene film wrap.

Permanent marking on each joint of pipe shall include the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:
Nominal pipe size and OD base (e.g., 4 CIPS).
Type of plastic material (e.g., PVC 12454B).
Standard Dimension Ratio and the pressure rating in psi for water at 73 F (e.g., SDR 18, 150 psi).
AWWA designation with which the pipe complies (e.g., AWWA C-900).
Manufacturer's name or code and the National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) mark.

5. Tracer Tape
Inductive Tracer Detection Tape shall be placed directly above the centerline of all non-metallic pipe a minimum of 12 inches below subgrade or, in areas outside the limits of pavement, a minimum of 18 inches below finished grade. The tracer tape shall be encased in a protective, inert, plastic jacket and color coded according to American Public Works Association Uniform Color Code. Except for minimum depth of cover, the tracer tape shall be placed according to manufacturer's recommendations. Manufacturers must be listed on SPL WW-597.

(l) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe (Nonpressure) and Fittings

1. General
PVC sewer and wastewater pipe and fittings 6 through 15 inch diameter shall conform to ASTM D 3034. Pipe shall have minimum cell classification of 12364 or 12454. Fittings shall have cell classification of 12454 or 13343. Pipe stiffness shall be at least 115 psi as determined by ASTM D 2412. Pipe manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227, and fitting manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227B.

PVC sewer and wastewater pipe and fittings 18 through 27 inch diameter shall conform to ASTM F 679. Pipe shall have minimum cell classification of 12364 or 12454. Pipe stiffness shall be at least 72 psi as determined by ASTM D 2412. Pipe manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227A, and fitting manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227B.

2. Joints
PVC pipe and fitting shall have elastomeric gasket joints conforming to ASTM D 3212. Gaskets shall conform to ASTM F 477.

3. Pipe Markings
   Pipe meeting ASTM D 3034 shall have permanent marking on the pipe that includes the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:
   Manufacturer's name and/or trademark and code.
   Nominal pipe size.
   PVC cell classification per ASTM D 1784.
   The legend "SDR-_ _ PVC Sewer Pipe" (SDR 26, 23.5. or less is required)
   The designation "ASTM D 3034"
   Pipe meeting ASTM F 679 shall have permanent marking that includes the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:
   Manufacturer's name or trademark and code
   Nominal pipe size
   PVC cell classification per ASTM D 1784
   Pipe stiffness designation "PS _ _ PVC Sewer Pipe" (PS of at least 72 is required
   The designation "ASTM F 679"

4. Fitting Markings
   Fittings meeting ASTM D 3034 shall have permanent marking that includes the following:
   Manufacturer's name or trademark
   Nominal size
   The material designation "PVC"
   The designation, "ASTM F 679"
   Fittings meeting ASTM F 679 shall have permanent marking that includes the following:
   Manufacturer's name or trademark and code
   Nominal size
   The material designation "PVC"
   The designation "ASTM F 679"

5. Tracer Tape
   Inductive Tracer Detection Tape shall be placed directly above the centerline of all non-metallic pipe a minimum of 12 inches below subgrade or, in areas outside the limits of pavement, a minimum of 18 inches below finished grade. The tracer tape shall be encased in a protective, inert, plastic jacket and color coded according to American Public Works Association Uniform Color Code. Except for minimum depth of cover, the tracer tape shall be placed according to manufacturer's recommendations. Manufacturers must be listed on SPL WW-597.

(m) Steel Pipe

1. Standard Weight
   ASTM A 53, Schedule 40.

2. Extra Heavy Weight
   Seamless ASTM A 53, Schedule 80.

3. Encasement Pipe
   a. For direct-bury installations, pipe shall conform to ASTM A134 with minimum thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

b. For jacked installations, pipe shall conform to requirements on drawings.

4. Fittings
Nipples and fittings extra strong Federal Specification WW-N 351 or WW-P 521.

5. Coatings
Black or galvanized as indicated.

(n) Welded Steel Pipe and Fittings for Water-Pipe

1. General Reference Standards Specification.
Specifications of the American Water Works Association (AWWA) listed below shall apply to this Section.
C-200 Steel Water Pipe 6 inches and larger.
C-205 Cement-Mortar Protective Lining and Coating for Steel Water Pipe, 4 inches and larger, Shop Applied.
C-206 Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.
C-207 Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Services, Sizes 4 inches through 144 inches.
C-208 Dimensions for Steel Water Pipe Fittings.
C-602 Cement-Mortar Lining of Water Pipelines, 4 inches and larger in Place.

2. Submittals
Furnish Shop Drawings, product data, design calculations and test reports as described below:
   a. Certified copies of mill tests confirming the type of materials used in steel plates, mill pipe flanges and bolts and nuts to show compliance with the requirements of the applicable standards.
   b. Complete and dimensional working drawings of all pipe layouts. Shop Drawings shall include the grade of material, size, wall thickness of the pipe and fittings, type and location of fittings and the type and limits of the lining and coating systems of the pipe and fittings.
   c. Product data to show compliance of all couplings, supports, fittings, coatings and related items.

3. Job Conditions
   a. The internal design pressure of all steel pipe and fittings shall be as indicated.
   b. The interior of all steel pipe for potable water, 4 inches and larger, shall be cement-mortar lined.

4. Manufacturing
   a. Description
   Pipe shall comply with AWWA C-200.
      (1) Circumferential deflection of all pipe in-place shall not exceed 2.0 percent of pipe diameter.
      (2) Diameter
      Nominal pipe diameter shall be the inside diameter of lining or pipe barrel, unless otherwise designated in Job Conditions.

b. Wall Thickness

(1) Steel pipe wall thickness shall be designed for the internal and external loads specified in this section. The cylinder thickness needed to resist internal pressure shall be based on an allowable stress in the steel equal to ½ the minimum yield stress of the material used.

5. Fittings

a. Welded

Fabricated steel fittings shall be of the same material as pipe and shall comply with AWWA C-208.

6. Flanges

a. Flanges shall comply with the requirements of AWWA C-207, Class D or Class E. The class shall be based on operating conditions and mating flanges of valves and equipment.

b. Gaskets shall be cloth-inserted rubber, ⅛ inch thick.

c. Flanges shall be flat faced with a serrated finish.

7. Pipe Joints

a. Lap Joints for Field Welding

(1) Lap joints for field welding shall conform to AWWA C-206. This item applies only to pipes 72 inches in diameter and larger.

(2) The bell ends shall be formed by pressing on a hydraulic expander or a plug die. After forming, the minimum radius of curvature of the bell end at any point shall not be less than 15 times the thickness of the steel shell. Bell ends shall be formed in a manner to avoid impairment of the physical properties of the steel shell. Joints shall permit a lap at least 1 ½ inches when assembled. The longitudinal or spiral weld on the inside of the bell end and the outside of the spigot end on each section of pipe shall be ground flush with the plate surface. The inside edge of the bell and the outside edge of the spigot shall be scarfed or lightly ground to remove the sharp edges or burrs.

b. Bell and Spigot Joints with O-Ring Gasket

(1) Bell and spigot joints with rubber gasket shall conform to AWWA C-200.

(2) The bell and spigot ends shall be so designed that when the joint is assembled, it will be self-centered and the gasket will be confined to an annular space in such manner that movement of the pipe or hydrostatic pressure cannot displace it. Compression of the gasket when the joint is completed shall not be dependent upon water pressure in the pipe and shall be adequate to ensure a watertight seal when subjected to the specified conditions of service. Bell and spigot ends shall be welded on preformed shapes. The bell and spigot ends shall conform to the reviewed Shop Drawings.

8. Interior and Exterior Protective Surface Coatings

a. Exterior Surface to be mortar coated shall conform to AWWA C-205 for shop application and AWWA C-602 for field application. Pipe materials shall be the product of an organization, which has had not less than 5 years successful

experience manufacturing pipe materials, and the design and manufacture of the pipe, including all materials, shall be the product of one company.

b. All surfaces except as noted in c and d below shall receive shop application of mortar lining and coating.

c. Field Welded Joints. After installation, clean, line and coat unlined or uncoated ends adjacent to welded field joints, including the weld proper, as specified for pipe adjacent to the weld. Potable water only shall be used in the preparation of any cement, mortar, or grout lining.

d. Machined Surfaces. Shop coat machined surfaces with a rust preventative compound. After jointing surfaces, remaining exposed surfaces shall be coated per a) and b) above.

(o) Corrugated Metal Pipe

1. General

Pipe shall be corrugated continuous lock or welded seam helically corrugated pipe. Corrugated metal pipe may be galvanized steel, aluminized steel or aluminum conforming to the following:
Galvanized Steel AASHTO M 218
Aluminized Steel AASHTO M 274
Aluminum AASHTO M 197
Where reference is made herein to gage of metal, the reference is to U.S. Standard Gage for uncoated sheets. Tables in AASHTO M 218 and AASHTO M 274 list thickness for coated sheets in inches. The Tables in AASHTO M 197 list thickness in inches for clad aluminum sheets.

Sampling and testing of metal sheets and coils used for corrugated metal pipe shall be in accordance with TXDOT Test Method Tex-708-I.

Damaged spelter coating shall be repaired by thoroughly wire brushing the damaged area and removing all loose, cracked or weld-burned spelter coating. The cleaned area shall be painted with a zinc dust-zinc oxide paint conforming to Federal Specifications TT-P 641b. Damaged pipe shall be rejected and removed from the project.

Damaged aluminized coating shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The following information shall be clearly marked on each section of pipe:
Thickness and corrugations
Trade Mark of the manufacturer
Specification compliance

2. Fabrication

a. Steel Pipe

Galvanized or aluminized steel pipe shall be full circle or arch pipe conforming to AASHTO M 36, Type I or Type II as indicated.

It may be fabricated with circumferential corrugations; lap joint construction with riveted or spot welded seams or it may be fabricated with helical corrugations with continuous

helical lock seam or ultra high frequency resistance butt-welded seams.

b. Aluminum Pipe
Pipe shall conform to AASHTO M 196, Type I, circular pipe or Type II, pipe arch as indicated. It may be fabricated with circumferential corrugations; lap joint construction with riveted or spot welded seams or it may be fabricated with helical corrugations with a continuous helical lock seam.

Portions of aluminum pipe that are to be in contact with high chloride concrete or metal other than aluminum, shall be insulated from these materials by a coating of bituminous material. The coating applied to the pipe or pipe arch to provide insulation between the aluminum and other material shall extend a minimum distance of 1 foot beyond the area of contact.

3. Selection of Gages
The pipe diameter, permissible corrugations and required gauges for circular pipe shall be as indicated on the drawings.

For pipe arch, the span, rise, gage, corrugation size and coating thickness shall be as shown on the drawings. A tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch or 2 percent of equivalent circular diameter, whichever is greater, will be permissible in span and rise, with all dimensions measured from the inside crests of the corrugations.

4. Joint Material
Except as otherwise indicated, coupling bands and other hardware for galvanized or aluminized steel pipe shall conform to AASHTO M 36 for steel pipe and AASHTO M 196 for aluminum pipe. Field joints for each type of corrugated metal pipe shall maintain pipe alignment during construction and prevent infiltration of soil material during the life of the installation.

Coupling bands shall be not more than 3 nominal sheet thickness lighter than the thickness of the pipe to be connected and in no case lighter than 0.052 inch for steel or 0.048 inch for aluminum.

Coupling bands shall be made of the same base metal and coating (metallic or otherwise) as the pipe.

Coupling bands shall lap equally on each of the pipes being connected to form a tightly closed joint after installation.

Pipes furnished with circumferential corrugations shall be field jointed with corrugated locking bands. This includes pipe with helical corrugations, which has reformed circumferential corrugations on the ends. The locking bands shall securely fit into at least one full circumferential corrugation on each of the pipe ends being coupled. The minimum width of the corrugated locking bands shall be as shown below for the corrugation which corresponds to the end circumferential corrugations on the pipes being joined:

10½ inches wide for 2⅔ inches × ½-inch corrugations.
12 inches wide for 3 inches × 1 inch or 5 inches × 1-inch corrugations.

Helical pipe without circumferential end corrugations will be permitted only when it is necessary to join a new pipe to an existing pipe, which was installed with no circumferential end corrugations. In this event pipe furnished with helical corrugations at the ends shall be field jointed with either helically corrugated bands or with bands with projections or dimples. The minimum width of helically corrugated bands shall conform to the following:

12 inches wide for pipe diameters up to and including 72 inches.
14 inches wide for 1 inch deep helical end corrugations.

Bands with projections shall have circumferential rows of projections with one projection for each corrugation. The width of bands with projections shall be not less than the following:

12 inches wide for pipe diameters up to and including 72 inches.
The bands shall have 2 circumferential rows of projections.
16¼ inches wide for pipe diameters of 78 inches and greater.

The bands shall have 4 circumferential rows of projections.

Unless otherwise indicated, all bolts for coupling bands shall be ½-inch diameter. Bands 12 inches wide or less shall have a minimum of 2 bolts and bands greater than 12 inches wide shall have a minimum of 3 bolts.

Galvanized bolts may be hot dip galvanized conforming to AASHTO M 232, mechanically galvanized to provide the same requirements as AASHTO M 232 or electro-galvanized per ASTM A 164 Type RS.

5. Additional Coatings or Linings

a. Bituminous Coated

Bituminous Coated pipe or pipe arch shall be as indicated both as to base metal and fabrication and in addition shall be coated inside and out with a bituminous coating which shall meet the performance requirements set forth herein. The bituminous coating shall be 99.5 percent soluble in carbon bisulphide. The pipe shall be uniformly coated inside and out to a minimum thickness of 0.05 inch, measured on the crests of the corrugations.

The bituminous coating shall adhere to the metal tenaciously, shall not chip off in handling and shall protect the pipe from deterioration as evidenced by samples prepared from the coating material successfully meeting the Shock Test and Flow Test in accordance with Test Method Tex-522-C.

b. Paved Invert

Where a Paved Invert is indicated, the pipe or pipe arch, in addition to the fully coated treatment described above, shall receive additional bituminous material of the same specification as above, applied to the bottom quarter of the circumference to form a smooth pavement with a minimum thickness of ⅛ inch above the crests of the

corrugations.

c. Cement Lined

(1) General

Except as modified herein, pipe shall conform to AASHTO M 36 for lock seam or welded helically corrugated steel pipe. Pipe shall be of full circle and shall be fabricated with two annular corrugations for purposes of joining pipes together with band couplers. Lock seams shall develop the seam strength as required in Table 3 of AASHTO M 36. Concrete lining shall conform to the following:

Composition

Concrete for the lining shall be composed of cement, fine aggregate and water that are well mixed and of such consistency as to produce a dense, homogeneous, non-segregated lining.

Cement

Portland Cement shall conform to AASHTO M 85.

Aggregate

Aggregates shall conform to AASHTO M 6 except that the requirements for gradation and uniformity of gradation shall not apply.

Mixture

The aggregates shall be sized, graded, proportioned and thoroughly mixed with such proportions of cement and water as will produce a homogenous concrete mixture of such quality that the pipe will conform to the design requirements indicated. In no case, however, shall the proportions of Portland Cement, blended cement or Portland Cement plus pozzolanic admixture be less than 470 lb/cu. yd of concrete.

Thickness

The lining shall have a minimum thickness of ⅛ inch above the crest of the corrugations.

Lining Procedures

The lining shall be plant applied by a machine traveling through a stationary pipe. The rate of travel of the machine and the rate of concrete placement shall be mechanically regulated so as to produce a homogenous nonsegregated lining throughout.

Surface Finish

The lining machine shall also mechanically trowel the concrete lining as the unit moves through the pipe.

Certification

Furnish manufacturer's standard certification of compliance upon request of the purchaser.

Joints

Pipe shall be joined together with coupling bands made from steel sheets to an indicated thickness of 0.064 inch (12 ga.). Coupling bands shall be formed with two corrugations that are spaced to provide seating in the third corrugation of each pipe end without creating more than ½ inch ± annular space between pipe ends when joined together.

Bands shall be drawn together by two ½ inch galvanized bolts through the use of a bar and strap suitably welded to the band.

When O-ring gaskets are indicated they shall be placed in the first corrugation of each pipe and shall be compressed by tightening the coupling band. Rubber O-ring gaskets shall conform to Section 5.9, ASTM C 361.

(2) Causes for Rejection

Pipe shall be subject to rejection on account of failure to conform to any of the indications. Individual sections of pipe may be rejected because of any of the following:

Damaged ends, where such damage would prevent making satisfactory joint.

Defects that indicate poor quality of work and could not be easily repaired in the field.

Severe dents or bends in the metal itself.

If concrete lining is broken out, pipe may be rejected or at the discretion of the E/A, repaired in the field in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Hairline cracks or contraction cracks in the concrete lining are to be expected and does not constitute cause for rejection.

d. Fiber Bonded

Where fiber bonded pipe is indicated, the pipe or pipe arch shall be formed from sheets whose base metal shall be as indicated. In addition, the sheets shall have been coated with a layer of fibers, applied in sheet form by pressing them into a molten metallic bonding. If a paved invert is indicated it shall be in accordance with the procedure outlined above. The test for spelter coating above is waived for fiber bonded pipe.

6. Slotted Drain Storm Sewers

The pipes for the slotted drain and slotted drain outfall shall be helically corrugated, lock seam or welded seam pipe. Materials and fabrication shall be in accordance with the above. The metal thickness shall be a minimum 16 gage.

The chimney assemblies shall be constructed of 3/16 inch welded plate or machine formed 14 gage galvanized steel sheets. The height of the chimney required shall be as indicated. Metal for the welded plate slot shall meet the requirements of ASTM A 36 and the completed

plate slot shall be galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A 123.

Weld areas and the heat affected zones where the slot is welded to the corrugated pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned and painted with a good quality asphalt base aluminum paint.

7. Mortar
Mortar shall be composed of 1 part Type I Portland Cement and 2 parts clean, sharp mortar sand suitably graded for the purpose and conforming in other respects to the provisions for fine aggregate of Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures". Hydrated lime or lime putty may be added to the mix, but in no case shall it exceed 10 percent by weight of the total dry mix.

(9) Geotextile Filter Fabric for Pipe Bedding Material
Geotextile filter fabric for pipe bedding material shall be Hanes Geo Components - TerraTex NO4.5 (AOS US Standard Sieve 70) geotextile fabric or approved equal.

510.3 Construction Methods

(1) General
Prior to commencing this Work, all erosion control and tree protection measures required shall be in place and all utilities located and protected as set forth in "General Conditions". Clearing the site shall conform to Item No. 102S, "Clearing and Grubbing". Maintenance of environmental quality protection shall comply with all requirements of "General Conditions" and Item No. 601S, "Salvaging and Placing Topsoil".

The Contractor shall Work such that a reasonable minimum of disturbance to existing utilities will result. Particular care shall be exercised to avoid the cutting or breakage of all existing utilities. If at any time the Contractor's operations damage the utilities in place, the Contractor shall immediately notify the owner of the utility to make the necessary repairs. When active wastewater sewer lines are cut in the trenching operations, temporary flumes shall be provided across the trench while open and the lines shall be restored when the backfilling has progressed to the original bedding lines of the sewer so cut.

The Contractor shall inform utility owners sufficiently in advance of the Contractor's operations to enable such utility owners to reroute, provide temporary detours or to make other adjustments to utility lines in order that the Contractor may Work with a minimum of delay and expense. The Contractor shall cooperate with all utility owners concerned in effecting any utility adjustments necessary and shall not hold the City liable for any expense due to delay or additional Work because of conflicts arising from existing utilities.

The Contractor shall do all trenching in accordance with the provisions and the directions of the E/A as to the amount of trench left unfilled at any time. All excavation and backfilling shall be accomplished as indicated and in compliance with State Statutes.

Where excavation for a pipe line is required in an existing City street, a street cut permit is required and control of traffic shall be as indicated in accordance with the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.

Wherever existing utility branch connections, sewers, drains, conduits, ducts, pipes or structures present obstructions to the grade and alignment of the pipe, they shall be permanently supported, removed, relocated or reconstructed by the Contractor through cooperation with the owner of the utility, structure or

obstruction involved. In those instances where their relocation or reconstruction is impractical, a deviation from line and grade will be ordered by the E/A and the change shall be made in the manner directed.

Adequate temporary support, protection and maintenance of all underground and surface utility structures, drains, sewers and other obstructions encountered in the progress of the Work shall be furnished by, and at the expense of, the Contractor and as approved by the E/A.

Where traffic must cross open trenches, the Contractor shall provide suitable bridges in conformance with Standard 804S-4. Adequate provisions shall be made for the flow of sewers; drains and watercourses encountered during construction and any structures, which may have been disturbed, shall be satisfactorily restored upon completion of Work.

When rainfall or runoff is occurring or is forecast by the U.S. Weather Service, the Contractor shall not perform or attempt any excavation or other earth moving Work in or near the flood plain of any stream or watercourse or on slopes subject to erosion or runoff, unless given specific approval by the E/A. When such conditions delay the Work, an extension of time for working day contracts will be allowed in accordance with "General Conditions".

(2) Water Line/New Wastewater Line Separation
Separation between water, reclaimed water, and wastewater lines shall be provided as shown in the Drawings.

Crossings of water, reclaimed water, and wastewater lines shall conform to details in the Drawings.

Wastewater manholes within 9 feet of water and reclaimed water lines shall be made watertight according to details in the Drawings.

(3) Utility and Storm Sewer Crossings
When the Contractor installs a pipe that crosses under a utility or storm sewer structure and the top of the pipe is within 18 inches of the bottom of the structure, the pipe shall be backfilled as shown in the Drawings. When the Contractor installs a pipe that crosses under a utility or storm sewer structure that is not shown in the Drawings, the pipe shall be backfilled as directed by the Engineer. Payment for backfilling pipe at utility or storm sewer structures not shown in the Drawings shall be by Change Order.

(4) Trench Excavation
Excavation in a paved street shall be preceded by saw cutting completely through any asphaltic cement concrete or Portland cement concrete surface, base, or subbase to the underlying subgrade. This requirement shall not apply to excavations made with trenching machines that use a rotating continuous belt or chain for cutting and removing of material.

Underground piped utilities shall be constructed in an open cut in accordance with Federal regulations, applicable State Statutes conforming to Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems" and with a trench width and depth described below. When pipe is to be constructed in fill above the natural ground, Contractor shall construct embankment to an elevation not less than one foot above the top of the pipe, after which trench is excavated. Required vertical sides shall be sheeted and braced as indicated to maintain the sides of the required vertical excavation throughout the construction period. Adequacy of the design of sheeting and bracing shall be the responsibility of the Contractor's design professional. The Contractor shall be responsible for installation as indicated. After the pipe has been laid and the backfill

placed and compacted to 12 inches above the top of the pipe, any sheeting, shoring and bracing required may be removed with special care to insure that the pipe is not disturbed. As each piece of sheeting is removed, the space left by its removal must be thoroughly filled and compacted with suitable material and provisions made to prevent the sides of the trench from caving until the backfill has been completed. Any sheeting left in place will not be paid for and shall be included in the unit price bid for pipe.

(5) Trench Width

Trenches for water, reclaimed, and wastewater lines shall have a clear width on each side beyond the outside surfaces of the pipe bell or coupling of not less than 6 inches nor more than 12 inches.

Trenches for Storm Sewers up to 42 inches shall have a width of 1 foot on each side beyond the outside surfaces of the pipe. Pipes more than 42 inches shall have a trench width not to exceed 18 inches on each side beyond the outside surfaces of the pipe.

If the trench width within the pipe zone exceeds this maximum, the entire pipe zone shall be refilled with approved backfill material, thoroughly compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of maximum density as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-114-E and then re-excavated to the proper grade and dimensions. Excavation along curves and bends shall be so oriented that the trench and pipe are approximately centered on the centerline of the curve, using short lengths of pipe and/or bend fittings if necessary.

For all utilities to be constructed in fill above natural ground, the embankment shall first be constructed to an elevation not less than 1 foot above the top of the utility after which excavation for the utility shall be made.

(6) Trench Depth and Depth of Cover

All pipe and in-line appurtenances shall be laid to the grades indicated. The depth of cover shall be measured from the established finish grade, natural ground surface, subgrade for staged construction, street or other permanent surface to the top or uppermost projection of the pipe.

(a) Where not otherwise indicated, all potable/reclaimed water piping shall be laid to the following minimum depths:
   1. Potable/reclaimed water piping installed in undisturbed ground in easements of undeveloped areas, which are not within existing or planned streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with at least 36 inches of cover.
   2. Potable/reclaimed water piping installed in existing streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with at least 48 inches of cover below finish grade.
   3. Unless approved by the E/A, installation of potable/reclaimed water piping in proposed new streets will not be permitted until paving and drainage plans have been approved and the roadway traffic areas excavated to the specified or standard paving subgrade, with all parkways and sidewalk areas graded according to any applicable provisions of the drainage plans or sloped upward from the curb line to the right-of-way line at a minimum slope of ¼ inch per foot. Piping and appurtenances installed in such proposed streets shall be laid with at least 36 inches of cover below the actual subgrade.

(b) Where not otherwise indicated, all wastewater piping shall be laid to the following minimum depths:
   1. Wastewater piping installed in natural ground in easements or other undeveloped areas, which are not within existing or planned streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with

at least 42 inches of cover.

2. Wastewater piping installed in existing streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with at least 66 inches of cover.
3. Wastewater piping installed in such proposed streets shall be laid with at least 48 inches of cover below the actual subgrade.

(7) Classification of Excavation

Excavation will not be considered or paid for as a separate item of Work, so excavated material will not be classified as to type or measured as to quantity. Full payment for all excavation required for the construction shall be included in the various unit or lump sum Contract prices for the various items of Work installed, complete in place. No extra compensation, special treatment or other consideration will be allowed due to rock, pavement, caving, sheeting and bracing, falling or rising water, working under and in the proximity of trees or any other handicaps to excavation.

(8) Dewatering Excavation

Underground piped utilities shall not be constructed or the pipe laid in the presence of water. All water shall be removed from the excavation prior to the pipe placing operation to insure a dry firm granular bed on which to place the underground piped utilities and shall be maintained in such unwatered condition until all concrete and mortar is set. Removal of water may be accomplished by bailing, pumping or by a well-point installation as conditions warrant.

In the event that the excavation cannot be dewatered to the point where the pipe bedding is free of mud, a seal shall be used in the bottom of the excavation. Such seal shall consist of Class B concrete, conforming to Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures", with a minimum depth of 3 inches.

(9) Trench Conditions

Before attempting to lay pipe, all water, slush, debris, loose material, etc., encountered in the trench must be pumped or bailed out and the trench must be kept clean and dry while the pipe is laid and backfilled. Where needed, sump pits shall be dug adjoining the trench and pumped as necessary to keep the excavation dewatered.

Backfilling shall closely follow pipe laying so that no pipe is left exposed and unattended after initial assembly. All open ends, outlets or other openings in the pipe shall be protected from damage and shall be properly plugged and blocked watertight to prevent the entrance of trench water, dirt, etc. The interior of the pipeline shall at all times be kept clean, dry and unobstructed.

Where the soil encountered at established footing grade is a quicksand, saturated or unstable material, the following procedure shall be used unless other methods are indicated:

All unstable soils shall be removed to a depth of a minimum 2 feet below bottom of piped utility or as required to stabilize the trench foundation. Such excavation shall be carried out for the entire trench width.

All unstable soil so removed shall be replaced with a concrete seal, foundation rock or coarse aggregate materials placed across the entire trench width in uniform layers not to exceed 6 inches, loose measure and compacted by mechanical tamping or other means which shall provide a stable foundation for the utility.

Forms, sheathing and bracing, pumping, additional excavation and backfill required in unstable trench conditions shall be included in the unit price bid for pipe.

(10) Blasting
All blasting shall conform to the provisions of the "General Conditions" and/or "Public Safety and Convenience".

(11) Removing Old Structures
When out of service masonry structures or foundations are encountered in the excavation, such obstructions shall be removed for the full width of the trench and to a depth of 1 foot below the bottom of the trench. When abandoned inlets or manholes are encountered and no plan provision is made for adjustment or connection to the new sewers, such manholes and inlets within the construction limits shall be removed completely to a depth 1 foot below the bottom of the trench. In each instance, the bottom of the trench shall be restored to grade by backfilling and compacting by the methods provided above. Where the trench cuts through storm or wastewater sewers which are known to be abandoned, these sewers shall be cut flush with the sides of the trench and blocked with a concrete plug in a manner satisfactory to the E/A. When old structures are encountered, which are not visible from the existing surface and are still in service, they shall be protected and adjusted as required to the finished grade.

(12) Lines and Grades
Grades, lines and levels shall conform to the General Conditions and/or "Grades, Lines and Levels". Any damage to the above by the Contractor shall be re-established at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall furnish copies of all field notes and "cut sheets" to the City.

The location of the lines and grades indicated may be changed only by direction of the E/A. It is understood that the Contractor will be paid for Work actually performed on the basis of the unit Contract prices and that the Contractor shall make no claim for damages or loss of anticipated profits due to the change of location or grade.

All necessary batter boards or electronic devices for controlling the Work shall be furnished by, and at the expense of, the Contactor. Batter boards shall be of adequate size material and shall be supported substantially. The boards and all location stakes must be protected from possible damage or change of location. The Contractor shall furnish good, sound twilled lines for use in achieving lines and grades and the necessary plummets and graduated poles.

The Contractor shall submit to the E/A at least 6 copies of any layout Drawings from the pipe manufacturer for review and approval. The Contractor shall submit the layout Drawings at least 30 days in advance of any actual construction of the project. The E/A will forward all comments of the review to the Contractor for revision. Revisions shall be made and forwarded to the E/A for his acceptance. Prior to commencement of the Project, reviewed layout Drawings will be sent to the Contractor marked for construction.

Should the Contractor's procedures not produce a finished pipe placed to grade and alignment, the pipe shall be removed and relayed and the Contractors procedures modified to the satisfaction of the E/A. No additional compensation shall be paid for the removal and relaying of pipe required above.

(13) Surplus Excavated Materials
Excess material or material which cannot be made suitable for use in embankments will be declared

surplus by the E/A and shall become the property of the Contractor to dispose of off site at a permitted fill site, without liability to the City or any individual. Such surplus material shall be removed from the Work site promptly following the completion of the portion of the utility involved.

(14) Pipe Bedding Envelope

Pipe shall be installed in a continuous bedding envelope of the type shown on the drawings or as described herein. The envelope shall extend the full trench width, to a depth of at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the pipe and to a depth of the springline of storm water pipe and at least 12 inches (300 mm) above water, reclaimed, and wastewater pipe.

(a) Standard Bedding Materials

USE/PIPE MATERIAL	Cement Stabilized Backfill	Natural or Mf'd Sand	Pea Gravel	PIPE BEDDING STONE			
				Uncrushed Gravel	Crushed Gravel	Crushed Stone	Stone Screenings
WATER and RECLAIMED WATER							
Welded Steel	X					X	
Service Tubing ¾" to 2½"		X	X				X
WATER and RECLAIMED WATER (Ductile Iron)							
Up to 15 Inch ID		X	X	X			X
Larger Than 15 Inch ID			X	X			
WATER and RECLAIMED WATER (PVC only) and WASTEWATER							
Up to 15 Inch ID		X	X	X	X	X	X
Larger Than 15 Inch ID			X	X	X	X	
STORMWATER							
Concrete		X	X	X	X	X	X
Metal		X	X	X			X

(b) General requirements and limitations governing bedding selection.

(1) Crushed gravel or crushed stone shall not be used with polyethylene tubing or polyethylene film wrap.

(2) Uncrushed gravel may be used with polyethylene film wrap in trenches up to 6 feet deep and in deeper trenches where ample trench width, a tremmie, or conditions will allow controlled placement of the gravel without damaging the polyethylene wrap.

(3) Bedding shall be placed in lifts not exceeding 8 inches loose thickness and compacted thoroughly to provide uniform support for the pipe barrel and to fill all voids around the pipe.

(4) Pea Gravel or bedding stone shall be used in blasted trenches.

(c) Requirements to prevent particle migration.

Bedding material shall be compatible with the materials in the trench bottom, walls and backfill so that particle migration from, into or through the bedding is minimized. The E/A may require one or more of the following measures to minimize particle migration: use of impervious cut-off collars; selected bedding materials, such as pea gravel or bedding stone mixed with sand; filter fabric envelopment of the bedding; cement stabilized backfill; or other approved materials or methods.

Measures to minimize particle migration will be shown on the Drawings or designated by the E/A, and, unless provisions for payment are provided in the contract documents, the cost of these measures shall be agreed by change order. The following limitations shall apply.

(1) Sand, alone, shall not be used in watercourses, in trenches where groundwater is present, or in trenches with grades greater than 5 percent.
(2) Pea gravel or bedding stone, alone, shall not be used in the street right-of-way within 5 feet of subgrade elevation in trenches that are 3 feet or wider.
(3) Each gravel or bedding stone, alone, shall not be used where the trench bottom, sides, or backfill is composed of non-cementitious, silty or sandy soils having plasticity indices less than 20, as determined by the E/A.
(4) Sand, alone, shall not be used for installation of concrete storm water pipe unless the bedding envelope is wrapped with a geotextile membrane and the joints of the stormdrain conduit are wrapped to prevent the migration of fines into the bedding envelope and into the stormdrain conduit.
(5) For concrete storm water pipe, if pea gravel, uncrushed gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, or combination thereof is used for pipe bedding material, a geotextile filter fabric shall be placed around the perimeter of the joint.

(15) Laying Pipe

No pipe shall be installed in the trench until excavation has been completed, the bottom of the trench graded and the trench completed as indicated.

Laying of corrugated metal pipes on the prepared foundation shall be started at the outlet end with the separate sections firmly joined together, with outside laps of circumferential joints pointing upstream and with longitudinal laps on the sides. Any metal in joints, which is not protected by galvanizing, shall be coated with suitable asphaltum paint. Proper facilities shall be provided for hoisting and lowering the sections of pipe into the trench without damaging the pipe or disturbing the prepared foundation and the sides of the trench. Any pipe which is not in alignment or which shows any undue settlement after laying or damage, shall be taken up and re-laid without extra compensation.

Multiple installations of corrugated pipe or arches shall be laid with the centerlines of individual barrels parallel. When not otherwise indicated, clear distances of 2 feet between outer surfaces of adjacent pipes shall be maintained.

No debris shall remain in the drainways or drainage structures.

All recommendations of the manufacturer shall be carefully observed during handling and installation of each material. Unless otherwise indicated, all materials shall be delivered to the project by the manufacturer or agent and unloaded as directed by the Contractor. Each piece shall be placed facing the proper direction near to where it will be installed.

The interior of all pipe, fittings and other accessories shall be kept free from dirt and foreign matter at all times and stored in a manner that will protect them from damage. Stockpiled materials shall be stacked so as to minimize entrance of foreign matter.

The interior of all pipeline components shall be clean, dry and unobstructed when installed.

Piping materials shall not be skidded or rolled against other pipe, etc. and under no circumstances shall pipe, fittings or other accessories be dropped or jolted.

During handling and placement, materials shall be carefully observed and inspected and any damaged, defective or unsound materials shall be marked, rejected and removed from the job site. Minor damage shall be marked and repaired in a manner satisfactory to the E/A. Joints, which have been placed, but not joined, backfilled, etc., shall be protected in a manner satisfactory to the E/A.

(16) Assembling of Pipe

Angular spacing of all joints shall meet the manufacturer's recommendations for the pipe and accessories being used. Side outlets shall be rotated so that the operating stems of valves shall be vertical when the valves are installed. Pressure pipe shall be laid with bell ends facing the direction of pipe installation. Pipe end bells shall be placed upgrade for all wastewater lines.

Orientation marks, when applicable, shall be in their proper position before pipe is seated.

Before joining any pipe, all foreign matter, lumps, blisters, excess coal tar coating, oil or grease shall be removed from the ends of each pipe and the pipe ends shall then be wire brushed and wiped clean and dry. Pipe ends shall be kept clean until joints are made.

Every precaution shall be taken to prevent foreign material from entering the pipe during installation. No debris, tools, clothing or other materials shall be placed in the pipe.

(17) Joints

(a) Mortar (Storm Drain joints only)

Pipe ends shall be clean, free of asphalt or other contaminants, which will inhibit the bond of the mortar to the pipe. The pipe ends shall be moistened immediately prior to placing the mortar in the joint.

(b) Cold Applied Preformed Plastic Gaskets (Storm Drain joints only)

The pipe ends shall be clean and the joint material applied to the dry pipe. In cold weather, the joint material shall be heated to facilitate the seal of the joint.

(c) O-Ring and Push-on Joints

Just before making a joint the ends of the pipe shall be clean, dry, free of any foreign matter, lump blisters, excessive coal tar coating and grease or oil and shall be wire brushed. The gasket and the inside surface of the bell shall be lubricated with a light film of soft vegetable soap compound (Flax Soap) to facilitate telescoping the joints. The rubber gasket if not factory installed shall be stretched uniformly as it is placed in the spigot groove to ensure a uniform volume of rubber around the circumference of the groove. The spigot shall be centered in the bell and the pipe pushed home uniformly to avoid twisting or otherwise displacing or damaging the rubber gasket. Bedding material shall be placed and tamped against pipe to secure the joint. Care should be taken to prevent dirt or foreign matter from entering the joint space.

Joint Gasket Inspection: After each pipe section is joined, inspect joint gasket to ensure that no displacement of gasket has occurred by use of a feeler gauge approximately ½ inch wide and 0.015-inch thick, or by other gasket inspection procedures approved or recommended by pipe manufacturer that ensures a watertight installation prior to backfilling. If gasket displacement has

occurred, remove pipe section and remake joint as for new pipe. Remove old gasket and replace with new gasket before remaking joint.

(d) Bolted Joints
All flanged, mechanical or other bolted joints shall be joined with nuts and bolts and be coated as indicated above in Iron Pipe.

(e) Storm Drain Joints
Storm drain joints sealed with preformed flexible joint sealants shall be provided and installed in compliance with ASTM C990. Storm drain joints sealed with rubber gaskets shall comply with ASTM C443 Install joint sealants in accordance with the pipe and joint sealant manufacturers' recommendations. Place the joint sealer so that no dirt or other deleterious materials come in contact with the joint sealing material. Pull or push home the pipe with enough force to properly seal the joint with the final joint opening (gap) on the inside of the installed pipe being less than or equal to the pipe manufacturer's recommended dimensions. Protrusion of joint material greater than ⅛" into the interior of the pipe will not be accepted. Excess joint material will be removed to within ⅛"of pipe surface. Observe joint sealant manufacturer's recommendations for installation temperature of the joint sealant. Apply joint sealant to pipe joint immediately before placing pipe in trench, and then connect pipe to previously laid pipe.

If inspection (video or other means) reveal C-990 joints that show signs of backfill infiltration, or where joints or conduits exhibit excessive joint gap or are otherwise defective, then the contractor has the following options:

1. Conduits less than 36-inches in any dimension: pour a concrete collar around the joint or wrap joint with a wrap meeting requirements of ASTM C-877 or approved equal.
2. Conduits greater than or equal to 36-inches in all dimensions: repair joints using joint repair techniques recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a completed system that meets all Contract requirements.

(18) Pressure Pipe Laying

(a) Grout for Concrete Steel Cylinder Pipe (CSC) and Welded Steel Pipe
Aggregate, cement, etc., shall be as indicated in "Mortar" herein. Potable water shall be used in the preparation of any cement, mortar, or grout lining.

Grout shall be poured into the recess between the bell and spigot on the outside of the pipe and contained by a joint wrapper ("diaper") recommended by the pipe manufacturer. The wrapper shall have a minimum width of 7 inches for 30 inch and smaller and 9 inches for larger pipe, secured to the pipe by "Band Iron" steel straps. The grout shall be poured in one continuous operation in such manner that after shrinkage and curing the joint recess shall be completely filled.

Mortar for the inside recess shall be of the consistency of plaster. The inside recess between the bell and spigot shall be filled with mortar after the pipe joint on either side of the recess has been backfilled and well tamped with no less than one pipe joint installed ahead of the pipe forming the recess. The mortar shall completely fill the recess and shall be trowelled and packed into place and finished off smooth with the inside of the pipe.

The Contractor shall inspect the joint after the mortar has set and make repairs of any pockets,

cracks or other defects caused by shrinkage to the satisfaction of the E/A. The inside surface shall be cleared of any mortar droppings, cement, water, slurry, etc., before they have become set and shall be cleared of any other foreign matter. The inside surface of the pipe shall be left clean and smooth.

Pipe shall be handled at all times with wide non abrasive slings, belts or other equipment designed to prevent damage to the coating and all such equipment shall be kept in such repair that its continued use is not injurious to the coating. The use of tongs, bare pinch-bars, chain slings, rope slings without canvas covers, canvas or composition belt slings with protruding rivets, pipe hooks without proper padding or any other handling equipment, which the E/A deems to be injurious to the coating, shall not be permitted. The spacing of pipe supports required to handle the pipe shall be adequate to prevent cracking or damage to the cement mortar lining.

(19) Placing Pipe in Tunnels

Piping installed as a carrier pipe in a tunnel, encasement pipe, etc., shall have uniform alignment, grade, bearing and conform to the reviewed Shop Drawings. All necessary casing spacers, bedding material, grout cradle or paving, bracing, blocking, etc., as stipulated by the Contract or as may be required to provide and maintain the required pipe alignment and grade, shall be provided by the Contractor at no cost except as provided by the Bid Items. This shall include casing spacers acceptable to the Owner attached to the carrier pipe in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The insertion pushing forces shall not exceed the pipe manufacturer's recommendation. Such carrier piping shall have flexible bolted or gasketed push-on joints or Concrete Steel Cylinder pipe installed as follows:

(a) 21 Inch Pipe and Smaller

Prior to placing the pipe in the tunnel, the inside joint recess at the bell shall be buttered with cement mortar.

After the joint is engaged, the excess mortar shall be smoothed by pulling a tight fitting swab through the joint. Cement mortar protection shall then be placed in the normal manner to the exterior of the joint and allowed to harden sufficiently to avoid dislodgment during installation. If time is of the essence, a quick setting compound may be used.

(b) 24 Inch Pipe and Larger

Each length of pipe shall be pushed into the tunnel as single units. A flexible mastic sealer shall be applied to the exterior of the joint prior to joint engagement. The surfaces receiving the mastic sealer shall be cleaned and primed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Sufficient quantities of the mastic sealer shall be applied to assure complete protection of all steel in the joint area. The interior of the joint shall be filled with cement mortar in the normal manner after the pipe is in its final position within the tunnel.

(20) Temporary Pipe Plugs, Caps, Bulkheads and Trench Caps

Temporary plugs, caps or plywood bulkheads shall be installed to close all openings of the pipe and fittings when pipeline construction is not in progress.

All temporary end plugs or caps shall be secured to the pipe as provided under Item No. 507, "Bulkheads".

Trench caps shall be reinforced Class D concrete as indicated.

(21) Corrosion Control

(a) Protective Covering

Unless otherwise indicated, all flanges, nuts, bolts, threaded outlets and all other iron or steel components buried and in contact with earth or backfill shall be wrapped with 8-mil (minimum) polyethylene film meeting ANSI/AWWA C-105 to provide a continuous wrap.

(22) Pipe Anchorage, Support and Protection

Pressure pipeline tees, plugs, caps and bends exceeding 22½ degrees; other bends as directed shall be securely anchored by suitable concrete thrust blocking or by approved metal harness. Unless otherwise indicated, on 24 inch or larger piping, all bends greater than 11 ¼ degrees shall be anchored as described herein.

Storm sewers on steep grades shall be lugged as indicated.

(a) Concrete Thrust Blocking

Concrete for use as reaction or thrust blocking shall be Class B conforming to Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

Concrete blocking shall be placed between solid ground and the fitting to be anchored. The area of bearing on the pipe and on the ground shall be as indicated or directed by the E/A. The blocking shall, unless otherwise indicated, be so placed that the pipe, fittings and joints will be accessible for repair.

The trench shall be excavated at least 6 inches outside the outermost projections of the pipe or appurtenance and the trench walls shaped or undercut according to the detail Drawings or as required to provide adequate space and bearing area for the concrete.

The pipe and fittings shall be adequately weighted and laterally braced to prevent floating, shifting or straining of the pipeline while the concrete is being placed and taking initial set. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for the sufficiency of such restraints.

(b) Metal Thrust Restraint

Fabricated thrust restraint systems such as those described below may be approved for use instead of concrete blocking. To obtain approval, the project Drawings must include sufficient drawings, notes, schedules, etc., to assure that the proposed restraints as installed will be adequate to prevent undesirable movement of the piping components. Such restraint systems may only be used where and as specifically detailed and scheduled on approved Project Drawings.

1. Thrust Harness

A metal thrust harness of tie rods, pipe clamps or lugs, turnbuckles, etc., may be approved. All carbon steel components of such systems, including nuts and washers, shall be hot-dip galvanized; all other members shall be cast ductile iron. After installation, the entire assembly shall be wrapped with 8-mil polyethylene film, overlapped and taped in place with duct tape to form a continuous protective wrap.

2. Restrained Joints

Piping or fitting systems utilizing integral mechanically restrained joints may be approved. All

components of such systems shall be standard manufactured products fabricated from cast ductile iron, hot-dip galvanized steel, brass or other corrosion resistant materials and the entire assembly shall be protected with a continuous film wrap as described for 1. above. Manufacturers of pipe with restrained joints integral to the pipe shall be listed on SPL WW-27F. All pipe and fitting systems with restrained joints shall be identified by applying an adhesive-backed warning tape to the top of the pipe and for the full length of the pipe, regardless of the type of pipe. For plastic pipes the warning tape shall be applied directly to the top of the pipe. For metal pipes and fittings the warning tape shall be applied to the top of the polyethylene film wrap. The warning tape shall conform to 510.2(8)(b)5.

Location, configuration and description of such products shall be specifically detailed on the Drawings. (Add-on attachments such as retainer glands, all-thread rods, etc., are not acceptable.)

(c) Concrete Encasement, Cradles, Caps and Seals
When trench foundation is excessively wet or unstable or installation of water or wastewater pipe will result in less than 30 inches of cover, Contractor shall notify E/A. E/A may require Contractor to install a concrete seal, cradle, cap, encasement or other appropriate action.

All concrete cap, etc., shall be continuous and begin and end within 6 inches of pipe joints. Concrete cap, cradle and encasement shall conform to City of Austin Standard No. 510S-1, "Concrete Trench Cap". The pipe shall be well secured to prevent shifting or flotation while the concrete is being placed.

(d) Anchorage Bulkheads
Concrete bulkheads keyed into the undisturbed earth shall be placed as indicated to support and anchor the pipe and/or backfill against end thrust, slippage on slopes, etc. Concrete material and placement shall be Class A, Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

(e) Trench Caps, Concrete Rip-Rap and Shaped Retards
Where called for by the Contract or as directed by the E/A, concrete trench caps, concrete rip-rap and/or shaped retards shall be placed as detailed by the Drawings as protection against erosion. Concrete material and placement shall be Class B, Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

(23) Wastewater Connections

(a) Connections to Mains 12 Inches and Smaller
All branch connections of new main lines shall be made by use of manholes.

Service stubs shall be installed as indicated. Minimum grade shall be 1 percent downward to main and minimum cover shall be 4½ feet at the curb. Standard plugs shall be installed in the dead end before backfilling.

Where a service connection to a main 12 inches or smaller is indicated, a wye, tee or double wye shall be installed.

Where a service connection to a main 15 inches or larger is indicated, a field tap may be made with the pipes installed crown to crown. The tap should be made conforming to the pipe manufacturer's recommendations with the E/A's approval.

Where not otherwise indicated, (wastewater) service connections shall be installed so that the outlet is at an angle of not more than 45 degrees above horizontal at the main line.

(b) Connections to the Existing System
Unless otherwise specified by the E/A, all connections made to existing mains shall be made at manholes with the crown of the inlet pipe installed at the same elevation as the crown of the existing pipe. Service stubs installed on the existing system shall be installed by use of tapping saddles unless otherwise approved by the E/A. Extreme care shall be exercised to prevent material from depositing in the existing pipe as the taps are being made.

When connections to existing mains are made, a temporary plug approved by the E/A must be installed downstream in the manhole to prevent water and debris from entering the existing system before Final Completion. These plugs shall be removed after the castings are adjusted to finish grade or prior to Final Completion.

(c) Connecting Existing Services to New Mains
Where wastewater services currently exist and are being replaced from the main to the property line, those services shall be physically located at the property line prior to installing any new mains into which the services will be connected. Where wastewater services currently exist but are not being replaced to the property line, those services shall be physically located at the point of connection between the new and existing pipes prior to installing any new mains into which the services will be connected.

(24) Potable or Reclaimed Water System Connections
All necessary connections of new piping or accessories to the existing potable or reclaimed water system shall be made by, and at the expense of, the Contractor. To minimize any inconvenience from outages, the Contractor shall schedule all such connections in advance and such schedule must be approved by the E/A before beginning any Work.

(a) Shutoffs
The City will make all shutoffs on existing potable or reclaimed water mains. The Contractor shall be required to notify the Owner's Representative in writing a least twenty five (25) Calendar Days prior to the anticipated date for a wet-connection. The Owner's Representative is defined as the City Inspector. The Owner's Representative will notify any affected utility customers at least 48 hours prior to the shutoff. Austin Water (AW) will make the shutoff after ensuring that all appropriate measures have been taken to protect the potable or reclaimed water system, customers and employees.

The City will operate all valves to fill existing mains. Where a newly constructed main has not been placed in service and has only one connection to the potable or reclaimed system, the Contractor may operate one valve to fill the main after approval has been obtained from AW. The operation of the valve is to be conducted under the immediate supervision of the Owner's Representative.

Water for the Work shall be metered and furnished by the Contractor in accordance with Section 01500 of the Standard Contract Documents.

(b) Wet Connections to Existing Potable or Reclaimed Water System

The Contractor shall make all wet connections called for by the Contract or required to complete the Work. Two connections to an existing line performed during the same shutout, at the same time and at a distance less than 50 linear feet apart, will be considered one wet connection. Two connections to an existing line performed during the same shutout, at the same time and at a distance equal to, or greater than 50 linear feet will be considered two wet connections. A wet connection shall include draining and cutting into existing piping and connecting a new pipeline or other extension into the existing pressure piping, forming an addition to the potable or reclaimed water transmission and distribution network.

The Contract price for wet connections shall be full payment for all necessary shutoffs, excavation, removing plugs and fittings, pumping water to drain the lines, cutting in new fittings, blocking and anchoring piping, bedding and backfilling, placing the lines and service and all site cleanup.

No water containing detectable amounts of chlorine may be drained, released or discharged until specific planning and appropriate preparations to handle, dilute and dispose of such chlorinated water are approved in advance by the City and the disposal operations will be witnessed by an authorized representative from the City.

(c) Pressure Taps to Existing Potable or Reclaimed Water System

The Contractor shall make all pressure taps called for by the Contract Documents or required to complete the Work. A pressure tap shall consist of connecting new piping to the existing potable or reclaimed water system by drilling into the existing pipe while it is carrying water under normal pressure without taking the existing piping out of service.

Unless otherwise provided by the Contract, the Contractor shall, at the Contractor's expense, perform all necessary excavation, furnish and install the tapping sleeve, valve and accessories, provide the tapping machine, drill the tap and shall block, anchor and backfill the piping, valve and all accessories, place the new piping in service and perform all site cleanup. When the City makes the tap, City forces are not obligated or expected to perform any Work except to provide tapping machine and drill the actual hole. If City crews are to make the tap, fiscal arrangements must be made in advance at the Taps Office, Waller Creek Center, 625 East 10th Street.

If a private Contractor makes the tap, an AW Inspector must be present. "Size on size" taps will not be permitted, unless made by use of an approved full bodied mechanical joint tapping sleeve. Concrete blocking shall be placed behind and under all tap sleeves 24 hours prior to making the wet tap.

(d) Service Connections

Service connection taps into PVC or AC pipe or into CI or DI pipe 12 inches or smaller shall be made using either a service clamp or saddle or a tapping sleeve as recommended by the pipe manufacturer and as approved by the E/A. Direct tapping of these pipes will not be permitted.

All potable or reclaimed water service connections shall be installed so that the outlet is at an angle of not more than 45 degrees above horizontal at the main line.

Precautions should be taken to ensure that the tapping saddle or sleeve is placed on the pipe straight to prevent any binding or deformation of the PVC pipe. The mounting chain or U-bolt strap must be tight.

Tapping shall be performed with a sharp shell type cutter so designed that it will smoothly penetrate heavy walled PVC DR14 and 200 psi AC and will retain and extract the coupon from the pipe.

(25) Backfilling

(a) General

Special emphasis is placed upon the need to obtain uniform density throughout the backfill material. The maximum lift of backfill shall be determined by the compaction equipment selected and in no case shall it exceed 18 inches, loose measurement.

No heavy equipment, which might damage pipe, will be allowed over the pipe until sufficient cover has been placed and compacted. All internal pipe bracing installed or recommended by the manufacturer shall be kept in place until the pipe bedding and trench backfill have been completed over the braced pipe section. Testing of the completed backfill in streets and under and around structures shall meet the specified density requirements. Initial testing shall not be at Contractor's expense and shall conform to the "General Conditions."

(b) General Corrugated Metal Pipe

After the corrugated metal pipe structure has been completely assembled on the proper line and grade and headwalls constructed where indicated; selected material free from rocks over 8 inches in size from excavation or borrow, as approved by the E/A, shall be placed along both sides of the completed structures equally, in uniform layers not exceeding 6 inches in depth (loose measurement), sprinkled if required and thoroughly compacted between adjacent structures and between the structures and the sides of the trench.

Backfill material shall be compacted to the same density requirements as indicated for the adjoining sections of embankment in accordance with the governing specifications thereof. Above the ¾ point of the structure, the fill shall be placed uniformly on each side of the pipe in layers not to exceed 12 inches, loose measure.

Prior to adding each new layer of loose backfill material, until a minimum of 12 inches of cover is obtained over the crown of the pipe, an inspection will be made of the inside periphery of the corrugated metal structure to determine if any floating, local or unequal deformation has occurred as a result of improper construction methods.

(c) Backfill Materials

The Engineer or designated representative may approve any of the following well graded materials as backfill:

1. Select trench material
2. Sand
3. Crushed rock cuttings
4. Rock cuttings
5. Foundation Rock
6. Blasted material with fines and rock
7. Cement stabilized material
8. Borrow

Within the 100-year flood plain, sand will not be permitted for backfilling. The Engineer or

designated representative will approve the topsoil for areas to be seeded or sodded.

(d) Backfill in Street Right-of-Way
Placement of backfill under existing or future pavement structures and within 2 feet of any structures shall be compacted to the specified density using any method, type and size of equipment, which will produce the specified compaction without damaging the pipe or bedding. Placement of backfill greater than 2 feet beyond structures in right-of-way shall conform to (g) below.

The thickness of lifts, prior to compaction, shall depend upon the type of sprinkling and compacting equipment used and the test results thereby obtained. Prior to and in conjunction with the compaction operation, each lift shall be brought to the moisture content necessary to obtain the specified density and shall be placed in a uniform thickness to ensure uniform compaction over the entire lift. Testing for density shall be in accordance with Test Method Tex-114-E and Test Method Tex-115-E.

It is highly desirable that the backfill lifts be placed in a flat (or level) configuration; however when approved by the Engineer or designated representative, the backfill lifts may be placed at gradients (percent of vertical rise or fall to horizontal run) that do not exceed 30%.

The proposed gradient for each lift or series of lifts shall be established based on the capabilities of the equipment proposed to attain the required compaction.

Each lift of backfill must provide the density as specified herein. Swelling soils (soils with a minimum Liquid Limit of 50, more than 50% passing a #200 sieve and a plasticity index greater than 22) shall be sprinkled as required to provide not less than optimum moisture nor more than 2 percent over optimum moisture content and compacted to the extent necessary to provide not less than 95 percent nor more than 102 percent of the density as determined in accordance with Test Method Tex-114-E. Non-swelling soils shall be sprinkled as specified and compacted to the extent necessary to provide not less than 95 percent of the density as determined in accordance with Test Method Tex-114-E.

After each lift of backfill is complete, tests may be made by the Engineer or designated representative. If the material fails to meet the density indicated, the course shall be reworked as necessary to obtain the indicated compaction and the compaction method shall be altered on subsequent Work to obtain indicated density.

At any time, the Engineer or designated representative may order proof rolling to test the uniformity of compaction of the backfill lifts. All irregularities, depressions, weak or soft spots that develop shall be corrected immediately by the Contractor.

If the backfill, due to any reason, loses the specified stability, density or finish before the pavement structure is placed, it shall be recompacted and refinished at the sole expense of the Contractor. Excessive loss of moisture in the subgrade shall be prevented by sprinkling, sealing or covering with a subsequent backfill layer or granular material. Excessive loss of moisture shall be construed to exist when the subgrade soil moisture content is more than 4 percent below the optimum of compaction ratio density. Backfill shall be placed from the top of the bedding material to the existing grade, base course, subgrade or as specified. The remainder of the street backfill shall

either be Flexible Base, Concrete or Hot Mix Asphalt Concrete as specified on the drawings or replacement "in kind" to the surface of the materials originally removed for placement of the pipe.

(e) Backfill in County Street or State Highway Right-of-Way
All Work within the right-of-way shall meet the requirements of (d) above, as a minimum and shall meet the requirements of the permit issued by the County when their requirements are more stringent. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall be responsible for contacting the appropriate TxDOT office or County Commissioner's Precinct Office and following the operating procedures in effect for utility cut permits and pavement repair under their jurisdiction. Approval for all completed Work in the State or County right-of-way shall be obtained from the appropriate Official prior to final payment by the Owner.

(f) Backfill in Railroad Right-of-Way
All Work within the railroad right-of-way shall meet the requirements of (d) above, as a minimum and shall meet the requirements of the permit issued by the Railroad Owner when their requirements are more stringent. Approval for all completed Work in the railroad right of way shall be obtained from the Railroad prior to Final Completion.

(g) Backfill in Easements
Where not otherwise indicated, Contractor may select whatever methods and procedures may be necessary to restore entire Work area to a safe, useful and geologically stable condition with a minimum density of 85 percent or a density superior to that prior to construction.

In and near flood plain of all streams and watercourses, under or adjacent to utilities, structures, etc. all backfill shall be compacted to a density of not less than 95 percent conforming to TxDOT Test Method Tex-114-E, unless otherwise directed by E/A.

All soil areas disturbed by construction shall be covered with top soil and seeded conforming to Item No. 604, "Seeding for Erosion Control". All turf, drainways and drainage structures shall be constructed or replaced to their original condition or better. No debris shall remain in the drainways or drainage structures.

(h) Temporary Trench Repair/Surfacing
If details of temporary trench repair/surfacing are not provided in the contract documents, the Contractor shall submit for approval of the E/A (1) a plan for temporary trench repair for areas that will be open to traffic but will be excavated later for full depth repair, and (2) a proposed method for covering trenches to maintain access to properties. The temporary surfacing shall afford a smooth riding surface and shall be maintained by the Contractor the entire time the temporary surface is in place.

(i) Permanent Trench Repair
The Contractor shall install permanent trench repairs conforming to details in the drawings.

(26) Quality Testing for Installed Pipe
(a) Wastewater Pipe Acceptance Testing
After wastewater pipe has been backfilled, the Contractor shall perform infiltration tests, exfiltration tests, or low pressure air tests as determined by the E/A. In addition, the Contractor shall perform deflection tests and shall assist OWNER'S personnel, as directed, in performing pipeline settlement

tests. The Contractor shall be responsible for making appropriate repairs to those elements that do not pass any of these tests.

(b) Exfiltration Test

Water for the Work shall be metered and furnished by the Contractor in accordance with Section 01500 of the Standard Contract Documents.

Exfiltration testing shall be performed by the Contractor when determined by the E/A to be the appropriate test method. Exfiltration testing shall conform to requirements of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality given in the Texas Administrative Code Title 30 Part 1 Chapter 317 Rule §317.2.

(c) Infiltration Test

Infiltration testing shall be performed by the Contractor when determined by the E/A to be the appropriate test method. Infiltration testing shall conform to requirements of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality given in the Texas Administrative Code Title 30 Part 1 Chapter 317 Rule §317.2.

(d) Pipeline Settlement Test

During the infiltration test or after the exfiltration test, the pipe will be TV inspected for possible settlement. When air testing has been used, water shall be flowed into the pipe to permit meaningful observations. Any pipe settlement which causes excessive ponding of water in the pipe shall be cause for rejection. Excessive ponding shall be defined as a golf ball (1⅝" dia.) submerged at any point along the line.

(e) Low Pressure Air Test of Gravity Flow Wastewater Lines

(1) General

Wastewater lines up to 33-inch diameter shall be air tested between manholes. Wastewater lines 36-inch in diameter and larger shall be either air tested between manholes or at pipe joints. Backfilling to grade shall be completed before the test and all laterals and stubs shall be capped or plugged by the Contractor so as not to allow air losses, which could cause an erroneous, test result. Manholes shall be plugged so they are isolated from the pipe and cannot be included in the test.

All plugs used to close the sewer for the air test shall be capable of resisting the internal pressures and must be securely braced. Place all air testing equipment above ground and allow no one to enter a manhole or trench where a plugged sewer is under pressure. Release all pressure before the plugs are removed. The testing equipment used must include a pressure relief device designed to relieve pressure in the sewer under test at 10 psi or less and must allow continuous monitoring of the test pressures in order to avoid excessive pressure. Use care to avoid the flooding of the air inlet by infiltrated ground water. (Inject the air at the upper plug if possible.) Use only qualified personnel to conduct the test.

(2) Ground Water

Since the presence of ground water will affect the test results, test holes shall be dug to the pipe zone at intervals of not more than 100 feet and the average height of ground water above the pipe (if any) shall be determined before starting the test.

(3) Test Procedure

The E/A may, at any time, require a calibration check of the instrumentation used. Use a pressure gauge having minimum divisions of 0.10 psi and an accuracy of 0.0625 psi. (One ounce per square inch.) All air used shall pass through a single control panel. Clean the sewer to be tested and remove all debris where indicated. Wet the sewer prior to testing. The average back pressure of any groundwater shall be determined (0.433 psi) for each foot of average water depth (if any) above the sewer.

Add air slowly to the section of sewer being tested until the internal air pressure is raised to 3.5 psig greater than the average back pressure of any ground water that may submerge the pipe. After the internal test pressure is reached, allow at least 2 minutes for the air temperature to stabilize, adding only the amount of air required to maintain pressure. After the temperature stabilization period, disconnect the air supply. Determine and record the time in seconds that is required for the internal air pressure to drop from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig greater than the average backpressure of any ground water that may submerge the pipe.

For pipe less than 36-inch diameter, compare the time recorded with the time computed using the following equation:

$T = (0.0850 \times D \times K) \div Q$, where

T = time for pressure to drop 1.0 pounds per square inch gauge in seconds;
K = $0.000419 \times D \times L$, but not less than 1.0
D = nominal inside diameter, in inches, as marked on the pipe;
L = length of line of same pipe size in feet; and
Q = rate of loss, 0.0015 cubic feet per minute per square foot of internal surface area (ft3/min/ft sq) shall be used.

Because a K value of less than 1.0 shall not be used, there are minimum test times for each pipe diameter as shown in the following table:

Table For Low Pressure Air Testing of Pipe

Pipe Diameter (inches)	Minimum Time (seconds)	Minimum Time Applies to All Pipes Shorter than (feet)	Time for Longer Pipes (seconds)
8	454	298	1.520 × L
10 (See Note 1)	567	239	2.374 × L
12	680	199	3.419 × L
15	850	159	5.342 × L
18	1020	133	7.693 × L
21	1190	114	10.471 × L
24	1360	100	13.676 × L
30	1700	80	21.369 × L

Note 1. 10-inch diameter pipe to be used only by AW maintenance personnel.
Note 2. The test parameter for pipes larger than 30-inch diameter shall be shown on the construction plans.
Any drop in pressure, from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig (adjusted for groundwater level), in a time less

than that required by the above equation or table shall be cause for rejection. When the line tested includes more than one size pipe, the minimum time shall be that given for the largest size pipe included.

When joint testing, the minimum time allowable for the pressure to drop from 3.5 pounds per square inch to 2.5 pounds per square inch gauge during a joint test, regardless of pipe size, shall be twenty (20) seconds. A drop in pressure from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig (adjusted for groundwater level) in less than twenty seconds shall be cause for rejection.

Manholes must be tested separately and independently. All manholes must be hydrostatically tested with a maximum loss allowance of 0.025 gallon per foot diameter per foot of head per hour.

When lines are air tested, manholes are to be tested separately by exfiltration or vacuum method (see Standard Specification Item No. 506S, "Manholes").

(f) Deflection Test

Deflection tests shall be performed by the Contractor on all flexible and semi-rigid wastewater pipes. The tests shall be conducted after the final backfill has been in place at least 30 days. Testing for in-place deflection shall be with a pipe mandrel at 95% of the inside diameter of the pipe. A second test of flexible and semi-rigid wastewater pipes 18 inch size and larger, also with a pipe mandrel sized at 95% of the inside diameter of the pipe, shall be conducted by the Contractor 30 days before the warranty expires on the Contractor's Work.

Contractor shall submit proposed pipe mandrels to the E/A or the E/A's designated representative for concurrence prior to testing the line.

Test(s) must be performed without mechanical pulling devices and must be witnessed by the E/A or the E/A's designated representative.

Any deficiencies noted shall be corrected by the Contractor and the test(s) shall be redone.

(g) Inspection of Installed Storm Drain Conduits

(1) General

All storm drain conduits (pipe and box culvert) shall be inspected for conformance to the requirements of this specification. Smart Housing, low/moderate income housing, and projects that are 100-percent privately funded are exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection. All deficiencies revealed by inspection shall be corrected. Video re-inspection meeting the requirements of this specification shall be provided at the Contractor's expense to show that deficiencies have been corrected satisfactorily. Further, the contractor shall provide video in complete segments (manhole to manhole) versus specific deficiency locations.

Projects that are not exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection are also subject to the following constraints:

- All inspectors utilized by the Contractor for video inspection shall be NASSCO-PACP certified for a minimum of 3 years.

- The Contractor will be required to inspect, assess, and record the condition of the storm drain pipe using National Association of Sewer Service Companies (NASSCOs)

Pipeline Assessment Certification Program (PACP) coding standards.

(2) Video Inspection of Installed Storm Drain Conduits
Contractor shall provide all labor, equipment, material and supplies and perform all operations required to conduct internal closed-circuit television and video recording of all storm drain conduits. Video recording of each storm drain conduit section shall be conducted after the trench has been backfilled and prior to placement of permanent pavement repairs or permanent pavement reconstruction. The video recording shall be provided to the Owner for review. Contractor shall not place permanent pavement repairs or permanent pavement reconstruction over the storm drain conduit until Owner has reviewed the video and agrees that there are no defects in the storm drain conduit installation shown in the video submitted by the Contractor or shown in any video acquired by the Owner through other means. Placement of permanent pavement repair or permanent pavement reconstruction over the installed storm drain conduit before the Owner acknowledges no defects shall be at the Contractor's risk. Any defects revealed by the video inspection shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense and a new video submitted to the Owner for review prior to acceptance of the conduit.

All video work shall be conducted under the direct full-time supervision of a NASSCO-PACP certified operator.

The conduit inspection camera shall have the capability of panning plus/minus 275 degrees and rotating 360 degrees. The television camera shall be specifically designed and constructed for such use. The camera shall be operative in 100% humidity conditions. Camera shall have an accurate footage counter that displays on the monitor the exact distance of the camera (to the nearest tenth of a foot) from the centerline of the starting manhole or access point. Camera shall have height adjustment so that the camera lens is always centered within plus/minus 10% of the center axis of the conduit being videoed. Camera shall provide a minimum of 460 lines of horizontal resolution and 400 lines of vertical resolution. Camera shall be equipped with a remote iris to control the illumination range for an acceptable picture. Geometrical distortion of the image shall not exceed one percent (1%). The video image produced by each camera shall be calibrated using a Marconi Resolution Chart No. 1 or equivalent.

Lighting for the camera shall be sufficient to allow a clear picture of the entire periphery of the conduit without loss of contrast, flare out of picture or shadowing. A reflector in front of the camera may be required to enhance lighting in dark or large sized conduit. The video camera shall be capable of showing on the digital display the Owner's name, Project name, Contractor name, date, line size and material, conduit identification, and ongoing footage counter. The camera, television monitor, and other components of the video system shall be capable of producing a picture quality satisfactory to the satisfaction of the Owner. The recording of the internal condition of the storm drain conduit shall be clear, accurate, focused and in color. If the recording fails to meet these requirements, the, equipment shall be removed and replaced with equipment that is suitable. No payment will be made for an unsatisfactory recording.

If during video inspection, water is encountered inside the conduit, the conduit shall be dewatered by the Contractor. The storm drain section must be dry. Video recording

conducted while the camera is floating is not acceptable unless approved by the Owner.

If during video inspection, debris is encountered that prohibits a proper inspection of the conduit, the Contractor shall remove the debris before proceeding.

All video shall be documented using a data logger and reporting system that are PACP compliant and which use codes as established by the National Association of Sewer Service Companies (NASSCO)s - Pipeline Assessment and Certification Program (PACP).

Computer printed location records shall be kept by the Contractor and shall clearly show the location and orientation of all points of significance such as joints, conduit connections, connections at manholes and inlets, and defects. Copy of all records shall be supplied to the Owner. Noted defects shall be documented as color digital files and color hard copy print-outs. Photo logs shall accompany each photo submitted.

The video recording shall supply a visual and audio record of the storm drain conduits that may be replayed. Video recordings shall include an audio track recorded by the video technician during the actual video work describing the parameters of the storm drain conduit being videoed (i.e. location, depth, diameter, pipe material), as well as describing connections, defects and unusual conditions observed during the video work. Video recording playback shall be at the same speed that it was recorded. Slow motion or stop-motion playback features may be supplied at the option of the Contractor. Once videoed, the CDs/DVDs shall be labeled and become the property of the Owner. The Contractor shall have all video and necessary playback equipment readily accessible for review by the Owner while the project is under construction.

Post-installation video shall not be completed until all work is completed on a section of storm drain conduit. Post-installation video work shall be completed by the Contractor in the presence of the Owner. The post-installation video work shall be completed to confirm that the storm drain conduits are free of defects. Provide a color video showing the completed work. Prepare and submit video logs providing location of storm drain conduit along with location of any defects. Manhole and inlet work shall be complete prior to post-installation video work.

For post-installation video, exercise the full capabilities of the camera equipment to document the completion and conformance of the storm drain installation work with the Contract Documents. Provide a full 360-degree view of conduit, all joints, and all connections. The camera shall be moved through the storm drain conduit in either direction at a moderate rate, stopping and slowly panning when necessary to permit proper documentation of the conduit condition at each pipe connection, joint, and defect. In no case shall the camera be pulled at a speed greater than 30 feet per minute. Manual winches, power winches, TV cable, and powered rewinds or other devices that do not obstruct the camera view or interfere with proper documentation of the storm drain conditions shall be used to move the camera through the storm drain conduit. When manually operated winches are used to pull the camera through the conduit, telephones or other suitable means of communication shall be set up between the two access points of the conduit being videoed to insure good communication between members of the video crew.

Distance measurements shall be provided to an accuracy of one tenth of a foot.

Video shall be continuous for each storm drain conduit segment. Do not show a single segment on more than one CD/DVD, unless specifically allowed by the Owner.

Contractor shall submit to Owner the following:

A. National Association of Sewer Service Companies (NASSCO) Pipeline Assessment and Certification Program (PACP) certification of operators who will be performing video work.

B. Compact Disc (CD) or Digital Video Disc (DVD) of recording of storm drain conduits (concrete storm water pipe or box culvert).
   a. The color CD or DVD shall include a digital color key map in a format acceptable to the Owner with each segment of storm drain conduit labeled with the appropriate inspection ID on the map.
   b. The file folder for each segment of the storm drain conduit shall have a unique name based on the Owner's approved inspection naming convention and shall contain the following:
      i. Video files
      ii. Video inspection logs with information coded in accordance with the PACP
      iii. Photo logs
      iv. A report summarizing the results of the video inspection
      v. A proposed method of repair for any defects discovered.

(3) Time commitments from City for projects that are exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection

Projects that are exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection are afforded the following time commitments from the City.

A. Initial inspection - contractor must inform the City of Austin construction inspector assigned to the project in writing that all stormdrain infrastructure for the project has been completed according to the permit and is ready for inspection. The inspector will then notify the Watershed Protection Department (WPD) in writing that the all of the stormdrain infrastructure for the project has been completed and is ready for inspection. The WPD is allowed 15-days to complete inspection from written notification by the inspector. The outcome of this item does not impact the one-year warranty requirements.

B. Video re-inspection by the contractor for deficient installed stormdrain infrastructure. The contractor must submit the video inspection data as defined in this specification to the City of Austin construction inspector assigned to the project along with a written letter of transmittal certified by a professional engineer stating that all identified stormdrain infrastructure installation deficiencies for the project have been corrected. The inspector will then notify the Watershed Protection Department (WPD) in writing and convey the video inspection data to the WPD. The WPD is allowed 15-days to complete review of

the data from the date of delivery by the inspector.

(27) Pressure Pipe Hydrostatic Testing

After the pipe has been installed and backfilled and all service laterals, fire hydrants and other appurtenances installed and connected, a pressure test, followed by a leakage test, will be conducted by the City. The City will furnish the pump and gauges for the tests. The Contractor shall be present and shall furnish all necessary assistance for conducting the tests. The specified test pressures will be based on the elevation of the lowest point of the line or section under test. Before applying the specified test pressure, all air shall be expelled from the pipe. If permanent air vents are not located at all high points, the Contractor shall install corporation cocks at such points.

All drain hydrant and fire hydrant leads, with the main 6-inch gate valve open, the hydrant valve seats closed and no nozzle caps removed, shall be included in the test.

(a) Pressure Test

The entire project or each valved section shall be tested, at a constant pressure of 200 psi for a sufficient period (approximately 10 minutes) to discover defective materials or substandard work. The Contractor assumes all risks associated with testing against valves. Repairs shall be made by the Contractor to correct any defective materials or substandard work. The Contractor shall pre-test new lines before requesting pressure tests by City Forces. The Contractor shall have new lines pressurized to a minimum of 100 psi, on the date of testing, prior to arrival of City Forces.

(b) Leakage Test

A leakage test will follow the pressure test and will be conducted on the entire project or each valved section. The Contractor assumes all risks associated with testing against valves. The leakage test shall be conducted at 150 psi for at least 2 hours. The test pressure shall not vary by more than ±5 psi for the duration of the test.

(1) Allowable Leakage

Leakage shall be defined as the quantity of water that must be supplied into any test section of pipe to maintain the specified leakage test pressure after the air in the pipeline has been expelled and the pipe has been filled with water.

No pipe installation will be accepted if leakage exceeds the amount given by the following formula:

Allowable leakage (gal/hr) = [L × D] ÷ 10,875
Where L = length of pipe tested, in feet
D= nominal pipe diameter, in inches, as marked on the pipe

(2) Location and Correction of Leakage

If such testing discloses leakage in excess of this specified allowable, the Contractor, at the Contractor's expense, shall locate and correct all defects in the pipeline until the leakage is within the indicated allowance. Leakage disclosed at more than one gasketed pipe joint in any tested section will be considered indicative of improper installation and joint gasket inspection procedures by the Contractor for the entire tested section. That entire section of pipe shall be relayed at the Contractor's expense, employing installation procedures approved by the pipe manufacturer.

All visible leakage in pipe shall also be corrected by Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

(28) Service Charges for Testing
Initial testing performed by City forces for the Contractor will be at the City's expense. Retesting, by City forces, of Contractor's work that fails initial testing will be at the Contractor's expense. The City's charge for retests will be a base fee plus an hourly rate published in the current AW Fee Schedule. On City-funded projects, the charges incurred by the City for retesting will be deducted from funds due the Contractor. On non-City-funded projects, the charges incurred by the City for retesting will be billed to the Contractor. The City will withhold acceptance of the Contractor's work until the Contractor has paid the City for the retesting costs.

(29) Disinfection of Potable Water Lines
Prior to performing any disinfection of potable water lines, the Contractor shall submit a Disinfection Plan (Plan) and obtain approval in accordance with COA specification 01300, Submittals. The Plan shall comply with AWWA C651 (Disinfecting Water Mains) and AWWA C655 (Field Dechlorination), latest editions, and shall be developed using one of the following templates, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer and/or AW: Disinfection Plan for Tablet/Granule Method, or Disinfection Plan for Continuous-Feed Method. Templates for these two methods are located at http://www.austintexas.gov/department/construction-standards . The Contractor shall decide which disinfection method to use for a given project. The Slug Method and Spray Method are also acceptable if better suited for disinfection. The initial plan shall be submitted for review a minimum of 60 calendar days prior to when the water main is scheduled to be placed into service, or at the preconstruction conference if the project requires that the waterline be placed in service in less than 60 days, as indicated in the Contractor's Construction Schedule. If any appurtenances are required for injection, sampling, or flushing purposes that are not shown in the original plan/profile sheets, then the Contractor shall include the appurtenances in the project Record Drawings. The Contractor shall disinfect potable water lines only in accordance with an approved Plan.

(a) Preventing Contamination
The Contractor shall protect all piping materials from contamination during storage, handling and installation. Prior to disinfection, the pipeline interior shall be clean, dry and unobstructed. All openings in the pipeline shall be closed with watertight plugs when pipe laying is stopped at the close of the day's work.

(b) Cleaning
Prior to disinfection the Contractor shall clean the pipeline to remove foreign matter. For pipelines 16" in diameter or smaller, cleaning shall consist of flushing the pipeline. For pipelines greater than 16" in diameter, cleaning shall be performed by operating hydrants and blow-offs located at low points in the pipeline, or by mechanical means (sweeping or pigging. Water for the Work shall be metered and furnished by the Contractor in accordance with Section 01500 of the Standard Contract Documents.

(c) Procedure and Dosage
For pipelines 16" or smaller in diameter, the Contractor may use either the AWWA C-651 "Tablet/Granular Method" or the "Continuous Feed Method" for disinfecting the pipeline. The Contractor, at its expense, will supply the test gauges and the Sodium Hypochlorite conforming to ANSI/AWWA B300, which contains approximately 5 percent to fifteen percent available chlorine,

and will submit for approval a written plan for the disinfection process. Calcium Hypochlorite conforming to ANSI/AWWA B300, which contains approximately 65 percent available chlorine by weight, may be used in granular form or in 5 g tablets for 16" diameter or smaller lines, if it is included as part of the written plan of disinfection that is approved by the City of Austin. The Contractor, at its expense, shall provide all other equipment, supplies and the necessary labor to perform the disinfection under the general supervision of the City.

One connection to the existing system will be allowed with a valve arranged to prevent the strong disinfecting dosage from flowing back into the existing water supply piping. The valve shall be kept closed and locked in a valve box with the lid painted red. No other connection shall be made until the disinfection of the new line is complete and the water samples have met the established criteria. The valve shall remain closed at all times except when filling or flushing the line and must be staffed during these operations. As an option, backflow prevention in the form of a reduced pressure backflow assembly may be provided if the valve is left unattended. The new pipeline shall be filled completely with disinfecting solution by feeding the concentrated chlorine and approved water from the existing system uniformly into the new piping in such proportions that every part of the line has a minimum concentration of 25 mg/liter available chlorine.

The disinfecting solution shall be retained in the piping for at least 16 hours and all valves, hydrants, services, stubs, etc. shall be operated so as to disinfect all their parts. After this retention period, the water shall contain no less than 10 mg/liter chlorine throughout the treated section of the pipeline.

For pipelines larger than 16" in diameter, the Contractor may use the AWWA C-651 "Slug Method" for disinfecting the pipeline. Chlorine shall be fed at a constant rate and at a sufficient concentration at one end of the pipeline to develop a slug of chlorinated water having not less than 100 mg/liter of free chlorine. The Contractor shall move the slug through the main so that all interior surfaces are exposed to the slug for at least three (3) hours. The chlorine concentration in the slug shall be measured as it moves through the pipeline. If the chlorine concentration drops below 50 mg/liter, the Contractor shall stop the slug and feed additional chlorine to the head of the slug to restore the chlorine concentration to at least 100 mg/liter before proceeding. As the slug flows past fittings and valves, related valves and hydrants shall be operated so as to disinfect appurtenances and pipe branches.

Unless otherwise indicated, all quantities specified herein refer to measurements required by the testing procedures included in the current edition of "Standard Methods". The chlorine concentration at each step in the disinfection procedure shall be verified by chlorine residual determinations.

(d) Final Flushing

The heavily chlorinated water shall then be carefully flushed from the potable water line by a dechlorination process until the chlorine concentration is no higher than the residual generally prevailing in the existing distribution system. This is necessary to insure that there is no injury or damage to the public, the water system or the environment. The plans and preparations of the Contractor must be approved by the City before flushing of the line may begin. The Contractor will supply the Dechlorination chemical conforming to ANSI/AWWA C655. Additionally the flushing must be witnessed by an authorized representative of the City.

Approval for discharge of the diluted chlorine water or heavily chlorinated water into the wastewater system must be obtained from AW. The line flushing operations shall be regulated by the Contractor so as not to overload the wastewater system or cause damage to the odor feed systems at the lift stations. The City shall designate its own representative to oversee the work.

Daily notice of line discharging must be reported to the AW Dispatch office.

(e) Bacteriological Testing

After disinfection and final flushing, samples shall be collected per one of the two options. Option A: Before approving a main for release, take an initial set of samples and then resample again after a minimum of 16 hours. Both sets of samples must pass for the main to be approved for release. Option B: Before approving a main for release, let it sit for a minimum of 16 hours without any water use. Then collect two sets of samples a minimum of 15 minutes apart while the sampling taps are left running. Both sets of samples must pass for the main to be approved for release. The two (2) sets of water samples from the line will be tested for bacteriological quality by the City and must be found free of coliform organisms before the pipeline may be placed in service. Each set shall consist of one (1) sample that is drawn from the end of the main, at least one from each branch greater than one pipe length, and additional samples that are collected at intervals of not more than 1,200 feet along the pipeline. All stubs shall be tested before connections are made to existing systems.

The Contractor, at its expense, shall install sufficient sampling taps at proper locations along the pipeline. Each sampling tap shall consist of a standard corporation cock installed in the line and extended with a copper tubing gooseneck assembly. After samples have been collected, the gooseneck assembly may be removed and retained for future use.

Samples for bacteriological analysis will only be collected from suitable sampling taps in sterile bottles treated with sodium thiosulfate. Samples shall not be drawn from hoses or unregulated sources. The City, at its expense, will furnish the sterile sample bottles and may, at its discretion, collect the test samples with City personnel.

If the initial disinfection fails to produce acceptable sample test results, the disinfection procedure shall be repeated at the Contractor's expense. Before the piping may be placed in service, two (2) consecutive sets of acceptable test results must be obtained.

An acceptable test sample is one in which: (1) the chlorine level is similar to the level of the existing distribution system; (2) there is no free chlorine and (3) total coliform organisms are absent. An invalid sample is one, which has excessive free chlorine, silt or non-coliform growth as defined in the current issue of the "Standards Methods." If unacceptable sample results are obtained for any pipe, the Contractor may, with the concurrence of the Inspector, for one time only flush the lines and then collect a second series of test samples for testing by the City. After this flushing sequence is completed, any pipe with one or more failed samples must be disinfected again in accordance with the approved disinfection procedure followed by appropriate sampling and testing of the water.

The City of Austin Water Quality Laboratory will notify the assigned City of Austin Inspector in writing of all test results. The Inspector will subsequently notify the Contractor of all test results. The Water Quality Laboratory will not release test results directly to the Contractor.

(30) Cleanup and Restoration

It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to keep the construction site neat, clean and orderly at all times. Cleanup shall be vigorous and continuous to minimize traffic hazards or obstructions along the streets and to driveways. Trenching, backfill, pavement repair (as necessary), and cleanup shall be coordinated as directed by the City. The E/A will regulate the amount of open ditch and may halt additional trenching if cleanup is not adequate to allow for orderly traffic flow and access.

Materials at the site shall be stored in a neat and orderly manner so as not to obstruct pedestrian or vehicular traffic. All damaged material shall be removed from the construction site immediately and disposed of in a proper manner. All surplus excavated materials shall become the property of the Contractor for disposal at the Contractor's expense. After trenching, the Contractor shall immediately remove all excavated materials unsuitable for or in excess of, backfill requirements. Immediately following the pipe laying Work as it progresses, the Contractor shall backfill, grade and compact all excavations as provided elsewhere. The backfill placed at that time shall meet all compaction test requirements. The Contractor shall immediately clean up and remove all unused soil, waste and debris and restore all surfaces and improvements to a condition equal or superior to that before construction began and to an appearance which complements the surroundings. The Contractor shall grade and dress the top 6 inches of earth surfaces with soil or other material similar and equal to the surrounding, fill and smooth any visible tracks or ruts, replace and re-establish all damaged or disturbed turf or other vegetation and otherwise make every effort to encourage the return of the entire surface and all improvements to a pleasant appearance and useful condition appropriate and complementary to the surroundings and equal or similar to that before construction began.

Placement of the final lift of permanent pavement, if a pavement is required, shall begin immediately after all testing of each segment of piping is satisfactorily completed.

(31) Valve Turn Walk-though

As part of the acceptance of Water or Reclaimed Water pressure pipe, an AW Valve Walk-through will be performed after an initial inspection by the Owner's Representative to identify any deficient items. If deficient items are present during the AW Valve Walk-Through and the project fails acceptance, a re-inspection fee will apply and must be paid before a re-inspection is scheduled to confirm correction of deficient items. See AW Fee Schedule for the current Distribution Walk-Through Re-inspection Fee.

(32) 2-inch Jumper Hose

During connections to the water distribution system, the Contractor may be required to install a temporary jumper hose between the unpressurized water segment and an adjacent pressurized water segment for the purpose of maintaining water service to customers who can't operate without water service during the connection. The jumper shall include an approved backflow preventer and be of adequate size and pressure rating to maintain service to the customer. It shall be polyethylene tubing meeting the requirements of COA SPL WW-65. The jumper hose and other components in the temporary service shall be disinfected, and bacteriological samples will be taken and pass before the temporary service is provided to the customer. Contractor shall provide adequate protection for the jumper hose in vehicular traffic areas at all times during use.

Source: Rule No. R161-17.05 , 5-31-2017; Rule No. R161-17.19 , 11-28-2017; Rule No. R161-18.23 , 12-8-2018; Rule No. R161-22.11 , 8-8-2022.

510.4 Measurement

Pipe will be measured by the linear foot for the various types, sizes and classes. Parallel lines will be measured individually.

Where a line ties into an existing system, the length of the new line will be measured from the visible end of the existing system at the completed joint. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of water, reclaimed, and wastewater lines will be measured along pipe horizontal centerline stationing through fittings, valves, manholes, and other appurtenances.

Ductile iron fittings, whether standard mechanical joint or integral factory restrained joint type, will be measured by the ton and paid for in accordance with the schedule in Standard Products List WW-27C. Bolts, glands and gaskets will not be measured for payment. Steel cylinder concrete pipe fittings and welded steel pipe fittings will not be measured separately and are included in the unit price for the respective pipe bid items.

Factory restrained joint pipe meeting the requirements of Standard Products List WW-27F will be measured by the linear foot. The estimated quantity on the bid form is only for restrained joint pipe having integral mechanically restrained joints.

Connecting a new water, wastewater, or reclaimed water service to an existing, comparable type of private service will be measured by each connection. Service pipe from the main to the service connection will be measured by the linear foot.

The Contractor shall be responsible for removing and treating ground water flowing into a trench up to a baseline flow rate of 350 gpm of sustained flow for each mainline open trench (no more that 300 linear feet open trench per work zone segment is allowed at one time). This baseline flow rate is not a prediction of ground water conditions to be expected on the Project. Rather, it establishes contract terms regarding the quantity of ground water for which the contractor is responsible without extra or separate compensation. The flow rate must exceed 350 gpm continuously for at least 4 consecutive hours to be considered sustained flow. It is expected that trench dewatering for this baseline rate may be accomplished with a single 3-inch trash-type pump per open trench; however, measured flow rate, not pump size, type or characteristics shall be used to determine if the baseline rate has been exceeded. Flow rate shall be determined by measurements made at the discharge point of the water treatment facilities. Surface storm water flowing into a trench shall be the Contractor's responsibility to remove and treat without compensation, regardless of inflow rate or volume.

Adjustment of elevations during construction resulting in changes in flow line elevations of plus or minus two feet or less will not be considered for credit or additional compensation and no measurement for payment will be made.

Stormwater pipe will be measured along the slope of the pipe. Where drainage pipe ties into inlets, headwalls, catch basins, manholes, junction boxes or other structures that length of pipe tying into the structure wall will be included for measurement but no other portion of the structure length or width will be so included.

Excavation and backfill, when included as pipe installation will not be measured as such but shall be included in the unit price bid for constructing pipe and measured as pipe complete in place including excavation and backfill.

When pay items are provided for the other components of the system, measurement will be made as addressed hereunder.

Video inspection of newly installed box culverts and storm drain pipe will be measured per linear foot of pipe videoed.

Jumper hose will be measured per linear foot of hose installed, including all depths, excavation and backfill, complete, and in place.

Source: Rule No. R161-17.05 , 5-31-2017.

510.5 Payment

Payment for pipe, measured as prescribed above, will be made at the unit price bid per linear foot for the various sizes of pipe, of the materials and type indicated, unless unstable material is encountered or trench excavation and backfill is bid as a separate item.

The concrete seal, foundation rock or coarse aggregate when used as directed in unstable material will be paid for at the unit price bid per cubic yard, which shall be full payment for all excavation and removal of unsuitable material and furnishing, placing and compacting the foundation rock, coarse aggregate or other approved material all complete in place.

Excavation and backfill, when included as a separate pay item, will be paid for by Pay Item No. 510-E or 510-F.

No separate payment will be made for dewatering a trench with ground water inflow of less than the baseline rate of 350 gpm of sustained flow as described above. Dewatering of those trenches shall be included in the contract unit price of the Pipe pay item. Payment for dewatering a trench with ground water inflow exceeding 350 gpm of sustained flow shall be agreed by change order. Dewatering of bore pits shall be included in the contract unit price for Bore Entry Pit or Exit Pit regardless of inflow rate or volume unless specified otherwise in the bid item for Bore Entry Pit or Exit Pit.

(1) Pipe

Payment for pipe, measured as prescribed above, will be made at the unit price bid per linear foot complete-in-place as designed and represented in the Drawings and other Contract documents. Restrained joint pipe meeting the requirements of Standard Products List WW-27F will be paid for separately at the unit price bid per linear foot. Unless otherwise provided herein, as separate pay item(s), the bid price per linear foot of pipe shall include the following:

a. clearing
b. constructing any necessary embankment
c. excavation
d. disposal of surplus or unusable excavated material
e. furnishing, hauling and placing pipe
f. field constructed joints, collars, temporary plugs, caps or bulkheads
g. all necessary lugs, rods or braces
h. pipe coatings and protection
i. connections to existing systems or structures, concrete blocking and thrust blocks and restrained joints
j. preparing, shaping, pumping for dewatering, and shoring of trenches
k. bedding materials
l. backfill materials
m. hauling, placing and preparing bedding materials
n. particle migration measures
o. hauling, moving, placing and compacting backfill materials
p. temporary and permanent pavement repairs and maintenance

q. temporary removal and replacement of pavement, curb, drainage structures, driveways, sidewalks and any other improvements damaged or removed during construction
r. cleanup
s. vertical stack on deep wastewater services
t. all other incidentals necessary to complete the pipe installation as indicated.
u. pipe joint restraint devices, where specified or allowed, meeting Standard Products List WW-27A or WW-27G.

No separate payment will be made for thrust restraint measures.

Steel cylinder concrete pipe fittings and welded steel pipe fittings will not be paid for separately. These will be included in the unit price bid for the bid item Pipe.

(2) Concrete Cradles and Seals
When called for in the Bid, concrete cradles and seals will be paid for at the unit Contract price bid per linear foot for the size of pipe specified, complete in place.

(3) Concrete Retards
When called for in the Bid, Concrete retards will be paid under Item No. 593S, Concrete Retards."

(4) Boring or Jacking.
When called for in the Bid, boring or jacking will be paid under Item 501S, "Jacking or Boring Pipe.

(5) Wet Connections to Potable or Reclaimed Water Mains
When called for in the bid, wet connections will be paid at the unit price bid per each, complete in place, according to the size of the main that is in service and shall be full compensation for all Work required to make the connection and place the pipe in service. (See subsection 510.3 'Construction Methods' part (24) (b) 'Wet Connections to Existing Water System').

(6) Fittings
Ductile iron fittings, furnished in accordance with these specifications, will be paid for at the unit price bid per ton, complete in place, according to the schedule of weights in Standard Products List WW-27C. Bolts, glands, and gaskets will not be paid for separately and shall be included in the contract unit price for fittings.

(7) Concrete Trench Cap and Encasement
Where the distance between the top of the concrete encasement and the top of the trench cap is less than 36 inches, the concrete cap and encasement shall be poured as one unit and paid for under this bid item at the Contract price bid per linear foot. When the distance above is greater than 36 inches or when the trench cap is placed separately, the trench cap shall be paid for as a separate item, per linear foot, complete in place.

(8) Cement-Stabilized Backfill
Cement-stabilized backfill will be paid for at the unit price bid per linear foot and shall be full payment to the Contractor for furnishing and installing the required material, mixed, placed and cured complete in place.

(9) Concrete Encasement
When called for in the Bid, Concrete Pipe Encasement will be paid under Item No. 505S, "Encasement

and Encasement Pipe".

(10) Pressure Taps
Pressure taps will be paid for at the unit price bid, complete in place, according to the size tap made and the size main tapped and shall be full payment for furnishing all necessary materials, including tapping sleeve and valve, making the tap, testing and placing the connection in service.

(11) Excavation Safety Systems
When called for in Bid, Trench Safety Systems shall conform to Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems."

(12) Connecting a New Water, Wastewater, or Reclaimed Water Service to an existing, comparable type of private service will be paid for at the unit price bid, complete in place, according to the size of new service and size of existing private service, and shall be full payment for furnishing and installing all necessary materials, such as cleanouts, pipe, couplings, and fittings, and including excavation and backfill.

(13) Video Inspection
Video Inspection of Newly Installed Box Culverts and Storm Drain Pipe will be paid for at the unit price bid per linear foot and shall be full payment for all labor, equipment, and materials required for video inspection per this specification, including all submittals of CD/DVD as required.

(14) Jumper Hose
Jumper Hose will be paid at the unit bid price, complete and in place, including installation and removal of all materials necessary to provide a fully functional jumper hose. This item shall also include adequate protection for the jumper hose within vehicular traffic areas.

Source: Rule No. R161-17.05 , 5-31-2017.

Payment, when included as a Contract pay item, will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 510-AR___Dia.:	Pipe, ___ Dia. ___ Type (all depths), including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-ARRJ___Dia.:	Factory Restrained Joint Pipe, ___ Dia., Class ___ Ductile Iron, (all depths) including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-BR___×___Dia.:	Connecting New ___ Service to Existing Private Service (___ Dia. New Service to ___ Dia. Private Service)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-CR:	Pipe Excavation, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-DR:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-ER:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-FR:	Concrete Trench Cap, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-GR:	Concrete Cap and Encasement, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-HR:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-IR: ___ × ___ Dia.:	Pressure Taps, ___ Dia. × ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-JR: ___ × ___ Dia.:	Wet Connections, ___ Dia. × ___ Dia.	Per Each.

Pay Item No. 510-KR:	Ductile Iron Fittings	Per Ton.
Pay Item No. 510-ASD___Dia.:	Pipe, ___ Dia. (all depths), including excavation and backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-CSD:	Pipe Excavation, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-DSD:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-ESD:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-FSD:	Concrete Trench Cap, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-GSD:	Concrete Cap and Encasement, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-HSD:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-AW___ Dia.:	Pipe, ___ Dia. ___ Type (all depths), including excavation and backfill	Per Linear Foot
Pay Item No. 510-AWRJ___ Dia.:	Factory Restrained Joint Pipe, ___ Dia., Class Ductile Iron, (all depths) including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-BW___ × ___ Dia.:	Connecting New ___ Service to Existing Private Service (___ Dia. New Service to ___ Dia. Private Service)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-CW:	Pipe Excavation, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-DW:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-EW:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-FW:	Concrete Trench Cap, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-GW:	Concrete Cap and Encasement, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-HW:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-IW:___ × ___ Dia.:	Pressure Taps, ___ Dia. × ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-JW: ___ × ___ Dia.:	Wet Connections, ___ Dia. × ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-KW:	Ductile Iron Fittings	Per Ton.
Pay Item No. 510-AWW: ___ Dia.:	Pipe, ___ Dia. ___ Type (all depths), including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-AWWRJ___ Dia.:	Factory Restrained Joint Pipe, ___ Dia., Class ductile Iron, (all depths) including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-BWW___ × ___ Dia.:	Connecting New ___ Service to Existing Private Service (___ Dia. New Service to ___ Dia. Private Service)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-CWW:	Pipe Excavation, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-DWW:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-EWW:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-FWW:	Concrete Trench Cap, ___ Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-GWW:	Concrete Cap and Encasement, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-HWW:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___ Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-KWW:	Ductile Iron Fittings	Per Ton.
Pay Item No. 510-VIDEO	Video Inspection of Newly Installed Box Culverts and Storm Drain Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-JH	2-inch Jumper Hose	Per Linear Foot.

An "R" after the pay item indicates the use for reclaimed water.

An "SD" after the pay item indicates the use for storm drain.
A "W" after the pay item indicates the use for water.
A "WW" after the pay item indicates the use for wastewater.

Source: Rule No. R161-17.05 , 5-31-2017.

End

Applicable References:
Standard Specifications Manual: Item Nos. Ref: 102S, 210S, 402S, 403, 501S, 505S, 506, 507S, 509S, 593S, 601S, 604S
Standards Manual: Standard Detail Nos. 510S-1, (520 - series).
Design Criteria Manuals: Utilities Criteria Manual, Section 5.

MODIFICATIONS TO SECTION 510

PIPE

This modification page modifies, amplifies, or amends the technical specifications and plans. In the event of discrepancy, this modification will take precedence over the plans and the technical specifications.

The following are added pay items:

510-ABWW: Abandon Existing Line (All TY/SZ)
510-PWW: 12" Cap on Stubout
510-DSWW: Dual Sewer Service (6-in)
510-ELWW: Extra Length of Sewer Service (6-in)
510-CN: Connect to Existing Wastewater Manhole

Paragraph 510.3 CONSTRUCTION METHOD

Abandon Existing Line.

A. Do not begin cut, plug, and abandonment operations until replacement sewer or force main, has been constructed and tested, all service connections have been installed, and main has been approved for use.
B. Install plug, clamp, and concrete reaction block and make cut at location shown on Drawings and/or as directed by City Inspector.
C. Main to be abandoned will not be valved off and will not be cut or plugged unless directed by City inspector.
D. After main to be abandoned has been cut and capped, check for other sources feeding abandoned sewer main. When sources are found, notify City Inspector and Engineer immediately. Cut and cap abandoned main at point of other feed as directed by City Inspector.
E. Plug or cap ends or opening in abandoned main in manner approved by City Inspector. Install concrete around cap and over pipe to ensure it is not penetrable by groundwater.
F. Remove and dispose of surface identifications such as cleanouts. Clean-outs in improved streets, will be filled with concrete.
G. Backfill excavations in accordance with City of Austin Section 510 - Pipe.
H. Repair street surfaces in accordance with city regulations.
I. Mark location of abandoned sewer laterals on Drawings. Provide to city and Engineer.

Paragraph 510.4 MEASUREMENT

Measurement for "Abandon Existing Line (All Ty/Sz)" will be per linear foot. (510-ABWW).
Measurement for "12" Cap on Stubout" will be per each. (510-PWW).
Measurement for "Dual Sewer Service (6-in)" will be per each. (510-DSWW). Dual Sewer Service (6-in) will be measured by each connection.
Measurement for "Extra Length of Sewer Service (6-in)" will be per linear foot. (510-ELWW). This is for all service connections in private property. It will require a licensed plumber for work within private property.
Measurement for "Connect to Existing Wastewater Manhole" will be per each. (510-CN).

Paragraph 510.5 PAYMENT

Payment for "Abandon Existing Line (All TY/SZ)" will be at the unit price bid per linear foot. This unit price will include full compensation for furnishing, placement and removal of all materials and for all labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment for "12" Cap on Stubout" will be at the unit price bid per each. This unit price will include full compensation for furnishing, placement and removal of all materials and for all labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to

complete the work.

Payment for “Dual Sewer Service (6-in)” will be at the unit price bid per each, complete in place, and will be full payment for furnishing and installing all necessary materials, such as cleanouts, pipe, couplings, and fittings, and including excavation and backfill.

Payment for “Extra Length of Sewer Service” will be at the unit price bid per linear foot, complete in place, and will be full payment for furnishing and installing pipe within private property, fittings, and including excavation and backfill.

Payment for “Connect to Existing Wastewater Manhole” will be at the unit price bid per each, complete in place, and will be full payment for furnishing, coring into existing manhole, flexible boot, grouting, and coating around connection per COA coating system.

ITEM NO. 604S
SEEDING FOR EROSION CONTROL 6-17-21

604S.1 Description

This item shall govern the preparation of a seed bed for temporary or permanent erosion control; sowing of seeds; hydromulch with cellulose fiber wood chips or recycled paper mulch; and other management practices along and across such areas as indicated in the Drawings or as directed by the Landscape Architect, Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, inch-pound units are given preference with SI units shown within parentheses.

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. R161-15.14, 1-4-2016 ; ordbank" web="yes">Rule No. R161-21.12 , 6-17-2021.

604S.2 Submittals

The following submittal items are required in writing during construction:

A. Identification of the seed species, source, mixture, and pure live seed (PLS) of the seed as listed on the analysis tags and certification tags from all seed bags. Seed calculation worksheet per Table 7. PLS is the percentage of seed purity multiplied by the percentage of germination, plus dormant seed. The analysis tag, required on all seed sold in Texas, includes information on quality: kind and variety of seed, lot number, percent pure live seed, percent other crop seed, percent inert matter, percent weed seeds, germination percentage, and date of test. The certification tag also verifies seed quality, an assurance of seed variety and attesting to standards for germination and purity. Information provided includes class of certification, kind of crop, variety, lot number, and name and address of the owner.

B. If fertilizer is proposed to augment soil nutrients, submittals shall conform to Item 606S, Fertilizer.

C. For hydromulch applications, proposed application rate of seed, type of mulch and tacking agent, and other relevant information including fertilizer that is intrinsic to the hydromulch application. An example of the required documentation is in Table 1.

D. Type of hydraulic seeding equipment and nozzles proposed for use.

E. If pesticide use is proposed, an IPM plan for pest removal including pesticide label, proposed application rate and timing, and MSDS sheets.

F. If soil retention blanket is required because seed application is on slope of 3:1 or greater, submittals should conform to Item 605S, Soil Retention Blanket.

The following submittal items are required before Substantial Completion:

A. For hydromulch applications, the complete hydromulch application log, including date, time and quantity of product units placed in the slurry tank. An example of an application log is provided in Table 2. This log may be requested at any time during construction by the Landscape Architect, Engineer, designated representative, or authorized inspector.

B. Pesticide application tracking log. As of January 1, 2012, documentation of all outdoor pesticide use on

city-owned properties is required to demonstrate compliance with the EPA/TCEQ mandated Municipal Stormwater Permit, the TPDES General Pesticide Permit, City Code, and the IPM program.

Table 1: Example of proposed hydromulch application rates

				Hydro Slurry Unit (per acre rates)				
Hydro Mix	**Sheet No.**	**Seed Mix**	**Acres**	**Seed (Bags/ac)**	**Tackifier (Buckets/ac)**	**Mulch (Bales/ac)**	**Fertilizer (Bags/ac)**	**Addl. Amendments (Bags/ac)**
1	L2	A	1.0	1	100	1000	50	5
2	L3	A	0.5	2	200	1500	50	5
3	L5	B	3.0	3	300	3000	50	5

Table 2: Example of hydromulch application log

						Hydro Slurry Unit (per acre rates)				
Date	**Start Time**	**Finish Time**	**ac/Tank**	**Water (gal)**	**Seed Mix**	**Seed (Bags/ac)**	**Tackifier (Buckets/ac)**	**Mulch (Bales/ac)**	**Fertilizer (Bags/ac)**	**Addl. Amendments (Bags/ac)**
4/13	10:30	11:15	1.0	3300	A	1	100	1000	50	5
4/17	2:00	2:30	0.5	3300	A	2	200	1500	50	5
5/20	8:30	10:00	1.2	3300	B	3	300	3000	50	5
					Totals	6	600	5500	127	15

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. R161-15.14, 1-4-2016 ; ordbank" web="yes">Rule No. R161-21.12 , 6-17-2021.

604S.3. Materials

A. **Seed.** All seed must meet the requirements of the Texas Seed Law including the labeling requirements for showing PLS, name and type of seed, and all other required elements of the Analysis and Certification Tags.

The seed furnished shall be of the previous season's crop and the date of analysis shown on each bag shall be within twelve (12) months of the time of delivery to the project. Each variety of seed shall be furnished and delivered in separate bags or containers, unless a specific mix is proposed for use. A sample of each variety of seed shall be furnished for analysis and testing when directed by the Landscape Architect, Engineer or designated representative.

The amount of seed planted per square yard (0.84 square meters) or acre (hectare [ha]) shall be of the type specified in Sections 604S.5 and 604S.6.

B. **Water.** Water shall be clean and free of industrial wastes and other substances harmful to the growth of plant material or the area irrigated.

C. **Topsoil.** Topsoil shall conform to Item No. 601S.3(A).

D. **Fertilizer.** The fertilizer shall conform to and be paid for by bid items under Item No. 606S, Fertilizer. The type and rate of fertilizer should be based on chemical tests of recent (no older than 6 months before application) representative site soil samples. Fertilizer should be applied only when plants can take them up for growth, during: 1) seed germination and plant establishment and 2) after plant establishment. Fertilizer shall not be applied within 48 hours of a potential rain event.

E. **Tackifier.** The hydromulch tackifer shall be a biodegradable tacking agent, approved by the Landscape Architect, Engineer or designated representative.

F. **Cellulose Fiber Mulch (Natural Wood) for hydromulch.** Cellulose Fiber Mulch shall be natural cellulose fiber mulch produced from grinding clean whole wood chips. The mulch shall be designed for use in conventional mechanical planting, hydraulic planting of seed or hydraulic mulching of grass seed, either alone or with fertilizers and other additives. The mulch shall be such, that when applied, the material shall form a strong, moisture-retaining mat without the need of an asphalt binder.

G. **Recycled Paper Mulch for hydromulch.** Recycled paper mulch shall be specifically manufactured from post-consumer paper and shall contain a minimum of 85% recycled paper content by weight, shall contain no more than 15% moisture and 1.6% ash, and shall contain no growth inhibiting material or weed seeds. The recycled paper mulch shall be mixed with grass seed and fertilizer as needed for hydro-seeding/mulching, erosion control, and a binder over straw mulch. The mulch, when applied, shall form a strong, moisture-retaining mat of a green color without the need of an asphalt binder.

H. **Pesticide.** A least toxic, integrated pest management (IPM) approach shall be used to control weeds. A written request for approval of weed control products and materials shall be submitted to the City of Austin Watershed Protection Department (ERM) IPM program coordinator for approval. Additional information can be found at http://www.austintexas.gov/ipm.

I. **Soil Retention Blanket.** Slopes that are 3:1 or greater, or if directed by the Engineer, Landscape Architect, or designated representative, shall be covered with soil retention blanket after the seed bed preparation and seeding is complete. The soil retention blanket shall conform to the class and type shown on the Drawings and meet all requirements of Item 605S.

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. R161-15.14, 1-4-2016 ; ordbank" web="yes">Rule No. R161-21.12 , 6-17-2021.

604S.4 Construction Methods

A. **General.** The Contractor shall limit preparation of the seedbed to areas that will be seeded immediately. When seeding for permanent erosion control, weed species listed in Table 3 shall be managed by application of an appropriate herbicide and/or by physical removal by the roots before the seeding operation. The goal of weed management is to facilitate establishment of the permanent vegetative cover. Additionally, the Owner may require removal of any plant species that appears to be out-competing seeded or planted species during the construction period.

Table 3: Weed List

Weed Type	Botanical Name	Common Name
Annual Grass	*Cenchrus spp.*	Sandbur
Herb	*Cnidoscolus texanus*	Bull Nettle
Herb	*Urtica spp.*	Stinging Nettle
Vine	*Toxicodendron radicans*	Poison Ivy
Perennial Grass	*Sorghum halapense*	Johnson Grass
Perennial Grass	*Arundo donax*	Giant Cane
Perennial Grass	*Phyllostachys aurea*	Golden Bamboo
Summer Annual Herb	*Ambrosia trifida*	Ragweed
Winter Annual Herb	*Rapistrum rugosum*	Bastard Cabbage
Winter Annual Herb	*Bromus arvensis*	Japanese Brome
Winter Annual Herb	*Lolium multiflorum*	Annual Ryegrass

B. **Preparing Seed Bed.** After the designated areas have been rough graded to the lines, grades and typical sections indicated in the Drawings or as provided for in other items of this contract and for any other soil area disturbed by the construction, a suitable seedbed shall be prepared. The seedbed shall consist of a minimum of either 6 inches (150 millimeters) of approved topsoil or 6 inches (150 millimeters) of approved salvaged topsoil.

The topsoil or growing medium must be prepared so that compaction is appropriate for plant growth, and to achieve acceptable bulk density or hydrologic function. Rippers and subsoilers may be used to loosen compacted soil and roughen the surface. Disks, plows and excavator attachments are good for compaction reduction, roughening and incorporating amendments. If tracked machinery is used in seedbed preparation, cleat marks should run with the contour to prevent rills. The optimum depth for seeding shall be ⅛ to ¼ inch (3 to 6 millimeters).

Water shall be gently applied as required to prepare the seedbed prior to the planting operation either by broadcast seeding or hydraulic planting. Seeding shall be performed in accordance with the requirements described below.

C. **Watering.** All watering shall comply with City Code Chapter 6-4 (Water Conservation). All seeded areas regardless of seed type and method of seeding (e.g., broadcast, hydroseed) shall be watered immediately after installation. For seed germination and establishment, it is important to keep the seedbed in a moist condition favorable for the growth of plant materials. Establishment is defined as 1.5" growth height and 95% coverage.

Watering applications shall constantly maintain the seedbed in a moist condition favorable for the growth of plant materials. Watering shall continue until the plant material is at least 1½ inches (40 mm) in height and accepted by the Engineer or designated representative. Supplemental watering can be postponed immediately after a half-inch (12.5 mm) or greater rainfall on the site but shall be resumed before the soil dries out.

D. **Cool Season Cover Crop.** From September 15 to March 1, non-native and native seeding shall include a cool season cover crop at the rate specified in Table 6. Cool season cover crops are not permanent erosion control. If installed separately from the permanently erosion control seed mix, the cool season cover crops shall be mowed to a height of less than one (1) inch after March 1, and the area shall be re-seeded at the specified seeding rate for non-native or native warm-season species (March 1 to September 15).

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. R161-15.14, 1-4-2016 ; ordbank" web="yes">Rule No. R161-21.12 , 6-17-2021.

604S.5 Non-Native Seeding

A. **Method A - Broadcast Seeding.** The seed or seed mixture in the quantity specified shall be uniformly distributed over the prepared seed bed areas indicated on the Drawings or where directed by the Engineer, Landscape Architect, or designated representative. If the sowing of seed is by hand, rather than by mechanical methods, the seed shall be sown in two directions at right angles to each other. If mechanical equipment is used, all varieties of seed, as well as fertilizer (if required), may be distributed at the same time, provided that each component is uniformly applied at the specified rate. After planting, the planted area shall be rolled with a corrugated roller of the "Cultipacker" type. All rolling of the slope areas shall be on the contour.

Seed Mixture and Rate of Application for Broadcast Seeding:
From March 1 to September 15, non-native seeding may be with hulled Bermuda Grass at a rate of at least 45 lbs/ac (5.0 kilograms per hectare) with a minimum PLS = 0.83. Fertilizer shall be applied if warranted by a soil test, and shall conform to Item No. 606S, Fertilizer. Bermuda grass is a warm-season grass and is therefore considered permanent erosion control once established.

Method B - Hydraulic Planting (aka Hydromulch). The seedbed shall be prepared as specified above and hydraulic planting equipment, which is capable of placing all materials in a single operation, shall be used. Information about hydromulching for temporary and permanent vegetation stabilization is in the Environmental Criteria Manual (ECM) Section 1.4.7. Hydroseeding equipment shall be clean and free of all previous seeds, fertilizer, mulch, or any hydroseeding products used on prior jobs.

From March 1 to September 15.
Hydraulic planting mixture and minimum rate of application pounds per acre or square yard (kilograms per ha):

Hulled Bermuda Seed (min. PLS=0.83)	Fiber Mulch		Soil Tackifier
	Cellulose	Wood	
45 lbs/ac (50.44 kg/ha)	2000 lbs/ac (2242 kg/ha)		60.98 lbs/ac (68.36 kg/ha)
		2500 lbs/ac (2803 kg/ha)	65.34 lbs/ac (73.25 kg/ha)

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. 161-15.14, 1-4-2016 ; Rule No. 161-21.12, 6-17-2021.

604S.6 Native Grass and Forb Seeding

The seed mixture shall include both grasses and forbs. The dry and moist sites grass mix shall be seeded at rates of at least 23.5 and 17.0 lb/ac (26.32 and 19.04 kg/ha), respectively and the dry and wet site forb mix shall be seeded at a rate of at least 11.5 and 9.0 lb/ac (12.88 and 10.08 kg/ha), for total application rates of 35.00 lb/ac (39.20 and 29.12 kg/ha) [dry site] and 26 lb/ac (29.12 kg/ha) [wet site]. Minimum diversity for dry sites (Table 4) is eight species of grasses and 10 species of forbs. Minimum diversity for wet sites (Table 5) is six species of grasses and seven species of forbs. The species indicated with an asterisk shall be included in all proposed mixes. Application rates may be modified, but no species shall constitute more than 20% of a seed mix. Any species proposed for installation and not included in Table 4 or 5 shall by City of Austin representative including Environmental Reviewer, Environmental Inspector, or Watershed Protection Department representative, and shall be native to Central Texas as referenced by the LBJ Wildflower Center plant database (www.wildflower.org) or USDA plant database.

Table 4: Native Grasses and Forbs: Dry Sites

Type	Common Name	Botanical Name	Exposure	Recommended Application Rates	
				lbs/ac	kg/ha
Grass Seed Mix	Sideoats grama*	*Bouteloua curtipendula*	Full-part sun	7.0	7.8
	Green sprangletop*	*Leptochloa dubia*	Full sun	6.0	6.7
	Buffalograss	*Buchloe dactyloides*	Full sun	24.0	27.0
	Blue Grama Grass	*Bouteloua gracilis*	Full-part sun	10.0	11.2
	Canada Wild Rye	*Elymus canadensis*	Full-part sun	10.0	11.2
	Purple Three-Awn	*Aristida purpurea*	Full sun	4.0	4.5
	Cane Bluestem	*Bothriochloa barbinodis*	Full sun	3.0	3.3
	Galleta	*Pleuraphis jamesii*	Full sun	10.0	11.2
	Black Grama*	*Bouteloua eripoda*	Full sun	10.0	11.2
	Sand Dropseed*	*Sporobolus cryptandrus*	Full sun	1.0	1.1
	Alkali Sacaton	*Sporobolus airoides*	Full sun	0.5	1.7
	Curly Mesquite	*Hilaria belangeri*	Full sun	2.0	2.2
	Sand Lovegrass	*Eragrostis trichodes*	Full sun	2.0	2.2
	Black-Eyed Susan	*Rudbeckia hirta*	Full-part sun	2.0	2.2
	Illinois Bundleflower*	*Desmanthus illinoens* (legume)	Full-part sun shade	15.0	16.8
	Scarlet Sage	*Salvia coccinea*	Full-part sun shade	8.0	9.0
	Pink Evening Primrose	*Oenethera speciosa*	Full-part sun shade	1.0	1.1
	Drummond Phlox	*Phlox drummondii*	Full-part sun	8.0	9.0
	Plains Coreopsis	*Coreopsis tinctoria*	Full-part sun	2.0	2.2
	Greenthread	*Thelesperma filifoliu*	Full sun	6.0	6.7
	Purple Prairie Clover*	*Dalea purpurea*	Full sun	4.0	4.5
	Cutleaf Daisy	*Engelmannia pinnatifida*	Full-part sun	18.0	20.1
Forb Seed Mix	Partridge Pea*	*Chamaecrista fasciculate*	Full-part sun	20.0	22.4
	Indian Blanket	*Gaillardia pulchella*	Full-part sun	10.0	11.2
	Bluebonnet*	*Lupinus texensis* (legume)	Full sun	20.0	22.4
	Mexican Hat	*Ratibida columnaris*	Full-part sun	2.0	2.2
	Maximilian Sunflower	*Helianthus maximilia*	Full-part sun	5.0	5.6
	Prairie Coneflower	*Ratibidia columnifer*	Full-part sun	2.0	2.2
	Clasping Coneflower	*Dracopis amplexicau*	Full-part sun	3.0	3.4
	Purple Coneflower	*Echinacea purpurea*	Full-part sun shade	10.0	11.2
	Lemon Mint	*Monarda citriodora*	Full-part sun	3.0	3.4
	Huisache Daisy	*Amblyolepis setigera*	Full-part sun	8.0	9.0
	Texas Yellow Star	*Lindheimera texana*	Full-part sun	12.0	13.5
	Lanceleaf Coreopsis	*Coreopsis lanceolata*	Full-part sun shade	10.0	11.2
	Bush Sunflower	*Simsia calva*	Full-part sun	3.0	3.4

	Winecup	*Callirhoe involucrata*	Full-part sun shade	5.0	5.6
	Antelope horns	*Asclepias asperula*	Full sun	0.1	0.04
	Green milkweed	*Asclepias viridis*	Full sun	0.1	0.04
TOTAL Total seed mix application rate is 35.0 lb/ac (23.5 lb/ac grasses and 11.5 lb/ac forbs), to be composed of at least 8 species from the grass list and 10 species from the forb list to include the required species.					

*Required species that must be included in the mix.

Table 5: Native Grasses and Forbs: Wet Sites

Type	Common Name	Botanical Name	Exposure	Recommended Application Rates	
				lbs/ac	kg/ha
Grass Seed Mix	White Tridens	*Tridens albescens*	Full-part sun	0.5	0.56
	Plains Bristlegrass	*Setaria leucopila*	Full-part sun	6.0	6.7
	Switchgrass	*Panicum virgatum*	Full-part sun	4.0	4.5
	Inland Sea Oats	*Chasmanthium latifoliu*	Shade	12.0	13.5
	Canada Wild Rye	*Elymus canadensis*	Full sun - shade	10.0	11.2
	Big Bluestem	*Andropogon gerardii*	Full sun	4.0	4.5
	Bushy Bluestem	*Andropogon glomeratus*	Full sun	3.0	3.4
	Green Sprangletop*	*Leptochloa dubia*	Full sun	2.0	2.2
	Eastern Gamagrass	*Tripsacum dactyloides*	Full sun - shade	3.0	3.4
Forb Seed Mix	American Basketflower	*Centaurea americana*	Full sun	10.0	11.2
	Common milkweed	*Asclepias syriaca*	Full sun	0.1	0.04
	Butterfly weed	*Asclepias tuberosa*	Full sun	0.1	0.04
	Blue Mistflower	*Conoclinium coelestinum*	Full-part sun	0.5	0.6
	Clasping Coneflower	*Dracopsis amplexicaulis*	Full-part sun	3.0	3.4
	Maximilian Sunflower	*Helianthus maximliani*	Full-part sun	4.0	4.5
	Prairie Blazing Star	*Liatris pycnostachya*	Full sun	2.0	2.2
	Pink Evening Primrose	*Oenothera speciosa*	Full sun-dappled shade	1.0	1.1
	Mexican Hat	*Ratibida columnifera*	Full-part sun	2.0	2.2
	Black-eyed Susan	*Rudbeckia hirta*	Full sun-dappled shade	2.0	2.2
	Illinois Bundleflower	*Desmanthus illinoensis*	Full sun-dappled shade	15.0	16.8
	Obedient Plant	*Physostegia virginiana*	Full sun-dappled shade	4.0	4.5
	Partridge Pea*	*Camaecrista fasciculate*	Full-part sun	20.0	22.4
	Purple Prairie Clover	*Dalea purpurea var purpurea*	Full sun	4.0	4.5
	Pitcher Sage	*Salvia azurea*	Full-part sun	3.0	3.4
	Showy Tick Trefoil	*Desmodium canadense*	Full sun	0.5	0.6

	Winecup*	*Callirhoe involucrata*	Full-part sun	5.0	5.6
TOTAL Total seed mix application rate is 26.0 lb/ac (17.0 lb/ac grasses and 9.0 lb/ac forbs), to be composed of at least 8 species from the grass list and 10 species from the forb list to include the required species.					

Table 6: Cool Season Cover Crop

Common Name	**Botanical Name**	**Exposure**	**Application rates**	
			lbs/ac	**kg/ha**
Western Wheatgrass	*Pascopyrum smithii*	Full-pt sun; dappled shade	5.6	6.28
Oats	*Avena sativa*	Full sun	4.0	4.48
Cereal Rye Grain	*Secale cereale*	Full sun	34.0	38.11

One cover crop species of the listed species is required to be planted between September 15 to March 1. Contractor must ensure that any seed application requiring a cool season cover crop does not utilize annual ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum*) or perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*). Only cereal rye grain (*Secale cereale*), oats (*Avena sativa*) and western wheatgrass (*Pascopyrum smithii*) are approved as cool season cover crop.

Species substitution as necessary due to availability shall be approved by the Landscape Architect, Engineer or designated representative. Watering and fertilizer application shall follow procedures outlined above or as otherwise specified on the Drawings.

Seed shall be applied by broadcast, hydromulch, blown compost, or drill method and shall be distributed evenly over the topsoil areas. Mulching shall immediately follow seed application for broadcast and hydromulch applications.

Seed Rate Calculations

The amount of seed needed to be planted on a project shall be calculated before installation to ensure adequate seed is placed, and provided as a submittal. Table 7 is an example worksheet, followed by an example calculation. Information for calculation can be obtained from seed tags or the supplier.

Table 7. Seed Calculation Worksheet

Plant Group	**Desired Seeding Rate (lbs/ac)**	**PLS (pure live seed)**	**Bulk Rate (lbs/ac)**	**Seeding Area (ac)**	**Amt. of Seed to be Installed (lbs)**
Grasses					
Forbs					
TOTAL					

FORMULAS:
PLS (pure live seed) = (Purity × Germination) × 100. Can also use average PLS from seed tags.
Bulk Rate (lbs/ac) =Desired Seed Rate (lbs/ac)/PLS.
Amt. of Seed to be Installed (lbs) = Bulk Rate (lbs/ac) × Seeding Area (ac).

Example:

Plant Group	Desired Seeding Rate (lbs/ac)	PLS [pure live seed] (% decimal)	Bulk Rate (lbs/ac)	Seeding Area (ac)	Amt. of Seed to be Installed (lbs)
Grasses	131.00	0.81	161.73	1.50*	242.60
Forbs	65.34	0.87	75.10	1.50*	112.70
TOTAL	196.34	0.84 (ave.)	236.83	1.50	355.30

*Applied over the same 1.5 ac area.
Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. R161-15.14, 1-4-2016 .

604S.7 Hydromulch

Hydromulch may be used to help prevent soil erosion until final stabilization is achieved. Hydromulch shall be used to cover broadcasted seeds, especially in sunny, open areas, to protect them from drying out during germination.

Refer to ECM Section 1.4.7 for hydromulching applications.

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; ordbank" web="yes">Rule No. R161-21.12 , 6-17-2021.

604S.8 Management Practices

Management Practices include (1) weed management (pesticide application or mechanical removal) to so than 90 percent of the revegetation area is free of weeds listed in Table 3, and (2) reseeding areas of poor germination to achieve coverage and height per 604S.9, with no bare areas greater than 10 s.f.

Ninety (90) percent of a permanent revegetation area must be free of weeds listed in Table 3. Weeds shall be controlled in the most efficient manner possible. Management of weed species should begin early in the project, before seeding for permanent control, and extend into plant establishment, especially for perennial weeds. Manual removal or application of an appropriate herbicide may be required after the initial seeding if emergence of an annual weed species threatens establishment of sufficient preferred plant cover. Disturbance due to weed management after the initial seeding may necessitate re-seeding of the area to establish sufficient preferred plant coverage. Care should be taken to temporarily stabilize areas where physical removal of weeds has been performed to prevent erosion and sediment runoff.

The entire root system of perennial weeds shall be removed to prevent re-sprouting. Weeds may be controlled with an approved contact, systemic herbicide, provided the product is used with appropriate care and is applied in accordance with label instructions and the following guidelines:

1. Herbicide shall not be applied when the wind is greater than 8 mph (12.9 kph),
2. Herbicide shall not be applied when rainfall is expected within 24 hours,
3. Herbicide shall not contact surface water, i.e. creeks, rivers, and lakes,
4. Herbicide shall not contact desirable vegetation (a wicking method shall be used, if necessary, to accurately contact target weed only during application).

The Landscape Architect, Engineer or designated representative shall be consulted to determine appropriate weed control management when weeds are located in an environmentally sensitive location (e.g. near water or adjacent to a critical environmental feature).

At locations that fail to show an acceptable stand of planting for any reason during the initial seeding, repair and/or reseed locations as determined by the Landscape Architect, Engineer or designated representative. A successful stand of grasses and forbs for erosion control should exhibit the following:

- Seedlings with vigorous green foliage;
- Green leaves remaining throughout the summer, at least at the plant bases;
- Uniform density, with grasses and/or forbs well intermixed;
- Minimum of 95% cover; and
- No exposed soil greater than 10 s.f. in aerial extent.

The Contractor shall meet the requirements of the initial seeding, including seeding method, seed mix, and application rates, unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the Owner. Corrected deficiencies will be re-inspected and approved by the Owner, and final acceptance will be granted upon satisfactory completion.

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. R161-15.14, 1-4-2016 .

604S.9 Measurement

Work and acceptable material for Seeding for Erosion Control will be measured by the square yard (meter: 1 meter equals 1.196 square yards) or by the acre (hectare: 1 hectare equals 2.471 acres), complete in place so that all areas of a site that rely on vegetation for stability must be uniformly vegetated with a minimum of 95 percent total coverage for the non-native or native mixes. Bare areas shall not exceed 16 square feet (1.5 square meters), and the average height of vegetation shall stand at a minimum of 1½ inch (40 millimeters). Ninety (90) percent of the re-vegetated area, whether native or non-native re-vegetation, must be free of weeds listed in Table 3. Bare areas greater than 10 s.f. shall be re-prepared and reseeded as required to develop an acceptable stand of plant material.

Source: Rule No. R161-14.29, 12-30-2014 ; Rule No. R161-15.14, 1-4-2016 .

604S.10 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished and measured will be paid for at the unit bid price for Seeding for Erosion Control of the method specified on the Drawings and type of mulch. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials, including all topsoil, water, seed, hydromulch and associated tackifier and for performing all operations necessary to complete the work.

All fertilizer will be measured and paid for conforming to Item No. 606S, Fertilizer.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 604S-A:	Non-Native Seeding for Erosion Control Method, Hydraulic Planting Per Square Yard.	
Pay Item No. 604S-B:	Non-Native Seeding for Erosion Control, Broadcast Seeding, Per Square Yard.	
Pay Item No. 604S-C:	Non-Native Seeding for Erosion Control Method, Hydraulic Planting Per Acre.	
Pay Item No. 604S-D:	Native Seeding for Erosion Control Method, Hydraulic Planting Per Square Yard.	
Pay Item No. 604S-E:	Native Seeding for Erosion Control, Broadcast Seeding, Per Square Yard.	
Pay Item No. 604S-F:	Native Seeding for Erosion Control Method, Hydraulic	

	Planting Per Acre.	
Pay Item No. 604S-G:	Topsoil and Seedbed Preparation, Per Square Yard.	
Pay Item No. 604S-H:	Topsoil and Seedbed Preparation, Per Acre.	
Pay Item No. 604S-I:	Watering, Per 1000 gal (Kgal).	
Pay Item No. 604S-J:	Management Practices, Per Square Yard.	
Pay Item No. 604S-K:	Management Practices, Per Acre.	

Source: ordbank" web="yes">Rule No. R161-21.12 , 6-17-2021.
End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Specification Item 604S Seeding for Erosion Control	
City of Austin Technical Specifications	
Designation	Description
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 601S	Salvaging and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer
City of Austin Land Development Code	
Designation	Description
Section 6-4	Water Conservation

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Specification Item 604S Seeding for Erosion Control	
City of Austin Technical Specifications	
Designation	Description
Item No. 601S	Salvaging and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 605S	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 607S	Slope Stabilization
Item No. 608S	Planting
City of Austin Standards (Details)	
Designation	Description
627S-1	Grass Lined Swale
633S-1	Landgrading
Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges	
Designation	Description
Item No. 160	Topsoil
Item No. 162	Sodding for Erosion Control

Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 166	Fertilizer
Item No. 168	Vegetative Watering
Item No. 169	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 180	Wildflower Seeding
Item No. 192	Landscape Planting

SECTION 642S

SILT FENCE

642S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern the provision and placement of a silt fence fabric fence (Environmental Criteria Manual Section 1.4.5.G) including maintenance of the fence, removal of accumulated silt, removal of the silt fence and re-vegetation of disturbed areas upon completion of the project.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

642S.2 SUBMITTALS

The submittal requirements for this specification section shall include:

A. Source, manufacturer, characteristics and test data for the silt fence fabric,
B. Manufacturer, characteristics and test data for the posts and wire fence.
C. Re-vegetation program, including:
    1. Identification of the type, source, mixture, Pure Live Seed (PLS) and rate of application of the seeding.
    2. Type of mulch.
    3. Type of tacking agent.
    4. Type and rate of application of fertilizer.

642S.3 MATERIALS

A. **Fabric**
    1. *General:* The silt fence fabric shall be of nonwoven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide thermoplastic fibers with non-raveling edges. The silt fence fabric shall be non-biodegradable, inert to most soil chemicals, ultraviolet resistant, unaffected by moisture or other weather conditions, and permeable to water while retaining sediment. The silt fence fabric shall be supplied in rolls a minimum of 36 inches (0.9 meter) wide.

    2. *Physical Requirements:* The fabric shall meet the requirements presented in Table 1, when sampled and tested in accordance with the methods indicated herein, on Standard Detail No. 642S-1 and/or on the Drawings.

B. **Posts:** Posts shall be steel Tee or Y-posts, not less than 4 feet (1.22 meters) in length with a minimum weight of 1.25 pounds per foot (1.86 kilograms per meter) with a minimum Brinell Hardness of 143. Hangers shall be adequate to secure fence and fabric to posts. Posts and anchor plates shall conform to ASTM A-702. Caps are required (*not specifying discretionary criteria).

C. **Wire Fence:** Wire fence shall be welded wire fabric 2 in. x 4 in. 12.5 SWG, wire diameter 0.099 in (±0.005 in.), and shall conform to Standard Specification Section 406, "Reinforcing Steel".

TABLE 1. Silt Fence Fabric Requirements		
Physical Properties	**Method**	**Requirements**
Fabric Weight in ounces per square yard (grams/square meter)	TEX-616-J [1]	5.0 minimum (150 minimum)
Equivalent Sieve Opening Size: US Standard (SI Standard sieve size)	CW-02215 [2]	40 to 100 (425 to 150 µm)
Mullen Burst Strength: lbs. per sq. inch (psi) megaPascal (mPa)	ASTM D-3786 [3]	280 minimum (1.9 minimum)
Ultraviolet Resistance; % Strength Retention	ASTM D-1682 [4]	70 minimum

1. TxDoT Test Method Tex-616-J, "Testing of Construction Fabrics".
2. US Army Corps of Engineers Civil Works Construction Guide Specification CW-02215, "Plastic Filter Fabric".
3. ASTM D-3786, "Test Method for Hydraulic Bursting Strength of Knitting Goods and Nonwoven Fabrics: Diaphragm Bursting Strength Tester Method".
4. ASTM D-1682, "Test Methods for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics".

642S.4 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

The silt fence fabric shall be securely attached to the posts and the wire support fence with the bottom 12 inches (300 mm) of the material buried in a trench a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) deep and 6 inches (150 mm) wide to prevent sediment from passing under the fence. When the silt fence is constructed on impervious material, a 12-inch (300-mm) flap of fabric shall be extended upstream from the bottom of the silt fence and weighted to limit particulate loss. No horizontal joints will be allowed in the silt fence fabric. Vertical joints shall be overlapped a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) with the ends sewn or otherwise securely tied.

The silt fence shall be a minimum of 24 inches (0.6 meter) high. Posts shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) in the ground, placed a maximum of 8 feet (2.4 meters) apart and set on a slight angle toward the anticipated runoff source. When directed by the Engineer or designated representative, posts shall be set at specified intervals to support concentrated loads.

* Per OSHA §1926.701, "all protruding reinforcing steel, onto and into which employees could fall, shall be guarded to eliminate the hazard of impalement". Caps must be large enough to dissipate the forces of impact to prevent impalement from a reasonably foreseeable fall distance. It should be noted that the use of impalement protection caps is but one method of protection; covers or wooden troughs can be another means of meeting the guarding requirement. For City of Austin purposes, this also applies to t-posts and wooden stakes.

The silt fence shall be repaired, replaced, and/or relocated when necessary or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Accumulated silt shall be removed when it reaches a depth of 6 inches (150 mm).

642S.5 MEASUREMENT

The work performed and the materials furnished under this section will be measured by the lineal foot of "Silt Fence", complete in place.

642S.6 PAYMENT

The work performed and materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price per lineal foot of "Silt Fence". The price shall include full compensation for furnishing, hauling and placing all materials, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work including inspecting, repairing, replacing and relocating the fence, removal of silt and removal and disposal of all materials at the

completion of construction in and re-vegetation of disturbed areas.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Section 642S:	Silt Fence for Erosion Control	Per Lineal Foot.

END OF SECTION

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 642S Silt Fence

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.4.5.G	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Number 642S-1	Silt Fence

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 406	Reinforcing Steel

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
A-702	Specification for Steel Fence Posts and Assemblies, Hot Wrought
D-1682	Test Methods for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics
D-3786	Test Method for Hydraulic Bursting Strength of Knitting Goods and Nonwoven Fabrics: Diaphragm Bursting Strength Tester Method

Texas Department of Transportation Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-616-J	Testing of Construction Fabrics

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

Designation	Description
CW-02215	Civil Works Construction Guide Specification "Plastic Filter Fabric"

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 642S Silt Fence

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Table 1-1.3	Recommended Design Values for Functional Controls
Table 1-2	Maximum Water Depth at The Barrier

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Section 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Section 111S	Excavation
Section 120S	Channel Excavation
Section 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Section 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

SECTION 700S

MOBILIZATION

700S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern the mobilization of personnel, equipment and materials at the work site for other contract items that will be performed by the Contractor. Mobilization shall include, but not be limited to the movement of equipment, personnel, material, supplies, etc. to the Work site; the installation of temporary facilities (when not paid for separately) and the establishment of office and other necessary facilities prior to the initiation of the Work. The cost of the Payment Bond and Performance Bond on the Work that is delayed due to circumstances beyond Contractor's control, a closed construction season or for the convenience of the City of Austin will be considered part of the mobilization item under this Contract.

700S.2 MEASUREMENT.

Measurement of the Specification Section, "Mobilization", as specified herein as "Total Mobilization Payment", will be by the "Lump Sum", as the Work progresses.

700S.3 PAYMENT.

The adjusted contract amount as used below is defined as the original contract amount less the lump sum bid for Mobilization and any payments for materials or equipment not yet incorporated in the Work. The Contractor shall submit a lump sum amount for Payment Section 700S-TM, "Total Mobilization Payment".

"Initial Mobilization Payout" as used below is defined as:

1. 8% of the original contract amount for projects with an original contract amount of $ 0.5 million or less; or
2. 4% of the original contract amount for projects with an original contract amount greater than $ 0.5 million.

In those instances where the "Initial Mobilization Payout", as defined above, exceeds the "Total Mobilization Payment" lump sum bid item (i.e. Payment Section 700S-TM), the "Total Mobilization Payment" shall be used as the "Initial Mobilization Payout". In no instance shall the "Initial Mobilization Payout" exceed the "Total Mobilization Payment" bid item.

Partial payments of the "Initial Mobilization Payout" shall be as follows:

A. Upon presentation of a paid invoice for the Payment Bond, Performance Bond and/or required insurance, the Contractor will be paid that cost from the amount bid for "Total Mobilization Payment".
B. The Mobilization of tunnel boring machines, batch plants or other similar facilities, along with supporting materials and equipment, to the work site or to the vicinity of the Work site will be considered as partial Mobilization under this contract. The Contractor shall provide a certified statement of the Contractor's expenditure for the Mobilization and setup of the facility and supporting equipment. Upon approval by the Engineer or designated representative, the certified expenditure will be paid from the amount bid for the Specification Section, "Total Mobilization Payment". In no case shall the combined amount for all of these facilities be more than 10 percent of the Mobilization "Total Mobilization Payment" lump sum bid or one (1) percent of the total contract amount, whichever is less.
C. When one (1) percent of the adjusted contract amount is earned, 50 percent of the "Initial Mobilization Payout will be paid. Previous payments under this item will be deducted from this amount.
D. When five (5) percent of the adjusted contract amount is earned, seventy-five (75) of the "Initial Mobilization Payout will be paid. Previous payments under this item will be deducted from this amount.

E. When ten (10) percent of the adjusted contract amount is earned, one hundred (100) percent of the "Initial Mobilization Payout will be paid. Previous payments under this item will be deducted from this amount.
F. Payment for the remainder of Pay Section 700S-TM, "Total Mobilization Payment" will be made upon receipt of the final pay estimate.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Section 700S-TM:	"Total Mobilization Payment"	Lump Sum

END OF SECTION

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 700S MOBILIZATION

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00020	Invitation for Bids
00100	Instructions to Bidders
00300	Bid Form
00425	Insurance Cost Form
00500	Agreement
00610	Performance Bond
00620	Bid Bond
00650	Certificate of Insurance
00700	General Conditions
00810	Supplemental General Conditions
00820	Modifications to Bidding Requirements & Contract Forms
01010	Summary of Work
01300	Submittals
01500	Temporary Facilities
01550	Public Safety and Convenience
01700	Contract Closeout
01710	Final Cleaning

SECTION 702S

REMOVAL AND RELOCATION OF EXISTING FENCES

702S.1 DESCRIPTION

This section shall govern the removal and relocation of existing fence, gates and hardware to a new alignment at the location in conformance to the typical details indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

702S.2 REMOVAL OF EXISTING MATERIALS

The existing boards, fabric, posts, wire, rails, braces, hardware, gates and miscellaneous items shall be carefully removed, bundled, rolled and stockpiled as indicated on the Drawings for installation at the new fence assignment. The removal and handling shall be such that the fence materials may be reused in the relocated fence.

A. **Removal of Fabric and Wire**. Fabric and wire of all types shall be carefully untied or disassembled from the posts and other appurtenances and shall be rolled in bundles of a size that will allow handling with ordinary equipment.

B. **Removal of Posts**. Posts shall be carefully removed from the ground and the concrete footing removed. The concrete shall be disposed of offsite. Post holes shall be filled with suitable embankment material and thoroughly compacted.

C. **Removal of Boards**. Boards of all types shall be carefully disassembled from the rails and other appurtenances to facilitate removal in panels. Excess material removed shall be disposed of as indicated below.

D. **Storage of Materials**. Storage of all salvageable materials, that will be reinstalled at a new location, shall be stored on-site or at such other locations as the Contractor may elect, subject to approval by the Engineer or designated representative. Security and maintenance of the salvageable materials shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

E. **Excess Materials**. Materials, that are damaged, unsuitable for reinstallation or unnecessary for completion of the scope of the fence work in the new alignment shall be considered as excess but shall be offered to the Owner before removal from the site by the Contractor.

702S.3 NEW MATERIALS

New materials that are required to complete the fence at the location indicated on the Drawings shall be of equal quality to the existing materials. Used materials from other projects or from the Contractor's own used material stocks will not be allowed. The new materials to be furnished will be those necessary to replace items from the existing fence which were damaged during removal operations or which for other reasons cannot be reused.

702S.4 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

The removed fence shall be installed at the new assignment in accordance with the typical details indicated on the Drawings and shall comply with Standard Specification Section 701S, "Fencing" and the best practice for fence

construction of the specified type.

702S.5 MEASUREMENT

Fences of the height and type to be relocated will be measured by the lineal foot (lineal meter: 1lineal foot equals 0.31 meters) of fence in its new location measured at the bottom of the fence along the centerline of the fence from center to center of terminal posts, excluding gates.

702S.6 PAYMENT

The work performed and material furnished as prescribed by this section measured under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Removing and Relocating Fences" of the size and type specified to be relocated. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for removing, salvaging, storing and handling all existing fence materials; furnishing new posts, boards, rails, braces, tie wires, connection clips, fabric, rails, brace rods and any other fence component items that were damaged during removal and necessitating new material being furnished to complete the project; digging post holes and grouting in rock where required; furnishing concrete for post footings; and for all manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work including excavation, backfilling and disposal of surplus materials.

Gates as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for Removal and Relocation of Existing Pedestrian or Vehicular Gates of the type and size specified to be relocated. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for removing the gate from the existing locations, handling, storing and hauling all gate materials, furnishing any new materials necessary for installing at new locations; providing new center anchorage blocks, latches and catch blocks and for manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the gate relocation.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Section 702S-A:	Removing and Relocating Existing _____ Ft. Chain Link Fence	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Section 702S-B:	Removing and Relocating Existing _____ Ft. × _____ Ft. Chain Link Pedestrian Gate	Per Each.
Pay Section 702S-C:	Removing and Relocating Existing _____ Ft. × _____ Ft. Chain Link Vehicular Gate	Per Each.
Pay Section 702S-D:	Removing and Relocating Existing _____ Ft. Wooden Fence	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Section 702S-E:	Removing and Relocating Existing _____ Ft. × _____ Ft. Wooden Pedestrian Gate	Per Each.
Pay Section 702S-F:	Removing and Relocating Existing _____ Ft. × _____ Ft. Wooden Vehicular Gate	Per Each.
Pay Section 702S-G:	Removing and Relocating Existing _____ Ft. Wire Fence	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Section 702S-H:	Removing & Relocating Existing _____ Ft. × _____ Ft. Metal Gate	Per Each.

END OF SECTION

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 702S Removal and Relocation of Existing Fences

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 701S	Fencing

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 702S Removal and Relocation of Existing Fences

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Section 403S	Concrete for Structures

Texas Department of Transportation:
Standard Specifications for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 445	Galvanizing

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
A 53/A 53M	Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
A 116	Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric
A 121	Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Barbed Wire
A 153/A 153M	Specification for Zinc-Coated (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
A 239	Practice for Locating the Thinnest Spot in a Zinc (Galvanized) Coating on Iron and Steel Articles
A 392	Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
A 491	Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
A 585	Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Barbed Wire
B 117	Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus

ITEM NO. 803S
BARRICADES, SIGNS AND TRAFFIC HANDLING 11-15-11

803S.1 Description

This item shall govern for providing, installing, moving, replacing, maintaining, cleaning and removing upon completion of the work, all temporary or permanent street closure barricades, signs, cones, lights or other devices required to handle the traffic in conformance with the current edition of the Texas Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Street and Highways and as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Constructing a detour, if required, shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 801S, "Constructing a Detour." Capital Improvement Project Signs shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 802S, "Project Signs."

This item shall also include the installation of all required safety fencing as described in the latest adopted version of Standard Detail 804S-4.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

803S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type of Barricade and proposed materials and Construction of the barricade,
B. Test results for Retro-Reflective sheeting.

803S.3 Materials

All barricades, signs, cones, lights and other types of devices to handle traffic, as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative, shall conform to details shown on the Drawings or those indicated in the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD).

803S.4 Construction Methods

Prior to commencement of construction, suitable "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling" devices shall be installed to protect the workers and the public.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the installation of all markers, signs and barricades in accordance with the Drawings and in conformance with the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD) and/or as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative. If, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, additional markers, signs or barricades are needed in the interest of safety, the Contractor will install such as are required or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. All changes and/or revisions to the detour/traffic control plan shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Lumber shall be painted with two coats of paint as indicated on the Drawings.

803S.5 Maintenance

It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to maintain, clean, move and replace if necessary, barricades, signs and traffic handling devices during the time required for construction of the project. Permanent barricades shall be constructed as required after the completion of the street by drilling holes to place the posts and concrete

foundations. Foundation concrete shall be cured before the rails are attached. When no longer needed, all temporary Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling Devices shall be removed and the area restored to its original condition or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

803S.6 Measurement

The work performed and material furnished as prescribed by this item, City of Austin Standard Details, details included on the Drawings or indicated in the TMUTCD shall be measured as follows:

A. Pavement Markings.
All pavement marking required for proper installation of the designated Traffic Control Plans and Details, as well as required removal of existing pavement marking, shall be measured and paid for under Standard Specification Item No. 870S, "Work Zone Pavement Markings" and Standard Specification Item No. 874S, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings".

B. Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling.
All work performed and material furnished as prescribed by this item, City of Austin Standard Details, details shown on the Drawings or indicated in the TMUTCD, that are not included in the above paragraph, shall be measured by the number of calendar days, working days or months of actual service.

Traffic control for the project will be measured and paid for once per contract defined time period, i.e. either per Calendar Day, Working day or Month at the contract rate, regardless of the number of set-ups, locations or streets under construction.

C. Safety Fencing
Safety fencing will be measured by the lineal foot.

803S.7 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item, measured as provided under section "803S.6 Measurement" shall be paid for at the contract unit price for barricades, signs and traffic handling. This unit price shall include full compensation for furnishing, placement and removal of all materials and for all labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 803S-CD:	Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling	Per Calendar Day.
Pay Item No. 803S-WD:	Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling	Per Working Day.
Pay Item No. 803S-MO:	Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling	Per Month.
Pay Item No. 803S-SF:	Safety Fence	Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Specification Item No. 803S, "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling"	
City of Austin Standard Specifications	
Designation	Description
Item No. 801S	Constructing a Detour
Item No. 802S	Project Signs
Item No. 870S	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 874S	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers

Texas Technical Documents:	
Designation	Description
(TMUTCD)	Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS	
Specification Item No. 803S, "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling"	
City of Austin Standard Specifications	
Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 860S	Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)
Item No. 863S	Reflectorized Pavement Markers
Item No. 864S	Abbreviated Pavement Markings
Item No. 867S	Epoxy Adhesive
Item No. 871S	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
Item No. 875S	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings
City of Austin Standard Details	
Designation	Description
803S-1	Street-End Barricades
Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges	
Designation	Description
Item No. 502	Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling
Item No. 508	Constructing Detours
Item No. 510	One-Way Traffic Control
Item No. 512	Portable Concrete Traffic Barrier
Item No. 514	Permanent Concrete Traffic Barrier
Item No. 662	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 666	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
Item No. 667	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 672	Raised Pavement Markers
Item No. 677	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers
Item No. 678	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings
Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Materials Specifications	
Designation	Description
DMS 7110	Aluminum Sign Blanks
DMS 8310	Flexible Roll-up Reflective Signs
Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures	
Designation	Description
Tex-839-B	Determining Color in Reflective Materials

Tex-842-B	Method for Measuring Retroreflectivity
American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)	
Designation	Description
A-307	Specification for Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners
A-320	Specification for Alloys-Steel Bolting Materials for Low-Temperature Service
A-513	Specification for Electric-Resistance-Welded Carbon and Alloy Steel Mechanical Tubing
B-108/B108M	Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings
B-183	Practice for Preparation of Low-Carbon Steel for Electroplating
B-221/B-221M	Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Extended Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
D-523	Test Method for Specular Gloss
D-822	Recommended Practice for Operating Light- and Water-Exposure Apparatus (Carbon-Arc Type) for Testing Paint, Varnish, Lacquer, and Related Products
D-828	Test Method for Tensile Breaking Strength of Paper and Paperboard
G-23	Recommended Practice for Operating Light- and Water-Exposure Apparatus (Carbon-Arc Type) for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

City of Austin Special Product List

Please use all City of Austin Standard Products Lists for acceptable materials & appurtenances, unless specifically detailed by Engineer.

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for

END CAPS FOR WASTEWATER SERVICE LINES

USING DEPARTMENT: Water Utility **ISSUED:** 07/01/04 **REVISED:** 07/01/04

PREPARED BY: Robert Lamb, P.E. **CITY STOCK NUMBER:**

DESCRIPTION: End caps, rubber or approved equal, for temporary capping of wastewater service lines. Secured by stainless steel worm-gear clamp.

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
07/01/04	CHERNE INDUSTRIES 5700 Lincoln Drive Minneapolis, MN 55436-1608	Test-Kaps	R. Lamb
07/01/04	MISSION RUBBER P.O. Box 2349 Corona, CA 92878-2349	Band-Seal End Caps	R. Lamb

NOTE:

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for

END SEALS FOR ENCASEMENT PIPE

USING DEPARTMENT: Water Utility **ISSUED:** 10/01/04 **REVIEWED:** 10/01/14 **REVISED:** 10/01/14

PREPARED BY: Robert Lamb, P.E. **CITY STOCK NUMBER:**

DESCRIPTION: End seals for encasement pipe. Neoprene rubber with stainless steel clamps unless otherwise noted.

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
10/01/04	CANUSA/DIVISION OF SHAW PIPE RESOURCES 2408 Timberloch Place Building C-8 The Woodlands, TX 77380	Casing Seal Kit (CSK) seamless pull-on, cross-linked polyolefin heat-shrink	R. Lamb
10/01/04	GPT INDUSTRIES P.O. Box 14481 Houston, TX 77221-4481	Model W wrap-around w/mastic seal Model C seamless pull-on	R. Lamb
10/01/04	ADVANCED PRODUCTS & SYSTEMS, INC. P.O. Box 60399 Lafayette, LA 70596-0399	Model AW wrap-around w/mastic seal Model AC seamless pull-on	R. Lamb
10/01/04	POWER-SEAL CORP. P.O. Box 2014 Wichita Falls, TX 76307	Wrap-around w/mastic seal	R. Lamb
10/01/04	J-FOUR PIPELINE PRODUCTS C/O HOFF COMPANY, INC. 2312 Goodrich Pearland, TX 77581	Seamless pull-on Wrap-around w/mastic seal Wrap-around w/zipper seal	R. Lamb
10/01/04	CCI PIPING SYSTEMS 1058 O'Neal Drive Breaux Bridge, LA 70517	Model ESW wrap-around w/mastic seal Model ESC seamless pull-on	R. Lamb
01/02/05	THE BWM COMPANY P.O. Box 414 Forest City, NC 28043	Model BWM ES wrap-around w/mastic seal	R. Lamb

NOTE:

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
CONCRETE MANHOLE SECTIONS

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** Bill Flynn, P.E. **ISSUED:** 10/14/81
REVISED BY: Jeff A. Kyle, P.E. **REVISED:** 01/01/23

DESCRIPTION: Pre-cast reinforced concrete manhole sections consisting of circular vertical risers, conical tops, flat slab tops, and base sections meeting ASTM C478 and complying with the following:

1. Base sections shall consist of a riser section cast monolithically with an integral floor.
2. Joint configuration and dimensions for 48” diameter sections shall be as shown on Sheet 3. Joints having conical surfaces with taper angles other than 2° are not allowed.
3. Pipe-to-manhole connectors shall be listed on SPL WW-146D.
4. Joints between manhole sections shall be sealed with gaskets listed on SPL WW-146C.
5. Pre-cast operations must be certified by the National Precast Concrete Association (NPCA). Off-site concrete sources must be certified by the National Ready Mixed Concrete Association (NRMCA).
6. Specified concrete compressive strength, f_c', shall be at least 5,000 psi. Concrete shall conform to TxDOT Item 421, Class H. Any of the Mix Design Options 1–8 in Item 421.4.2.6 are allowed.
7. Approval is only for the listed physical locations.
8. Cast in place concrete U-shaped invert channels shall connect the entering and exiting pipes. The invert channels shall be constructed so that the connecting pipes will not protrude beyond the inside surface of the manhole wall.
9. The minimum wall thickness for 48" diameter manholes is 5".

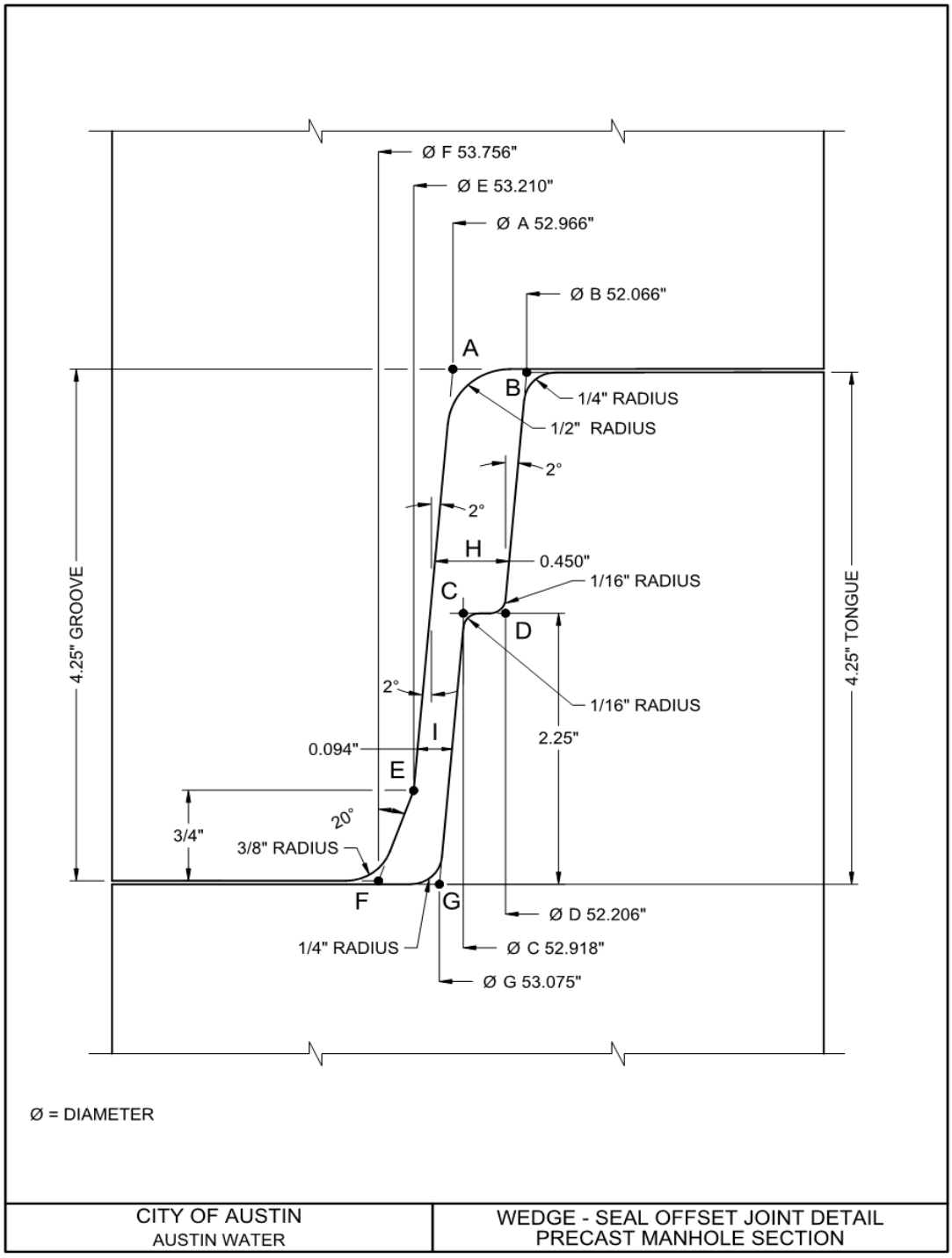
LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
01/02/97	RINKER MATERIALS (WACO) (formerly Forterra Pipe & Precast WACO) 11710 Chapel Rd. Lorena, TX 76655	48” diameter	R. Lamb
01/01/06	CAPITAL CONCRETE PRODUCTS 5264 Hwy. 71 East Del Valley, TX 78617	48” diameter	R. Lamb
01/01/12	CAPITAL PRECAST, INC. 6905 S. Old Bastrop Highway San Marcos, TX 78666	48” diameter	R. Lamb
04/01/12	OLDCASTLE INFRASTRUCTURE 1900 Rilling Road San Antonio, TX 78214	48” diameter	R. Lamb
07/01/21	THE TURNER COMPANY 7352 SH 142 Maxwell, TX 72644	48” diameter	J. Kyle
04/01/22	LONE STAR PRECAST 454 Kelly Smith Lane Buda, TX 78610	48” diameter	J. Kyle

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
CONCRETE MANHOLE SECTIONS

NOTES:
1. Project-specific shop drawings shall be submitted for AW approval for pre-cast circular vertical manhole sections of larger diameter than listed above. The shop drawings shall include:
    a. the flowline elevation of all connecting pipes
    b. elevations of transitions from large diameter sections to 48” diameter sections
    c. top of manhole and surrounding ground elevations
    d. details of special construction considerations specified in the contract documents.
2. Cast-in-place bases shall be used for circular manholes only when specified in the contract documents.
3. Flat slab tops shall be used only when specified in the contract documents.

LATEST REVISIONS (since 04/01/22):
1. Updated FORTERRA PIPE & PRECAST (WACO) to RINKER MATERIALS (WACO).

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
CONCRETE MANHOLE SECTIONS



CITY OF AUSTIN AUSTIN WATER	WEDGE - SEAL OFFSET JOINT DETAIL PRECAST MANHOLE SECTION

REV. 01/01/23

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
MANHOLE SEALS

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** Bill Flynn, P.E. **ISSUED:** 01/02/96
REVISED BY: Jeff A. Kyle, P.E. **REVISED:** 10/01/20

DESCRIPTION: Manhole Seals, plastic, watertight, installed according to manufacturer-recommended procedures

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
01/02/97	CANUSA/DIVISION OF SHAW PIPE RESOUCES 2408 Timberloch Place Building C-8 The Woodlands, TX 77380	Wrapid Seal—Black, Heat Shrinkage Manhole Seal, 18-inch minimum width Manufacturer-provided closure strip required Manufacturer-approved primer required Manufacturer-approved torch/burner required See Note 1	W. Flynn
07/01/97	MILLER PIPELINE CORP. P.O. Box 34141 Indianapolis, IN 46234	Encapseal—Safe-T-Seal Manhole Seal Repair Kit for sealing top flange frame to manhole cone as per Standard 506S-04	W. Flynn
10/01/02	ASAHI DENKA KOGYO c/o John Nadler P.O. Box 11130 Spring, TX 77391	Adeka Ultra Seal P-201—used as waterstop around pipe wall penetrations on manholes with cast-in-place bases and on concrete chimney (adjusting) rings on manholes outside of pavement	R. Lamb
10/01/05	CRETEX SPECIALTY PRODUCTS 2002 South West Avenue Waukesha, WI 53189	CretexWrap—Black, Metal-banded Joint Wrap, 12-inch minimum width See Note 1	R. Lamb
01/01/07	PIPELINE SEAL & INSULATOR, INC. 6525 Goforth Street Houston, TX 77021	Riser-Wrap— Black, Heat Shrinkage Manhole Seal, 17-inch minimum width Manufacturer-provided closure strip required Manufacturer-approved primer required Manufacturer-approved torch/burner required See Note 1	R. Lamb
07/01/14	SEALING SYSTEMS, INC. 9350 County Rd. 19 Loretto, MN 55357	Infi-Shield Gator Wrap—Black, Adhesive Coated Backside, Joint wrap, 12-inch minimum width See Note 1	R. Lamb

NOTES:
1. Used for sealing joints between pre-cast manhole sections. Not used for sealing joints between grade rings.

LATEST REVISIONS (since 07/01/14):
1. Updated Miller Pipeline Corp's P.O. Box and Encapseal Description.

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
PIPE-TO-MANHOLE CONNECTORS (NORMAL SERVICE)

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** Robert Lamb, P.E. **ISSUED:** 10/01/09
REVISED BY: Jeff A. Kyle, P.E. **REVISED:** 10/01/21

DESCRIPTION: Resilient connectors (boots): made of natural or synthetic rubber and conforming to ASTM C923, for formed or cored holes, normal service of up to 30 feet of external head

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
10/01/09	PRESS-SEAL GASKET CORP. 2424 West State Blvd. Fort Wayne, IN 46808	PSX: Direct Drive Nylo Drive	R. Lamb
07/01/11	TRELLEBORG PIPE SEALS 250 Elm Street Milford, NH 03055	Kor-N-Seal 106/206/406 Series (Wedge Style Connectors)	R. Lamb/ J. Kyle

NOTES:

LATEST REVISIONS (since 04/01/15):
1. Update SPL format.
2. Update address for Trelleborg Pipe Seals.
3. Update Product Identification for Kor-N-Seal to require “Wedge Style Connectors” and remove reference to WPSB Series.
4. Add Kor-N-Seal 206 Series.

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
WASTEWATER MANHOLE INTERNAL DROP

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** Jeff A. Kyle P.E. **ISSUED:** 07/01/19

REVISED BY: **REVISED:**

DESCRIPTION: Internal drop for wastewater manholes, consisting of a fiberglass reinforced polyester resin bowl in combination with PVC drop pipe, meeting the following requirements:

1. Bowl shall be secured to manhole wall using manufacturer-provided anchor bolt assembly.
2. Drop pipe shall be ASTM D3034 SDR35 pipe secured to the manhole wall using manufacturer-provided adjustable brackets, nuts, bolts, washers, and anchor bolt assembly.
3. Brackets shall be at least 11 gauge thick, 316 stainless steel.
4. Nuts, bolts, and washers shall be 18-8 stainless steel.
5. Each anchor bolt assembly shall consist of an 18-8 stainless steel bolt and washer and zinc alloy lead anchor.
6. Stainless steel bracket extensions shall be provided as necessary where the manhole ID changes.

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
07/01/19	DURAN, INC. 53 Mt. Archer Road Lyme, CT 06731	RELINER drop bowel, with drop bowel installation anchor bolt assembly and drop pipe installation adjustable brackets and hardware	J. Kyle

NOTES:

1. Bowl shall be joined to drop pipe using a semi-rigid pipe coupler (SPL WW-354).

LATEST REVISIONS:

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
PVC GRAVITY SEWER PIPE (6 inch to 15 inch)

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** Bill Flynn, P.E. **ISSUED:** 05/25/83
REVISED BY: Jeff A. Kyle, P.E. **REVISED:** 01/01/23

DESCRIPTION: Pipe, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) gravity sewer 6 in to 15 in diameter meeting the following requirements:

1. Pipe shall meet ASTM D3034
2. Joints shall meet ASTM D3212
3. Gaskets shall meet ASTM F477
4. Minimum pipe stiffness of 115 psi
5. Maximum SDR of 26
6. Pipe joints shall be tested according to ASTM D3139 or D3212 to at least 150 psi without leakage. Testing agency and test protocol must be approved by AW. (This testing is in addition to tests performed at 10.8 psi according to ASTM D3212.)

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
07/01/98	DIAMOND PLASTICS CORP. 1212 Johnstown Road Grand Island, NE 68802-1608	See notes	W. Flynn J. Kyle
04/03/96	JM EAGLE (Formerly Uponer ETI or Extrusion Technologies, Inc. or PW Eagle or J-M Pipe Manufacturing) 5200 W. Century Blvd. Los Angeles, CA 90045	See notes	R. Lamb J. Kyle
04/03/95	WESTLAKE PIPE & FITTINGS (Formerly NAPCO / North American Pipe Co.) 2801 Post Oak Boulevard, Suite 410 Houston, TX 77056	See notes	W. Flynn J. Kyle
01/03/95	JET STREAM (formerly Pipelife Jet Stream Inc.) 1700 South Lincoln Street Siloam Springs, AR 72761	See notes	W. Flynn J. Kyle
01/01/08	VINYLTECH CORPORATION 201 South 61st Avenue Phoenix, AZ 85043	See notes	R. Lamb J. Kyle
04/01/02	SANDERSON PIPE CORP. (Formerly Vinylplex, Inc.) 875 International Blvd. Clarksville, TN 37040	See notes	K. Flowers J. Kyle
10/01/07	NORTHERN PIPE PRODUCTS 1309 39th Street NW Fargo, ND 58102	See notes	R. Lamb J. Kyle

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
PVC GRAVITY SEWER PIPE (6 inch to 15 inch)

NOTES:
1. 10” pipe to be used only for repairs
2. Pipe with a whitened exterior (fading of color) that was manufactured more than two (2) years before the proposed installation date shall be rejected.
3. Deflection testing is required and shall be conducted after final backfill has been in place at least 30 days. A rigid mandrel shall be used. Mandrel sizes are as follows:

		Pipe Stiffness 115 psi	
Nominal Size, inches	Average O.D., inches	Minimum Wall Thickness, inches	95% Mandrel Diameter, inches
6	6.275	0.241	5.50
8	8.400	0.323	7.37
12	12.500	0.481	10.96
15	15.300	0.588	13.42

LATEST REVISIONS (since 10/01/19):
1. Updated NAPCO / North American Pipe Co. to Westlake Pipe & Fittings.
2. Updated Pipelife Jet Stream Inc. to Jet Stream, and updated company mailing address.

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
PVC WASTEWATER LINE FITTINGS

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** Bill Flynn, P.E. **ISSUED:** 06/06/83
REVISED BY: Jeff A. Kyle, P.E. **REVISED:** 01/01/23

DESCRIPTION: Fittings, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) gravity sewer, meeting ASTM D3034 with minimum stiffness of 115 psi for fittings 15" and smaller in diameter or meeting ASTM F679 with minimum stiffness of 75 psi for fittings larger than 15" diameter and with elastomeric gasket joints meeting ASTM F1336 and gaskets meeting ASTM F477. Two-way cleanouts shall be molded, one-piece. (4" and 10" fittings for maintenance only.) See SPL WW- 227B-1 for PVC fittings to use with AW Standard 520-AW-01A.

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
07/01/96	TIGRE-ADS USA, INC. (formerly Vassallo) 2315 Beloit Avenue Janesville, WI 53546	ASTM D3034 or F679 fittings Includes D3034 6" two-way cleanout (Part No. 37-2001)	K. Flowers
01/04/99	THE HARRINGTON CORP. P.O. Box 10335 Lynchburgh, VA 24506	Marked "HARCO" (fittings are gray) ASTM D3034 fittings (two-way cleanouts not included)	K. Flowers
07/01/98	WESTLAKE PIPE & FITTINGS (Formerly NAPCO / North American Pipe Co.) 2801 Post Oak Boulevard, Suite 410 Houston, TX 77056	ASTM D3034 fittings Includes 6" two-way cleanout (Part No. H1006) and 4" two-way cleanout (Part No. H1004)	K. Flowers
10/01/98	GPK PRODUCTS, INC. 1601 43RD Ave. Fargo, ND 58102	ASTM D3034 or F679 fittings Includes 4" two-way cleanout (Part No. 993-0444) and 6" two-way cleanout (Part No. 993-0666)	K Flowers
01/04/99	MULTI-FITTINGS CORPORTATION 4507 LeSaint Court Fairfield, OH 45014	ASTM D3034 fittings with Multi-Loc gaskets Includes 6" two-way cleanout (Part No. 067166)	K. Flowers
01/02/98	SPECIFIED FITTINGS, INC. P.O. Box 28157 Bellingham, WA 98226	ASTM D3034 or F679 fittings 12" and larger body size only (two-way cleanouts not included)	K. Flowers

NOTES:
1. Acceptable fitting sizes are 6" minimum (service laterals only), 8", 12", 15", 18", 21", and 24"
2. All joint gaskets shall be secured in place.

LATEST REVISIONS (since 10/01/18):
1. Updated ROYAL BUILDING PRODUCTS (aka PLASTIC TRENDS) to WESTLAKE PIPE & FITTINGS (Formerly NAPCO / North American Pipe Co.)

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
PVC WASTEWATER SERVICE ADAPTORS

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** R. Lamb, P.E. **ISSUED:** 07/01/09
REVISED BY: Jeff A. Kyle, P.E. **REVISED:** 01/01/20

DESCRIPTION: Fittings, special polyvinyl chloride (PVC), for connecting wastewater services to mains. See Product Identification for details for each fitting. Use only when specified on AW-approved drawings.

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
07/01/09	ADVANCED DRAINAGE SYSTEMS (formerly Inserta Fittings) 3707 24th Ave. Forest Grove, OR 97116	Inserta Tee Gasketed Bell with SDR 26 PVC hub, rubber sleeve, and stainless steel band for connecting new service to existing main Use manufacturer supplied hole saws, arbor bits, and drill guides	R. Lamb

NOTES:

LATEST REVISIONS:
1. Added to Description.
2. Changed Inserta Fittings to Advanced Drainage Systems and revised Product Identification.
3. Deleted Harrington Corporation and the C900 x D3034 PVC tee.

CITY OF AUSTIN
STANDARD PRODUCTS LIST
for
CASING SPACERS

USING DEPARTMENT: Austin Water **PREPARED BY:** Bill Flynn, P.E. **ISSUED:** 04/03/95
REVISED BY: Jeff A. Kyle, P.E. **REVISED:** 04/01/19

DESCRIPTION: Casing Spacers for support and isolation of carrier pipe within encasement pipe shall meet the following requirements:

1. All metal components shall be Type 304 stainless steel
2. Bands shall be 14 gauge (0.075") and risers 10 gauge (0.135")
3. Bands shall have insulating liners
4. Runners shall be reinforced plastic, UHMW polymer, glass-filled nylon or approved equal
5. For pipe up to 12" diameter, spacers shall be 8" long, having runners at least 1" wide
6. For pipe over 12" diameter, spacers shall be 12" long, having runners at least 2" wide
7. Maximum height of runner above riser shall be 1½"
8. Number of runners on top shall be multiples of two
9. Number of runners on bottom shall be multiples of two

LISTING DATE	MANUFACTURER	PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION/COMMENT	APPROVAL
01/02/98	GPT INDUSTRIES P.O. Box 14481 Houston, TX 77221-4481	Model S8G-2 for pipe to 12" diameter Model S12G-2 for pipe larger than 12"	R. Lamb
01/02/98	ADVANCE PRODUCTS & SYSTEMS, INC. P.O. Box 60399 Lafayette, LA 70596-0399	Model SSI8-1CR for pipe to 12" diameter Model SSI12-2CR for pipe larger than 12" per shop details	W. Flynn
01/02/98	POWER-SEAL CORP. P.O. Box 2014 Wichita Falls, TX 76307	Model 4810 - AT stainless steel – with 8" band for pipe to 12" diameter and 12" band for pipe larger than 12"	W. Flynn
10/01/97	J-FOUR PIPELINE PRODUCTS c/o Hoff Company, Inc. 400 N. Red Bud Broken Arrow, OK 74102	Model 63SS for pipe to 12" diameter Model 59SS for pipe larger than 12" (UHMW polymer runners for all sizes)	R. Lamb
07/01/04	CCI PIPING SYSTEMS 1058 O'Neal Drive Breaux Bridge, LA 70517	Model CSS stainless steel – with 8" band for pipe to 12" diameter and 12" band for pipe larger than 12" (glass-filled nylon runners for all sizes)	R. Lamb
01/02/05	THE BWM COMPANY P.O. Box 414 Forest City, NC 28043	Model BWM SS stainless steel – with 8" band for pipe to 12" diameter and 12" band for pipe larger than 12" (UHMW polymer runners for all sizes)	R. Lamb
07/01/06	CASCADE WATERWORKS MFG. 1213 Badger Street Yorkville, IL 60560	Style CCS stainless steel – with 8" band for pipe to 12" diameter and 12" band for pipe larger than 12" (UHMW polymer runners for all sizes)	R. Lamb

NOTES:

1. Casing spacer configuration and spacing shall follow manufacturer's recommendations and shall be shown on CONTRACTOR'S PROJECT SUBMITTAL, as approved by the Engineer, covering the specific work.
2. End seals must also be shown on the drawings.
3. Field modification of casing spacers is prohibited.

LATEST REVISIONS:

1. Revised Description format and updated content
2. Corrected J-Four address and updated CCI runner material

Geotechnical Investigation

Arias Geoprofessional

Terracon

Geotechnical Data Report

North Burleson Street Improvements
W. Center Street to Market Place Ave
Kyle, Texas

Arias Project No. 2013-756

ARIAS
GEOPROFESSIONALS

Prepared For:
Freese and Nichols, Inc.

August 2014

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729 • Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

August 26, 2014
Arias Project No. 2013-756

Via Email: Jessica.Rodriguez@freese.com

Ms. Jessica Rodriguez, P.E.
Senior Project Manager
Freese and Nichols, Inc.
10431 Morado Circle
Building 5, Suite 300
Austin, Texas 78759

RE: Geotechnical Data Report
North Burleson Street Improvements
W. Center Street to Market Place Ave
Kyle, Texas

Dear Ms. Rodriguez:

Arias & Associates, Inc. (Arias) is pleased to submit this Geotechnical Data Report (GDR) of findings for the above referenced project. Our services were performed as outlined in our proposal dated September 23, 2013, and formally authorized in Subconsultant Authorization Agreement executed May 13, 2014.

The GDR is a compilation of geotechnical boring and laboratory testing data obtained to date for this project, and a description of geologic and stratigraphic conditions encountered at the site. The scope of the study was to provide geotechnical engineering criteria for use in pavement thickness design and earthwork recommendations. Geotechnical recommendations for pavements and earthwork are provided under separate cover in a Geotechnical Design Memorandum.

Arias sincerely appreciates the opportunity to be part of the design team and look forward to our continued association throughout final design and construction phases. Please do not hesitate to contact us regarding this report, or if we may be of further service.

Sincerely,
ARIAS & ASSOCIATES, INC.
TBPE Registration No. F-32

Rebecca A. Russo, P.E.
Senior Geotechnical Engineer

STATE OF TEXAS
REBECCA A. RUSSO
91271
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER

Rene P. Gonzales, P.E.
Project Manager

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Appendices

Tables

PROJECT INFORMATION

The project will consist of roadway improvements to approximately 1.4 miles of N. Burleson Street, from W. Center Street to Market Place Avenue in Kyle, Texas. Currently, the majority of the project (approximately 1.3 miles) will be along existing Right of Way (ROW), and about 0.1 miles will include new ROW and new roadway construction. The existing ROW consists of 2-lane roadway with bar ditches. Proposed construction will include 3 lanes with a center turn lane, curb and gutter drainage improvements, and culvert crossing at an unnamed tributary of Plum Creek. A *Vicinity Map* showing the project site location is presented on Figure 1 of Appendix A. A summary of the project information is given in the table below.

Table 1: Project Summary

Project	North Burleson Street Improvements
Project Location	N. Burleson St. from W. Center to Market Place Ave
Proposed Development	1.4 Miles of Roadway Improvements: 1.3 Miles of existing Right of Way 0.1 Miles of new Right of Way
Proposed Construction	Roadway Widening to 3-lane with curb-and-gutter Culvert crossing at unnamed tributary

FIELD EXPLORATION

A total of 10 borings were drilled at the approximate locations shown on the *Boring Location Plan* presented on Figure 2 in Appendix A. The borings were drilled to depths of 7.3 to 20 feet below existing grade. A summary of the boring drilling information is presented in the following table.

Table 2: Boring Summary Table

Boring Designation	Drill Depth, ft	Drill Date	Groundwater Depth ATD, ft	Notes
B-1	9	6/2/2014	6	
B-2	10.5	6/2/2014	5.5	
B-3	10	5/29/2014		
B-4	15	6/2/2014	8.5	
B-5	9.5	6/2/2014	6.5	
B-6	7.3	5/29/2014	5 (2 ft after drilling)	Boring terminated at 7.3 feet due to possible utility trench

Boring Designation	Drill Depth, ft	Drill Date	Groundwater Depth ATD, ft	Notes
B-7	20	6/2/2014		
B-8	10	6/5/2014		
B-9	10	5/29/2014	3	
B-10	9	6/2/2014	4	

Notes:

1) ATD – At the Time of Drilling.
2) Drill Depth is depths below ground surface at the time of the geotechnical study.

The borings were generally sampled using the split-barrel sampler while performing the Standard Penetration Test (ASTM D 1586) at approximately 2 foot intervals and material was obtained from the cuttings as the borings were advanced (ASTM D 1452). Select samples were also obtained using seamless push tubes for cohesive strata (ASTM D 1587). Rock core sampling (ASTM D 2113) of the limestone stratum was performed in 6 of the 10 borings to obtain rock quality designation (ASTM D 6032) and to obtain limestone samples for laboratory testing. The boring depths were measured from below the existing ground surface at the time of drilling. A truck-mounted drill rig using air and rotary drilling methods together with the sampling tool noted was used to obtain the subsurface soil/rock samples. After completion of drilling, the boreholes were backfilled using the auger cuttings and bentonite mixture.

Detailed descriptions of subsurface conditions encountered in the borings are presented on the Logs of Borings included in Appendix B. Keys to terms and symbols used on the boring logs are included in Appendix B, following the logs of borings. Sample type and interval are included on the individual soil boring logs at the respective sample depth. An Arias' representative visually logged each recovered sample and selected representative samples for laboratory testing.

SPT N-values for those intervals where the sampler was advanced for a 12-inch penetration after the initial 6-inch seating are shown on the individual boring logs. Descriptions of field testing procedures are included in Appendix B, following the boring logs and keys to terms and symbols. GPS coordinates (horizontal datum NAD 83) obtained using a hand-held GPS device are shown on the boring logs, and should be considered approximate. Drilling and groundwater notes are also shown on the boring logs.

Soil classifications and borehole logging were conducted during the exploration by one of our field engineering technicians working under the supervision of our Geotechnical Engineer. Final soil classifications, as seen on the boring logs included in Appendix B, were determined in the laboratory based on laboratory and field test results and applicable ASTM procedures.

LABORATORY TESTING

The laboratory testing was performed on representative samples to determine soil water content, Atterberg Limits (ASTM D4318), grain size analyses (ASTM D422) and unconfined compression strength tests on rock core samples (ASTM D7012). In addition to classification and strength testing, one CBR (California Bearing Ratio) test was conducted on a bulk sample obtained from auger cuttings in boring B-6. The results of the CBR test and Proctor compaction test (ASTM D698), as well as plasticity and gradation curves are included in Appendix C. A description of laboratory procedures is included in Appendix C, following the data.

The soil laboratory testing for this project was done in accordance applicable ASTM procedures with the specifications and definitions for these tests listed in the Appendix C. Remaining soil samples recovered from this exploration will be routinely discarded following submittal of this report.

SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

Area geology, generalized stratigraphy and groundwater conditions are discussed in the following sections. The subsurface and groundwater conditions are based on conditions encountered at the boring locations to the depths explored. A *Geologic Map* is presented on Figure 4 in Appendix A.

Area Geology

According to published geologic mapping[1], the site is underlain by surficial clay remnants and limestone of the Austin Group of Limestones. The Austin limestone is usually described as chalk, and is comprised of chalky limestone, clayey limestone, limestone, and marl (a hard calcareous clay). Unweathered Austin is gray to light gray in color, and becomes tan with weathering. Surficial weathered remnants typically consist of tan and brown fat and lean clay.

Referring to the Geologic Map, it can be seen the project site is situated near a fault between the Austin Group of Limestone and the Pecan Gap Formation of the Taylor Group just east of IH-35. Surficial outcropping of Del Rio / Georgetown undivided is mapped to the west. In faulted regions, it is not uncommon for smaller secondary faulting with surficial expressions of nearby formations to be encountered along the project alignment, with the possible presence of highly plastic potentially expansive clay (Taylor, Del Rio), or relatively hard limestone (Buda). Further, the presence of faulting oftentimes promotes the passage of groundwater from upgradient sources.

[1] Barnes, V.E. (1974), "Geologic Atlas of Texas, Austin and Seguin Sheets," Second Printing 1995, Bureau of Economic Geology, The University of Texas at Austin, map and explanatory bulletin.

Site Stratigraphic and Engineering Properties

Subsurface conditions can be best understood by a thorough review of the *Boring Logs* included in Appendix B and the *Generalized Subsurface Profile* which precedes the boring logs. In general, the borings encountered surficial fill material (in 8 of the 10 borings) underlain by fat and lean clay, transitioning to weathered limestone and limestone of the Austin Group. The generalized stratigraphic conditions and engineering properties are summarized in the table below.

Table 3: Generalized Stratigraphic Conditions

Stratum	Depth (ft)	Material Type	Index Test		N
I	0 - 7.5 Avg 4.2	FILL – Dark brown FAT CLAY (CH) to CLAYEY GRAVEL (GC) with sand	PI= 23 to 51 Avg 39	N200= 25 to 82 Avg 50	PP=1.5 to 4.5 Avg 2.2 tsf N=6, 7, 4, 8
IIa	1 - 7.5 to 3 to 10	CWLS – Tan LEAN CLAY (CL) to CLAYEY SAND (SC)	PI= 8 to 20 Avg 16	N200= 25 to 53 Avg 36	N=6 to 50/3” (average 50+)
IIb	4 to 4.5	ALLUVIUM – Light gray sandy FAT CLAY (CH)	PI=32	N200=79	PP=4.0
III	3 - 10 to BTD Avg 5.5	Tan LIMESTONE (Austin Group)	REC= 78 to 100 Avg 93	RQD= 23 to 100 Avg 58	N=50/2” to 50/3” UC= 111 to 595 Avg UC=225, 165*
* Excluded high value of 595 tsf from average.					

Where:
Depth - Depth from existing ground surface at the time of geotechnical study, feet
PI - Plasticity Index, %
N200 - Percent passing U.S. Standard No. 200 sieve, %
PP - Pocket Penetrometer, tsf
N - Standard Penetration Test (SPT) blow count value, blows per foot (bpf)
Avg - Average Value
BTD - Boring Termination Depth
CWLS - Completely Weathered Limestone

Groundwater

Groundwater was encountered in 7 of the 10 borings at depths of 3 to 8.5 feet below grade at the time of drilling. Boring B-6 had groundwater at 2-ft depth after drilling. Due to the proximity of the site to nearby creeks and mapped geologic faulting, it is anticipated that groundwater will be present during construction along portions of the alignment. For construction planning purposes, the presence of shallow groundwater should be made known to the contractor, particularly in the vicinity of borings B-4 and B-10 near site creeks, and B-6 which may be due to groundwater traveling in utility backfill or sourced from nearby faulting, or both. Permanent

drainage beneath pavements may be necessary depending on final roadway grades, and will be addressed under separate cover in the Geotechnical Design Memorandum.

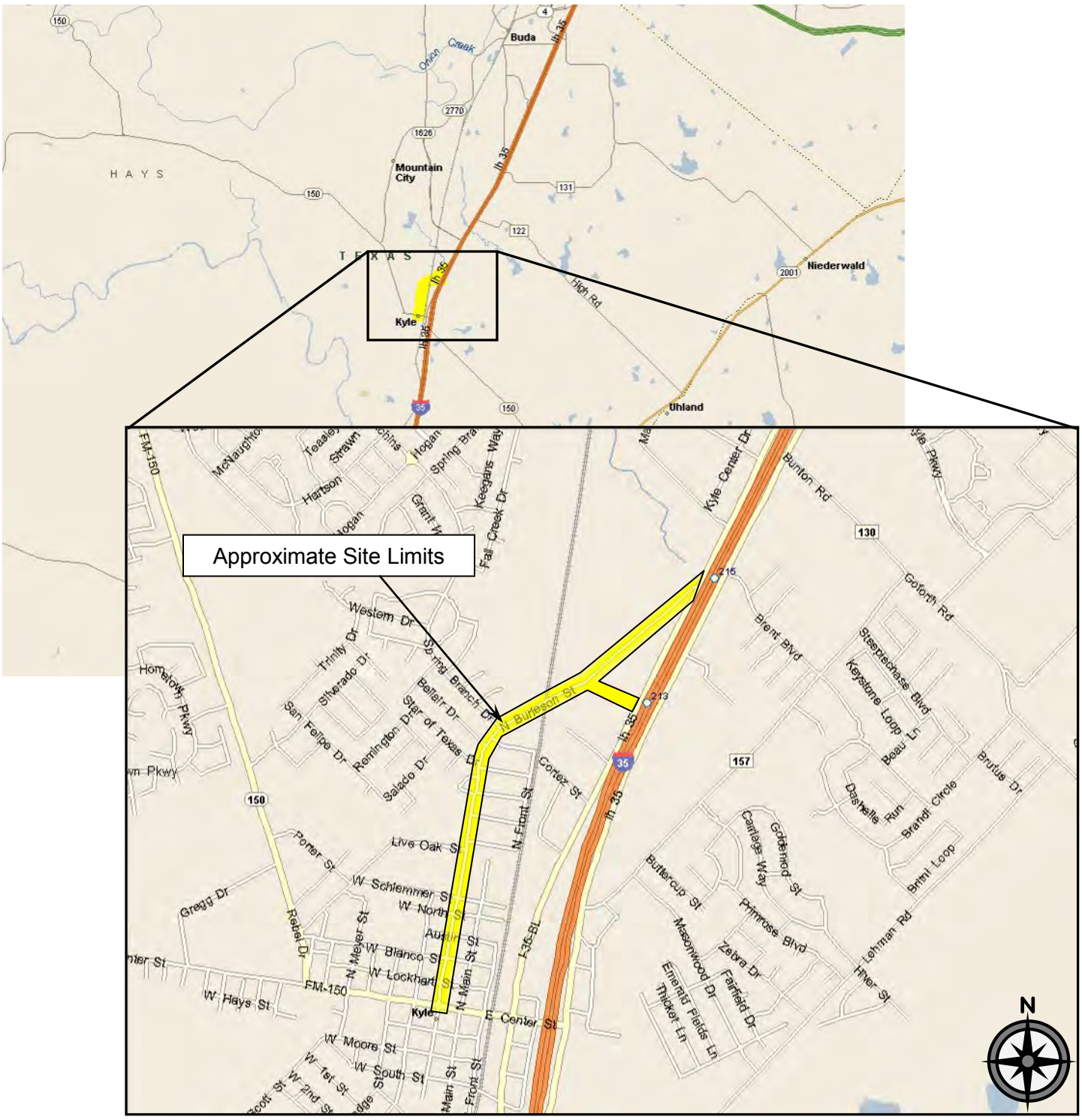
Groundwater levels will often change significantly over time and should be verified immediately prior to construction. Water levels in open boreholes may require several hours to several days to stabilize depending on the permeability of the soils. Groundwater levels at this site may differ during construction because fluctuations in groundwater levels can result from seasonal conditions, rainfall, drought, or temperature effects. Pockets or seams of gravels, sands, silts or open fractures and joints can store and transmit "perched" groundwater flow or seepage.

LIMITATIONS

It should be noted that the subsurface conditions consider those conditions discovered at the specific boring locations. *Significant variations in soil and groundwater conditions between and beyond the borings often exist and can occur at this site.* Transition boundaries or contacts, noted on the boring logs to separate soil types, are approximate. Actual contacts may be gradual and vary at different locations. If conditions encountered during construction indicate more variation than established as a result of this study, we should be contacted to evaluate the significance of the changed conditions relative to our descriptions.

This report was prepared for this project exclusively for the use of Freese and Nichols, Inc. and the design team. If different subsurface conditions are encountered, we should be informed and retained to ascertain the impact of these changes on the date included in this report. We cannot be responsible for the potential impact of these changes if we are not informed. This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practice with a degree of care and skill ordinarily exercised by reputable geotechnical engineers and geologists practicing in this area.

APPENDIX A: FIGURES



ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

VICINITY MAP

North Burleson Street
from West Center Street to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Date: June 18, 2014	Job No.: 2013-756
Drawn By: TAS	Checked By: RAR
Approved By: RPG	Scale: N.T.S.

Figure 1

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

OVERALL BORING LOCATION PLAN

North Burleson Street
from West Center Street to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Job No.:	2013-756
Scale:	N.T.S.
Date:	June 18, 2014
Drawn By:	TAS
Checked By:	RAR
Approved By:	RPG

Figure 2
1 of 1

Figure 2a
1 of 4

Job No.: 2013-756
Scale: N.T.S.
Date: June 23, 2014
Drawn By: TAS
Checked By: RAR
Approved By: RPG

BORING LOCATION PLAN

North Burleson Street
from West Center Street to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

Figure 2b
2 of 4

Job No.: 2013-756
Scale: N.T.S.
Date: June 18, 2014
Drawn By: TAS
Checked By: RAR
Approved By: RPG

BORING LOCATION PLAN

North Burleson Street
from West Center Street to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

Figure 2c
3 of 4

Job No.: 2013-756
Scale: N.T.S.
Date: June 18, 2014
Drawn By: TAS
Checked By: RAR
Approved By: RPG

BORING LOCATION PLAN

North Burleson Street
from West Center Street to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

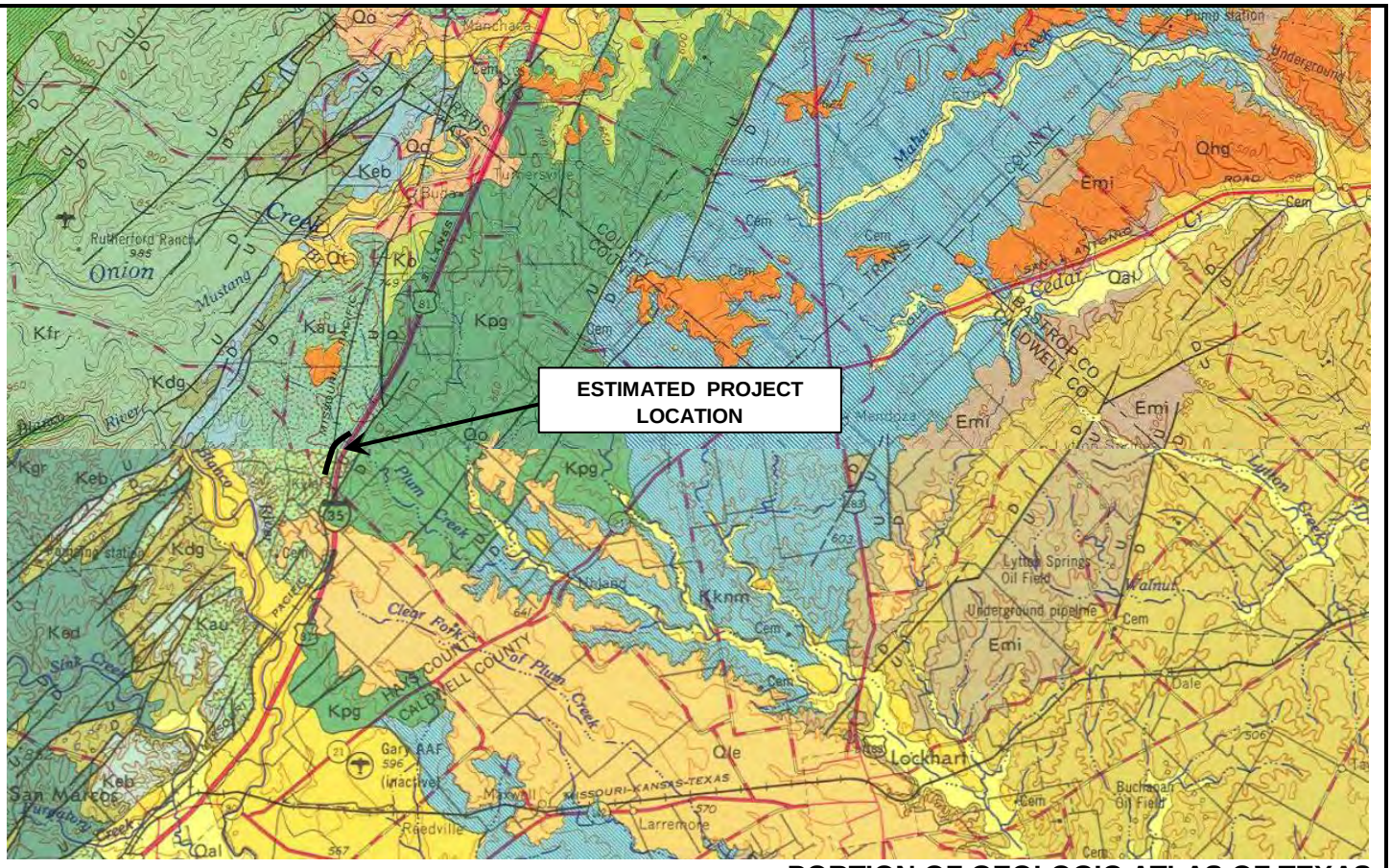
Figure 2d
4 of 4

Job No.: 2013-756
Scale: N.T.S.
Date: June 18, 2014
Drawn By: TAS
Checked By: RAR
Approved By: RPG

BORING LOCATION PLAN

North Burleson Street
from West Center Street to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525



PORTION OF GEOLOGIC ATLAS OF TEXAS
(Austin and Seguin Sheet)

N

LEGEND

Symbol	Name	Age
Qal	Alluvium	Quaternary Period / Recent
Qt/Qo/Qhg	Fluviatile Terrace Deposits	Quaternary Period / Pleistocene
Emi	Midway Group	Quaternary Period / Eocene
Kknm	Navarro Formation	Upper Cretaceous Period
Kpg	Pecan Gap Chalk	Upper Cretaceous Period
Kau	Austin Chalk	Upper Cretaceous Period
Keb	Eagle Ford and Buda Limestone	Upper Cretaceous Period
Kdg	Del Rio Clay and Georgetown	Lower Cretaceous Period
Kfr	Fredericksburg Group	Lower Cretaceous Period
Kgr(u)	Glen Rose Formation (Upper)	Lower Cretaceous Period

U
D
Fault Segment with Indication of Relative Movement

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

GEOLOGIC MAP

North Burleson Street
from West Center Street to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Date: August 21, 2014	Job No.: 2013-756
Drawn By: PPL	Checked By: RAR
Approved By: RPG	Scale: N.T.S.

Figure 3

Photo 1 – Boring B-1 near W. Center Street, facing north.

Photo 2 – Boring B-2, facing south.

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

SITE PHOTOS

North Burleson Street Improvements
W. Center to Market Place Ave
Kyle, Texas

Date: August 23, 2014	Job No.: 2013-756
Drawn By: RAR	Checked By: RAR
Approved By: JSL	Scale: N.T.S.

Figure 4

Photo 3 – Boring B-7, facing northeast, note sanitary sewer manhole (utility). Person in photo is utility locator.

Photo 4 – Drilling of B-9, facing north.

ARIAS GEOPROFESSIONALS
13581 Pond Springs Road, Suite 210, Austin, Texas 78729
Phone: (512) 428-5550 • Fax: (512) 428-5525

SITE PHOTOS

North Burleson Street Improvements
W. Center to Market Place Ave
Kyle, Texas

Date: August 23, 2014	Job No.: 2013-756
Drawn By: RAR	Checked By: RAR
Approved By: RPG	Scale: N.T.S.

Figure 4

APPENDIX B: SOIL BORING LOGS AND KEY TO TERMS

Arias & Associates, Inc.
13581 Pond Springs Rd, S210
Austin, TX 78729
Phone: 512.428.5550
Fax: 512.428.5525

SUBSURFACE DIAGRAM

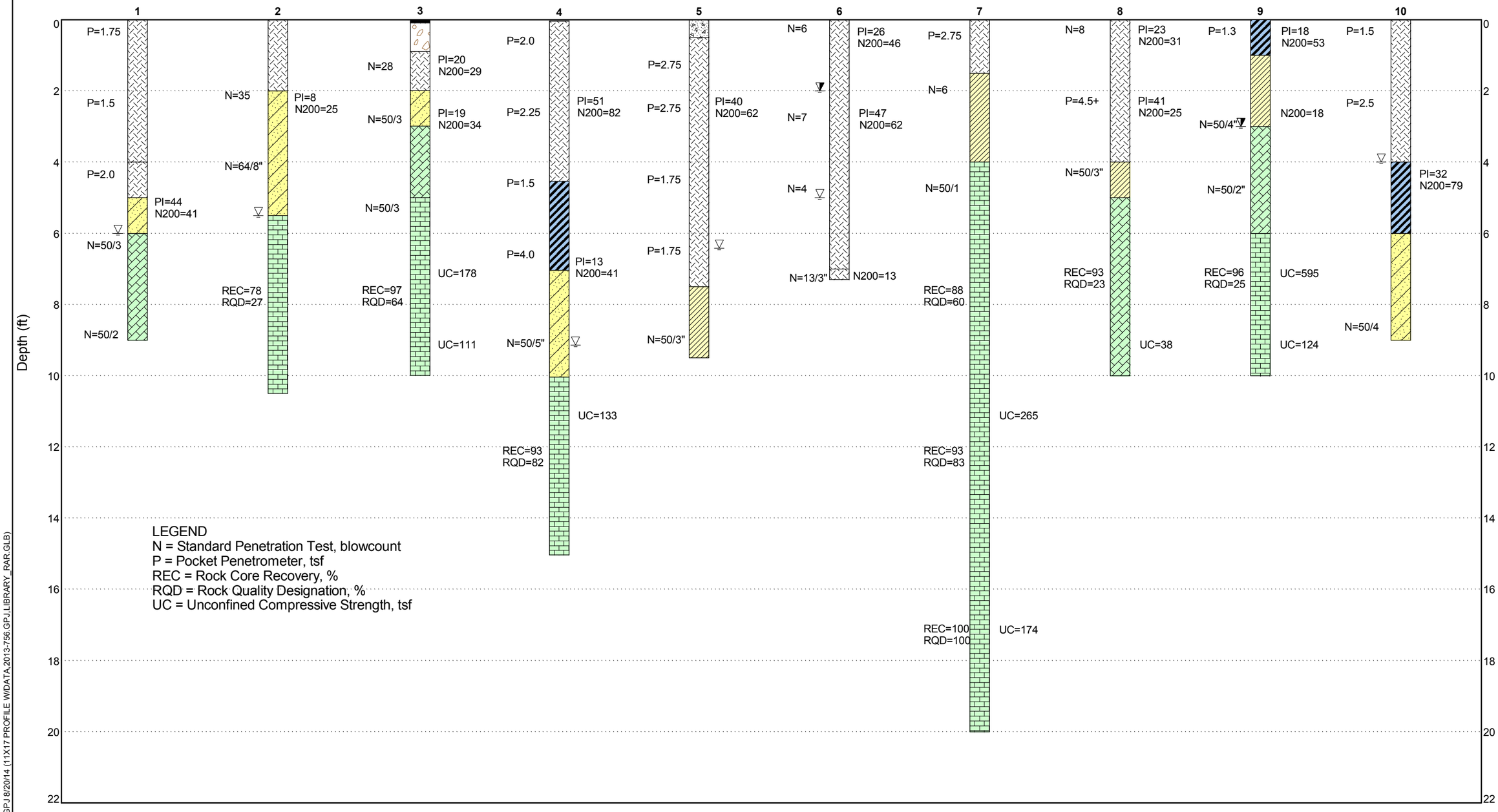
CLIENT Freese & Nichols, Inc.

PROJECT NUMBER 2013-756

PROJECT NAME North Burleson Street

PROJECT LOCATION See Boring Location Plan

Fill Material
Limestone
USCS Low Plasticity Clay
USCS Clayey Sand
Asphalt
USCS High Plasticity Clay
Weathered Limestone
Base Material
Concrete



LEGEND
N = Standard Penetration Test, blowcount
P = Pocket Penetrometer, tsf
REC = Rock Core Recovery, %
RQD = Rock Quality Designation, %
UC = Unconfined Compressive Strength, tsf

Distance Along Baseline (NTS)

Boring Log No. B-1

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Sampling Date: 6/2/14

Coordinates: N29°59'20.87" W97°52'38.35"

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	PP	N	-200
[FILL] FAT CLAY (CH) with sand and gravel, stiff, dark brown with reddish tan, moist with limestone fragments		T					1.75		
		T					1.5		
[FILL] CLAYEY GRAVEL with Sand (GC), dark gray with tan, moist with limestone fragment and coarse sand	5	T	17	21	65	44	2.0		41
[CWLS] CLAYEY SAND (SC), very dense, tan and light gray, moist ▽		SS						50/3"	
[AUSTIN] Weathered CHALK, tan and light gray									
		SS						50/2"	

Borehole terminated at 9 feet

Groundwater Data:
First encountered during drilling: 6-ft depth

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: R. Russo
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 9 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Thin-walled tube (T) | Split Spoon (SS) | ▽ Water encountered during drilling

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
PP = Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)

N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve

2013-756.GPJ 8/26/14 (BORING LOG SA12-02.ARIASSA12-01.GDT,LIBRARY_RAR.GLB)

Arias & Associates, Inc.

Job No.: 2013-756

Boring Log No. B-2

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Sampling Date: 6/2/14

Coordinates: N29°59'26.94" W97°52'36.66"

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	N	-200	REC	RQD
[FILL] SILTY SAND (SM), brown, dry with gravel.		T								
[CWLS] CLAYEY SAND (SC), dense to very dense, tan, with limestone fragments.		SS	16	21	29	8	35	25		
	5	SS					64/8"			
[AUSTIN] LIMESTONE, tan and light gray, moderately hard with clay partings, weathered layers and discontinuities.		RC							78	27
	10									
Borehole terminated at 10.5 feet										

Groundwater Data:
First encountered during drilling: 5.5-ft depth

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: R. Russo
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 5.5 ft
Rock core: 5.5 - 10.5 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Thin-walled tube (T)
Split Spoon (SS)
Rock Core (RC)
Water encountered during drilling

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
N = SPT Blow Count

-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve
RQD = Rock Quality Designation
REC = % Recovery

2013-756.GPJ 8/26/14 (BORING LOG SA12-02.ARIASSA12-01.GDT,LIBRARY_RAR.GLB)

Arias & Associates, Inc.

Job No.: 2013-756

Boring Log No. B-3

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Sampling Date: 5/29/14

Coordinates: N29°59'34.28" W97°52'34.73"

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	N	-200	DD	Uc	REC	RQD
1" Asphalt over 8" BASE		GB										
[FILL] CLAYEY GRAVEL with Sand (GC), medium dense, dark brown and tan		SS	7	17	37	20	28	29				
[CWLS] CLAYEY SAND with Gravel (SC), very dense, light tan and gray		SS	11	18	37	19	50/3"	34				
Weathered LIMESTONE, light tan and gray	5	SS	6				50/3"					
[AUSTIN] LIMESTONE, tan, moderately hard with clay partings, weathered layers and discontinuities.												
-light gray from 7 to 8 ft		RC							147 (UW)	178	97	64
	10								143 (UW)	111		

Borehole terminated at 10 feet

Groundwater Data:
During drilling: Not encountered

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: W. Persyn
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 5 ft
Rock core: 5 - 10 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Grab Sample (GB) | Split Spoon (SS) | Rock Core (RC)

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve
DD = Dry Density (pcf)
Uc = Compressive Strength (tsf)
RQD = Rock Quality Designation
REC = % Recovery
UW = Unit Weight (pcf)

Boring Log No. B-4

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Sampling Date: 6/2/14

Coordinates: N29°59'40.05" W97°52'34.45"

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	PP	N	-200	DD	Uc	REC	RQD
[FILL] FAT CLAY (CH) with sand, stiff, dark brown, moist with organics, scattered coarse sand and gravel.		T					2.0						
		T	31	22	73	51	2.25		82				
SANDY FAT CLAY (CH), stiff, gray to light gray, moist with ferrous staining	5	T					1.5						
		T	11	13	26	13	4.0		41				
[CWLS] CLAYEY SAND with Gravel (SC), medium dense to very dense, tan, with limestone fragments ▽		SS						50/5"					
	10												
[AUSTIN] LIMESTONE, tan, moderately hard with clay partings, weathered layers and discontinuities.			8							147 (UW)	133		
		RC										93	82
	15												

Borehole terminated at 15 feet

Groundwater Data:
First encountered during drilling: 8.5-ft depth

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: R. Russo
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 10 ft
Rock core: 10 - 15 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Thin-walled tube (T) | Split Spoon (SS) | ▽ Water encountered during drilling | Rock Core (RC)

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
PP = Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)
N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve
DD = Dry Density (pcf)
Uc = Compressive Strength (tsf)
RQD = Rock Quality Designation
REC = % Recovery
UW = Unit Weight (pcf)

Boring Log No. B-5

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Sampling Date: 6/2/14

Coordinates: N29°59'53.1" W97°52'31.79"

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	PP	N	-200
4" Conc. sidewalk									
[FILL] FAT CLAY (CH) with sand and gravel, stiff to very stiff, dark brown with tan and gray, with sand and gravel layers.		T					2.75		
		T	30	18	59	41	2.75		62
- increased gravel from 4.5 to 5 feet	5	T					1.75		
- abundant gravel at 7 to 8 feet		T					1.75		
[CWLS] SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL), stiff, tan, wet		SS						50/3"	

Borehole terminated at 9.5 feet

Groundwater Data:
First encountered during drilling: 6.5-ft depth

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: R. Russo
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 9.5 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Thin-walled tube (T) | Split Spoon (SS) | Water encountered during drilling

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
PP = Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)

N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve

2013-756.GPJ 8/26/14 (BORING LOG SA12-02.ARIASSA12-01.GDT,LIBRARY_RAR.GLB)

Arias & Associates, Inc.

Job No.: 2013-756

Boring Log No. B-6

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Sampling Date: 5/29/14

Coordinates: N29°59'57.77" W97°52'27.99"

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	N	-200
[FILL] GRAVELLY FAT CLAY (CH), firm, brown and tan, wet intermixed with clayey sand and gravel		SS	16 24	22	48	26	6	45
		SS	26	19	66	47	7	62
	5	SS					4	
		GB	38					
[FILL] CONCRETE, tan, possible flowable fill		SS	22				13/3"	13
Borehole terminated at 7.3 feet								

Groundwater Data:
First encountered during drilling: 5-ft depth
After 30 minutes: 2-ft depth

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: W. Persyn
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 7.3 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Split Spoon (SS)
Grab Sample (GB)
Water encountered during drilling
Delayed water reading

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve

Boring Log No. B-7

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Sampling Date: 6/2/14

Coordinates: N30°0'0.49" W97°52'22.31"

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PP	N	DD	Uc	REC	RQD
[FILL] CLAYEY SAND (SC), brown to reddish tan, moist with gravel.		T		2.75					
SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL), firm, tan to reddish tan, wet with limestone fragments.		SS			6				
[AUSTIN] CHALK, tan to light gray, moderately hard with clay partings, weathered layers and discontinuities.	5	SS			50/1"				
		RC	7					88	60
	10	RC	6			146 (UW)	265	93	83
	15	RC	7			150 (UW)	174	100	100
	20								
Borehole terminated at 20 feet									

Groundwater Data:
During drilling: Not encountered

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: R. Russo
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 5 ft
Rock core: 5 - 20 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Thin-walled tube (T) — Split Spoon (SS)

Rock Core (RC)

WC = Water Content (%)
PP = Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)
N = SPT Blow Count
DD = Dry Density (pcf)
Uc = Compressive Strength (tsf)

RQD = Rock Quality Designation
REC = % Recovery
UW = Unit Weight (pcf)

2013-756.GPJ 8/26/14 (BORING LOG SA12-02.ARIASSA12-01.GDT,LIBRARY_RAR.GLB)

Arias & Associates, Inc.

Job No.: 2013-756

Boring Log No. B-8

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Sampling Date: 6/5/14

Coordinates: N30°0'3.42" W97°52'15.2"

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	PP	N	-200	DD	Uc	REC	RQD
[FILL] CLAYEY GRAVEL (GC), loose to medium dense, dark brown and tan, with sand and subrounded gravel		SS	14	25	48	23		8	30				
		T	17	26	67	41	4.5+		24				
[CWLS] SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL), hard, tan	5	SS						50/3"					
[AUSTIN] Weathered LIMESTONE, tan to gray, soft to moderately hard, with marl layers, and alternating tan and gray layers.		RC										93	23
	10		13							139 (UW)	38		

Borehole terminated at 10 feet

Groundwater Data:
During drilling: Not encountered

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: R. Russo
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Hand Auger: 0 - 1 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Split Spoon (SS) | Thin-walled tube (T) | Rock Core (RC)

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
PP = Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)
N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve
DD = Dry Density (pcf)
Uc = Compressive Strength (tsf)
RQD = Rock Quality Designation
REC = % Recovery
UW = Unit Weight (pcf)

Boring Log No. B-9

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Sampling Date: 5/29/14

Coordinates: N30°0'0.05" W97°52'9.27"

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	PP	N	-200	DD	Uc	REC	RQD
FAT CLAY (CH), stiff, dark brown		T	27	21	40	19	1.3		53				
SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL), hard, tan		SS	11					50/4"	18				
Weathered LIMESTONE, light tan and light gray, with clay seams and layers	5	SS	16					50/2"					
[AUSTIN] LIMESTONE, tan, moderately hard with clay partings, weathered layers and discontinuities.		RC								153 (UW)	595	96	25
	10									145 (UW)	124		
Borehole terminated at 10 feet													

Groundwater Data:
First encountered during drilling: 3-ft depth
After 30 minutes: 3-ft depth

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: W. Persyn
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 5 ft
Rock core: 5 - 10 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Thin-walled tube (T)
Split Spoon (SS)
Rock Core (RC)
Water encountered during drilling
Delayed water reading

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
PP = Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)
N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve
DD = Dry Density (pcf)
Uc = Compressive Strength (tsf)
RQD = Rock Quality Designation
REC = % Recovery
UW = Unit Weight (pcf)

2013-756.GPJ 8/26/14 (BORING LOG SA12-02.ARIASSA12-01.GDT,LIBRARY_RAR.GLB)

Boring Log No. B-10

Project: **North Burleson Street**
From W. Center to Market Place Avenue
Kyle, Texas

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Sampling Date: 6/2/14

Coordinates: N30°0'11.48" W97°52'4.08"

Backfill: Cuttings

Soil Description	Depth (ft)	SN	WC	PL	LL	PI	PP	N	-200
[FILL] FAT CLAY (CH), stiff, dark brown, moist with coarse sand and small angular gravel.		T					1.5		
		T					2.5		
FAT CLAY (CH) with sand, stiff, light gray to tan, moist with coarse sand and small angular gravel.	5	T	18	17	50	33			79
CLAYEY SAND (SC), tan to light gray, wet		T							
		SS						50/4"	

Borehole terminated at 9 feet

Groundwater Data:
First encountered during drilling: 4-ft depth

Field Drilling Data:
Coordinates: Hand-held GPS Unit
Logged By: R. Russo
Driller: Austin Geo-Logic
Equipment: Truck-mounted drill rig

Single flight auger: 0 - 9 ft

Nomenclature Used on Boring Log

Thin-walled tube (T) | Split Spoon (SS) | Water encountered during drilling

WC = Water Content (%)
PL = Plastic Limit
LL = Liquid Limit
PI = Plasticity Index
PP = Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)

N = SPT Blow Count
-200 = % Passing #200 Sieve

2013-756.GPJ 8/26/14 (BORING LOG SA12-02.ARIASSA12-01.GDT,LIBRARY_RAR.GLB)

Arias & Associates, Inc.

Job No.: 2013-756

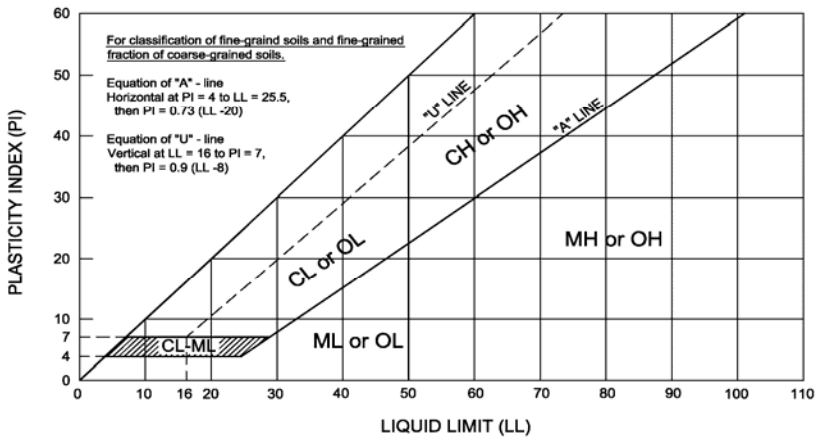
KEY TO TERMS AND SYMBOLS USED ON BORING LOGS

MAJOR DIVISIONS					GROUP SYMBOLS		DESCRIPTIONS
COARSE-GRAIND SOILS	More than half of material LARGER than No. 200 Sieve size	GRAVELS	More than Half of Coarse fraction is LARGER than No. 4 Sieve size	Clean Gravels (little or no Fines)	GW		Well-Graded Gravels, Gravel-Sand Mixtures, Little or no Fines
					GP		Poorly-Graded Gravels, Gravel-Sand Mixtures, Little or no Fines
				Gravels with Fines (Appreciable amount of Fines)	GM		Silty Gravels, Gravel-Sand-Silt Mixtures
					GC		Clayey Gravels, Gravel-Sand-Clay Mixtures
		SANDS	More than half of Coarse fraction is SMALLER than No. 4 Sieve size	Clean Sands (little or no Fines)	SW		Well-Graded Sands, Gravelly Sands, Little or no Fines
					SP		Poorly-Graded Sands, Gravelly Sands, Little or no Fines
				Sands with Fines (Appreciable amount of Fines)	SM		Silty Sands, Sand-Silt Mixtures
					SC		Clayey Sands, Sand-Clay Mixtures
GINE-GRAIND SOILS	More than half of material SMALLER than No. 200 Sieve size	SILTS & CLAYS		Liquid Limit less than 50	ML		Inorganic Silts & Very Fine Sands, Rock Flour, Silty or Clayey Fine Sands or Clayey Silts with Slight Plasticity
					CL		Inorganic Clays of Low to Medium Plasticity, Gravelly Clays, Sandy Clays, Silty Clays, Lean Clays
		SILTS & CLAYS		Liquid Limit greater than 50	MH		Inorganic Silts, Micaceous or Diatomaceous Fine Sand or Silty Soils, Elastic Silts
					CH		Inorganic Clays of High Plasticity, Fat Clays
FORMATIONAL MATERIALS		SANDSTONE					Massive Sandstones, Sandstones with Gravel Clasts
		MARLSTONE					Indurated Argillaceous Limestones
		LIMESTONE					Massive or Weakly Bedded Limestones
		CLAYSTONE					Mudstone or Massive Claystones
		CHALK					Massive or Poorly Bedded Chalk Deposits
		MARINE CLAYS					Cretaceous Clay Deposits
		GROUNDWATER					Indicates Final Observed Groundwater Level Indicates Initial Observed Groundwater Location

Density of Granular Soils	
Number of Blows per ft., N	Relative Density
0 - 4	Very Loose
4 - 10	Loose
10 - 30	Medium
30 - 50	Dense
Over 50	Very Dense

Consistency and Strength of Cohesive Soils		
Number of Blows per ft., N	Consistency	Unconfined Compressive Strength, q_u (tsf)
Below 2	Very Soft	Less than 0.25
2 - 4	Soft	0.25 - 0.5
4 - 8	Medium (Firm)	0.5 - 1.0
8 - 15	Stiff	1.0 - 2.0
15 - 30	Very Stiff	2.0 - 4.0
Over 30	Hard	Over 4.0

PLASTICITY CHART (ASTM D 2487-11)



KEY TO TERMS AND SYMBOLS USED ON BORING LOGS

TABLE 1 Soil Classification Chart (ASTM D 2487-11)

Criteria of Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests[A]				Soil Classification	
				Group Symbol	Group Name[B]
COARSE-GRAIND SOILS	Gravels (More than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve)	Clean Gravels (Less than 5% fines[C])	Cu ≥ 4 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3[D]	GW	Well-Graded Gravel[E]
			Cu < 4 and/or [Cc < or Cc > 3][D]	GP	Poorly-Graded Gravel[E]
		Gravels with Fines (More than 12% fines[C])	Fines classify as ML or MH	GM	Silty Gravel[E,F,G]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	GC	Clayey Gravel[E,F,G]
More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve	Sands (50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve)	Clean Sands (Less than 5% fines[H])	Cu ≥ 6 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3[D]	SW	Well-Graded Sand[I]
			Cu < 6 and/or [Cc < or Cc > 3][D]	SP	Poorly-Graded Sand[I]
		Sands with Fines (More than 12% fines[H])	Fines classify as ML or MH	SM	Silty Sand[F,G,I]
			Fines classify as CL or CH	SC	Clayey Sand[F,G,I]
FINE-GRAINED SOILS	Silts and Clays	inorganic	PI > 7 and plots on or above "A" line[J]	CL	Lean Clay[K,L,M]
	Liquid limit less than 50		PI < 4 or plots below "A" line[J]	ML	Silt[K,L,M]
		organic	Liquid limit - oven dried / Liquid & #10 < 0.75	OL	Organic Clay[K,L,M,N]
					Organi Silt[K,L,M,O]
50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve	Silts and Clays	inorganic	PI plots on or above "A" line	CH	Fat Clay[K,L,M]
	Liquid limit 50 or more		PI plots on or above "A" line	MH	Elastic Silt[K,L,M]
		organic	Liquid limit - oven dried / Liquid & #10 < 0.75	OH	Organic Clay[K,L,M,P]
					Organic Silt[K,L,M,Q]
HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS	Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor			PT	Peat

[A] Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75mm) sieve

[B] If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with bcobble sor boulders, or both" to group name

[C] Gravels with 5% to 12% fines require dual symbols:
- GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt
- GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay
- GP-GM poorly-graded gravel with silt
- GP-GC poorly-graded gravel with clay

[D] $Cu = D_{60}/D_{10}$ $\quad Cc = \dfrac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$

[E] If soil contains ≥ 15% sand, add "with sand" to group name

[F] If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM

[G] If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name

[H] Sand with 5% to 12% fines require dual symbols:
- SW-SM well-graded sand with silt
- SW-SC well-graded sand with clay
- SP-SM poorly-graded sand with silt
- SP-SC poorly-graded sand with clay

[I] If soil contains ≥ 15% gravel, add "with gravel" to group name

[J] If Atterberg limits plot in hatched area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay

[K] If soil contains 15% to < 30% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant

[L] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200, predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name

[M] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name

[N] PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line

[O] PI < 4 or plots below "A" line

[P] PI plots on or above "A" line

[Q] PI plots below "A" line

TERMINOLOGY

Boulders	Over 12-inches (300mm)	**Parting**	Inclusion < 1/8-inch thick extending through samples
Cobbles	12-inches to 3-inches (300mm to 75mm)	**Seam**	Inclusion 1/8-inch to 3-inches thick extending through sample
Gravel	3-inches to No. 4 sieve (75mm to 4.75mm)	**Layer**	Inclusion > 3-inches thick extending through sample
Sand	No. 4 sieve to No. 200 sieve (4.75mm to 0.075mm)		
Silt or Clay	Passing No. 200 sieve (0.075mm)		
Calcareous	Containing appreciable quantities of calcium carbonate, generally nodular		

Stratified	Alternating layers of varying material or color with layers at least 6mm thick
Laminated	Alternating layers of varying material or color with the layers less than 6mm thick
Fissured	Breaks along definite planes of fracture with little resistance to fracturing
Slickensided	Fracture planes appear polished or glossy sometimes striated
Blocky	Cohesive soil that can be broken down into small angular lumps which resist further breakdown
Lensed	Inclusion of small pockets of different soils, such as small lenses of sand scattered through a mass of clay
Homogeneous	Same color and appearance throughout

KEY TO TERMS AND SYMBOLS USED ON BORING LOGS

Hardness Classification of Intact Rock

Class	Hardness	Field Test	Approximate Range of Uniaxial Compression Strength kg/cm² (tons/ft²)
I	Extremely hard	Many blows with geologic hammer required to break intact specimen.	> 2,000
II	Very hard	Hand held specimen breaks with hammer end of pick under more than one blow.	2,000 – 1,000
III	Hard	Cannot be scraped or pealed with knife, hand held specimen can be broken with single moderate blow with pick.	1,000 – 500
IV	Soft	Can just be scraped or peeled with knife. Indentations 1mm to 3mm show in specimen with moderate blow with pick.	500 – 250
V	Very soft	Material crumbles under moderate blow with sharp end of pick and can be peeled with a knife, but is too hard to hand-trim for triaxial test specimen.	250 – 10

Rock Weathering Classifications

Grade	Symbol	Diagnostic Features
Fresh	F	No visible sign of Decomposition or discoloration. Rings under hammer impact.
Slightly Weathered	WS	Slight discoloration inwards from open fractures, otherwise similar to F.
Moderately Weathered	WM	Discoloration throughout. Weaker minerals such as feldspar decomposed. Strength somewhat less than fresh rock, but cores cannot be broken by hand or scraped by knife. Texture preserved.
Highly Weathered	WH	Most minerals somewhat decomposed. Specimens can be broken by hand with effort or shaved with knife. Core stones present in rock mass. Texture becoming indistinct, but fabric preserved.
Completely Weathered	WC	Minerals decomposed to soil, but fabric and structure preserved (Saprolite). Specimens easily crumbled or penetrated.
Residual Soil	RS	Advanced state of decomposition resulting in plastic soils. Rock fabric and structure completely destroyed. Large volume change.

Rock Discontinuity Spacing

Description for Structural Features: Bedding, Foliation, or Flow Banding	Spacing	Description for Joints, Faults or Other Fractures
Very thickly (bedded, foliated, or banded)	More than 6 feet	Very widely (fractured or jointed)
Thickly	2 – 6 feet	Widely
Medium	8 – 24 inches	Medium
Thinly	2½ – 8 inches	Closely
Very thinly	¾ – 2½ inches	Very closely
Description for Micro-Structural Features: Lamination, Foliation, or Cleavage	**Spacing**	**Descriptions for Joints, Faults, or Other Fractures**
Intensely (laminated, foliated, or cleaved)	¼ – ¾ inch	Extremely close
Very intensely	Less than ¼ inch	

Engineering Classification for in Situ Rock Quality

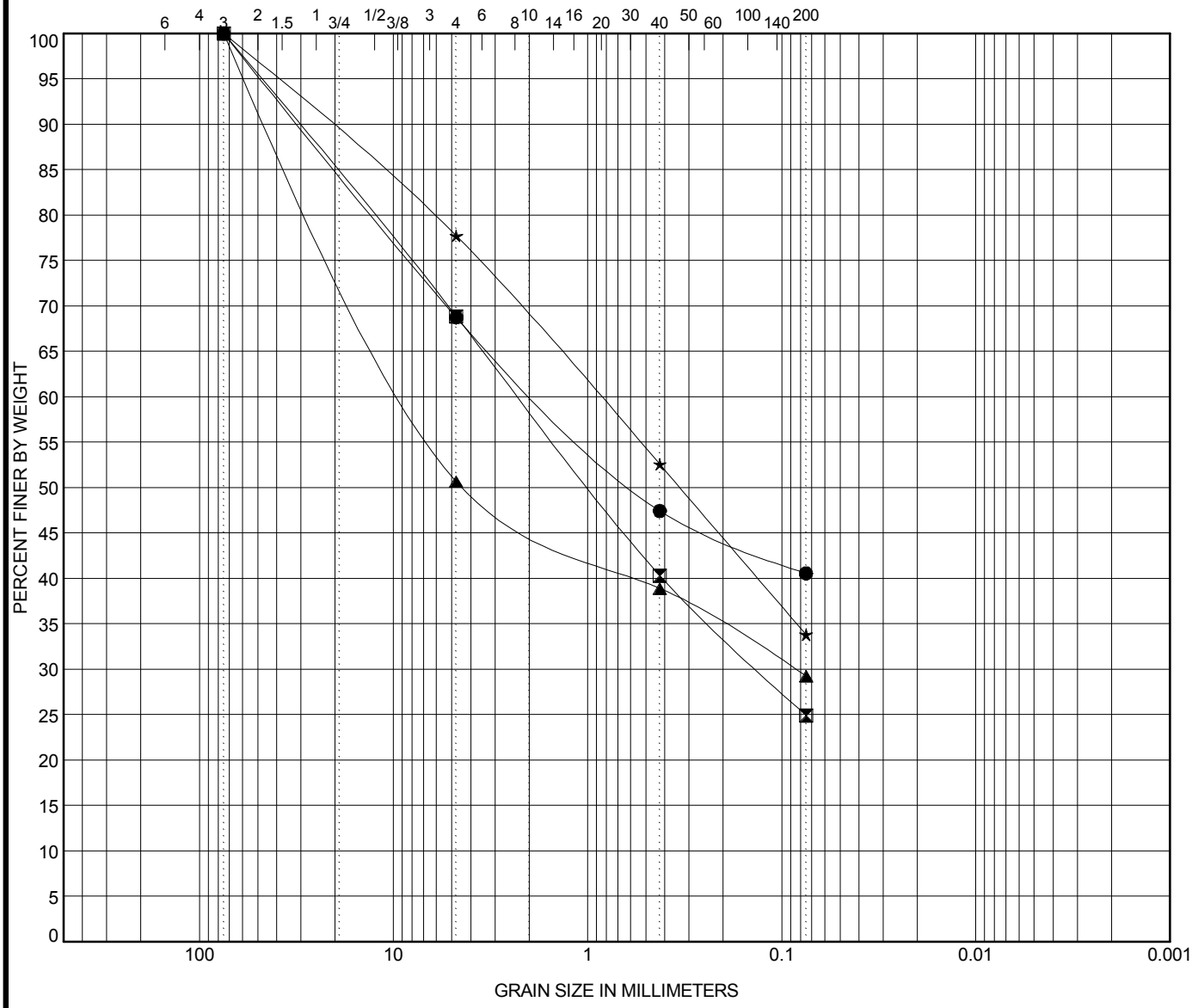
RQD %	Velocity Index	Rock Mass Quality
90 – 100	0.80 – 1.00	Excellent
75 – 90	0.60 – 0.80	Good
50 – 75	0.40 – 0.60	Fair
25 – 50	0.20 – 0.40	Poor
0 – 25	0 – 0.20	Very Poor

FIELD EXPLORATORY PROCEDURES

The field exploration program included drilling at selected locations within the site and intermittently sampling the encountered materials. The boreholes were drilled using either single flight auger (ASTM D 1452) or hollow-stem auger (ASTM D 6151). Samples of encountered materials were obtained using a split-barrel sampler while performing the Standard Penetration Test (ASTM D 1586), or by taking material from the auger as it was advanced (ASTM D 1452). The sample depth interval and type of sampler used is included on the soil boring log. Arias' field representative visually logged each recovered sample and placed a portion of the recovered sampled into a plastic bag for transport to our laboratory.

SPT N values and blow counts for those intervals where the sampler could not be advanced for the required 18-inch penetration are shown on the soil boring log. If the test was terminated during the 6-inch seating interval or after 10 hammer blows were applied used and no advancement of the sampler was noted, the log denotes this condition as blow count during seating penetration. Penetrometer readings recorded for thin-walled tube samples that remained intact also are shown on the soil boring log.

APPENDIX C: LABORATORY TESTING



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

	Boring	Elev	Depth	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
●	1		4.0	**CLAYEY GRAVEL with SAND (GC)**	65	21	44		
⊠	2		2.0	**CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL (SC)**	29	21	8		
▲	3		1.0	**CLAYEY GRAVEL with SAND (GC)**	37	17	20		
★	3		2.5	**CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL (SC)**	37	18	19		

	Boring	Depth	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
●	1	4.0	75	1.763			31.2	28.2	40.6	
⊠	2	2.0	75	2.245	0.133		31.1	43.9	24.9	
▲	3	1.0	75	8.007	0.086		49.3	21.4	29.3	
★	3	2.5	75	0.866			22.3	43.9	33.8	

Silt and clay fractions were determined using 0.002 mm as the maximum particle size for clay.

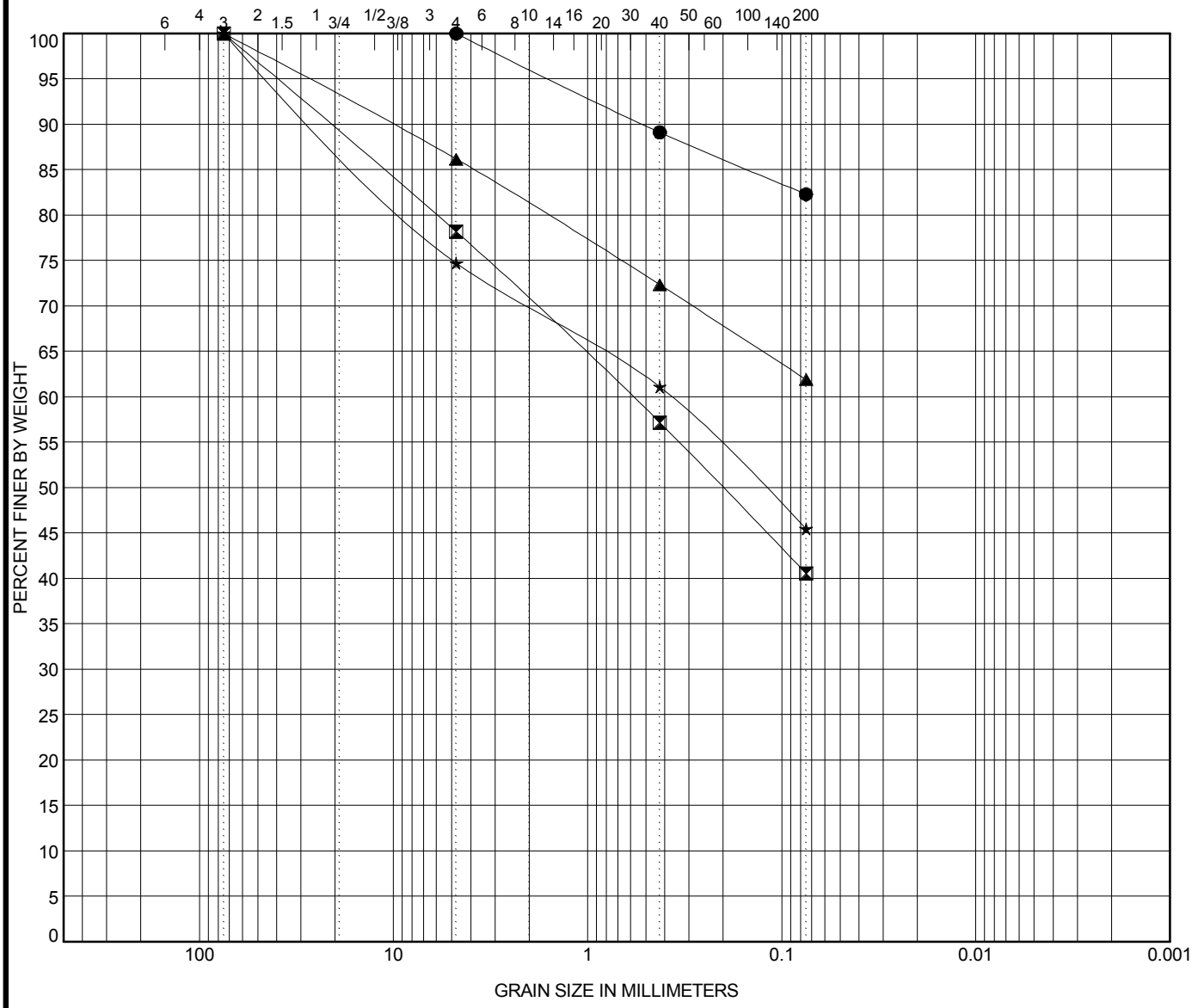
Arias & Associates, Inc.
13581 Pond Springs Rd, S210
Austin, TX 78729
Phone: 512.428.5550
Fax: 512.428.5525

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: North Burleson Street

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Job No.: 2013-756



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

	Boring	Elev	Depth	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
●	4		2.0	**FAT CLAY with SAND (CH)**	73	22	51		
⊠	4		6.0	**CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL (SC)**	26	13	13		
▲	5		2.0	**SANDY FAT CLAY (CH)**	59	18	41		
★	6		0.0	**CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL (SC)**	48	22	26		

	Boring	Depth	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
●	4	2.0	4.75				0.0	17.7	82.3	
⊠	4	6.0	75	0.588			21.8	37.6	40.5	
▲	5	2.0	75				13.8	24.3	61.9	
★	6	0.0	75	0.376			25.3	29.2	45.5	

Silt and clay fractions were determined using 0.002 mm as the maximum particle size for clay.

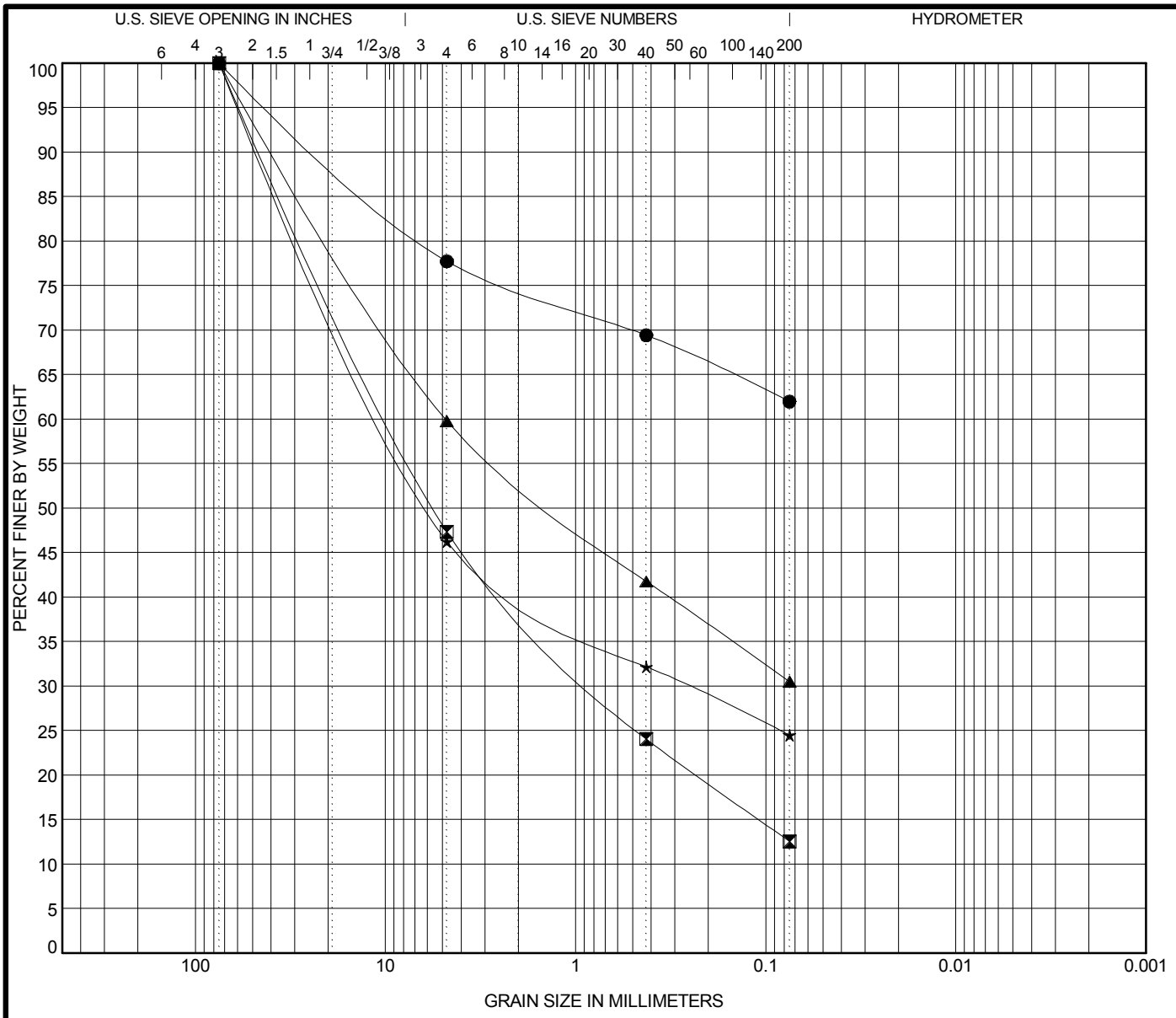
Arias & Associates, Inc.
13581 Pond Springs Rd, S210
Austin, TX 78729
Phone: 512.428.5550
Fax: 512.428.5525

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: North Burleson Street

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Job No.: 2013-756



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

	Boring	Elev	Depth	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
●	6		2.5	**GRAVELLY FAT CLAY with SAND (CH)**	66	19	47		
⊠	6		7.0						
▲	8		0.0	**CLAYEY GRAVEL with SAND (GC)**	48	25	23		
★	8		2.0	**CLAYEY GRAVEL with SAND (GC)**	67	26	41		

	Boring	Depth	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
●	6	2.5	75				22.3	15.7	62.0	
⊠	6	7.0	75	9.214	0.788		52.6	34.8	12.6	
▲	8	0.0	75	4.813			40.2	29.3	30.5	
★	8	2.0	75	9.621	0.261		53.7	21.8	24.5	

Silt and clay fractions were determined using 0.002 mm as the maximum particle size for clay.

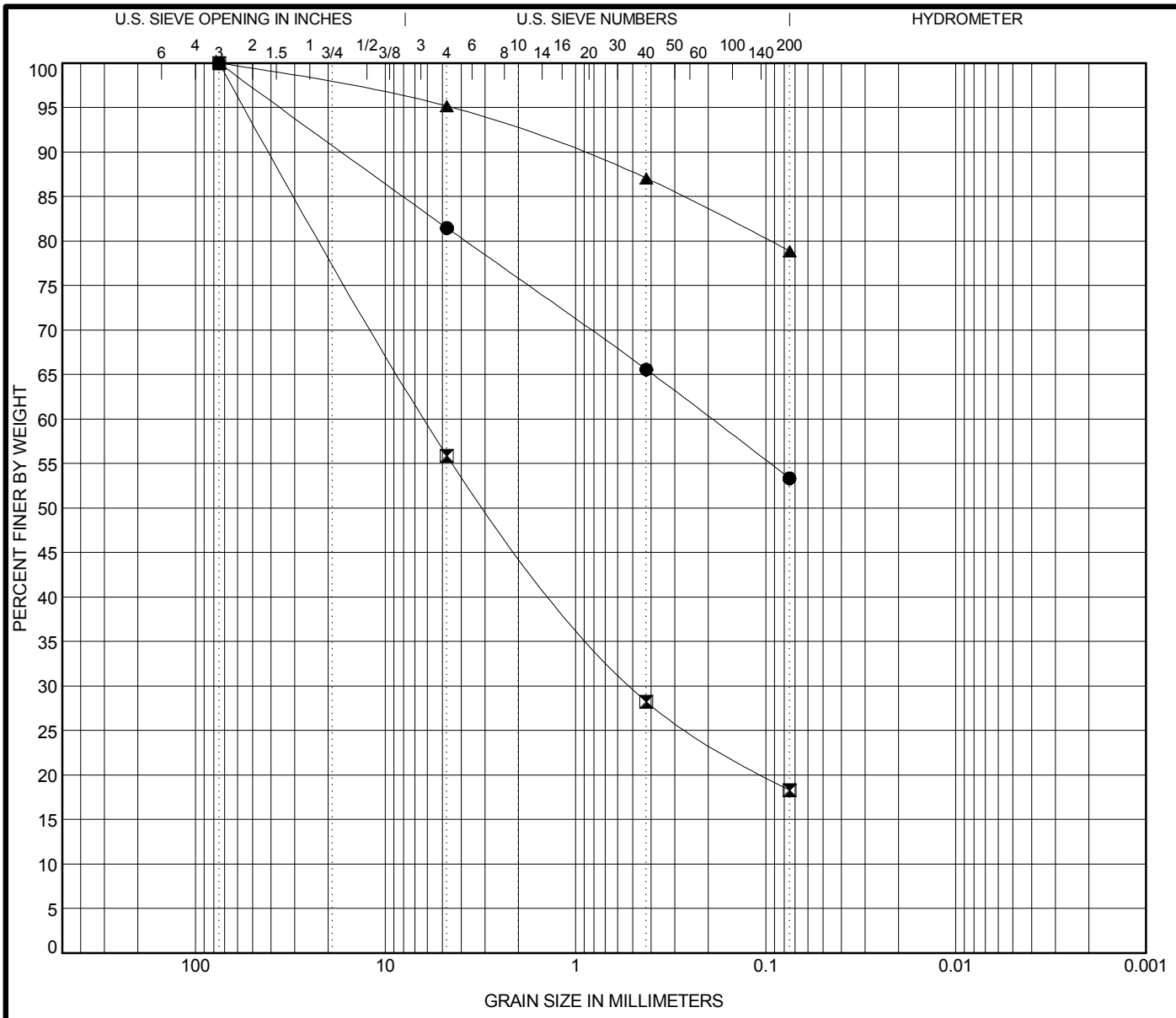
Arias & Associates, Inc.
13581 Pond Springs Rd, S210
Austin, TX 78729
Phone: 512.428.5550
Fax: 512.428.5525

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

Project: North Burleson Street

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Job No.: 2013-756



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

	Boring	Elev	Depth	Classification	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
●	9		0.0	SANDY LEAN CLAY with GRAVEL (CL)	40	21	19		
⊠	9		2.5						
▲	10		4.0	FAT CLAY with SAND (CH)	50	17	33		

	Boring	Depth	D100	D60	D30	D10	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Clay
●	9	0.0	75	0.193			18.5	28.1	53.3	
⊠	9	2.5	75	6.14	0.496		44.1	37.6	18.3	
▲	10	4.0	75				4.8	16.3	78.9	

Silt and clay fractions were determined using 0.002 mm as the maximum particle size for clay.

Arias & Associates, Inc.
13581 Pond Springs Rd, S210
Austin, TX 78729
Phone: 512.428.5550
Fax: 512.428.5525

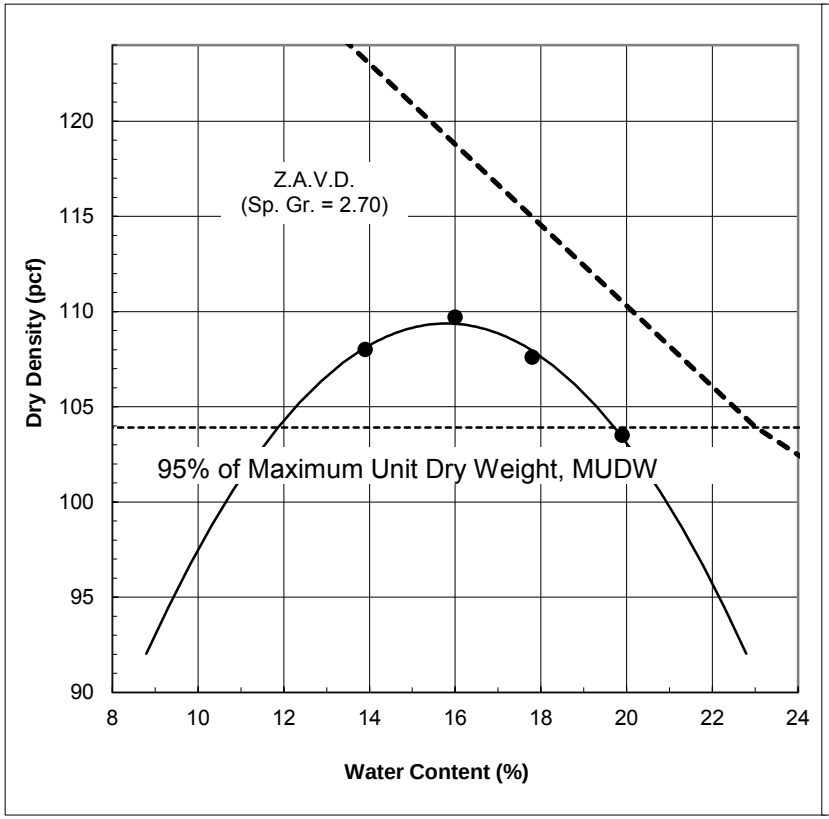
GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

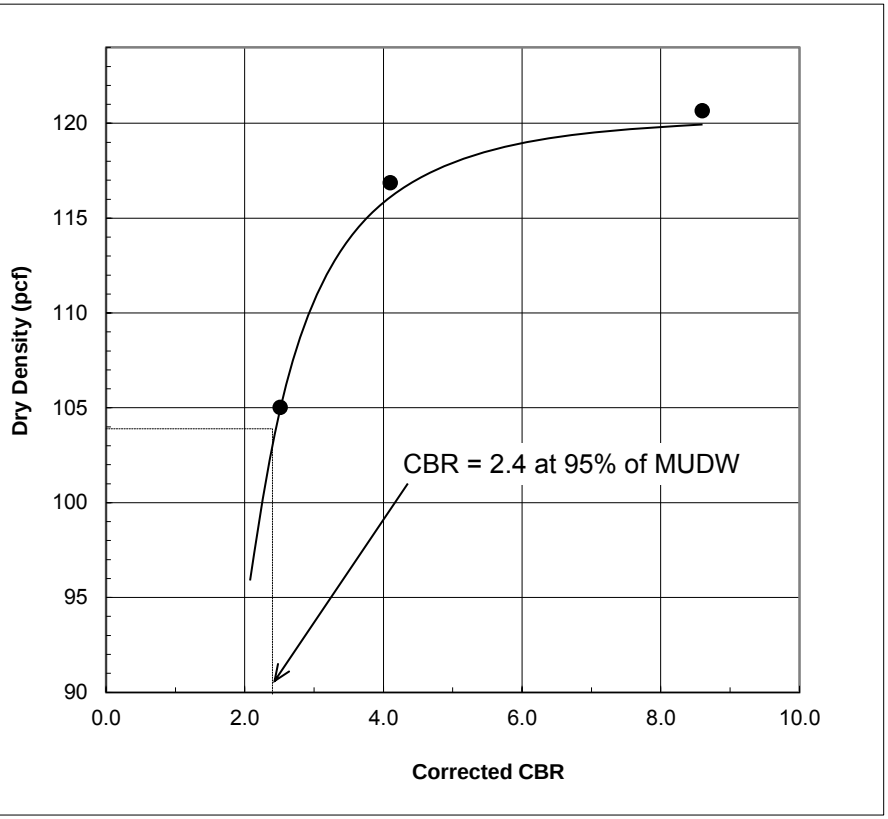
Project: North Burleson Street

Location: See Boring Location Plan

Job No.: 2013-756

2013-756.GPJ 8/23/14 (GRAIN SIZE ARIAS.US LAB.GDT.LIBRARY RAR.GLB)





Sample: 1
Test Method: ASTM D698, Method C
Material: Dark Brown Clayey Sand with Gravel (SC)

Optimum Water Content:	15.8 %
Maximum Unit Dry Weight:	109.4 pcf
Liquid Limit:	33
Plasticity Index:	16
% Passing #200 Sieve:	33

	% SWELL
72 blows:	1.4
56 blows:	1.7
25 blows:	1.7

MOISTURE-DENSITY AND CBR TEST RESULTS
N. BURLESON ROAD IMPROVEMENTS
KYLE, TEXAS

LABORATORY TESTING PROCEDURES

Arias performed soil mechanics laboratory tests on selected samples to aid in soil classification and to determine engineering properties. Tests commonly used in geotechnical exploration, the method used to perform the test, and the column designation on the boring log where data are reported are summarized as follows:

Test Name	Test Method	Log Designation
Water (moisture) content of soil and rock by mass	ASTM D 2216	WC
Liquid limit, plastic limit, and plasticity index of soils	ASTM D 4318	PL, LL, PI
Amount of material in soils finer than the No. 200 sieve	ASTM D 1140	-200

The laboratory results are reported on the soil boring logs.

One Proctor compaction test (ASTM D698) was performed on a bulk sample obtained from boring B-6 for the purpose of running a CBR. The test is performed by placing loose soil into a standardized compaction mold in lifts and using a hammer of specified size and energy to compact the soil. The sample is weighed and dried, and the dry density is then calculated. This process is repeated for a range of soil moisture contents to develop a density versus moisture content relationship. From this relationship, the theoretical maximum dry density can be determined which occurs at a specific moisture content referred to as the optimum moisture content.

Once the moisture density relationship is determined, a sample is remolded to a density near 95% of the maximum theoretical dry density, and near optimum moisture. The CBR test (ASTM D1883) is conducted by driving a 3-square inch piston into the remolded sample at a specified rate, and recording the load required to drive the piston into the remolded sample. This "punching shear" test provides data that is a semi-empirical index of the strength and deflection characteristics of a soil correlated with pavement performance to establish design curves for pavement thickness.

APPENDIX D: ASFE INFORMATION

Important Information about Your

Geotechnical Engineering Report

Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.

While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.

Geotechnical Services Are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs of their clients. A geotechnical engineering study conducted for a civil engineer may not fulfill the needs of a construction contractor or even another civil engineer. Because each geotechnical engineering study is unique, each geotechnical engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client. No one except you should rely on your geotechnical engineering report without first conferring with the geotechnical engineer who prepared it. *And no one — not even you* — should apply the report for any purpose or project except the one originally contemplated.

Read the Full Report

Serious problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical engineering report did not read it all. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selected elements only.

A Geotechnical Engineering Report Is Based on A Unique Set of Project-Specific Factors

Geotechnical engineers consider a number of unique, project-specific factors when establishing the scope of a study. Typical factors include: the client's goals, objectives, and risk management preferences; the general nature of the structure involved, its size, and configuration; the location of the structure on the site; and other planned or existing site improvements, such as access roads, parking lots, and underground utilities. Unless the geotechnical engineer who conducted the study specifically indicates otherwise, do not rely on a geotechnical engineering report that was:

- not prepared for you,
- not prepared for your project,
- not prepared for the specific site explored, or
- completed before important project changes were made.

Typical changes that can erode the reliability of an existing geotechnical engineering report include those that affect:

- the function of the proposed structure, as when it's changed from a parking garage to an office building, or from a light industrial plant to a refrigerated warehouse,
- elevation, configuration, location, orientation, or weight of the proposed structure,
- composition of the design team, or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project changes—even minor ones—and request an assessment of their impact. *Geotechnical engineers cannot accept responsibility or liability for problems that occur because their reports do not consider developments of which they were not informed.*

Subsurface Conditions Can Change

A geotechnical engineering report is based on conditions that existed at the time the study was performed. *Do not rely on a geotechnical engineering report* whose adequacy may have been affected by: the passage of time; by man-made events, such as construction on or adjacent to the site; or by natural events, such as floods, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations. *Always* contact the geotechnical engineer before applying the report to determine if it is still reliable. A minor amount of additional testing or analysis could prevent major problems.

Most Geotechnical Findings Are Professional Opinions

Site exploration identifies subsurface conditions only at those points where subsurface tests are conducted or samples are taken. Geotechnical engineers review field and laboratory data and then apply their professional judgment to render an opinion about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual subsurface conditions may differ—sometimes significantly—from those indicated in your report. Retaining the geotechnical engineer who developed your report to provide construction observation is the most effective method of managing the risks associated with unanticipated conditions.

A Report's Recommendations Are *Not* Final

Do not overrely on the construction recommendations included in your report. *Those recommendations are not final,* because geotechnical engineers develop them principally from judgment and opinion. Geotechnical engineers can finalize their recommendations only by observing actual

subsurface conditions revealed during construction. *The geotechnical engineer who developed your report cannot assume responsibility or liability for the report's recommendations if that engineer does not perform construction observation.*

A Geotechnical Engineering Report Is Subject to Misinterpretation

Other design team members' misinterpretation of geotechnical engineering reports has resulted in costly problems. Lower that risk by having your geotechnical engineer confer with appropriate members of the design team after submitting the report. Also retain your geotechnical engineer to review pertinent elements of the design team's plans and specifications. Contractors can also misinterpret a geotechnical engineering report. Reduce that risk by having your geotechnical engineer participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences, and by providing construction observation.

Do Not Redraw the Engineer's Logs

Geotechnical engineers prepare final boring and testing logs based upon their interpretation of field logs and laboratory data. To prevent errors or omissions, the logs included in a geotechnical engineering report should *never* be redrawn for inclusion in architectural or other design drawings. Only photographic or electronic reproduction is acceptable, *but recognize that separating logs from the report can elevate risk.*

Give Contractors a Complete Report and Guidance

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can make contractors liable for unanticipated subsurface conditions by limiting what they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent costly problems, give contractors the complete geotechnical engineering report, *but* preface it with a clearly written letter of transmittal. In that letter, advise contractors that the report was not prepared for purposes of bid development and that the report's accuracy is limited; encourage them to confer with the geotechnical engineer who prepared the report (a modest fee may be required) and/or to conduct additional study to obtain the specific types of information they need or prefer. A prebid conference can also be valuable. *Be sure contractors have sufficient time* to perform additional study. Only then might you be in a position to give contractors the best information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions.

Read Responsibility Provisions Closely

Some clients, design professionals, and contractors do not recognize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. This lack of understanding has created unrealistic expectations that have led to disappointments, claims, and disputes. To help reduce the risk of such outcomes, geotechnical engineers commonly include a variety of explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations" many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely.* Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

Geoenvironmental Concerns Are Not Covered

The equipment, techniques, and personnel used to perform a *geoenvironmental* study differ significantly from those used to perform a *geotechnical* study. For that reason, a geotechnical engineering report does not usually relate any geoenvironmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated environmental problems have led to numerous project failures.* If you have not yet obtained your own geoenvironmental information, ask your geotechnical consultant for risk management guidance. *Do not rely on an environmental report prepared for someone else.*

Obtain Professional Assistance To Deal with Mold

Diverse strategies can be applied during building design, construction, operation, and maintenance to prevent significant amounts of mold from growing on indoor surfaces. To be effective, all such strategies should be devised for the *express purpose* of mold prevention, integrated into a comprehensive plan, and executed with diligent oversight by a professional mold prevention consultant. Because just a small amount of water or moisture can lead to the development of severe mold infestations, a number of mold prevention strategies focus on keeping building surfaces dry. While groundwater, water infiltration, and similar issues may have been addressed as part of the geotechnical engineering study whose findings are conveyed in this report, the geotechnical engineer in charge of this project is not a mold prevention consultant; ***none of the services performed in connection with the geotechnical engineer's study were designed or conducted for the purpose of mold prevention. Proper implementation of the recommendations conveyed in this report will not of itself be sufficient to prevent mold from growing in or on the structure involved.***

Rely, on Your ASFE-Member Geotechncial Engineer for Additional Assistance

Membership in ASFE/The Best People on Earth exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk management techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project. Confer with your ASFE-member geotechnical engineer for more information.

ASFE
The Best People on Earth

8811 Colesville Road/Suite G106, Silver Spring, MD 20910
Telephone: 301/565-2733 Facsimile: 301/589-2017
e-mail: info@asfe.org www.asfe.org

IIGER06085.0MRP

Geotechnical Engineering Report

City of Kyle – Schlemmer & Porter Street WW Improvements, Phase II
Kyle, Texas

October 14, 2022

Terracon Project No. 96225058

Prepared for:

LJA Engineering, Inc.

Round Rock, Texas

Prepared by:

Terracon Consultants, Inc.

Austin, Texas

October 14, 2022

LJA Engineering, Inc.
2700 La Frontera Blvd., Suite 150
Round Rock, Texas 78681

Attn: Mr. Stuart Cowell, P.E.
P: (512) 439-4717
E: scowell@lja.com

Re: Geotechnical Engineering Report
City of Kyle – Schlemmer & Porter Street WW Improvements, Phase II
Front Street & Schlemmer Street
Kyle, Texas
Terracon Project No. 96225058

Dear Mr. Cowell:

We have completed a subsurface exploration and Geotechnical Engineering evaluation for the above referenced project. This study was performed in general accordance with Terracon Proposal No. P96225058 dated February 24, 2022 and Supplemental Task Order dated July 21, 2022. This report presents the findings of the subsurface exploration and provides geotechnical recommendations concerning earthwork, subgrade preparation, and site improvements for the proposed project.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of service to you on this project. If you have any questions concerning this report or if we may be of further service, please contact us.

Sincerely,
Terracon Consultants, Inc.

10/14/2022

Larson M. Snyder, P.E.
Project Engineer

Bryan S. Moulin, P.E.
Senior Principal, Geotechnical Services

REPORT TOPICS

Note: This report was originally delivered in a web-based format. **Orange Bold** text in the report indicates a referenced section heading. The PDF version also includes hyperlinks which direct the reader to that section and clicking on the ***GeoReport*** logo will bring you back to this page. For more interactive features, please view your project online at client.terracon.com.

ATTACHMENTS

Note: Refer to each individual Attachment for a listing of contents

Geotechnical Engineering Report

City of Kyle – Schlemmer & Porter Street WW Improvements, Phase II
Front Street & Schlemmer Street
Kyle, Texas

Terracon Project No. 96225058
October 14, 2022

INTRODUCTION

This report presents the results of our subsurface exploration and geotechnical engineering services performed for the proposed City of Kyle – Schlemmer & Porter Street WW Improvements, Phase II project to be located along Front Street & Schlemmer Street in Kyle, Texas. The purpose of these services is to provide information and geotechnical engineering recommendations relative to:

- Subsurface soil and rock conditions
- Groundwater conditions
- Site preparation and earthwork
- Excavation considerations
- Manhole design and construction
- Lateral earth pressures
- Seismic site classification

The geotechnical engineering Scope of Services for this project included the advancement of five (5) test borings, designated B-1 through B-4 and A-1, to depths ranging from approximately 10 to 15 feet below existing site grades.

Maps showing the site and boring locations are shown in the **Site Location** and **Exploration Plan** sections, respectively. The results of the laboratory testing performed on soil samples obtained from the site during the field exploration are included on the boring logs and as separate graphs in the **Exploration Results** section.

SITE CONDITIONS

The following description of site conditions is derived from our site visit in association with the field exploration and our review of publicly available geologic and topographic maps.

Item	Description
Parcel Information	The project consists of two proposed wastewater line alignments. The first alignment begins on the eastern side of Front Street near the Front Street and Austin Street intersection and runs south parallel to Front Street for approximately 689 feet. The second alignment begins on the southern side of Schlemmer Street near the dead-end to the east of the Schlemmer Street and Burleson Street intersection and runs west parallel to Schlemmer Street for approximately 1,400 feet. See **Site Location**
Existing Improvements	Existing roadways and residential development.
Current Ground Cover	Grass, asphalt, and limestone base.
Existing Topography	**Front Street Alignment:** Based on the topographic information provided, the alignment slopes from the highest elevation of EL ~713 feet on the southern end to the lowest elevation of EL ~707 feet on the northern end. **Schlemmer Street Alignment:** Based on the topographic information provided, the alignment slopes from the highest elevation of EL ~729 feet on the western end to the lowest elevation of EL ~708 feet on the eastern end.
Geology	Based on the available geologic information and the samples obtained, the subsurface conditions along the proposed wastewater lines consist of fat clays to clayey gravels and sands overlying Austin Group limestone.

PROJECT DESCRIPTION

Our initial understanding of the project was provided in our proposal and was discussed during project planning. A period of collaboration has transpired since the project was initiated, and our final understanding of the project conditions is as follows:

Item	Description
Information Provided	The project information and wastewater alignments were provided via e-mail on February 17th, 2022 from Mr. Stuart Cowell, P.E. with LJA Engineering, Inc. The alignment plan and profiles and topographic information were provided via e-mail on September 21st, 2022 from Mr. Cowell.
Project Description	The project includes the abandonment of existing wastewater lines, the construction of approximately 689 linear feet of wastewater line along Front Street, and the construction of approximately 1,400 linear feet of wastewater line along Schlemmer Street, along with periodic manholes.
Bottom of Wastewater Line Elevation	**Front Street Alignment:** 698.5 feet to 705.1 feet **Schlemmer Street Alignment:** 695.9 feet to 720.0 feet

Item	Description
Grading/Slopes	**Front Street Alignment:** Up to 10 feet of cut will be required to develop final grade of the wastewater line alignment. **Schlemmer Street Alignment:** Up to 15 feet of cut will be required to develop final grade of the wastewater line alignment. Open trench excavation assumed to be no steeper than 3H:1V (Horizontal to Vertical), except where cut areas expose competent limestone.

GEOTECHNICAL CHARACTERIZATION

We have developed a general characterization of the subsurface conditions based upon our review of the subsurface exploration, laboratory data, geologic setting and our understanding of the project. This characterization, termed GeoModel, forms the basis of our geotechnical calculations and evaluation of site preparation and foundation options. Conditions encountered at each exploration point are indicated on the individual logs. The individual logs can be found in the **Exploration Results** section and the GeoModel can be found in the **Figures** section of this report.

As part of our analyses, we identified the following model layers within the subsurface profile. For a more detailed view of the model layer depths at each boring location, refer to the GeoModel.

Model Layer	Layer Name	General Description
1	**Surficial Soils**	Dark brown to brown to light brown to tan to light tan to pale brown, medium dense to dense to very dense; hard; with limestone fragments
2	**Limestone Bedrock**	Austin Group; light tan to pale brown, slightly to moderately to highly fractured; transitions to gray to light gray with depth

Groundwater

The boreholes were observed while drilling and after completion for the presence and level of groundwater. Groundwater was not observed in the borings while drilling, nor for the short duration the borings could remain open. However, this does not necessarily mean no groundwater may be present at the site as groundwater conditions can (and likely will) vary between the time of the geotechnical investigation and the timeframe of construction activities.

Groundwater seepage is possible at this site, particularly in the form of seepage traveling along pervious seams/fissures in the soil, along the soil/limestone interface, and/or in fissures/fractures in the limestone. A relatively long period may be necessary for a groundwater level to develop and stabilize in a borehole. Long term observations in piezometers sealed from the influence of surface water are often required to define groundwater levels in materials of this type. Please contact us if this is desired. Groundwater conditions should be evaluated immediately prior to construction.

Groundwater level fluctuations occur due to seasonal variations in the amount of rainfall, runoff and other factors not evident at the time the borings were performed. Therefore, groundwater levels during construction or at other times in the life of the alignment may be higher or lower than the levels indicated on the boring logs. The possibility of groundwater level fluctuations should be considered when developing the design and construction plans for the project.

GEOTECHNICAL OVERVIEW

Effective drainage should be completed early in the construction sequence and maintained during and after construction to avoid potential issues. Additional site preparation recommendations including subgrade improvement and fill placement are provided in the **Earthwork** section.

We anticipate that construction will include open-cut trench excavations for the placement of the wastewater line and manholes and backfilling around these improvements with on-site soils. Slope inclinations and construction recommendations are addressed for temporary cut slopes in the **Earthwork** section. Additional comments regarding the excavations are addressed in the **Comments on Excavation and/or Trench Safety** and **Below-Grade Construction Considerations** sections.

The **Shallow Foundations** and **Subgrade Preparation Below Manholes** sections address the support of manhole structures on a mat foundation bearing into Stratum 3 limestone or select fill/crushed limestone base.

The **General Comments** section provides an understanding of the report limitations.

EARTHWORK

Earthwork is anticipated to include demolition, clearing and grubbing, excavations, and fill placement. The following sections provide recommendations for use in the preparation of specifications for the work. Recommendations include critical quality criteria, as necessary, to render the site in the state considered in our geotechnical engineering evaluation.

Site Preparation

After demolition of the existing pavements, construction areas should be stripped of all vegetation, asphalt, loose soils, fill soils, top soils, construction debris, and other unsuitable material currently present at the site. Roots of trees to be removed within construction areas, if any, should be grubbed to full depths, including the dry soil around the roots. If any unusual items are unearthed during or after demolition, please contact us for further evaluation. Utilities to be abandoned should be completely removed from all proposed construction areas. If this is not feasible, then the abandoned utility piping should be filled with flowable fill (COA Item No. 402S or TxDOT Item

No. 401) and plugged such that it does not become a conduit for water flow. Site stripping/excavation operations in cut areas will loosen limestone rocks/boulders which should either be properly broken down or removed from the site. We recommend that Terracon be retained to assist in evaluating exposed subgrades during earthwork so that unsuitable materials, if any, are removed at the time of construction.

Moisture-Conditioned Subgrade

Just prior to placement of fill at manhole structures, the exposed soil subgrade should be evaluated for moisture and density through field density testing. If the moisture and/or density requirements do not meet the moisture and density requirements below, the subgrade should be scarified to a minimum depth of 6 inches, moisture conditioned and compacted as per the fill compaction requirements. Moisture-density testing is not required in cut areas that expose the Stratum 2 limestone subgrade.

Excavations

Excavation operations at this site will penetrate through the Stratum 1 soils and into the Stratum 2 limestone. While the Stratum 1 soils should be relatively easy to excavate in comparison to the underlying limestone, there is a probability of encountering limestone cobbles, boulders, seams, and layers within these soils. Our past experience with the Stratum 2 limestone, along with the data obtained during our field and laboratory programs (average compressive strength of 1,750 psi), indicates that the Stratum 2 limestone will likely require sawcutting, jackhammering, hoe-ramming, or similar techniques to excavate.

Please note that Stratum 2 limestone was encountered at depths ranging from 4 to 5 feet below existing grades across the site. The weathering profile of limestone can be unpredictable; thus, the Contractor should be prepared to encounter and properly excavate near-surface limestone anywhere along these alignments.

Our comments on excavation are based on our experience with the rock formation. Rock excavation depends on not only the rock hardness, weathering and fracture frequency, but also the contractor's equipment, capabilities, and experience. Therefore, it should be the contractor's responsibility to determine the most effective methods for excavation. The above comments are intended for information purposes for the design team only and may be used to review the contractor's proposed excavation methods.

Temporary Groundwater Control

Although not encountered during our drilling operations, groundwater seepage might possibly be encountered during construction, especially after periods of wet weather. Temporary groundwater control during construction would typically consist of perimeter gravel-packed drains sloping toward common sump areas for groundwater collection and removal. Placement of drain laterals within the excavation could be required to remediate isolated water pockets.

The volume of groundwater seeping/flowing into the excavation will vary based on rainfall patterns before and during construction, but we expect that there will be a need for temporary groundwater collecting and pumping. This could be accomplished by sloping the bottom of the excavation continually throughout construction such that water entering the excavation would flow towards one or more sump pits deeper than the excavation and then pumping the water out on a daily basis.

Fill Material Types

Fill required to achieve design grade should be classified as select/structural fill and general fill. Select/structural fill is material used below manhole structures. General fill is material used to achieve grade in other general areas (non-structural areas beyond manholes) and as backfill material (outside the bedding envelopes around each pipe) within the utility trenches. Earthen materials used for select fill and general fill should meet the following material property requirements:

Fill Type [1]	USCS Classification	Acceptable Specifications
Imported Select/Structural Fill [2]	CL, SC, and/or GC	■ TxDOT Item 247, Type A, Grade 3, OR ■ Crushed concrete (TxDOT Item 247, Type D, Grade 3 or better)
General Fill / Trench Backfill [4]	CH, CL, SC and/or GC	■ On-Site Soils: Rocks ≤ 4 inches in maximum dimension ■ Imported Soils: PI ≤ 30; Rocks ≤ 4 inches in maximum dimension

1. Structural and general fill should consist of approved materials free of organic matter and debris. A sample of each material type should be submitted to the Geotechnical Engineer for evaluation prior to use on this site.
2. As an alternative to the Acceptable Specifications above, a low-plasticity granular material which does not meet these specifications may be used only if approved by Terracon.
3. Excavated on-site soils, if free of organics, debris, and rocks larger than 4 inches may be considered for re-use as fill in general areas and as utility trench backfill (outside the bedding envelope limits). If general fill is imported, the PI should not exceed 30.

Fill Compaction Requirements

Recommended compaction and moisture content criteria for engineered fill materials are as follows.

Material Type		Minimum Compaction Requirement (%)[1]	Moisture Content Range (%)	Maximum Loose Lift Thickness (in) [2]
Select/Structural Fill		95	-3 to +3	8 inches
On-Site Soil Backfill	**PI ≤ 25**	95	-3 to +3	
	PI > 25	95	Optimum to +4	
General Fill / Utility Trench Backfill	**PI ≤ 25**	95	-3 to +3	
	PI > 25	95	Optimum to +4	

1. Per the TEX-113-E or TEX-114-E, depending upon soil classification.

Cut Slopes

The table below provides the recommended slope inclinations for temporary cut slopes. In our opinion, cut slopes at the inclinations discussed below should be stable against a large-scale slide, however the potential for sloughing of loose soils zones exists.

Slope Type	Maximum Slope Inclinations
Temporary	Maximum 1½(H):1(V) in on-site Stratum 1 soils Maximum ½(H):1(V) in Stratum 2 limestone And as directed by OSHA in 29 CFR, Part 1926, whichever is flatter

Exposed cut slopes will also be susceptible to further erosion due to the nature of the on-site soils and limestone. Installation of erosion control measures in such areas would be beneficial in reducing the potential slope stability which could result from excessive erosion. In addition to initial erosion control measures, the cut slopes should be periodically checked for erosion (particularly after heavy rainfall events) and maintenance performed on areas exhibiting erosion.

Regarding worker safety, Occupation Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Safety and Health Standards require the protection of workers adjacent to excavations. The OSHA guidelines and directives should be adhered by the Contractor during construction to provide a safe working environment.

Grading and Drainage

We highly recommend that site drainage be developed so that ponding of surface runoff near the utility alignments and open trenches does not occur. Effective drainage away from the alignments must be provided during construction and maintained through construction.

Earthwork Construction Considerations

Construction traffic over the completed subgrades should be avoided as much as possible. The site should be graded to prevent ponding of surface water on the prepared subgrades or in excavations. Water collecting over, or adjacent to, construction areas should be removed. If the subgrade desiccates, saturates, or is disturbed, the affected material should be removed, or the materials should be scarified, moisture conditioned, and recompacted.

As a minimum, excavations should be performed in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR, Part 1926, Subpart P, “Excavations” and its appendices, and in accordance with any applicable local, and/or state regulations.

Construction site safety is the sole responsibility of the contractor who controls the means, methods, and sequencing of construction operations. Under no circumstances shall the information provided herein be interpreted to mean Terracon is assuming responsibility for construction site safety, or the contractor's activities; such responsibility shall neither be implied nor inferred.

Construction Observation and Testing

The earthwork efforts should be documented under the direction of the Geotechnical Engineer. This should include documentation of adequate removal of vegetation and top soil, as well as density/moisture testing of subgrade and fills. In the event that unanticipated conditions are encountered, the Geotechnical Engineer should be contacted to evaluate the conditions.

Each lift of compacted fill should be tested, evaluated, and reworked as necessary until approved by the Geotechnical Engineer prior to placement of additional lifts. Fill should be tested for density and water content at a frequency of at least one test for every 100 linear feet of compacted wastewater trench backfill.

In addition to the documentation of the essential parameters necessary for construction, the continuation of the Geotechnical Engineer into the construction phase of the project provides the continuity to maintain the Geotechnical Engineer’s evaluation of subsurface conditions, including assessing variations and associated design changes.

SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

If the site has been prepared in accordance with the requirements noted in **Earthwork** and **Subgrade Preparation Below Manholes**, the following design parameters are applicable for shallow foundations.

Design Parameters

The proposed manhole structures may be supported on select fill, crushed limestone base, or Stratum 2 limestone at the bottom of the manhole excavations. The manhole structures should bear on compacted select fill, crushed limestone base, or Stratum 2 limestone, but not a combination of soil and Stratum 2 limestone materials within the footprint of each manhole. If footings are to bear on soils and the Stratum 2 limestone is encountered during site preparation, the Stratum 2 limestone should be over-excavated as necessary to provide at least 6 inches of select fill under the manhole structures.

Description	Design Parameter	
Bearing Stratum [1]	Select Fill/Crushed Limestone Base	Stratum 2 Limestone
Subgrade Modulus for Foundation	125 pci	400 pci
Minimum Embedment below Final Grade [2]	18 inches	-
Minimum Embedment into Bearing Stratum [2]	-	6 inches
Allowable Bearing Pressures	2,500	6,000
Approximate Total Movement [3]	<1-inch	<¾-inch
Estimated Differential Movement [4]	Approximately ½ to ¾ of total settlement	
Nominal (unfactored) Passive Resistance [5,7]	360 psf per foot of depth against select fill or base	1,000 psf per foot of depth against limestone
Coefficient of Sliding Resistance [6]	0.35 on select fill or base	0.6 on limestone
Nominal (unfactored) Uplift Resistance [7]	Foundation Unit Weight (150 pcf) Select Fill Soil Unit Weight (120 pcf)	

1. Unsuitable or soft soils must be over-excavated and replaced per the recommendations presented in **Earthwork** and the structural area should be prepared as per **Subgrade Preparation Below Manholes**.
2. To bear within select fill/crushed limestone base soils or Stratum 2 limestone.
3. The estimated post-construction settlement of the footings/mats is assuming proper construction practices are followed.
4. Differential settlements may result from variances in subsurface conditions, loading conditions and construction procedures. The settlement response will be more dependent upon the quality of construction than upon the response of the subgrade to the foundation loads.

5. Passive resistance should be neglected in the first 12 inches below finished grades. Care should be taken to avoid disturbance of the bearing area since loose material could increase settlement and decrease resistance to lateral loading. If the footing/mat is formed during construction, the open space between the foundation and the in-situ soils should be backfilled with concrete.
6. Lateral loads transmitted to the foundation will be resisted by a combination of soil-concrete friction on the base of the foundation and passive pressure on the side. We recommend that the allowable frictional resistance be limited to 500 psf in select fill/crushed limestone base and 1,500 psf in Stratum 3 limestone.
7. The nominal values should be reduced by an appropriate factor of safety to compute allowable values.

Foundation Construction Observation

The performance of the foundation system for each proposed manhole structure will be highly dependent upon the quality of construction. Thus, we recommend that the foundation construction be monitored by Terracon to identify the proper bearing strata and depths and to help evaluate foundation construction. We would be pleased to develop a plan for foundation observation to be incorporated in the overall quality assurance program.

SEISMIC CONSIDERATIONS

The seismic design requirements for buildings and other structures are based on Seismic Design Category. Site Classification is required to determine the Seismic Design Category for a structure. The Site Classification is based on the upper 100 feet of the site profile defined by a weighted average value of either shear wave velocity, standard penetration resistance, or undrained shear strength in accordance with Section 20.4 of ASCE 7 and the International Building Code (IBC). Based on the soil and bedrock properties encountered at the site and as described on the exploration logs and results, it is our professional opinion that the **Seismic Site Classification is C**. Subsurface explorations at this site were extended to a maximum depth of 15 feet. The site properties below the boring depth to 100 feet were estimated based on our experience and knowledge of geologic conditions of the general area. Additional deeper borings or geophysical testing may be performed to confirm the conditions below the current boring depth.

SUBGRADE PREPARATION BELOW MANHOLES

Based on information provided to us, the planned bottom of the manhole structures and wastewater line are anticipated to range between 6 to 15 feet below existing grades. If this information changes, Terracon should be notified to review and modify or verify recommendations in writing.

Based on the estimated depths, the bottom of the manhole structures will likely bear directly upon the Stratum 2 limestone. To provide a level bearing surface upon rough-excavated limestone, a thin layer (3-4 inches) of non-reinforced concrete ("mud mat") or a minimum 6-inch-layer of compacted select fill / crushed limestone base may be used. If any excavations are shallow enough to bear in the overlying soils, we recommend that at least 12 inches of properly compacted select fill or crushed limestone base be placed below the bottom of the manhole structures. Wastewater lines should be embedded with the minimum amount of bedding material required for each type of pipe, followed by proper compaction of backfill soils above the bedding.

Compaction of soils around manholes is often ignored and untested. This results in settlement of backfill soils around the manholes over time and leads to uneven surfaces of the manholes in relation to surrounding pavements and/or sidewalks, which can then result in uneven driving surfaces and/or trip hazards along sidewalks for citizens. Proper placement and compaction of backfill soils around manholes should not be overlooked. As an alternative to placing soil backfill, the Client and City could consider using flowable fill (COA Item No. 402S or TxDOT Item No. 401) instead.

COMMENTS ON EXCAVATION AND/OR TRENCH SAFETY

The following subsections present comments pertaining to the subsurface conditions encountered in the test borings drilled at the site and the effects these conditions may have upon excavation and/or trench safety. Our comments are based on the data obtained from the field and laboratory test programs, geologic conditions, and our experience with similar projects. We are providing general comments for the most common methods of excavation and/or trench safety, including sloping, benching, shoring, bracing, etc. The developer, design engineer, and/or contractor should decide which is the most feasible system for this site depending on space limitations, construction budget, construction schedule, etc.

General

OSHA Safety and Health Standards (29 CFR Part 1926) require that all trenches in excess of 5 feet deep be shored or appropriately sloped unless the sidewalls are comprised of "stable" rock. State of Texas legislation requires detailed plans and specifications for retention systems that meet OSHA standards for a safe construction environment during utilities installation. The following sections provide general information to aid in designing an excavation retention system for this project based on the subsurface conditions observed at our test boring locations. These comments are intended for use in conjunction with OSHA safety regulations and not in lieu of those regulations. Prior to utility line construction, an excavation/trench safety plan, which is designed by a registered Professional Engineer, should be completed.

Construction

As stated above, OSHA requires all trenches in excess of 5 feet in depth to be shored or appropriately sloped. Currently available and practiced methods for achieving slope and/or sidewall stability includes sloping, benching, combinations of sloping and benching, and installation of shoring systems (hydraulic, timber, etc.). Trench shields may also be considered for use. However, trench shields only provide protection to workers; they are not means for providing slope or sidewall stability.

Sloping and Benching

If right-of-way is available, sloping, benching, or a combination thereof could be considered. The slope angle and/or vertical height of the bench section will be dependent on the subsurface conditions. In general, temporary excavations may be cut at the slopes indicated in **Slope Stability**. We recommend that all sloping/benching be performed as directed by OSHA in 29 CFR, Part 1926.

During excavation, slopes or benches should be observed for possible signs of failure such as bulging of the vertical face of the bench, tension cracks at the slope crest and/or raveling of material down the slope. If precariously positioned boulders or rock fragments are encountered, they should be removed. Surcharge loading from spoil piles, traffic, or equipment loading closer than 6 feet from the crest of the slope, which might alter the stability of the slope, should be avoided. If such conditions are observed, workmen should not be permitted in the excavation until the conditions noted are corrected by the contractor. If such conditions cannot be avoided, further flattening of the slope may be required. Flattening of the slope may also be necessary if excess amounts of groundwater influx are observed.

Surface water runoff which flows down the slopes or benches and ponds at the toe or crest of an excavation may be detrimental to stability. The excavation slopes should be thoroughly evaluated following a rainfall event and prior to workmen entering the excavation.

Shoring

If desired, shoring may be utilized for excavation safety. Earth pressures for design of shoring should be based on a “worst case” condition from an earth pressure standpoint. The appropriate earth pressures to be utilized should be evaluated by the excavation safety system designer. Each strut or brace should be proportioned as if it would be subjected to the maximum lateral load.

Excavation safety systems may be subjected to surcharge loads in the form of construction equipment and/or spoil piles. Surcharge loads from soil surcharge should be considered when calculating earth pressures for the shoring systems. Equipment such as backhoes, front-end loaders, etc., should not operate within a distance of 6 feet from the excavation sidewall (and no vibrating equipment should be used) while workers are in the excavation. The excavation safety system designer should review the surcharge loads imposed on the excavation safety system.

Trench Shields

If sloping, benching, or shoring is not selected, trench shields may be considered to protect the workers from slope instability. As for shoring, the design of the trench shields should be based on a "worst case" earth pressure standpoint, with the appropriate earth pressures properly evaluated by the excavation safety system designer. We should note that trench shields only serve as a means for worker protection; they are not a means of excavation retention. Potential effects of sidewall caving and corresponding damage to adjacent property and personnel should be considered when considering the use of trench shields. As stated above for shoring, hydrostatic pressures and effects of spoil, equipment, and other surcharge loading should be considered.

Alternate Sidewall Protection Methods

Other equivalent methods of slope protection or shoring may be considered for this project. However, any excavation safety system to be utilized should fully comply with OSHA regulations.

Inspection of Excavation Safety System

Inspections of the excavations should be performed by a competent person to; (1) confirm that actual conditions are as anticipated from analysis of the borings; (2) to examine for the presence of faults or other geologic features that might be an indication of sidewall instability; (3) observe the presence of spoil piles or equipment which could cause surcharge loading; and, (4) to help ensure that the excavation safety system design is properly interpreted and incorporated into construction. The construction sequence should be planned so that an adequate inspection can be performed prior to personnel entering the excavation.

In addition, OSHA regulations require that inspections be made daily by a competent person for situations which could result in a possible cave-in, indications of failure of the protective systems, hazardous atmospheres, or other hazardous conditions. Workmen should not be permitted in the excavation until these conditions have been reviewed by a competent person on a daily basis. A competent person is defined within the OSHA Safety and Health Standards and Interpretations Part 1926 of 29 CFR, amended 2989, Subpart P - Excavations, as one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surrounding or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

BELOW-GRADE CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS

Presented below are comments addressing below-grade construction considerations for the proposed wastewater lines. For construction of the wastewater lines, the excavations may be performed as open cuts, as per OSHA guidelines, provided that space is available.

Backfilling of the excavations around the wastewater lines and manhole structures should be completed with properly compacted on-site soils or crushed limestone base material, as outlined in **Earthwork**. As an alternative, flowable backfill may be used as per TxDOT Item 401.

A buffer area at least 10 feet wide should be maintained adjacent to streets or other facilities to accommodate localized sloughing. Subgrade loading from material spoil piles, traffic, or equipment loading closer than 6 feet from the crest of the slope should be avoided. In soil subgrade areas and in areas of limestone containing significant clay and/or weathered/fractured zones, the exposed slopes should be covered with plastic or other suitable protection to minimize erosion and drying out of surface soils. Any utilities or other critical facilities should be locally shored such that any sloughing of slopes will not undermine them.

If it is not possible to slope (or bench) portions of the excavations due to limited space restrictions, the excavation should be properly shored or braced. If temporary excavation retention systems are planned, the retention system should be designed by a registered Professional Engineer specialized in such design and should also comply with the applicable OSHA requirements.

GENERAL COMMENTS

Our analysis and opinions are based upon our understanding of the project, the geotechnical conditions in the area, and the data obtained from our site exploration. Natural variations will occur between exploration point locations or due to the modifying effects of construction or weather. The nature and extent of such variations may not become evident until during or after construction. Terracon should be retained as the Geotechnical Engineer, where noted in this report, to provide observation and testing services during pertinent construction phases. If variations appear, we can provide further evaluation and supplemental recommendations. If variations are noted in the absence of our observation and testing services on-site, we should be immediately notified so that we can provide evaluation and supplemental recommendations.

Our Scope of Services does not include either specifically or by implication any environmental or biological (e.g., mold, fungi, bacteria) assessment of the site or identification or prevention of pollutants, hazardous materials or conditions. If the City is concerned about the potential for such contamination or pollution, other studies should be undertaken.

Our services and any correspondence or collaboration through this system are intended for the sole benefit and exclusive use of our client for specific application to the project discussed and are accomplished in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices with no third-party beneficiaries intended. Any third-party access to services or correspondence is solely for information purposes to support the services provided by Terracon to our client. Reliance upon the services and any work product is limited to our client, and is not intended for third parties. Any use or reliance of the provided information by third parties is done solely at their own risk. No warranties, either express or implied, are intended or made.

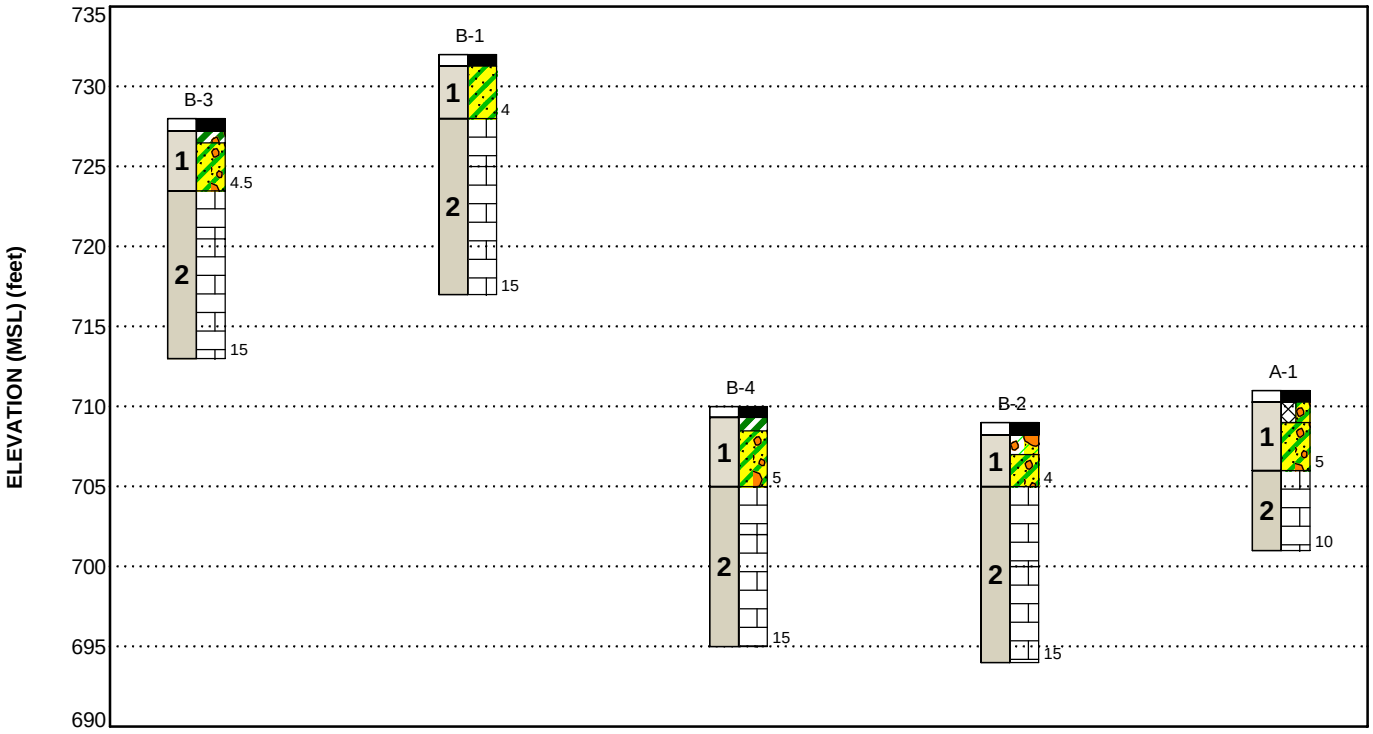
Site characteristics as provided are for design purposes and not to estimate excavation cost. Any use of our report in that regard is done at the sole risk of the excavating cost estimator as there may be variations on the site that are not apparent in the data that could significantly impact excavation cost. Any parties charged with estimating excavation costs should seek their own site characterization for specific purposes to obtain the specific level of detail necessary for costing. Site safety, and cost estimating including, excavation support, and dewatering requirements/design are the responsibility of others. If changes in the nature, design, or location of the project are planned, our conclusions and recommendations shall not be considered valid unless we review the changes and either verify or modify our conclusions in writing.

FIGURES

Contents:

GEOMODEL

City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II ■ Kyle, TX
Terracon Project No. 96225058



This is not a cross section. This is intended to display the Geotechnical Model only. See individual logs for more detailed conditions.

Model Layer	Layer Name	General Description
1	**Surficial Soils**	Dark brown to brown to light brown to tan to light tan to pale brown, medium dense to dense to very dense; hard; with limestone fragments
2	**Limestone Bedrock**	Austin Group; light tan to pale brown, slightly to moderately to highly fractured; transitions to gray to light gray with depth

LEGEND

- Asphalt
- Clayey Gravel with Sand
- Fat Clay
- Clayey Sand
- Clayey Sand with Gravel
- Limestone
- Fat Clay with Gravel

NOTES:
Layering shown on this figure has been developed by the geotechnical engineer for purposes of modeling the subsurface conditions as required for the subsequent geotechnical engineering for this project.
Numbers adjacent to soil column indicate depth below ground surface.

ATTACHMENTS

EXPLORATION AND TESTING PROCEDURES

Field Exploration

Location	Number of Borings	Boring Depth (feet) [1]
Alignment A (Front Street)	1	10
Alignment B (Schlemmer Street)	4	15
TOTAL	5	70 feet

1. Below ground surface.

Boring Layout and Elevations: Unless otherwise noted, Terracon personnel provided the boring layout. Coordinates were obtained with a handheld GPS unit (estimated horizontal accuracy of about ±10 feet) and approximate elevations were obtained by interpolation from the site plan provided to us and Google Earth. If elevations and a more precise boring layout are desired, we recommend borings be surveyed following completion of fieldwork.

Subsurface Exploration Procedures: Terracon's subcontractor advanced the borings with a truck-mounted, rotary drill rig using continuous flight augers. Two to five samples were obtained in the upper 10 feet of each boring and at intervals of 5 feet thereafter (unless bedrock was encountered). Soil sampling was performed using split-barrel sampling procedures. The split-barrel samplers were driven in accordance with the standard test method for standard penetration test (SPT) and split-barrel sampling of soils. Bedrock was sampled with either split-barrel-sampling spoons or continuously cored using NX wireline rock coring equipment. When sufficient bedrock was sampled, the borings were shallowed at the geotechnical engineer's discretion. We observed and recorded groundwater levels during drilling and sampling. For safety purposes, all borings were backfilled with auger cuttings after their completion. Pavements were patched with cold-mix asphalt and/or pre-mixed concrete, as appropriate.

The sampling depths, penetration distances, and other sampling information were recorded on the field boring logs. The samples were placed in appropriate containers and taken to our soil laboratory for testing and classification by a Geotechnical Engineer. Our exploration team prepared field boring logs as part of the drilling operations. These field logs included visual classifications of the materials encountered during drilling and our interpretation of the subsurface conditions between samples. Final boring logs were prepared from the field logs. The final boring logs represent the Geotechnical Engineer's interpretation of the field logs and include modifications based on observations and tests of the samples in our laboratory.

Laboratory Testing

The project engineer reviewed the field data and assigned laboratory tests to understand the engineering properties of the various soil and rock strata, as necessary, for this project. Procedural standards noted below are for reference to methodology in general. In some cases, variations to methods were applied because of local practice or professional judgment. Standards noted below include reference to other, related standards. Such references are not necessarily applicable to describe the specific test performed.

- ASTM D2216 Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass
- ASTM D4318 Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
- ASTM D422 Standard Test Method for Particle-Size Analysis of Soils
- ASTM D7012, Method C Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength and Elastic Moduli of Intact Rock Core Specimens under Varying States of Stress and Temperatures

The laboratory testing program often included examination of soil samples by an engineer. Based on the material's texture and plasticity, we described and classified the soil samples in accordance with the Unified Soil Classification System.

Rock classification was conducted using locally accepted practices for engineering purposes; petrographic analysis may reveal other rock types. Rock core samples typically provide an improved specimen for this classification. Boring log rock classification was determined using the Description of Rock Properties.

SITE LOCATION AND EXPLORATION PLANS

Contents:

Site Location Plan
Exploration Plan

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

SITE LOCATION

City of Kyle – Schlemmer & Porter Street WW Improvements, Phase II ■ Kyle, Texas
October 14, 2022 ■ Terracon Project No. 96225058

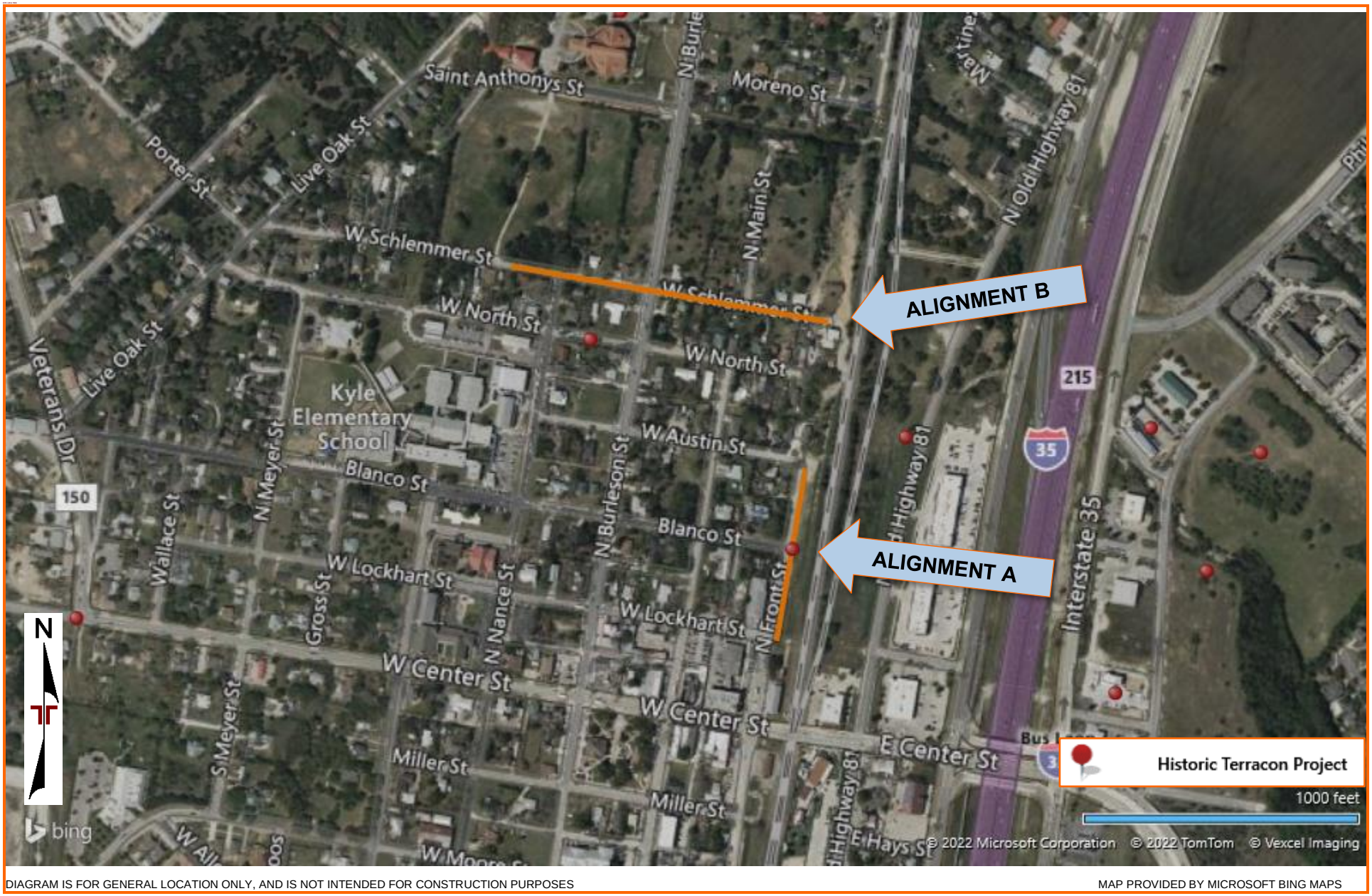


DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

MAP PROVIDED BY MICROSOFT BING MAPS

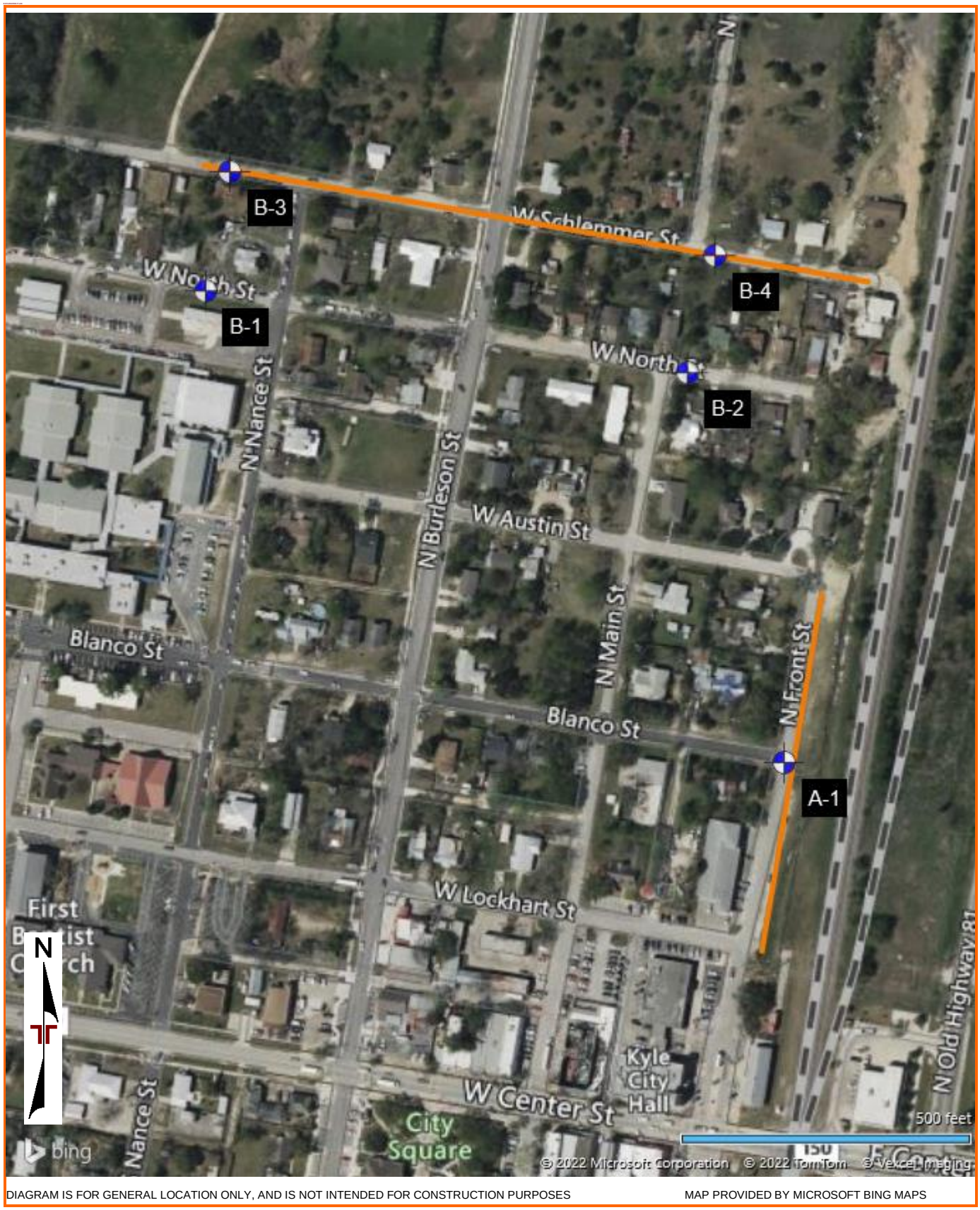


DIAGRAM IS FOR GENERAL LOCATION ONLY, AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

MAP PROVIDED BY MICROSOFT BING MAPS

EXPLORATION RESULTS

Contents:

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

BORING LOG NO. B-1

PROJECT: City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II

CLIENT: LJA Engineering Inc Round Rock, TX

SITE: Front St and N St Kyle, TX

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 29.9925° Longitude: -97.8781°

Approximate Surface Elev.: 732.0 (Ft.) +/-

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	RECOVERY (%) / RQD (%)	STRENGTH TEST: TEST TYPE	STRENGTH TEST: COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (tsf)	STRENGTH TEST: STRAIN (%)	WATER CONTENT (%)	DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf)	ATTERBERG LIMITS: LL-PL-PI	PERCENT FINES
		0.7	731.3+/-												
1							9-11-11 N=22					13.2		28-20-8	41
							50/5"					13.3			
		4.0	728+/-												
								92 / 0							
				5											
		7.0	725+/-												
2								88 / 38	UC	151.63		2.9	138		
				10											
								97 / 95							
		15.0	717+/-	15											

ASPHALT, ~2" of Asphalt over 6" of Base

CLAYEY SAND (SC), tan to light tan, medium dense to very dense

- with limestone fragments below ~2 feet

LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP), light tan to pale brown, highly fractured

LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP), gray to light gray, slightly to moderately fractured

Boring Terminated at 15 Feet

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
Dry Augered to 4 feet; Air Rotary from 4 to 15 feet

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with Auger Cuttings and/or Bentonite
Surface Capped with Asphalt

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Elevations were obtained via Google Earth Imagery.

Notes:

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd Ste 160
Austin, TX

Boring Started: 06-22-2022 | Boring Completed: 06-22-2022

Drill Rig: CME 45 | Driller: Austin Geo-Logic

Project No.: 96225058

BORING LOG NO. B-2

PROJECT: City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II

CLIENT: LJA Engineering Inc Round Rock, TX

SITE: Front St and N St Kyle, TX

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 29.9921° Longitude: -97.8754°

Approximate Surface Elev.: 709.0 (Ft.) +/-

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	RECOVERY (%) RQD (%)	STRENGTH TEST: TEST TYPE	STRENGTH TEST: COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (tsf)	STRENGTH TEST: STRAIN (%)	WATER CONTENT (%)	DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf)	ATTERBERG LIMITS: LL-PL-PI	PERCENT FINES
			ASPHALT, ~1" of Asphalt over 8" of Base												
		0.8	708.2+/-												
1			**CLAYEY GRAVEL WITH SAND (GC)**, dark brown, medium dense, varies to Gravelly Fat Clay with Sand (CH)				6-9-8 N=17					20.1		79-27-52	49
		2.0	707+/-												
			CLAYEY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SC), light tan to pale brown, very dense, with limestone fragments				22-50/5"								
		4.0	705+/-												
2			**LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP)**, light tan to pale brown, highly fractured	5			50/3"					7.9			
		9.0	700+/-					75/15							
			LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP), gray to light gray, slightly fractured	10											
								97/83	UC	121.57		2.6	139		
		15.0	694+/-	15											
			Boring Terminated at 15 Feet												

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
Dry Augered to 6 feet; Air Rotary from 6 to 15 feet

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with Auger Cuttings and/or Bentonite
Surface Capped with Asphalt

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Elevations were obtained via Google Earth Imagery.

Notes:

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd Ste 160
Austin, TX

Boring Started: 06-22-2022 | Boring Completed: 06-22-2022

Drill Rig: CME 45 | Driller: Austin Geo-Logic

Project No.: 96225058

BORING LOG NO. B-3

PROJECT: City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II

CLIENT: LJA Engineering Inc Round Rock, TX

SITE: Front St and N St Kyle, TX

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 29.9931° Longitude: -97.8779°

Approximate Surface Elev.: 729.0 (Ft.) +/-

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	RECOVERY (%) RQD (%)	STRENGTH TEST: TEST TYPE	STRENGTH TEST: COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (tsf)	STRENGTH TEST: STRAIN (%)	WATER CONTENT (%)	DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf)	ATTERBERG LIMITS: LL-PL-PI	PERCENT FINES
		0.8	728.2+/-												
1		1.5	727.5+/-				30-17-50/5"					20.4			
1							22-25-30 N=55					3.7		42-16-26	44
1		4.5	724.5+/-												
2				5			50/3"					4.3			
2							50/3"								
2		7.5	721.5+/-												
2				10			50/2"					6.0			
2															
2							50/1"								
2		15.0	714+/-	15											

ASPHALT, ~4" of Asphalt over 6" of Base

FAT CLAY WITH GRAVEL (CH), dark brown, hard

CLAYEY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SC), tan to light tan, very dense, with limestone fragments

LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP), light tan to pale brown

LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP), gray to light gray

Boring Terminated at 15 Feet

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
Dry Augered to 15 feet

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with Auger Cuttings and/or Bentonite
Surface Capped with Asphalt

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Elevations were interpolated from a topographic site plan.

Notes:

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd Ste 160
Austin, TX

Boring Started: 08-16-2022 | Boring Completed: 08-16-2022

Drill Rig: Mobile B-53 | Driller: Austin Geo-Logic

Project No.: 96225058

BORING LOG NO. B-4

PROJECT: City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II

CLIENT: LJA Engineering Inc Round Rock, TX

SITE: Front St and N St Kyle, TX

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 29.9927° Longitude: -97.8753°

Approximate Surface Elev.: 710.0 (Ft.) +/-

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	RECOVERY (%) RQD (%)	STRENGTH TEST: TEST TYPE	STRENGTH TEST: COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (tsf)	STRENGTH TEST: STRAIN (%)	WATER CONTENT (%)	DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf)	ATTERBERG LIMITS: LL-PL-PI	PERCENT FINES
		0.7	709.3+/-												
			ASPHALT, ~1½" of Asphalt over 6" of Base												
		1.5	708.5+/-												
1			**FAT CLAY (CH)**, dark brown, hard				7-15-22 N=37					27.5			
			CLAYEY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SC), tan to light tan, very dense, with limestone fragments				29-35-33 N=68					6.7		29-17-12	48
		5.0	705+/-				50/4"								
			LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP), light tan to pale brown	5			50/3"					6.8			
		8.0	702+/-												
2			**LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP)**, gray to light gray				50/2"								
				10											
							50/1"					6.2			
		15.0	695+/-	15											
			Boring Terminated at 15 Feet												

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
Dry Augered to 15 feet

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with Auger Cuttings and/or Bentonite
Surface Capped with Asphalt

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Elevations were interpolated from a topographic site plan.

Notes:

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd Ste 160
Austin, TX

Boring Started: 08-16-2022 | Boring Completed: 08-16-2022

Drill Rig: Mobile B-53 | Driller: Austin Geo-Logic

Project No.: 96225058

BORING LOG NO. A-1

PROJECT: City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II

CLIENT: LJA Engineering Inc Round Rock, TX

SITE: Front St and N St Kyle, TX

LOCATION See Exploration Plan

Latitude: 29.9903° Longitude: -97.8749°

Approximate Surface Elev.: 711.0 (Ft.) +/-

MODEL LAYER	GRAPHIC LOG	DEPTH	ELEVATION (Ft.)	DEPTH (Ft.)	WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS	SAMPLE TYPE	FIELD TEST RESULTS	RECOVERY (%) RQD (%)	STRENGTH TEST: TEST TYPE	STRENGTH TEST: COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (tsf)	STRENGTH TEST: STRAIN (%)	WATER CONTENT (%)	DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf)	ATTERBERG LIMITS: LL-PL-PI	PERCENT FINES
		0.7	710.3+/-												
1							7-10-12 N=22					7.5		33-18-15	24
		2.0	709+/-												
1							13-15-50/4"					9.1			
		5.0	706+/-				45-50/3"								
2				5				69/50	UC	101.78		2.6	139		
		10.0	701+/-	10											

ASPHALT, ~2" of Asphalt over 6" of Base

FILL - CLAYEY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SC), dark brown to brown to light brown, medium dense

CLAYEY SAND WITH GRAVEL (SC), light tan to pale brown, very dense, with limestone fragments

LIMESTONE (AUSTIN GROUP), light tan to pale brown, moderately fractured

Boring Terminated at 10 Feet

Stratification lines are approximate. In-situ, the transition may be gradual.

Hammer Type: Automatic

Advancement Method:
Dry Augered to 6 feet; Air Rotary from 6 to 10 feet

Abandonment Method:
Boring backfilled with Auger Cuttings and/or Bentonite
Surface Capped with Asphalt

See Exploration and Testing Procedures for a description of field and laboratory procedures used and additional data (If any).

See Supporting Information for explanation of symbols and abbreviations.

Elevations were interpolated from a topographic site plan.

Notes:

WATER LEVEL OBSERVATIONS

No free water observed

Terracon
5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd Ste 160
Austin, TX

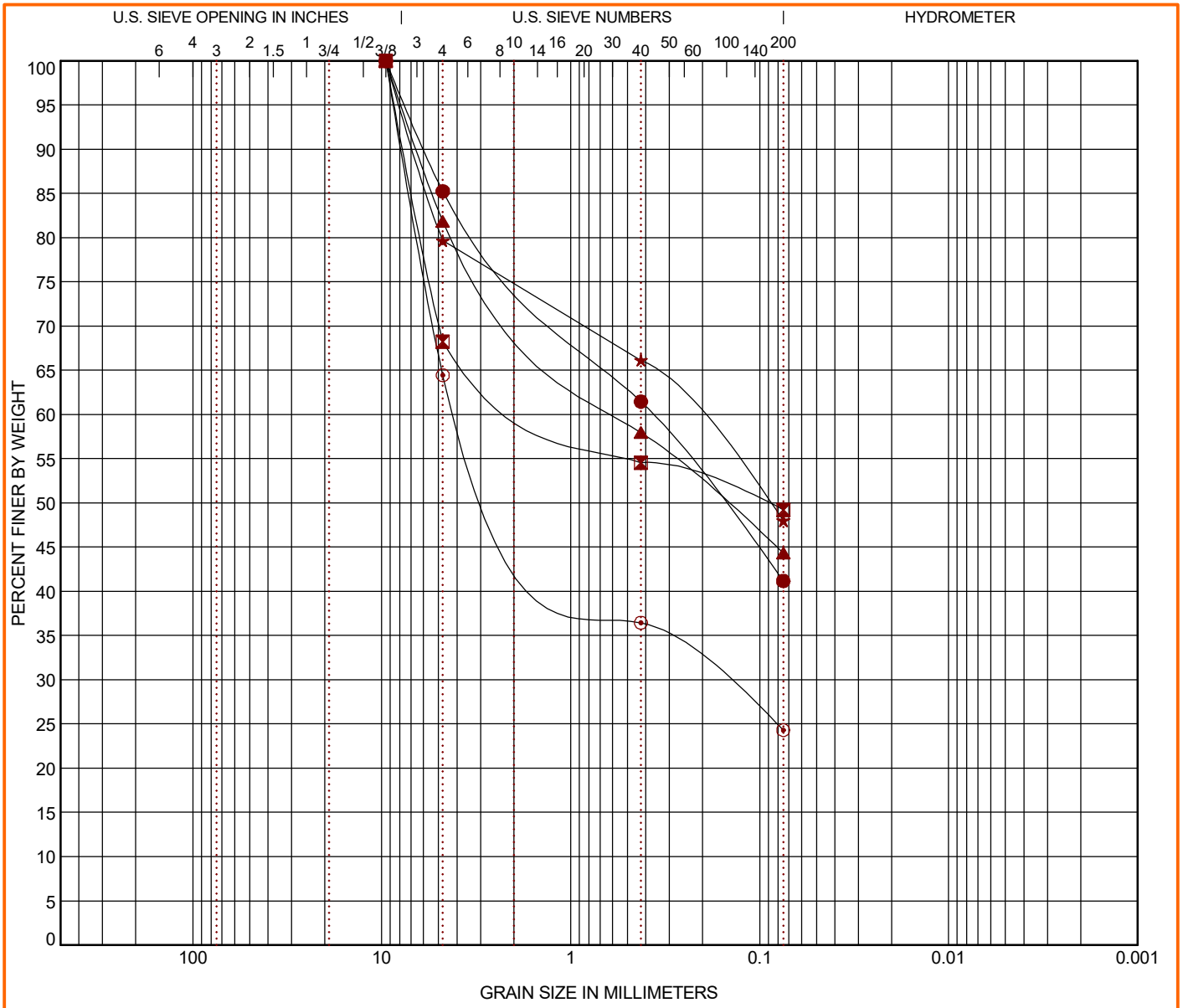
Boring Started: 06-22-2022 | Boring Completed: 06-22-2022

Drill Rig: CME 45 | Driller: Austin Geo-Logic

Project No.: 96225058

GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

ASTM D422 / ASTM C136



COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT OR CLAY
	coarse	fine	coarse	medium	fine	

Boring ID		Depth (Ft)	USCS Classification	WC (%)	LL	PL	PI	Cc	Cu
●	B-1	0.5 - 2	CLAYEY SAND (SC)	13.2	28	20	8		
⊠	B-2	0.5 - 2	CLAYEY GRAVEL with SAND (GC)	20.1	79	27	52		
▲	B-3	2.5 - 4	CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL (SC)	3.7	42	16	26		
★	B-4	2.5 - 4	CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL (SC)	6.7	29	17	12		
⊙	A-1	0.5 - 2	CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL (SC)	7.5	33	18	15		

Boring ID		Depth (Ft)	D_{100}	D_{60}	D_{30}	D_{10}	%Cobbles	%Gravel	%Sand	%Silt	%Fines	%Clay
●	B-1	0.5 - 2	9.5	0.375			0.0	14.8	44.1		41.2	
⊠	B-2	0.5 - 2	9.5	1.107			0.0	31.7	19.0		49.2	
▲	B-3	2.5 - 4	9.5	0.523			0.0	18.1	37.5		44.3	
★	B-4	2.5 - 4	9.5	0.236			0.0	20.3	31.7		48.0	
⊙	A-1	0.5 - 2	9.5	3.237	0.169		0.0	35.6	40.1		24.3	

PROJECT: City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II

SITE: Front St and N St
Kyle, TX

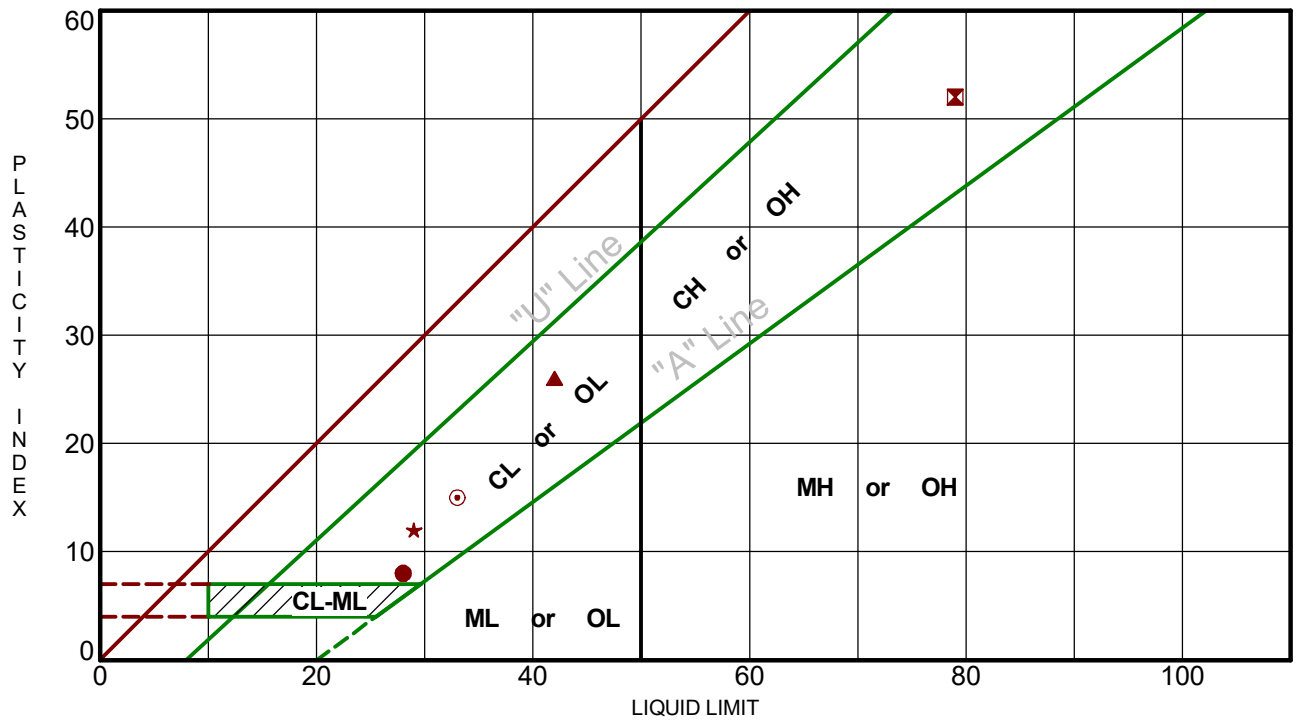
Terracon
5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd Ste 160
Austin, TX

PROJECT NUMBER: 96225058

CLIENT: LJA Engineering Inc
Round Rock, TX

ATTERBERG LIMITS RESULTS

ASTM D4318



Boring ID		Depth (Ft)	LL	PL	PI	Fines	USCS	Description
●	B-1	0.5 - 2	28	20	8	41.2	SC	CLAYEY SAND
⊠	B-2	0.5 - 2	79	27	52	49.2	GC	CLAYEY GRAVEL with SAND
▲	B-3	2.5 - 4	42	16	26	44.3	SC	CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL
★	B-4	2.5 - 4	29	17	12	48.0	SC	CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL
⊙	A-1	0.5 - 2	33	18	15	24.3	SC	CLAYEY SAND with GRAVEL

PROJECT: City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II

PROJECT NUMBER: 96225058

SITE: Front St and N St
Kyle, TX

Terracon
5307 Industrial Oaks Blvd Ste 160
Austin, TX

CLIENT: LJA Engineering Inc
Round Rock, TX

LABORATORY TESTS ARE NOT VALID IF SEPARATED FROM ORIGINAL REPORT. ATTERBERG LIMITS 96225058.CITY OF KYLE - S&P WL.BORING INFO.GPJ TERRACON_DATATEMPLATE.GDT 9/13/22

SUPPORTING INFORMATION

Contents:

Note: All attachments are one page unless noted above.

GENERAL NOTES

DESCRIPTION OF SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

City of Kyle - Schlemmer & Porter WL Phase II ■ Kyle, TX

Terracon Project No. 96225058

Terracon GeoReport

SAMPLING	WATER LEVEL	FIELD TESTS
Rock Core Standard Penetration Test	Water Initially Encountered Water Level After a Specified Period of Time Water Level After a Specified Period of Time Cave In Encountered Water levels indicated on the soil boring logs are the levels measured in the borehole at the times indicated. Groundwater level variations will occur over time. In low permeability soils, accurate determination of groundwater levels is not possible with short term water level observations.	N Standard Penetration Test Resistance (Blows/Ft.) (HP) Hand Penetrometer (T) Torvane (DCP) Dynamic Cone Penetrometer UC Unconfined Compressive Strength (PID) Photo-Ionization Detector (OVA) Organic Vapor Analyzer

DESCRIPTIVE SOIL CLASSIFICATION

Soil classification as noted on the soil boring logs is based Unified Soil Classification System. Where sufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils consistent with ASTM D2487 "Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes" this procedure is used. ASTM D2488 "Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)" is also used to classify the soils, particularly where insufficient laboratory data exist to classify the soils in accordance with ASTM D2487. In addition to USCS classification, coarse grained soils are classified on the basis of their in-place relative density, and fine-grained soils are classified on the basis of their consistency. See "Strength Terms" table below for details. The ASTM standards noted above are for reference to methodology in general. In some cases, variations to methods are applied as a result of local practice or professional judgment.

LOCATION AND ELEVATION NOTES

Exploration point locations as shown on the Exploration Plan and as noted on the soil boring logs in the form of Latitude and Longitude are approximate. See Exploration and Testing Procedures in the report for the methods used to locate the exploration points for this project. Surface elevation data annotated with +/- indicates that no actual topographical survey was conducted to confirm the surface elevation. Instead, the surface elevation was approximately determined from topographic maps of the area.

STRENGTH TERMS

RELATIVE DENSITY OF COARSE-GRAINED SOILS (More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve.) Density determined by Standard Penetration Resistance		CONSISTENCY OF FINE-GRAINED SOILS (50% or more passing the No. 200 sieve.) Consistency determined by laboratory shear strength testing, field visual-manual procedures or standard penetration resistance			BEDROCK	
Descriptive Term (Density)	**Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.**	**Descriptive Term (Consistency)**	**Unconfined Compressive Strength Qu, (tsf)**	**Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.**	**Standard Penetration or N-Value Blows/Ft.**	**Descriptive Term (Consistency)**
Very Loose	0 - 3	Very Soft	less than 0.25	0 - 1	< 20	Weathered
Loose	4 - 9	Soft	0.25 to 0.50	2 - 4	20 - 29	Firm
Medium Dense	10 - 29	Medium Stiff	0.50 to 1.00	4 - 8	30 - 49	Medium Hard
Dense	30 - 50	Stiff	1.00 to 2.00	8 - 15	50 - 79	Hard
Very Dense	> 50	Very Stiff	2.00 to 4.00	15 - 30	>79	Very Hard
		Hard	> 4.00	> 30		

RELEVANCE OF SOIL BORING LOG

The soil boring logs contained within this document are intended for application to the project as described in this document. Use of these soil boring logs for any other purpose may not be appropriate.

UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

Terracon GeoReport

Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests [A]					Soil Classification	
					Group Symbol	Group Name [B]
Coarse-Grained Soils: More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve	**Gravels:** More than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve	**Clean Gravels:** Less than 5% fines [C]	Cu ≥ 4 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3 [E]		GW	Well-graded gravel [F]
			Cu < 4 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]		GP	Poorly graded gravel [F]
		Gravels with Fines: More than 12% fines [C]	Fines classify as ML or MH		GM	Silty gravel [F, G, H]
			Fines classify as CL or CH		GC	Clayey gravel [F, G, H]
	Sands: 50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve	**Clean Sands:** Less than 5% fines [D]	Cu ≥ 6 and 1 ≤ Cc ≤ 3 [E]		SW	Well-graded sand [I]
			Cu < 6 and/or [Cc<1 or Cc>3.0] [E]		SP	Poorly graded sand [I]
		Sands with Fines: More than 12% fines [D]	Fines classify as ML or MH		SM	Silty sand [G, H, I]
			Fines classify as CL or CH		SC	Clayey sand [G, H, I]
Fine-Grained Soils: 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve	**Silts and Clays:** Liquid limit less than 50	**Inorganic:**	PI > 7 and plots on or above "A"		CL	Lean clay [K, L, M]
			PI < 4 or plots below "A" line [J]		ML	Silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OL	Organic clay [K, L, M, N]
			Liquid limit - not dried			Organic silt [K, L, M, O]
	Silts and Clays: Liquid limit 50 or more	**Inorganic:**	PI plots on or above "A" line		CH	Fat clay [K, L, M]
			PI plots below "A" line		MH	Elastic Silt [K, L, M]
		Organic:	Liquid limit - oven dried	< 0.75	OH	Organic clay [K, L, M, P]
			Liquid limit - not dried			Organic silt [K, L, M, Q]
Highly organic soils:	Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor				PT	Peat

[A] Based on the material passing the 3-inch (75-mm) sieve.

[B] If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

[C] Gravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt, GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay, GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt, GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay.

[D] Sands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols: SW-SM well-graded sand with silt, SW-SC well-graded sand with clay, SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt, SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay.

[E] $Cu = D_{60}/D_{10}$ $\quad Cc = \dfrac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$

[F] If soil contains ≥ 15% sand, add "with sand" to group name.

[G] If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

[H] If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

[I] If soil contains ≥ 15% gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

[J] If Atterberg limits plot in shaded area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

[K] If soil contains 15 to 29% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel," whichever is predominant.

[L] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200 predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

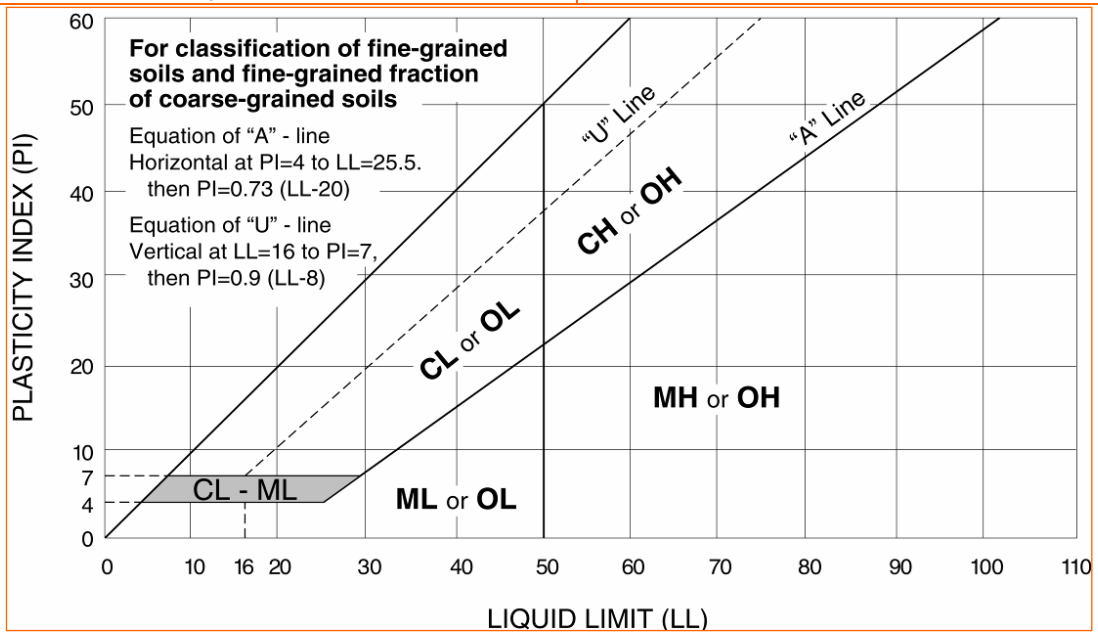
[M] If soil contains ≥ 30% plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

[N] PI ≥ 4 and plots on or above "A" line.

[O] PI < 4 or plots below "A" line.

[P] PI plots on or above "A" line.

[Q] PI plots below "A" line.



DESCRIPTION OF ROCK PROPERTIES

WEATHERING	
Term	**Description**
Unweathered	No visible sign of rock material weathering, perhaps slight discoloration on major discontinuity surfaces.
Slightly weathered	Discoloration indicates weathering of rock material and discontinuity surfaces. All the rock material may be discolored by weathering and may be somewhat weaker externally than in its fresh condition.
Moderately weathered	Less than half of the rock material is decomposed and/or disintegrated to a soil. Fresh or discolored rock is present either as a continuous framework or as corestones.
Highly weathered	More than half of the rock material is decomposed and/or disintegrated to a soil. Fresh or discolored rock is present either as a discontinuous framework or as corestones.
Completely weathered	All rock material is decomposed and/or disintegrated to soil. The original mass structure is still largely intact.
Residual soil	All rock material is converted to soil. The mass structure and material fabric are destroyed. There is a large change in volume, but the soil has not been significantly transported.

STRENGTH OR HARDNESS		
Description	**Field Identification**	**Uniaxial Compressive Strength, psi (tsf)**
Extremely weak	Indented by thumbnail	40-150 (3.9-10.8)
Very weak	Crumbles under firm blows with point of geological hammer, can be peeled by a pocket knife	150-700 (10.8-50.4)
Weak rock	Can be peeled by a pocket knife with difficulty, shallow indentations made by firm blow with point of geological hammer	700-4,000 (50.4-288)
Medium strong	Cannot be scraped or peeled with a pocket knife, specimen can be fractured with single firm blow of geological hammer	4,000-7,000 (288-504)
Strong rock	Specimen requires more than one blow of geological hammer to fracture it	7,000-15,000 (504-1,080)
Very strong	Specimen requires many blows of geological hammer to fracture it	15,000-36,000 (1,080-2,592)
Extremely strong	Specimen can only be chipped with geological hammer	>36,000 (>2,592)

DISCONTINUITY DESCRIPTION			
Fracture Spacing (Joints, Faults, Other Fractures)		**Bedding Spacing (May Include Foliation or Banding)**	
Description	**Spacing**	**Description**	**Spacing**
Extremely close	< ¾ in (<19 mm)	**Laminated**	< ½ in (<12 mm)
Very close	¾ in – 2-1/2 in (19 - 60 mm)	**Very thin**	½ in – 2 in (12 – 50 mm)
Close	2-1/2 in – 8 in (60 – 200 mm)	**Thin**	2 in – 1 ft. (50 – 300 mm)
Moderate	8 in – 2 ft. (200 – 600 mm)	**Medium**	1 ft. – 3 ft. (300 – 900 mm)
Wide	2 ft. – 6 ft. (600 mm – 2.0 m)	**Thick**	3 ft. – 10 ft. (900 mm – 3 m)
Very Wide	6 ft. – 20 ft. (2.0 – 6 m)	**Massive**	> 10 ft. (3 m)

Discontinuity Orientation (Angle): Measure the angle of discontinuity relative to a plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the core. (For most cases, the core axis is vertical; therefore, the plane perpendicular to the core axis is horizontal.) For example, a horizontal bedding plane would have a 0-degree angle.

ROCK QUALITY DESIGNATION (RQD) [1]	
Description	**RQD Value (%)**
Very Poor	0 - 25
Poor	25 – 50
Fair	50 – 75
Good	75 – 90
Excellent	90 - 100

1. The combined length of all sound and intact core segments equal to or greater than 4 inches in length, expressed as a percentage of the total core run length.

Reference: U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, Publication No FHWA-NHI-10-034, December 2009
Technical Manual for Design and Construction of Road Tunnels – Civil Elements